
C. IVLIVS CÆSAR DICTATOR PERPETVVS.
VENI · VIDI · VICI · ÆTATIS SVÆ · 56:


C. IVLIVS CÆSAR DICTATOR PERPETVVS.
VENI · VIDI · VICI · ÆTATIS SVÆ · 56:



OBSERVATIONS VPON CÆSARS COMENTARIES.

By CLEMENT EDMVNDES, *Remembrancer of the cittie of* LONDON.

1609

LONDON Print-
for Math. Lownes

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.



To the PRINCE.

SIR:

HAuing ended this taske of Obſeruations, and according to your gratious pleaſure & command, ſupplied ſuch parts as were wanting to make vp the Totall of theſe Commentaries: it doth return again, by the loweſt ſteps of humbleneſſe, to implore the high patronage of your Princely fauour; Emboldened ſpecially becauſe it carieth Cæſar and his Fortunes, as they come related from the ſame Author: which, in the deepe Iudgement of his moſt excellent Maieſty, is preferd aboue all other profane hiſtories; and ſo, commended, by his ſacred Authoritie, to your reading, as a cheefe paterne and Maiſter-peece of the Art of warre. And herein, your admired wiſedome, may happely the rather deeme it capable of freer paſſage, in that it is not altogether vnproper for theſe happie dayes; as knowing, that Warre is neuer

ΒΑΣΙΛΙΚΟΝ ΔΩΡΟΝ.

ſo well handled, as when it is made an Argument of diſcourſe in times of ſweete and plentious peace. The bleſſings whereof, may euer crowne your yeares; as the ſoueraigne good of this temporarie life, and the chiefeſt Ornaments of Princely condition.

The humbleſt

of your Highneſſe ſeruants,

CLEMENT EDMONDES.

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

In Clementis Edmondi *de re militari ad* Iul. Cæſaris *Commentarios Obſeruationes.*

CVr creperos motus, & aperto pralia Marte
Edmondus nobis pace vigente refert?
Cur ſenſus mentéſque Ducum rimatur, & effert?
Diſertéque Anglos bellica multa docet?
Scilicet, vt mediâ meditetur pralia pace,
Anglia bellipotens, nec moriatur honos.
Prouidus hæc certè patriæ depromit in vſus,
Vt patriæ pacem qui cupit, arma parat.

Guil. Camdenus, *Cl.*

To my friend, Maiſter Clement Edmonds.

WHo thus extracts, with more then Chymique Art,
The ſpirit of Bookes, ſhewes the true way to finde
Th' Elixer that out leaden Parts conuart
Into the golden Metall of the Minde.
Who thus obſerues in ſuch materiall kinde
The certaine Motions of hie Practiſes,
Knowes on what Center th' Actions of Mankinde
Turne in their courſe, and ſees their fatalnes.
And hee that can make theſe obſeruances,
Muſt be aboue his Booke, more then his Pen.
For, wee may be aſſur'd, hee men can gheſſe,
That thus doth *CÆSAR* knowe; the Man of men.
Whoſe Work, improv'd here to our greater gaine,
Makes *CÆSAR* more then *CÆSAR* to containe.

Sam. Danyell.

To his worthy friend, Maiſter Clement Edmonds.

OBſeruing well what *Thou* haſt well *Obſerv'd*
In *CÆSARS Workes*, his *Warres*, and *Diſcipline*;
Whether His Pen hath earn'd more Praiſe, or Thine,
My ſhallow Cenſure doubtfully hath ſwerv'd.
If ſtrange it were, if wonder it deſerv'd,
That what *He wrought* ſo faire, *Hee wrote* ſo fine;
Me thinkes, It's ſtranger, that *Thy* learned Line
Should our beſt *Leaders* lead, not hauing *ſerv'd*.
But hereby (*Clement*) haſt Thou made thee knowne
Able to counſaile, apteſt to recorde
The Conqueſts of a *CÆSAR* of our owne;
HENRY, thy Patron, and my Princely Lord.
Whom (O!) Heav'n proſper, and protect from harmes,
In glorious Peace, and in victorious Armes.

IOSVAH SYLVESTER.

TO MY FRIEND, MAISTER CLEMENT EDMONDES.

Epigramme.

NOt *Cæſars* deedes; Nor all his honors wonne
In theſe Weſt-parts; Nor, when that warre was done,
The name of *Pompey* for an Enemie;
Cato to boote; *Rome*, and her libertie;
All yeelding to his fortune: Nor, the while,
To haue ingrav'd theſe Acts with his owne ſtile;
And that ſo ſtrong, and deepe, as might be thought
He wrote with the ſame ſpirit that hee fought;
Nor that his Worke liv'd, in the hands of foes,
Vn-argu'd then; and (yet) hath fame from thoſe;
Not all theſe, *Edmondes*, or what elſe, put to
Can ſo ſpeake *Cæſar*, as thy Labors doo.
For, where his perſon liv'd ſcarſe one iuſt age,
And that 'midſt enuy and Parts; then, fell by rage;
His deedes too dying, ſaue in bookes: (whoſe good
How few haue read! how fewer vnderſtood!)
Thy learned hand, and true Promethean Art,
As by a new creation, part by part,
In euerie councell, ſtratageme, deſigne,
Action, or Engine, worth a note of thine,
T'all future time, not only doth reſtore
His Life; but makes, that hee can dye no more.

Ben. Ionſon.

Another, of the ſame.

WHo, *Edmondes*, reades thy booke, and doth not ſee
What th'antique Souldiers were, the moderne be?
Wherein thou ſhew'ſt, how much the latter are
Beholden, to this Maſter of the Warre:
And that, in Action, there is nothing new,
More then to varie what our Elders knew.
Which all, but ignorant Captaines, will confeſſe:
Nor to giue *Cæſar* this, makes ours the leſſe.
Yet thou, perhaps, ſhalt meete ſome tongues, will grutch
That to the world thou ſhouldſt reueale ſo mutch;
And, thence, depraue thee, and thy Worke: To thoſe
Cæſar ſtands vp, as from his vrne late roſe
By thy great Art; and doth proclame, by mee,
They murder him againe, that enuie thee.

Ben. Ionſon.

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

READING AND DISCOVRSE *are requisite, to make a Souldier perfect in the Arte* Militarie, how great soeuer his knowledge may be, which long experience, and much practice of *Armes hath gained.*

WHEN I conſider the weakneſs of mans iudgement, in cenſuring things beſt knowne vnto it ſelfe, and the diſabilitie of his diſcourſe, in diſcouering the nature of vnacquainted obiects; chooſing rather to hold any ſenſible impreſſion, which cuſtome hath by long practice inured, then to hearken to ſome other more reaſonable perſwaſion: I do not maruell that ſuch ſouldiers, whoſe knowledge groweth onely frō experience, and conſiſteth in the rules of their owne practice, are hardly perſwaded, that hiſtorie and ſpeculatiue learning, are of any vſe in perfecting of their Arte, being ſo different in nature from the principles of their cunning, and of ſo ſmall affinity with the life of action; wherein the vſe of Armes and atchieuements of war, ſeeme to haue their chiefeſt being. But thoſe purer ſpirits, embeliſhed with learning, and enriched with the knowledge of other mens fortunes (wherein varietie of accidents, affordeth varietie of inſtructions, and the mutuall conference of thinges happened, begetteth both ſimilitudes and differences; contrarie natures, but yet ioyntly concurring to ſeaſon our iudgement with diſcretion, and to enſtall wiſedome in the gouernment of the mind) Theſe men, I ſay, mounting aloft with the winges of contemplation, doe eaſily diſcouer the ignorance of ſuch Martialiſtes, as are only trained vp in the Schoole of practice, and taught their rudiments vnder a fewe yeeres experience, which ſerueth to interpret no other author but it ſelfe, nor can approoue his Maximes, but by his owne authoritie; and are rather moued to pittie their hard fortune, hauing learned onely to be ignorant, then to enuie their skill in matter of warre, when they oppoſe themſelues againſt ſo manifeſt a truth as this: that A meer practicall knowledge, cannot make a perfect ſoldier.

Which propoſition, that I may the better confirme, giue me leaue to reaſon a little of the grounds of learning, and diſpute from the habitude of Artes and Sciences; which are then ſaid to be perfectly attained, when their particular parts are in ſuch ſort apprehended, that from the varietie of that individualitie, the intellectuall power frameth generall notions and maximes of rule, vniting tearmes of the ſame nature in one head, and diſtinguiſhing diuerſities by differences of properties, aptly diuiding the whole body into his greateſt and ſmalleſt branches, and fitting each part with his deſcriptions, duties, cautions, and exceptions. For, vnleſſe the vnderſtanding be in this ſort qualified, and able by logiſticall diſcourſe, to aſcend, by way of compoſition, from ſingularity to catholike conceptions; and returne againe the ſame way, to the loweſt order of his partitions, the mind cannot bee ſaide to haue the perfection of that Arte, nor inſtructed in the true vſe of that knowledge: but guiding herſelfe by ſome broken precepts, feeleth more want by that ſhee hath not, then benefite by that ſhe hath.

Whereby it followeth, that a Science diuided into many branches, & conſiſting in the multiplicitie of diuers members, being all ſo intereſſed in the Bulk, that a Maime of the ſmalleſt part, cauſeth either debilitie or deformitie in the bodie, cannot be ſaid to be throughly attained, nor conceiued with ſuch a profiting apprehenſion as ſteeleth the mind with true iudgement, and maketh the Scholler, Maiſter in his Arte, vnleſſe the nature of theſe particularities bee firſt had and obtained.

And foraſmuch as no one Science or faculty whatſoeuer, in multitude and pluralitie of parts, may anie way be comparable to the Art Militarie, wherein euery ſmall and vnreſpected circumſtance, quite altereth the nature of the action, and breedeth ſuch diſparitie and difference, that the reſemblance of their equall participating properties, is blemiſhed with the diſſimilitude of their diſagreeing parts; it cannot bee denied, but hee that is acquainted with moſt of theſe particular occurrences, and beſt knoweth the varietie of chances in the courſe of warre, muſt needs be thought a more perfect ſouldier, and deſerueth a title of greater dignitie in the profeſſion of Armes, then ſuch as content thẽſelues with a fewe common precepts and ouer-worne rules: without which, as they cannot be ſaid at all to be ſouldiers; ſo with them and no more, they no way deſerue the name of skilfull and perfect men of war. Now whether meere experience, or experience ioyned with reading and diſcourſe, doe feaſt the minde with more varietie and choice of matter, or entertaine knowledge with greater plentie of nouelties, incident to expeditions and vſe of Armes, I will vſe no other reaſon to determine of this queſtion, then that which Franciſcus Patricius alleadgeth in his Parallely, where he handleth this argument which I intreat of.

He that followeth a warre (ſaith he) doth ſee either the courſe of the whole, or but a part only. If his knowledge extend no farther then a part, he hath learned leſſe then he that ſaw the whole: but admit he hath ſeene and learned the inſtructions of one whole warre; he hath notwithſtanding learned leſſe then he that hath ſeene the proceeding of two ſuch warres. And hee againe hath not

ſeene

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

ſeene ſo much as another that hath ſerued in three ſeuerall warres: and ſo by degrees, a ſouldier that hath ſerued tenne yeeres, muſt needes knowe more then one that hath not ſerued ſo long. And to conclude, hee that hath receiued 22 yeeres ſtipend (which was the iuſt time of ſeruice amongſt the Romans before a Souldier could be diſmiſt) hath greater meanes of experience then another, that hath not ſo long a time followed the Campe, and cannot challenge a diſcharge by order and cuſtome. And hence it conſequently followeth, that if in one, or more, or all theſe warres, there haue happened few or no actions of ſeruice, which might teach a ſouldier the practice of Armes; that then his learning doth not counteruaile his labor. And if the war through the negligence, or ignorance of the chiefe Commanders, haue bin ill caried, he can boaſt of no knowledge, but that which acquainted him with the corruptions of Militarie diſcipline: if the part which he followed, were defeated and ouerthrowne; hee knoweth by experience how to loſe, but not how to gaine. And therefore it is not only experience and practice which maketh a ſouldier worthy of his name; but the knowledge of the manifold accidents which riſe frō the varietie of humane actions; wherein reaſon and error, like Matchants in traffick, enterchange contrary euents of Fortune, giuing ſometime copper for ſiluer, and balme for poyſon, and repaying againe the like commoditie as time and circumſtances doe anſwere their directions. And this knowledge is onely to be learned in the regiſters of Antiquitie and in hiſtories, recording the motions of former ages.

Caius Iulius Cæſar (whoſe actions are the ſubiect of theſe diſcourſes) after his famous victories in France, and that he had gotten the Prouinces of Spaine, broken the ſtrength of the Romaine Empire at Pharſalia, was held a ſouldier ſurmounting enuie and all her exceptions: and yet notwithſtanding all this, the battell he had with Pharnaces, king of Pontus, was like to haue buried the glorie of his former conqueſts, in the dishonourable memorie of a wilfull ouerthrow: for, hauing poſſeſt himſelfe of a hill of great aduantage, he beganne to encampe himſelfe in the toppe thereof. Which Pharnaces perceiuing (being lodged likewiſe with his Camp vpon a Mountaine confronting the Romaines) imbattelled his men, marched down from his camp into the valley, and mounted his forces vp the hill, where the Romans were buſied about their intrenchments, to giue them battell. All which, Cæſar tooke but for a brauado: and meaſuring the enemy by himſelfe, could not be perſwaded that any ſuch foolehardineſs could carry men headlong into ſo dangerous an aduenture, vntil they were come ſo neere, that he had ſcarce any time to call the legions from their worke, and to giue order for the battell. Which ſo amazed the Romaines, that vnleſſe, as Cæſar himſelfe ſaith, the aduantage of the place, and the benignitie of the Gods had greatly fauoured them, Pharnaces had at that time reuenged the ouerthrowe of Pompey & the Senat, and reſtored the Romaine Empire to liberty. Which may learne vs how neceſſary it is (beſides experience, which in Cæſar was infinite) to perfect our knowledge with varietie of chances; and to meditate vpon the effects of other mens aduentures, that their harmes may be our warnings, and their happy proceedings our fortunate directions.

And albeit amongſt ſo many decades of Hiſtory, which pregnant wits haue

preſented to theſe later ages, we ſeldome or neuer meet with any one accident which iumpeth in all points with another of the like nature, that ſhall happen to fall out in managing a warre, or ſetting forth of an Armie; and ſo doe ſeeme to reape little benefit by that wee read, and make ſmall vſe of our great trauell: Yet we muſt vnderſtand, that in the Audit of Reaſon, there are many offices, which through the ſoueraigne power of the diſcutſiue facultie, receiue great commodities, by whatſoeuer falleth vnder their iuriſdiction, and ſuffer no action to paſſe without due triall of his nature, and examination of his ſtate; that ſo the iudgement may not be defrauded of her reuenewes, nor the mind of her learning. For, notwithſtanding diſagreeing circumſtances, and differences of formes, which ſeeme to cut-off the priuiledge of imitation, and fruſtrate the knowledge we haue obtained by reading: the intellectuall facultie hath authoritie to examine the vſe, and looke into the inconueniences of theſe wants and diuerſities, and by the helpe of reaſon, to turne it to her aduantage; or ſo to counterpoiſe the defect, that in triall and execution, it ſhall not appeare anie diſaduantage. For, as in all other Sciences, and namely, in Geometry, of certaine bare elements, and common ſentences, which ſenſe admitteth to the apprehenſion, the powers of the ſoule frame admirable Theoremes and Problemes of infinite vſe, proceeding with certaintie of demonſtration, from propoſition to propoſition, and from concluſion to concluſion, and ſtill make new wonders as they goe, beſides the ſtrangeneſſe of their Architecture, that vpon ſuch plaine and eaſie foundations, they ſhould erect ſuch curious and beautiful buildings: ſo in the Arte Military, theſe examples, which are taken from hiſtories, are but plaine kind of principles, on which the mind worketh to her beſt aduantage, and vſeth reaſon with ſuch dexteritie, that of inequalities, ſhee concludeth an equalitie, and of diſſimilitudes moſt ſweet reſemblances; and ſo ſhe worketh out her owne perfection by diſcourſe, and in time groweth ſo abſolute in knowledge, that her ſufficiencie needeth no further directions. But as Lomazzo the Milineſe, in that excellent worke which hee writ of picturing, ſaith of a skilfull Painter; that beeing to draw a portraiture of gracefull lineaments, will neuer ſtand to take the ſymmetry by ſcale, nor marke it out according to rule: but hauing his iudgement habituated by knowledge, and perfected with the varietie of ſhapes and proportions; his knowledge guideth his eye, and his eye directeth his hand, and his hand followeth both, with ſuch facilitie of cunning, that each of them ſerue for a rule wherby the true meaſures of Nature are exactly expreſſed: The like may I ſay of a skilfull Souldier, or any Artizan in his facultie, when knowledge hath once purified his iudgement, and tuned it to the key of true apprehenſion.

Lib. 3.

And although there are many that will eaſily admit a reconciliation of this diſagreement, in the reſemblance of accidents being referred to the arbitrement of a well tempered ſpirit; yet they will by no meanes acknowledge, that thoſe monſtrous & inimitable examples of valour & magnanimity (wherof antiquity is prodigall, & ſpendeth as though time ſhould neuer want ſuch treaſure) can any way auaile the maners of theſe daies, which if they were as they ought to be, wold appeare but counterfeit to the luſtre of a golden age, nor yet cõpara-

ble

ble to ſiluer or braſſe, or the ſtrength of yron, but deſerue no better title then earth or clay, wherof the frame of this age conſiſteth. For, what reſemblance (ſay they) is between the cuſtoms of our times, & the actions of thoſe ancient Heroes? They obſerued equity as well in war as in peace: for, vertue rather flouriſhed by the naturall diſpoſition of men, then by lawe and authoritie; the tenure of their Empire was, valour in war, and concorde in peace; the greateſt treaſure which they eſteemed, were the deedes of Armes which they had atchieued for their country, adorning the temples of their gods with pietie, and their priuate houſes with glory, pardoning rather then proſecuting a wrong, and taking nothing from the vanquiſhed but ability of dooing iniury: But the courſe of our times hath another bias; for, couetouſneſſe hath ſubuerted both faith and equity, and our valour affecteth nothing but ambition, pride and crueltie tyrannize in our thoughts, and ſubtilty teacheth vs to carrie rather a faire countenance, then a good nature; our meanes of getting are by fraud & extortion, and our manner of ſpending is by waſte and prodigalitie; not eſteeming what we haue of our owne, but coueting that which is not ours; men effeminated & women impudent, vſing riches as ſeruants to wickedneſs, and preuenting Natures appetite with wanton luxurie; ſupplanting vertue with trechery, & vſing victory with ſuch impietie, as though *iniuriam facere*, were *imperio vti*: and therfore the exemplary patterns of former times wherin true honour is expreſſed, may ſerue to be gazed vpon, but no way to be imitated by this age, being too ſubtile to deale with honeſty, and wanting courage to incounter valour. I muſt needs confeſſe, that he that compareth the hiſtorie of Liuie with that of Guichardine, ſhall find great difference in the ſubiects which they handle; for, Liuie triumpheth in the conqueſts of vertue, and in euery page erecteth trophes vnto valour, making his diſcourſe like Cleanthes table, wherein vertue is deſcribed in her entire Maieſtie, and ſo ſweetned with the preſence & ſeruice of the Graces, that all they which behold her are rapt with admiration of her excellency, and charmed with the loue of her perfection: but Guichardine hath more then Theſeus taske to perform, being to winde through the labyrinths of ſubtilty, and diſcouer the quaint practices of polititians: wherein publike & open deſſignes are oftentimes but ſhadows of more ſecret proiects, and theſe againe ſerue as foiles to more eminent intentions; being alſo diſcoloured with diſſimulation, and ſo inſnared in the ſleights of ſubtiltie, that when you look for war, you ſhall find peace; and expecting peace, you ſhall fall into troubles, diſſenſions and wars: So crabbed and crooked is his argument in reſpect of Liuies fortune, and ſuch art is required to vnfolde the truth of theſe myſteries.

But to anſwere this obiection in a word, and ſo to proceed to that which followeth, I ſay thoſe immortall memories of vertue which former time recordeth, are more neceſſarily to be knowen, then any ſtratagems of ſubtler ages: for, equitie and valour being truely apprehended, ſo ſeaſon the motions of the ſoule, that albeit in ſo corrupt a courſe, they cannot peraduenture ſtir vp imitation; yet they oftentimes hinder many malicious practices, and diueliſh deuiſes, when euill is reproued by the knowledge of good, and condemned by the autho-

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

authority of better ages. And if we will needs follow thoſe ſteppes which the preſent courſe of the world hath traced, and plaie the Cretian with the Cretian; this obiection hindereth nothing, but that hiſtorie, eſpecially theſe of later times, affordeth ſufficient inſtructions to make a Souldier perfect in that point.

Let not therefore any man deſpiſe the ſound inſtructions which learning affordeth, nor refuſe the helpes that hiſtory doth offer to perfect the weakneſs of a ſhort experience; eſpecially when no worth can counteruaile the waight of ſo great a buſineſſe: for, I take the office of a chiefe Commander, to be a ſubiect capable of the greateſt wiſdome that may be apprehended by naturall meanes; being to manage a multitude of diſagreeing mindes, as a fit inſtrument to execute a deſſigne of much conſequence and great expectation, and to qualifie both their affections and apprehenſions according to the accidents which riſe in the courſe of his directions; beſides the true iudgement, which he ought to haue of ſuch circumſtances as are moſt important to a fortunate end: wherein our prouidence cannot haue enough eyther from learning or experience, to preuent diſaduantages, or to take holde of opportunities. Neither can it be denied, but as this knowledge addeth perfection to our iudgement, ſo it ſerueth alſo as a ſpur to glory, and increaſeth the deſire of honour in ſuch as beholde the atchiuements of vertue, commended to a perpetuall poſteritie, hauing themſelues the like meanes to conſecrate their memory to ſucceeding ages, wherein they may ſerue for examples of valour, and reap the reward of true honour. Or to conclude, if we thirſt after the knowledge of our owne fortune, & long to foreſee the end of that race which wee haue taken, which is the chiefeſt matter of conſequence in the vſe of Arms; what better coniecture can be made, then to looke into the courſe of former times, which haue proceeded from like beginnings, and were continued with like meanes, and therefore not vnlikely to ſort vnto like ends?

And now if it be demanded whether reading or practice haue the firſt place in this Art, and ſerueth as a foundation to the reſt of the building? Let Marius anſwer this queſtion: who enuying at the nobilitie of Rome, ſaith thus; *Qui poſtquã conſules facti ſunt, acta Maiorum & Græcorũ militaria præcepta legere cœperint: homines præpoſteri, nam legere quam fieri, tempore poſterius, re & vſu prius eſt.* Whereas (ſaith he) reading ought to go before practice (although it follow it in courſe of time; for, their is no reading, but of ſome thing practiced before,) theſe prepoſterous men, after they are made Conſuls and placed at the helme of gouernment, begin to read, when they ſhould practice that which they had read; and ſo bewray their inſufficiencie of knowledge, by vſing out of time that, which in time is moſt neceſſarie. This teſtimonie gaue Marius of reading & book-learning, being himſelfe an enemy to the ſame, foraſmuch as al his knowledge came by meer experience. But howſoeuer, his iudgement was good in this poynt: for, ſince that all motion and action proceedeth from the ſoule, and cannot well be produced, vntill the Idea thereof be firſt imprinted in the minde, according to which patterne the outward being and ſenſible reſemblance is duely faſhioned; how is it poſſible that any action can be well expreſſed,

Saluſt. de bello Iugur.

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

ſed, when the minde is not directed by knowledge to diſpoſe it in that ſort, as ſhall beſt agree with the occurrents of ſuch natures, as are neceſſarily intereſſed both in the means and in the end thereof? And therfore ſpeculatiue knowledge as the Tramontane, to direct the courſe of all practice, is firſt to bee reſpected.

But that I may not ſeeme partiall in this controuerſie, but carrie an equall hand betweene two ſo neceſſarie yoak-fellowes, giue me leaue to conclude in a word, the benefite of practice, and define the good which commeth from experience; that ſo nothing that hath beene ſpoken may ſeeme to come from affection, or proceed from the forge of vniuſt partiality. And firſt it cannot bee denied, but that practice giueth boldneſſe and aſſurance in action, and maketh mē expert in ſuch things they take in hand: for, no man can reſt vpon ſuch certainty, through the theorike of knowledge, as he that hath ſeene his learning verified by practice, and acknowledged by the teſtimonie of aſſured proof: beſides, there are many other accomplements gotten onely by practice, which grace the preſence of knowledge, and giue credit to that which we haue read; as firſt to learn the vſe & aduantage of the Arms which we beare; ſecondly, by frequent aſpect & familiarity of dangers, and accidents of terror, to learne to feare nothing but diſhonour, to make no difference between heate and colde, ſommer and winter, to ſleepe in all places as on a bed, and at the ſame time to take pains & ſuffer penury, with many other difficulties which cuſtom maketh eaſie, and cannot be gotten but by vſe and practice.

And thus at length, I haue brought a ſhallow diſcourſe to an abrupt end, wiſhing with greater zeale of affection then I am able with manifeſt proof of reaſon, to demonſtrate the neceſſitie, that both theſe parts were by our ſoldiers ſo regarded, that neither practice might march in obinate blindneſſe without learned knowledge; nor this againe be entertained with an idle apprehenſion without practice: but that both of them may be reſpected, as neceſſarie partes to make a compleat nature; wherin knowledge as the intellectuall part giueth life and ſpirit to the action, and practice as the materiall ſubſtance maketh it of a ſenſible being, and like a skilfull workman expreſſeth the excellency, which knowledge hath fore-conceiued: wiſhing no man to deſpaire of effecting that by practice, which the Theorike of knowledge commendeth. For, *Cur deſperes nunc poſſe fieri, quod iam toties factum eſt?*

THE

THE SVMME OF THE FIRST BOOKE OF CÆSARS COMMENTARIES; WITH OBSERVATIONS VPON THE same, discouering the excellencie of *Cæsars Militia.*

THE ARGVMENT.

IN this first booke, are contained the specialities of two great warres, begun and ended both in a Summer: the first, between Cæsar & the Heluetij: the second, between him & Ariouistus, king of the Germans. The history of the Heluetians, may be reduced to three principall heads: vnder the first, are the reasons that moued the Heluetians to entertaine so desperate an expedition, & the preparation which they made for the same. The second, containeth their defeat by Cæsar: and the third, their returne into their Country. That of Ariouistus, diuideth it selfe into two parts: the first giueth the causes that induced Cæsar to vndertake that war: the second, intreateth of the war it selfe, and particularly describeth Ariouistus ouerthrow.

Suitchers.

CHAP. I.

Gallia described: the Heluetians dislike their natiue *seate, and propound to themselues larger territories in* the Continent of Gallia. Orgetorix feedeth *this humour, for his owne aduantage.*

GALLIA is all diuided into three parts; vvhereof the Belges do inhabite one, the Aquitanes another, & those which they call Celtes, & we, Galles, a third: all these do differ each from other in maners, language, & in lawes. The riuer Garun doth separate the Galles from the Aquitans, and Marne & Seine doe bound them from the Belges: of these the Belges are most warlike; as further off the ciuilitie & politure of the Prouince, & lesse frequēted with Merchāts, or acquainted with such things as are by thē imported to effeminate mens minds: as likewise being syted next to the Germans beyond the Rhene, with whō they haue continuall wars. For which cause also the Heluetians

Matrona. Sequana.

749b Edmondes, Sir C.

doe excell the reſt of the Galles in deeds of Armes, being in daily conflicts vvith the Germaines, for defence of their owne territories, or by inuading theirs. The part inhabited by the Galles, beginneth at the riuer Rhone, and is bounded vvith Garun, the Ocean, and the confines of the Belges; and reaching alſo to the Rhene, as a Linet from the Sequans & Heluetians, it ſtretcheth northward. The Belges take their beginning at the extreame confines of Gallia, and inhabit the Country which lieth along the lower part of the Rhene, trindling to the North, and to the Eaſt. Aquitania ſpreadeth it ſelf between the riuer Garun & the Pyrenean hils, and butteth vpon the Spaniſh Ocean, between the Weſt and the North.

Amongſt the Heluetians, Orgetorix did far exceed all others, both for noble diſcent and ſtore of treaſure: & when M. Meſſala and M. Piſo were Conſuls, being ſtirred vp with the deſire of a kingdom, he mooued the Nobilitie to a commotion; perſwading the State to goe out of their confines with their whole povver: as an eaſie matter for them, that excelled all other in valour & proweſs, to ſeize vpon the Empire of all Gallia. To which he did the rather perſwade thē, for-that the Heluetians were on euery ſide ſhut vp, by the ſtrength & nature of the place vvherein they dwelt; on the one ſide, vvith the depth and breadth of the riuer Rhene, which diuideth their Country frō the Germaines; on the other ſide, with the high ridge of the hill Iura, which runneth between them & the Sequans: & on the third part, they vvere flanked with the lake Lemanus, & the riuer Rhone, parting their territories from our Prouince.

Hence it happened, that being thus ſtraightened, they could not eaſily enlarge themſelues, or make war vpon the bordering Countries: and thereupon, beeing men wholly bent to Armes and war, were much grieued, as hauing too little elbow-roome for their multitude of people, and the renowne they had got of their valor; their whole country cōtaining but 211 miles in length, & 180 in breadth. Spurred on with theſe inducements, and mooued ſpecially with the authority of Orgetorix, they reſolued to make prouiſion of ſuch things as vvere requiſite for their expedition; bought great number of Carres, and horſes, for cariages; ſowed much tillage, that they might haue plentie of Corne in their iourney; made peace and amity with the confining Countries. For the perfiting and ſupply of vvhich things, they tooke 2 yeers to be ſufficient; and in the third, enacted their ſetting forward by a ſolemne Law, aſſigning Orgetorix to giue order for that which remained.

Curandum vicinis populis vt pax inter vicinos populos colatur.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

HE that will examine this expedition of the Heluetians, by the tranſmigrations and flittings of other Nations, ſhall find ſome vnexampled particularities in the courſe of their proceeding: for, firſt it hath neuer beene heard, that any people vtterly abandoned that Country which Nature or prouidence had allotted thē, vnleſs they were driuen thervnto by a generall calamity, as the infection of the aire, the cruelty & oppreſsion of a neighbor nation, as were the Sueuians, who thought it great honor to ſuffer no man to border vpon their confines; or

ſome

ſome other vniuerſall, which made the place inhabitable, and the people willing to vndertake a voluntarie exile. But oftentimes we read, that when the inhabitants of a Countrey were ſo multiplied, that the place was ouer-charged with multitudes of ofspring; and like a poore father, had more children then it was able to ſuſtaine, the abounding ſurplus was ſent out to ſeek new fortunes in forraine Countries, and to poſſeſſe themſelues of a reſting ſeate; which might recompence the wants of their natiue Country, with a plentious reuenue of neceſſary ſupplements. And in this ſort, wee read that Rome ſent out many Colonies into diuers parts of her Empire. And in this manner the ancient Galles disburdened themſelues of their ſuperfluitie, and ſent them into Aſia. The Gothes came from the Ilands of the Baltick ſea, & in Sulla his time, ſwarmed ouer Germanie: beſides many other Nations, whoſe tranſmigrations are particularly deſcribed by Lazius. But amongſt all theſe, we find none that ſo forſooke their Country, but there remained ſome behind to inhabit the ſame; from whence, as from a fountaine, ſucceeding ages might deriue the ſtreame of that ouer-flowing multitude, and by them take notice of the cauſes, which mooued them vnto it. For, their manner was in all ſuch expeditions, and ſending out of Colonies, to diuide themſelues into two or three parts, equall both in equalitie and number: for after they had parted their common people into euen companies, they diuided their Nobility with as great equalitie as they could, among the former partitions: & then caſting lots, that part which went out to ſeeke new aduentures, left their lands & poſſeſſions to the reſt that remained at home; and ſo by induſtrie, they ſupplied that defect which continuance of time had drawne vpon them. And this was the meanes, which the firſt inhabitants of the earth found out after the floud, to people the vnhabited places, and to keepe off the inconueniences of ſcarcitie and famine.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

HE that would prognoſticate by the courſe of theſe ſeuerall proceedings, whether of the two betokened better ſucceſſe, hath greater reaſon to foretell happineſſe to theſe which I laſt ſpake of, then to the Heluetians; vnleſſe their valour were the greater, and quitted all difficulties which hatred and enuie would caſt vpon them: for, an action which ſauoureth of neceſsitie (which was alwaies vnderſtood in ſending out a Colonie) hath a more plauſible paſport amongſt men, then that which proceedeth from a proud voluntarie motion. For, as men can bee content to tolerate the one, if it concerne not their particular; ſo on the other ſide, they count it gaine to puniſh pride with ſhame, and to oppoſe themſelues againſt the other.

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

ORgetorix, thirſting after princely dignitie, diſcouereth the humour of vaine-glorie. For, not contented with the ſubſtance of honour, beeing alreadie of greateſt power amongſt the Heluetians, & ordering the affaires of the State by his owne direction, thought it nothing without the marks and title of dignitie, vnto which the inconueniences of Maieſtie are annexed: not conſidering that the beſt honor, ſitteth not alwaies in imperiall thrones, nor weareth the Diadems of Princes; but oftentimes reſteth it ſelfe in meaner places, and ſhineth better with obſcurer titles.

For proofe whereof, to omit antiquitie, take the familie of the Medices in Florence, and particularlie, Coſimo and Lorenzo, whoſe vertue raiſed them to that height of honour, that they were nothing inferiour to the greateſt Potentates of their time, beeing themſelues but priuate Gentlemen in that State, and bearing their proper names as their greateſt titles. But howſoeuer; the opportunitie of changing their ſoile, was well obſerued by Orgetorix, as the fitteſt meanes to attempt an innouation: but the ſucceſſe depended much vpon the fortunate proceeding of their expedition.

For, as a multitude of that nature, can bee content to attribute a great part of their happineſſe, wherein euery man thinketh himſelfe particularly intereſſed, to an eminent Leader; & in that vniuerſall extaſie of ioy, will eaſilie admit an alteration of their State: ſo, if the iſſue be in any reſpect vnfortunate, no man will acknowledge himſelfe faultie; but, euery one deſiring to diſcharge his paſſion vpon ſome obiect, a chiefe director is likelieſt to be the mark, at which the darts of their diſcontent will be throwne; and then he will find it hard to effect what he intendeth.

CHAP. II.

Orgetorix practices are diſcouered: his death. The *Heluetians continue the reſolution of their ex-* pedition, and prepare themſelues *accordingly.*

Caſar.

ORgetorix, thereupon, vndertook imploiment to the adioyning States; and firſt perſwaded Caſticus, the ſonne of Catamantalides, a Sequan (vvhoſe father had for many yeeres raigned in that place, and was by the Senate and people of Rome, ſtiled vvith the title of a Friend) to poſſeſſe himſelfe of the Signiorie of that State vvhich his Father formerly inioyed: and in like manner, dealt vvith Dumnorix the Heduan, Diuitiacus brother (who at that time was the onely man of that Prouince, & verie well beloued of the

the Commons) to indeauour the like there; and vvithall, gaue him his daughter in mariage: ſhewing them by liuely reaſons, that it was an eaſie matter to effect their deſignes; for that he being ſure of the ſoueraigntie of his State, there was no doubt but the Heluetians would doe much throughout all Gallia, and ſo made no queſtian to ſettle them in thoſe kingdoms, with his power and forces. Drawne on with theſe inducements, they gaue faith and oath each to other, hoping vvith the ſupport of the ſoueraigntie of three mightie Nations, to poſſeſſe themſelues of all Gallia.

This thing beeing diſcouered, the Heluetians (according to their cuſtomes) cauſed Orgetorix to aunſwere the matter in Durance: whoſe puniſhment vpon the Attaint, was to be burned aliue. Againſt the day of triall, Orgetorix had got together all his Family, to the number of ten thouſand men, beſides diuers followers, and others far indebted, which were many; by whoſe meanes hee eſcaped a iudiciall hearing. The people, thereupon, being much incenſed, agreed, the Magiſtrate ſhould execute their lawes with force of Armes, and to that end, ſhould raiſe the Country: but in the meane time, Orgetorix was found dead, not without ſuſpicion (as was conceiued) that he himſelfe was guilty thereof.

Notwithſtanding his death, the Heluetians did purſue their former deſigne of leauing their Countrey: and when they thought themſelues readie prepared, they ſet fire on all their Townes (vvhich were in number 12) together with foure hundred Villages, beſides priuate houſes, and burnt likewiſe all the Corne, ſaue that they caried with them; that al hope of returne being taken away, they might be the readier to vndergoe all haZards: And cõmaunded that euery man ſhould carie ſo much Meale with him, as would ſerue for three Months.

Moreouer alſo, they perſwaded the Rauraci, the Tulingi and Latobrigi, their neighbour borderers, that putting on the ſame reſolution, they would ſet fire on all their habitations, and goe along with them. And likewiſe tooke vnto them the Boij, which had dwelt beyond the Rheine, but were now ſeated in the Territories of the Norici, and had taken the capitall towne of that Countrey. There were onely two waies which gaue them paſſage out of their Countrey: the one through the Sequans, very narrow and difficult, betweene the Hill Iura, & the Riuer Rhone, by which a ſingle Cart could ſcarce paſſe; and had a high hill hanging ouer, that a ſmall force might eaſily hinder them. The other, was through our Prouince, farre eaſier and readier; foraſmuch as the riuer Rhone, running betweene the Heluetians and the * Allobroges (vvho were lately brought in obedience to the people of Rome) did giue paſſage in diuers places by Foordes.

* Sauoyens.

The vtmoſt towne belonging to the Allobroges, that bordereth vpon the Heluetians, is Geneua; wherevnto adioyneth a bridge leading to the Heluetians; vvho doubted not but to perſwade the Allobroges (that ſeemed as yet to cary no great affection to the people of Rome) or at leaſt, to force them to giue them paſſage. Things beeing now ready for their iourney, they aſsigned a day vvhen all ſhould meete together vpon the banks of Rhone: vvhich day was the firſt of the Calends of Aprill, in the Conſulſhip of Lu. Piſo, and A. Gabinius.

OBSERVATION.

The omission in the Heluetian expedition,

AS theſe prouiſoes were all requiſite; ſo one thing was omitted, which might haue furthered their good fortune more then any thing thought of: which was, to haue concealed by all meanes the time of their departure. For, all the beaſts of the wood muſt needs ſtand at gaze, when ſuch Lions rouſed themſelues out of their dennes; and be then very watchfull of their ſafetie when they knew the inſtant of time, when ſome of their ſpoiles muſt needs bee offered to appeaſe their furie. Or at the leaſt, it behooued them ſo to haue dealt by hoſtages and treatie, that ſuch as were likelieſt, and beſt able to croſſe their deſignements, might haue been no hinderance of their proceedings: conſidering there were but two waies out of their Countrey by which they might goe; the one narrow and difficult, betweene the hill Iura and the riuer Rhone, by the Countrey of the Sequani: the other through Prouence, far eaſier and ſhorter, but not to be taken but by the permiſsion of the Romaines. But how-ſo-euer; their errour was, that after two yeeres prouiſion to goe, and hauing made an exterminating decree which inioyned them to goe, when they came to the point, they knew not what way to goe.

CHAP. III.

Cæſar denieth the Heluetians paſſage through the *Romane Prouince: he fortifieth the paſſage* betweene the hill Iura, and the *lake of Geneua.*

Cæſar.

** Rome.*

*AS ſoone as Cæſar was aduertiſed, that their purpoſe vvas to paſſe thorough our Prouince, he haſted to leaue the * Cittie, & poſting by great iourneys into the further Gallia, he came to Geneua. And inrolling great forces throughout all the Prouince, for that there was but one legion in thoſe parts, he brake downe the bridge at Geneua.*

The Heluetians, hauing intelligence of Cæſars arriuall, they ſent diuers of the beſt of their Nobility, Embaſſadours vnto him, whereof Numeius & Veredoctius vvere the chiefe; to giue him notice, that they had a purpoſe to paſſe peaceably through the Prouince, hauing no other way to goe: & therein to pray his ſufferance and permiſsion.

Cæſar, well remembring how Lu. Caſsius the Conſull was ſlaine, his Armie beaten, and the ſouldiers put vnder the yoke, did not hold it conuenient to grant their requeſt. Neither did hee thinke that men ſo ill affected, could forbeare to offer wrongs & inſolencies, if leaue were giuen them as was required. Howbeit, for the better gaining of time, and getting ſuch forces together as vvere cauſed to

to be inrolled, he answered the Commissioners that he would take a time of deliberation; and to that end, willed them to returne againe by the Ides of Aprill. And, in the meane time, with that legion he had ready, and the souldiers that came out of the Prouince, he made a ditch, and a vvall of sixteene foot in height, from the lake Lemanus, which runneth into the Rhone, to the hill Iura, that divideth the Sequans from the Heluetians, beeing in length nineteene miles; and disposed guarizons and fortresses along the worke, the better to impeach them, if happely they went about to breake out by force.

At the day appointed, when the Embassadours returned, for a resolution, he vtterly denied to giue any leaue to passe through the Prouince; hauing neither custome nor president from the people of Rome, to vvarrant him in that kind. And if they should endeauour it by force of Armes, he would oppugne them.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THis manner of prolonging of time, to renforce the troupes or get some other aduantage, as it was then of great vse to Cæsar, and hath oftentimes been practised to good purpose; so doth it discouer to a circumspect enemie, by the directions in the meane time (which cannot easily be shadowed) the drift of that delay; and so inuiteth him vvith greater courage, to take the opportunitie of that present aduantage; especially if tract of time may strengthen the one, and not further the other: which is easily discerned by the circumstances of the action.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THe request of the Heluetians seemed to deserue a facile answer; being in effect no more then Nature had giuen to the riuer Rhone: which was to passe through the Prouince, with as much speed & as little hurt as they could. But Cæsar, looking further into the matter, and comparing things already past, with occurrences that were to follow after, found the maiestie of the Romane Empire to be interessed in the answer; beeing either to maintaine her greatnes, by resisting her enemies, or to degenerate from ancient vertue, by gratifying such as sought her ruine: which in matter of State, are things of great consequence. And further, hee knew it to be an vnsafe course, to suffer an enemie to haue meanes of doing hurt; considering that the nature of man is alwaies prone to loade him with further wrongs whom hee hath once iniuried: not but that he could peraduenture be content to end the quarrell vpon that aduantage; but fearing the other, whom he wronged, to expect but an opportunitie of reuenge, he gets what aduantage he can before hand, and so ceaseth not, vntill he haue added a bloody end to an iniurious beginning.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

COncerning this maruellous fortification, between the hill & the lake, how ſeruiceable ſuch works were vnto him in all his wars; in what ſort, and in how ſmall a time they were made; I will deferre the treatiſe of them vntill I come to the height of Aleſia, where he gaue ſome ground of that hyperbolicall ſpeech: *An me deleto, non animaduertebatis decem habere lectas quidem legiones populum Romanum, quæ non ſolum vobis obſiſtere ſed etiam cælum diruere poſſent?*

CHAP. IIII.

The Heluetians, failing to paſſe the Rhone, take the *way through the Countrey of the Sequani. Cæſar haſteth* into Italie, and there inrolleth more legions: and re-*turning, ouer-throweth part of them at* the riuer Arar.

Cæſar. *THe Heluetians, fruſtrated of their former hope, went about, ſome vvith boats coupled together, others with Flats (wherof they made great ſtore) the reſt, by foords and places where the Riuer vvas ſhallowe, ſometimes in the day, and oftentimes in the night, to breake out: but beeing beaten back by the helpe of the fortification, and the concourſe of ſouldiers, and multitude of vveapons, they deſiſted from that attempt.*

There was onely another way left, through the Sequans, which they could not take, by reaſon of the narrowneſſe therof, but by the fauour of the Country. And foraſmuch, as of themſelues they were able to preuaile little therein, they ſent Meſſengers to Dumnorix the Heduan, that by his mediation, they might obtaine ſo much of the Sequans. Dumnorix, vvhat through fauour and bountious cariage, was of great power in his Country, much affecting the Heluetians, by reaſon of his mariage with Orgetorix daughter: & drawne on with a deſire of a kingdome, gaue his mind to new proiects; labouring to gratifie many States, to tie them the rather to fauour his courſes. And there-vpon, vndertaking the buſineſſe, got the Sequans to giue the Heluetians leaue to paſſe through their Confines; giuing each other Pledges, that the Sequans ſhould not interrupt the Heluetians in their iourney: nor they, offer any iniury to the Country.

It was told Cæſar, that the Heluetians vvere determined to paſſe through the Territories of the Sequans and Heduans, on the confines of the Santons, vvho are not farre from the borders of the Tholeſans, a people of the Prouince: which if they did, he foreſaw how dangerous it would be, to haue a warlike Nation, and ſuch as were enemies to the people of Rome, to come ſo neere them; and to haue the aduantage of an open and plentious Country.

For

For which causes, he left T. Labienus a Legat, to commaund those works, and he himselfe made great iourneis to get into Italy; vvhere he inrolled two legions, and tooke 3 more out of their wintering Camps, neer about Aquileia: and vvith with these fiue legions, went the next way ouer the Alps, into the further Gallia. Where, by the way, the Centrons, Garocles, and Caturiges, taking aduantage of the open ground, did seek to keep the Army from passage: but, being beaten and put off by many skirmages, they came in seauen daies from Ocellum, a towne in the furtheſt parts of the neerer Prouince, into the confines of the Vocontÿ, a people of the further Prouince: from whence he led them into the territories of the Allobroges; and so vnto the Sabusians, that are the first beyond the Rhene, bordering vpon the Prouince.

By that time, the Heluetians had caried their forces through the straights, and frontiers of the Sequans, into the Dominions of the Heduans, and began to forrage & pillage their Country. Who, finding themselues vnable to make resistance, sent Messengers to Cæsar, to require aide; shewing their deserts to be such from time to time of the people of Rome, that might challenge a greater respect, then to haue their Country spoiled, their children led into captiuity, their townes assaulted and taken, as it were in the sight of the Romaine Army. At the same instant likewise, the Ambarri, that had dependancy & alliance with the Heduans, aduertised Cæsar, that their Country was vtterly wasted, and they scarce able to keep the Enemy from entering their townes. In like manner also, the Allobroges, that had farmes and possessions beyond the Rhone, fled directly to Cæsar, complayning that there was nothing left them but the soile of their Country.

With which aduertisements, Cæsar was so mooued, that he thought it not conuenient to linger further, or expect vntill the fortunes of their Allies were all vvasted, and that the Heluetians vvere come vnto the Zantones. The * riuer Arar, that runneth through the confines of the Heduans and Sequans, into the Rhone, passeth away with such a stilnes, that by view of the eye, it can hardly be discerned which vvay the vvater taketh. This riuer did the Heluetians passe ouer, by Flotes, & bridges of boats. When Cæsar vvas aduertised by his Discouerers, that three parts of their forces were already past the vvater, and that the fourth was left behind on this side the riuer; about the third watch of the night he vvent out of the Camp vvith three legions, and surprising that part vvhich was not as yet gotte ouer the riuer, slew a great part of them: the rest fled into the next vvoods.

* Soane.

Zuricke.

This part vvas the Tigurine Canton: and the Heluetians beeing all parted into foure diuisions, this Canton alone, in the memory of our fathers, slew L. Cassius the Consull, and put his Army vnder the Yoke. So, whether it were by chaunce, or the prouidence of the Gods, that part of the Heluetian State, which gaue so great a blowe to the Romaine people, was the first that did penance for the same. Wherin, Cæsar tooke reuenge, not onely of the publique, but of his particular loss; forasmuch as the Tigurines, had in that battell, with Cassius, slaine L. Piso, the Grandfather of L. Piso, his father in law.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THis defeat beeing chiefely a ſeruice of execution, vpon ſuch as were taken at a dangerous diſaduantage, which men call vnaware, containeth theſe two aduiſoes. Firſt, not to neglect that aduantage which Sertorius by the haires of his horſe taile hath prooued to bee very important; that beginning with a part, it is a matter of no difficultie to ouercome the whole. Secondly, it may ſerue for a caueat, ſo to tranſport an Armie ouer a water, where the enemie is within a reaſonable march, that no part may be ſo ſeuered from the bodie of the Armie, that aduantage may thereby be taken to cut them off altogether, and ſeparate them from themſelues. The ſafeſt and moſt honourable way, to tranſport an Armie ouer a riuer, is by a bridge, placing at each end ſufficient troopes of horſe and foot, to defend the Armie from ſuddaine aſſaults, as they paſſe ouer the water; and thus went Cæſar ouer the Rhene into Germanie, two ſeuerall times.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

The manner of their watch.

COncerning the circumſtance of time, when Cæſar went out of his Campe, which is noted to be in the third watch, we muſt vnderſtand, that the Romans diuided the whole night into 4 vvatches, euery watch containing three houres: and theſe vvatches were diſtinguiſhed by ſeuerall notes and ſound of Cornets or Trumpets; that by the diſtinction and diuerſitie thereof, it might eaſily bee knowne what watch was ſounded. The charge and office of ſounding the watches, belonged to the chiefeſt Centurion of a legion, whom they called Primipilus, or Primus Centurio; at whoſe pauilion the Trumpetters attended, to be directed by his houre-glaſſe.

The firſt watch began alwaies at ſunne-ſetting, and continued three houres (I vnderſtand ſuch houres as the night contained, beeing diuided into twelue: for, the Romaines diuided their night as well as their day into twelue equall ſpaces, which they called houres): the ſecond watch cõtinued vntill midnight; and then the third watch began, & contained likewiſe three houres; the fourth was equall to the reſt, and continued vntill ſunne-riſing. So that by this phraſe *de tertia vigilia*, we vnderſtand, that Cæſar went out of his Campe in the third watch; which was after midnight: and ſo we muſt conceiue of the reſt of the watches, as often as we ſhall find them mentioned in hiſtorie.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Cæsar passeth ouer the riuer Arar: his horsemen incountred with the Heluetians, and were put to the worse.

Caesar.

AFter this ouerthrowe, he caused a bridge to be made ouer the riuer Arar, and caried ouer his Army, to pursue the rest of the Heluetian forces. The Heluetians, much daunted at his suddaine comming, that had gotte ouer the riuer in one day, which they could scarce doe in twentie, sent Embassadours vnto him, of vvhom Dinico was chiefe, that commaunded the Heluetians in the warre against Cassius: who dealt with Cæsar to this effect; That if the people of Rome would make peace with the Heluetians, they would go into any part which Cæsar should appoint them: but, if otherwise he would prosecute warre, that he should remember the ouerthrowe which the people of Rome receiued by their valour; and not to attribute it to their owne woorth, that they had surprized at vnawares a part of their Army, when such as had passed the riuer could not come to succour them. They had learned of their fore-fathers, to contend rather by valour, then by craft and deuices; and therefore, let him beware, that the place vvherein they now vvere, did not get a Name, or carie the marke to all future ages, of an eminent calamity to the people of Rome, & of the vtter destruction of his Army.

To this, Cæsar answered; That he made the lesse doubt of the successe of these businesses, in that he vvell remembred and knew those things, which the Heluetian Commissioners had related: and was so much the rather grieued thereat, because it happened without any cause or desert of the people of Rome; who, if he were guiltie of any wrong done vnto them, it vvere a matter of no difficultie to beware of their practices: but therein was his errour, that he could thinke of nothing which he had committed, that might cause him to feare: neither could he feare without occasion. And, if he would let passe former insolencies, could hee forget those late & fresh iniuries? in that they had attempted to pass through the Prouince by force of Armes, sacked and pillaged the Heduans, Ambars, & Allobrogians? that did so insolently vaunt of their victorie, admiring that these iniuries were suffered so long time to rest vnreuenged; came all in the end to one passe. For, the immortall Gods vvere vvont sometimes to giue happinesse and long impunitie to men; that by the greater alteration of things, the punishment should be the more grieuous for their offences. Howbeit, if they vvould giue Hostages for the performance of those things which were to be agreed vpon, and satisfie the Heduans and Allobrogians, together with their Allies, for the iniuries they had done vnto them, he would be content to make peace with them.

Dinico replied, that they were taught by their Ancestors, to take Hostages, rather then to giue them, whereof the people of Rome were witnesses: and thereupon

vpon departed. The next day they remooued the Campe, and the like did Cæsar, sending all his horse before, to the number of foure thousand (which he had raised in the Prouince, and drawne from the Heduans, & there Associates) to vnderstand which way the Enemy tooke: vvho, prosecuting the reare-ward ouerhotly, were forced to vndertake the Heluetian Caualry, in a place of disaduauntage; and thereby lost some few of their Company.

The Enemy, made proud with that encounter, hauing with fiue hundred horse beaten so great a multitude, did afterwards make head vvith more assurance; and sometimes stuck not to sally out of the Reareward, and assault our Partie. Cæsar kept backe his men from fighting; and held it enough for the present, to keepe the Enemy from spoiling and harrying the Country: and went on for fifteen daies together, in such manner, as there were but fiue or sixe miles between the first troopes of our Armie, and the Rearward of theirs.

OBSERVATION.

THis example of the Heluetians, may lesson a Commaunder, not to wexe insolent vpon euery ouer-throwe which the enemie taketh, but duely to weigh the true causes of a victorie gotten, or an ouerthrowe taken; that apprehending the right current of the action, he may neither vaunt of a blind victorie, nor be dismaied at a casuall mishap.

And heerein, let a heedfull warinesse so moderate the sequells of victorie in a triumphing spirit, that the care and iealousie to keep still that sweet sounding fame on foote, may as farre surpasse the industrie which he first vsed to obtaine it, as the continuance of happinesse doth exceede the beginning of good fortunes. For, such is the nature of our soule, that although from her infancie, euen to the manhood of her age, she neuer found want of that which shee lusted after: yet when shee meeteth with a counterbusse to check her appetite, and restraine her affections from their satisfaction; shee is as much troubled in that want, as if shee had neuer receiued any contentment at all: for, our will to euerie obiect which it seeketh after, begetteth alwaies a new appetite: which is not satisfied with a former quittance; but either seeketh present paiment, or returneth discontentment vnto the mind.

And, as our soule is of an euerlasting beeing, and cannot thinke of an end, to her beginning; so shee seeketh a perpetuall continuance of such things which shee lusteth after: which hee that meaneth to hold Fortune his friend, will endeuour to maintaine.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Cæsar sendeth to get the aduantage of a hill, and so *to giue the Heluetians battell: but was put off* by false intelligence. The opportunitie beeing *lost, hee intendeth prouision of* Corne.

IN the meane time, Cæsar pressed the Heduans from day to day to bring in Corne, according to their promise: for, by reason of the cold temperature of Gallia, which lieth to the Northward, it happened not onely that the Corne was farre frō beeing ripe; but also, that there was scarce forrage for the horses. And, the prouisions vvhich vvere brought along the riuer Arar, stood him in small steed at that time, forasmuch as the Heluetians had tooke their iourney cleane from the Riuer, and that he would by no meanes forsake them. Cæsar.

The Heduans, putting it off from one day to another, gaue out still it was vpon comming. But, when Cæsar found the matter so long delaied, & that the day of meting out Corne to the souldiers was at hand, calling before him the chiefest Princes of the Heduans, of whom he had great numbers in his Campe, and amongst them, Dinitiacus and Liscus, vvho for that time were the soueraigne Magistrates (vvhich they call Vergobret, being yeerely created, & hauing power of life & death) he did greatly blame them, that he was not supplied with Corne from them, the Enemy beeing so neere, and in so needfull a time, that it could neither be bought for money, nor had out of the fields: especially, when for their sake, and at their request, he had vndertooke that vvarre. Whereat hee was the rather grieued, because he found himselfe forsaken of them.

At length, Liscus, mooued vvith Cæsars speech, discouered (which before hee had kept secret) that there were some of great authority amongst the Commons, and could doe more being priuate persons, then they could do being Magistrates. These, by sedicious and bad speeches, did defer the people from bringing Corne: shewing it better for them, sith they could not attaine to the Empire of Gallia, to vndergoe the soueraigntie of the Galles, then the Romaines: for, they vvere not to doubt, but if the Romaines vanquished the Heluetians, they vvould bereaue the Heduans of their libertie, with the rest of all Gallia. By these men are our deliberations and counsells, or vvhatsoeuer else is done in the Campe, made knowne to the Enemy: neither vvere they able to keepe them in obedience; but knew well withall, what danger hee fell into, by acquainting Cæsar vvith these things; which was the cause he had kept them from him so long.

Cæsar, perceiued that Dumnorix, Dinitiacus brother, was shot at by this speech

of Liſcus: but, foraſmuch as hee would not haue thoſe things handled in the preſence of ſo manie, hee ſpeedilie brake off the Councell, and retaining Liſcus, asked priuatly after thoſe things which he had deliuered in the Aſſembly; wherunto he ſpake more freely and boldly then before. And inquiring ſecretlie of others, he found it to be true, that Dumnorix was of great courage, and ſingularly fauoured for his liberalitie of the Common people: Deſirous of nouelties and changes, and for many yeeres, had kept at a lowe rate, the Taxes and Impoſitions of the Heduans, foraſmuch as no man durſt cõtradict what he would haue done. By which courſes, he had increaſed his priuate eſtate, and got great meanes to be liberall: for, a great number of horſemen, did onely liue vpon his entertainement, and vvere continually about him, beeing not onely powerfull at home, but abroad alſo, amongſt diuers of the neighbour States. And for this cauſe, had maried his Mother to a great Rich man, and of a Noble houſe, in the Country of the Bituriges; himſelfe had tooke a wife of the Heluetians, had matched his ſiſter by his Mother, and others of his kinne, into other States. For that affinity, hee fauoured and wiſhed well to the Heluetians: and on the other ſide, hated the Romaines, and ſpecially Cæſar, of all others; for-that by their comming into Gallia, his power was weakened, and Dinitiacus his brother reſtored to his auncient honour and dignitie. If any miſcaſualtie happened to the Romaines, his hope was to obtaine the Principalitie by the fauour of the Heluetians: where-as the ſoueraigntie of the Romaines, made him not onely deſpaire of the kingdome, but alſo of the fauour, or what other thing ſoeuer he now inioyed. And Cæſar had found out by inquirie, that the beginning of the flight, when the Caualrie was routed, came from Dumnorix, and his horſemen: for, hee commaunded thoſe troopes which the Heduans had ſent to aide Cæſar, and out of that diſorder, the reſt of the Caualrie tooke a fright.

Which things beeing diſcouered, foraſmuch as theſe ſuſpicions were ſeconded with matters of certaintie, in that hee had brought the Heluetians through the confines of the Sequans, had cauſed hoſtages to be giuen on either ſide, and done all thoſe things, not onely without vvarrant from the State, but vvithout acquainting them there-with. And laſtly, in that he was accuſed by the Magiſtrate of the Heduans, hee thought it cauſe ſufficient for him to puniſh him, or to commaund the State to doe iuſtice vpon him. One thing there was which might ſeem to oppugne all this; the ſingular affection of Dinitiacus, his brother, to the people of Rome; the great loue he bare particularly to Cæſar; his loyaltie, iuſtice & temperancie: and therefore he feared, leaſt his puniſhment might any way alienate or offend Dinitiacus ſincere affection. And therefore, before hee did anie thing, hee called Dinitiacus, and putting aſide the ordinarie Interpreters, hee ſpake to him by M. Valerius Procillus, one of the principall men of the Prouince of Gallia, his familiar friend, and whom hee ſpecially truſted in matters of importance, and tooke notice vvhat Dumnorix had vttered in his preſence, at a Councell of the Galles, ſhewing alſo vvhat informations hee had priuately receiued concerning him: and therefore, by way of aduice, deſired, that without any offence to him, either hee himſelfe might call him in queſtion, or the State take ſome courſe in the ſame.

Diniti-

Dinitiacus, imbracing Cæsar, with many teares besought him, not to take anie seuere course vvith his brother; hee knew vvell that all those things vvere true, neither was there any man more grieued thereat then himselfe. For, whereas he had credit and reputation, both at home and amongst other States of Gallia, and his brother beeing of small power by reason of his youth, was by his aide and assistance, growne into fauour and authoritie, hee vsed those meanes as an aduantage, not onely to weaken his authoritie, but to bring him to ruine: And yet neuertheless, he found himselfe ouer-ruled through brotherly affection, and the opinion of the common people. And if Cæsar should take any strict account of these offences, there was no man but vvould thinke, it vvas done vvith his priuitie, considering the place he held in his fauour; vvherevpon, would consequently follow, on his behalfe, a generall alienation, and distaste of all Gallia.

As hee vttered these things, with many other vvords, accompanied vvith teares, Cæsar, taking his right hand, comforted him, and desired him to intreat no further: for, such vvas the respect he had vnto him, that for his sake, and at his request, he forgaue both the iniurie done to the Common-wealth, and the displeasure which he had iustly conceiued for the same. And therupon, called Dumnorix before him, and in the presence of his brother, shewed him wherein he had deserued much blame and reproofe; told him vvhat he had vnderstood, & what the State complained on; aduised him to auoide all occasions of mislike for the future; that which vvas past, hee had forgiuen him, at Dinitiacus his brothers intreatie. Howbeit, he set espialls vpon him, to obserue his courses, that he might be informed what he did, and with whom he conuersed.

The same day, vnderstanding by the Discouerers, that the Enemie was lodged vnder a Hill, about eight miles from his Campe, he sent some to take a viewe of the Hill, and of the ascent from about the same. Which was found, and accordingly reported vnto him to be very easie. In the third vvatch of the night, hee sent avvay T. Labienus the Legat, vvith two legions, and those Guides that knew the vvay; commaunding him to possesse himselfe of the toppe of that Hill. Himselfe, about the fourth vvatch, marched on after the Enemie, the same way they had gone, sending all his horsmen before.

P. Causidius, that was held for a great souldier, first, in the Army of L. Sylla, and afterwards vvith M. Crassus, was sent before, with the Discouerers. At the breaking of the day, when Labienus had gotte the toppe of the hill, and himselfe vvas come within a mile and a halfe of the Heluetian Campe, vvithout any notice to the Enemie, either of his or Labienus approach (as vvas afterwards found by the Captiues) Causidius came runnning as fast as his horse could driue, and told him, that the Hill vvhich Labienus should haue taken, vvas held by the Galles; vvhich hee perceiued plainelie by the Armes and Ensignes of the Heluetians. Whereupon, Cæsar drew his forces to the next Hill, and imbatteled the Armie.

Labienus (according to the directions hee had from Cæsar, not to fight, vnlesse hee saw his forces neere the Enemies Campe, that they might both at the same time assault them from diuers parts at once) vvhen he had tooke the Hill, kept his men from battell, expecting our Armie.

At length, when it was farre in the day, Cæsar vnderstood by the Discouerers, that the Hill was possessed by his Party; as also, that the enemy was dislodged, & that Causidius was so astonished with feare, that he reported to haue seene that which he saw not. The same day, he followed the Enemy, at the distance hee had formerly vsed, and incamped himselfe three miles from them. The day following, forasmuch as the Army was to be paid in Corne within two daies next after, & that he vvas but eighteene miles distant from Bibract, a great and opulent Citty of the Heduans, hee turned aside from the Heluetians, and made towards Bibract.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Places of aduantage in the Romaine warres.

THe getting of this hill, as a place of aduantage, was maruellous important to the happy successe of the battell: for, the aduantage of the place is not onely noted as an especiall cause of easie victorie, throughout this historie; but in all their warres, from the very cradle of their Empire, it cleared their Armies frõ all difficulties, to what extremities soeuer they were put. The first reason may bee in regard of of their Darts & Slings, and especally their Piles; which being a heauy deadly weapon, could not any way bee so auaileable, beeing cast countermont or in a plaine leuell, as when the declinitie and downefall of a swelling banke, did naturally second their violent impression. Neither can the shock at handy-blowes bee any thing so furious (which was a point of great respect in their battels) when the souldiers spent their strength in franchising the iniurie of a rising Mountaine, as when the place by a naturall inclination did further their course.

And to conclude, if the battell succeeded not according to their desire, the fauour of the place afforded them meanes of a strong retreit, in the highest part whereof, they had commonly their Camps well fenced, and fortified against all chaunces. If it be demaunded, whether the vpper ground be of like vse, in regard of our weapons: I answere, that in a skirmish of shotte, I take the aduantage to lie in the lower ground rather then on the hill; for, the pieces being hastily charged, as commonly they are after the first volley, if the bullet chance to lie loose, when the nose of the peece is lower then the breech, it must needes flie at randome, and be altogether vneffectuall: but when the nose shall be raised vpward to the side of a hill, the bullet beeing rammed in with his owne waight, shall flie with greater certaintie and furie; considering the nature of the powder to be such, that the more it is stopt and shut in, the more it seeketh to enlarge his roome, and breaketh forth with greater violence and fury.

Concerning other weapons, I take the vpper ground in the shocke and incounter, to be aduantageous, as well for the sword as the pike, and would deserue as great respect, if the controuersie were decided by these weapons, as sildome times it is.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

BY Cauſidius his demeanour, we ſee that verified which Phyſitions affirme, that Nothing will ſooner carrie our iudgement out of her proper ſeate, then the paſſion of feare: and that amongſt ſouldiers themſelues, whom cuſtome hath made familiarlie acquainted with horror and death, it is able to turne a flock of ſheepe into a ſquadron of Corſelets, & a few canes or Oſiers, into Pikes and Lanciers. Which may ſerue to aduiſe a diſcreet Generall, not eaſily to credit a relation of that nature, when a man of reputation, in ſo perfit a diſcipline, and ſo experienced in the ſeruice of three famous Chiefes, was ſo ſurpriſed with feare, that hee could not diſcerne his friends from his enemies: but I will ſpeake more of this paſſion, in the war with Ariouiſtus.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

IN euery relation throughout the whole courſe of this hiſtorie, the firſt words are commonly theſe, *Re frumentaria comparata*; as the foundation & ſtrength of euery expedition, without which no man can manage a war, according to the true maximes and rules of the Art Military, but muſt be forced to relieue that inconuenience, with the loſſe of many other aduantages of great conſequence. Which gaue occaſion to Gaſpard de Coligni, that famous Admirall of France, amongſt other Oracles of truth, wherwith his mind was maruellouſly inriched, often to vſe this ſaying; that He that wil ſhape that beaſt (meaning war) muſt beginne with the belly. And this rule was diligently obſerued by Cæſar, who beſt knew how to expreſs the true portraiture of that beaſt, in due proportion & liuely reſemblance. *Their maner of victualling*

The order of the Romans was, at the day of meaſuring, to giue corne to euery particular ſouldier, for a certain time, which was cõmonly defined by circumſtances: and by the meaſure which was giuen thẽ, they knew the day of the next paiment; for, euery footman receiued after the rate of a buſhell a weeke, which was thought ſufficient for him and his ſeruant: for, if they had paied thẽ their whole ſtipend in money, it might haue beene waſted in vnneceſſarie expenſes: but by this meanes they were ſure of prouiſion for the time determined; & the ſequell of the war, was prouidently cared for by the Generall.

The Corne being deliuered out, was husbanded, ground with hand-milles, which they caried alwaies with them, & made into haſty cakes, dainty enough for a ſouldiers mouth, by no other but themſelues and their ſeruaunts. Neither could they ſell it or exchange it for bread; for, Saluſt reckoneth this vp amongſt other dishonours of the diſcipline corrupted, that the ſouldiers ſold away their corne, which was giuen thẽ by the Treaſurer, & bought their bread by the day. And this maner of prouiſion had many ſpeciall cõmodities, which are not incident to our cuſtome of victualing: for it is impoſsible, that victualers

ſhould follow an Armie vpon a ſeruice, in the Enemies Countrey, twentie or thirtie daies together, with ſufficient prouiſion for an Armie: And by that meanes, the Generall cannot attend aduantages & fitteſt opportunities, which in tract of time are often offered; but is forced either to hazard the whole, vpon vnequall tearmes, or to ſound an vnwilling retreit.

And whereas the Victualers are for the moſt part voluntarie, reſpecting nothing but their gaine; and the ſouldiers on the other ſide, careleſſe of the morrow, and prodigall of the preſent: in that turbulent mar-market, where the ſeller hath an eye onely to his particular, & the buyer reſpecteth neither the publique good, nor his priuate commoditie, there is nothing to be looked for, but famine and confuſion: Where-as the Romains, by their manner of prouiſion, impoſed the generall care of the publique good vpon the chiefe Commaunder, whoſe dutie it was to prouide ſtore of Corne for his Armie; and the particular care vpon euery priuate ſouldier, whom it eſpecially concerned to ſee, that the allowance which the Common-weale had in plentifull manner giuen him, for his maintenance, might not bee waſted through negligence or prodigalitie: which excellent order, the nature of our victuals will no way admit. Their Prouinces, & the next confederate States, furniſhed their Armies continually with Corne; as it appeareth by this place, that for prouiſion of graine, he depended altogether vpon the Hedui: and, when they were in the Enemies Countrey, in the time of harueſt, the ſouldiers went out to reape and gather Corne, and deliuered it threſhed and cleanſed to the Treaſurer, that it might be kept vntill the day of paiment.

But, to leaue this frugall and prouident manner of prouiſion, as vnpoſsible to be imitated by this age, let vs returne to our hiſtorie, and ſee how the Heluetians were ledde, by a probable errour, to their laſt ouerthrowe.

CHAP. VII.

The Heluetians follow after Cæſar, and ouertake *the Rereward. He imbattaileth his legions vpon the* ſide of a hill: and giueth order for *the Battaile.*

Cæſar.

Hereof the Enemy beeing aduertiſed, by certaine fugitiues of the troope of horſe, commaunded by L. Emilius, preſently; whether it vvere that they thought the Romaines did turne away for feare (and the rather, for that the day before, hauing the aduantage of the vpper ground, they refuſed to fight) or whether they thought to cut them off from prouiſion of Corne, they altered their purpoſe, and turning back againe, beganne to attack our men in the Reare. Which Cæſar perceiuing, hee drew his forces to the next hill, and ſent the Caualrie to ſuſtaine the

the charge of the Enemy: and in the meane time, in the midſt of the hill, made a triple battell, of foure legions of old ſouldiers; and vpon the highest ridge thereof, he placed the two legions which he had lately inrolled in the hither Gallia, together with the aſſociate forces; filling the whole front of the hill with men, and ſtowing the cariages in one place: which he commaunded to be fenced & guarded by thoſe that were in the vppermoſt battalions.

The Heluetians, on the other ſide, conuaied their cariages and impediments into one place; and hauing beaten back Cæſars horſemen, with a thick-thronged Squadron, they put themſelues into a Phalanx, & ſo preſſed vnder the firſt battell of the Romaine legions.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

The manner of their imbattelling.

COncerning the true ſenſe of this triple battell, which Cæſar made vpon the ſide of the hill, I vnderſtand it according to the ancient cuſtome of the Romaines; who in the infancie of their Militarie diſcipline, diuided their Armie into three ſorts of ſouldiers, *Haſtati*, *Principes*, and *Triarij*: for, I omit the *Velites*, as no part of their ſtanding battels; and of theſe they made three ſeuerall battels, from front to back. In the firſt battell were the *Haſtati*, and they poſſeſſed the whole front of the Armie, and were called *Acies prima*. Behind theſe, in a conuenient diſtance, ſtood the *Principes*, in like ſort and order diſpoſed, and were called *Acies ſecunda*: and laſtly, in a like correſpondent diſtance, were the *Triarij* imbattelled, and made *Aciem tertiam*.

By triplex Acies.

Their legion conſiſted of tenne Companies, which they called cohorts, and euerie cohort conſiſted of three ſmall Companies, which they named *Manipuli*: a maniple of the *Haſtati*, a maniple of the *Principes*, and another of the *Triarij*, as I will more particularly ſet downe in the ſecond booke. And as theſe three kinds of ſouldiers were ſeparated by diſtance of place from front to backe: ſo was euery battell diuided into his maniples; and theſe were diuided by little allies and waies, one from another, which were vſed to this purpoſe: The *Haſtati*, beeing in front, did euer begin the battell: & if they found themſelues too weake to repell the enemy, or were happely forced to a retreit, they drew themſelues through theſe allies or diſtances, which were in the ſecond battell, betweene the maniples of the *Principes*, into the ſpace which was betweene the *Principes* and the *Triarij*; and there they reſted themſelues, whil'ſt the Princes tooke their place, and charged the Enemie. Or otherwiſe, if the Commaunders found it needfull, they fild vp thoſe diſtances of the *Principes*: and ſo, vnited with them into one body, they charged the enemy all in groſſe; and then, if they preuailed not, they retired into the ſpaces between the *Triarij*, and ſo they gaue the laſt aſſault, all the three bodies being ioyned all into one.

Now, if we examine by the current of the hiſtory, whether Cæſar obſerued the ſame order and diuiſions in his warres, we ſhal find little or no alteration at all: for, firſt, this *triplex Acies* heere mentioned, was no other thing but the diuiſi-

diuiſion of the *Haſtati*, *Principes* and *Triarÿ*, according to the manner of the firſt inſtitution. And leaſt any man ſhould dreame of that ordinary diuiſion, which is likewiſe threefold, the two cornets and the battell, and in that ſenſe he might ſay to haue made *triplicem Aciem*, let him vnderſtand, that the circumſtances of the diuiſion haue no coherence with that diuiſion: for, in that hee ſaith of the Heluetians. *Succeſſerunt Aciem primam*, preſſed neere the firſt battell or Vangard, hee maketh it cleare that the Armie was diuided into a triple battell from front to backe: for, otherwiſe, hee would haue ſaid, *ſucceſſerint dextrum aut ſiniſtrum cornu, aut mediam Aciem:* for ſo were the partes of that diuiſion tearmed. Againe, in the retrait which the Heluetians made to the hill, when he ſaith that the firſt and ſecond battell followed cloſe vpon the enemy, and the third oppoſed it ſelfe againſt the *Boÿ* and *Tulingi*, & ſtood readie at the foote of the hill, to charge the legions in the flanke and on the backs It is manifeſt, that no other diuiſion can ſo fitly be applied to this circūſtance, as that from front to back.

But that place in the firſt of the Ciuill warres taketh away all ſcruple of controuerſie, where he vſeth the verie ſame tearmes of *prima*, *ſecunda*, and *tertia Acies:* for, beeing to incampe himſelfe neere vnto Afranius, and fearing leaſt his ſouldiers ſhould be interrupted in their work, he cauſed the firſt and ſecond battell to ſtand in Armes, & keepe their diſtance, to the end they might ſhroud & couer the third battell (which was imploied in making a ditch behind them) from the view of the enemy; and this kind of imbattelling, Cæſar obſerued in moſt of his fights: by which it appeareth, that he vſeth the very ſame order and diſcipline for imbattailing, as was inſtituted by the old Romaines.

Concerning the auncient names of *Haſtati*, *Principes*, and *Triarÿ*, which Ramus in his Militia Iulij Cæſaris, vrgeth to be omitted throughout the whole hiſtorie, I grant they are ſildome vſed in theſe Commentaries, in the ſenſe of their firſt inſtitution: for, the *Haſtati*, when the diſcipline was firſt erected, were the youngeſt and pooreſt of the legionarie ſouldiers. The *Principes*, were the luſtie and able bodied men: and the *Triarÿ* the eldeſt, and beſt experienced. But in Cæſars Campe, there was little or no difference either of valour or yeeres, betweene the *Haſtati*, *Principes* or *Triarÿ*; which hee nameth, *Prima*, *Secunda*, and *Tertia Acies:* and therefore, were neuer tearmed by thoſe names, in reſpect of that difference.

Notwithſtanding, in regard of order and degrees of diſcipline, that vertue might be rewarded with honour, and that time might challenge the priuiledge of a more worthy place, the ſaid diſtinctions and tearmes were religiouſly obſerued: for, in the battell with Petreius at Ilerda in Spaine, hee mentioneth the death of Q. Fulginius, *ex primo Haſtato legionis quartæ decimæ:* and in the ouerthrowe at Dyrrachium, he ſaith, that The Eagle-bearer being grieuouſly wounded, commended the ſaferie of his Enſigne to the horſemen, all the Centurions of the firſt Cohort beeing ſlaine, *præter principem Priorem.* And for the *Triarÿ*, there is no tearme more frequent in Cæſar, then *Primipilus*; which name, by the rules of the ancient diſcipline, but to the chiefeſt Centurion of the firſt maniple of the *Triarÿ*: whereby it appeareth, that the maniples

Lib. 1. de bello Ciuili.

Lib. 3. de bello Ciuili.

ples kept the ſame names in regard of a neceſſary diſtinction, although peraduenture the *Haſtati* were as good ſouldiers, as either the *Principes* or the *Triarij*.

As touching the ſpaces betweene the maniples, whereinto the firſt battaile did retire it ſelfe if occaſion vrged them, I neuer found any mention of them in Cæſar. Excepting once heere in England, where, in a skirmiſh the Brittaines ſo vrged the court of guard, which kept watch before the Romaine Camp, that Cæſar ſent out two other Cohorts to ſuccour them; who making diſtance betweene them as they ſtood, the court of guard retired it ſelfe in ſafetie, through that ſpace into the Campe: otherwiſe, we neuer find that the firſt battell made any retreit into the allies, between the maniples of the ſecond battell; but when it failed in any part, the ſecond and third went preſently to ſecond them: as appeareth in the battell following with Ariouiſtus and in diuers others.

Concerning the vſe of this triple battell, what can be ſaid more then Lipſius hath done? where he laieth open the particular commodities thereof, as farre forth as a ſpeculatiue iudgement can diſcerne of things ſo far remote from the vſe of this age, which neuer imitateth this triple battell, but onely in a march: for, then commonly they make three companies; a vangard, a battell, and a reareward: but in imbattelling, they draw theſe three Companies all in front, making two cornets and the battell, without any other troops to ſecond them. But let this ſuffice concerning Cæſar his manner of imbattelling, and his *triplex Acies*, vntill I come to the ſecond booke; where I will handle more particularly the parts of a legion, and the commoditie of their ſmall battalions.

Lib. 5. de militia Romana

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THe Macedonian Phalanx, is deſcribed by Polybius, to bee a ſquare battell of Pikemen, conſiſting of ſixteene in flanke, and fiue hundred in front; the ſouldiers ſtanding ſo cloſe together, that the pikes of the fift ranke, were extended three foote beyond the front of the battell: the reſt, whoſe pikes were not ſeruiceable, by reaſon of their diſtance from the front, couched them vpon the ſhoulders of thoſe that ſtood before them; and ſo locking them in together in file, preſſed forward to hold vp the ſway or giuing backe of the former ranks, and ſo to make the aſſault more violent and vnreſiſtable.

A Phalanx deſcribed.

The Grecians were very skilfull in this part of the Art Militarie, which containeth order and diſpoſition in imbattelling: for they maintained publique profeſſors, whom they called *Tactici*, to teach & inſtruct their youth the practiſe and Art of all formes conuenient for that purpoſe. And theſe *Tactici*, found by experience, that ſixteene in flanke, ſo ordered as they were in a Phalanx, were able to beare any ſhock, how violent ſo-euer it charged vpon them: which number of ſixteene, they made to conſiſt of foure doubles: as firſt vnitie maketh no order, for order conſiſteth in number & pluralitie; but vnitie doubled, maketh two, the leaſt of all orders, and this is the double: which doubled againe,

749b

againe, maketh the ſecond order, of foure ſouldiers in a file, which doubled the third time, maketh eight, and this doubled, maketh 16, which is the fourth doubling from a vnite; and in it they ſtaied, as in an abſolute number and ſquare, whoſe roote is foure the Quadruple, in regard of both the extreames: for euery one of theſe places, the *Tactici* had ſeuerall names, by which they were diſtinctly knowne. But the particular deſcription requireth a larger diſcourſe, then can be comprehended in theſe ſhort obſeruations. Hee that deſireth further knowledge of them, may read Elianus, that liued in the time of Adrian the Emperour: and Arianus in his hiſtorie of Alexander the great: with Mauritius, and Leo, Imperator; where he ſhall haue the diuiſions of *Tetraphalangia diphalangia, Phalangia* vnto a vnite, with all the diſcipline of the Grecians. The chiefeſt thing to be obſerued, is, that the Grecians, hauing ſuch skil in imbattelling, preferd a Phalanx before all other formes whatſoeuer; either becauſe the figure in it ſelfe was very ſtrong: or otherwiſe, in regard that it fitted beſt their weapons, which were long pikes and targets. But, whether Cæſar tearmed the battell of the Heluetians a Phalanx, in regard of their thicke manner of imbattailing onely, or otherwiſe, foraſmuch as beſides the forme, they vſed the naturall weapon of a Phalanx, which was the pike, it remaineth doubtfull. Brancatio, in his diſcourſes vpon this place, maketh it no cõtrouerſie, but that euery ſouldier caried a pike and a target. The target is particularly named in this hiſtorie: but it cannot ſo eaſily be gathered by the ſame, that their offenſiue weapons were pikes. In the fight at the baggage it is ſaid, that manie of the legionarie ſouldiers were wounded through the cart-wheeles, with *tragulas* and *materas*, which are commonly interpreted Speares and Iauelins: and I take them to be weapons longer then common darts; but whether they were ſo long as the Sariſſas of the Macedonians, I cannot tell. Howſoeuer; this is certaine, that the Heluetians haue euer been reputed for the true *Phalangitæ*, next vnto the Macedonians; and that in their thicke and cloſe imbattailing, they failed not at this time of the forme of a Phalanx: for, they roofed it ſo thick with targets, that Cæſar ſaith they were ſore troubled, becauſe manie of their targets were faſtened and tied together, with piles darted through thẽ. Which argueth, that their Phalanx was very thicke thronged, whatſoeuer their weapon was.

CHAP. VIII.

Cæſar ſendeth away al the horſes of eaſe; exhorteth his men; and beginneth the battell.

Cæſar, to take away all hope of ſafety by flight, firſt cauſed his own & then all the priuate horſes of eaſe to be caried out of ſight; and ſo vſing ſome motiues of courage, began the battell. The ſouldiers caſting their Piles, with the aduantage of the hill, did eaſily breake the Heluetians Phalanx, & then with their ſwords betook themſelues to a furious cloſe.

THE

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THe ancient Sages found it neceſſary, to a faithfull and ſerious execution of ſuch an action, to prepare the minds of their men with words of encouragement, and to take away all ſcruple out of their conceits, either of the vnlawfulneſſe of the cauſe, or diſaduantage againſt the Enemie: for, if at any time that ſaying be true, that *Oratio plus poteſt quam pecunia*, it is here more powerfull and of greater effect. For, a donatiue or liberanca, can but procure a mercenarie indeauour, euer yielding to a better offer, and doe oftentimes breed a ſuſpicion of wrong, euen amongſt thoſe that are willingly inriched with them; and ſo maketh them ſlack to diſcharge their ſeruice with loyaltie: yea, oftentimes of friends to become enemies. But inaſmuch as ſpeech diſcloſeth the ſecrets of the ſoule, and diſcouereth the intent and drift of euery action, a few good words laying open the iniurie which is offered to innocencie, how equity is controlled with wrong, and iuſtice controlled by iniquitie (for, it is neceſſary that a Cõmander approue his Cauſe, and ſettle an opinion of right in the mind of his ſouldiers, as it is eaſie to make that ſeeme probable which ſo many offer to defend with their bloud; when indeed euery man relieth vpon anothers knowledge, and reſpecteth nothing leſſe the right) a few good words I ſay, will ſo ſtirre vp their minds in the feruentneſſe of the cauſe, that euery man will take himſelfe particularly ingaged in the action by the title of Equitie; and the rather, for that it iumpeth with the neceſsity of their condition. For, men are willing to doe well, when well-dooing agreeth with that they would doe: otherwiſe, the Act may formerly be effected, but the mind neuer approueth it by aſſent.

Speeches of incouragement before they gaue battell.

And this manner of exhortation or ſpeech of incouragement, was neuer omitted by Cæſar in any conflict mentioned in this hiſtorie: but hee ſtill vſed it as a neceſsary inſtrument to ſet vertue on foote, and the onely meanes to ſtir vp alacritie. Or if it happened that his men were at any time diſcouraged by diſaſter or croſſe accident, as they were at Gergobia, & at the two ouerthrowes he had at Dyrrachium; he neuer would aduenture to giue battell, vntill he had incouraged them againe, and confirmed their minds in valour and reſolution. But this age hath put on ſo ſcornefull a humor, that it cannot heare a ſpeech in this key, ſound it neuer ſo grauely, without ſcoffing and deriſion: and on the other ſide diſcontinuance of ſo neceſſarie a part, hath bred at length ſuch an *inutilem pudorem* in our chiefe Commanders, that they had rather loſe the gaine of a great aduantage, then buy it with words to be deliuered in publique.

Lib. 7. de bello Gallico.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

IN this Chapter we may further obſerue the violence of the Romane pile, which being a heauie deadly weapon, could hardly be fruſtrated with any reſiſtance, and in that reſpect was very proper and effectuall againſt a Phalanx, or any other thicke and cloſe battell, or where-

The Romane Pile deſcribed.

whereſoeuer elſe, the ſtroke was certaine, or could hardly deceiue the aime of the caſter: for, in ſuch incounters, it ſo galled the enemy, that they were neither able to keep their order, nor anſwere the aſſault with a reſiſting counterbuffe. By which it appeareth, that the onely remedie againſt the Pile was, to make the ranks thinne; allowing to euery ſouldiour a large podiſme or place to ſtand in, that ſo the ſtroke might of it ſelfe fall without hurt, or by fore-ſight bee preuented; as it ſhall plainely appeare by the ſequell of this hiſtorie, which I will not omit to note, as the places ſhal offer themſelues to the examination of this diſcourſe.

But as touching the Pile, which is ſo often mentioned in the Romaine hiſtorie, Polybius deſcribeth it in this maner; A Pile, ſaith he, is a caſting weapon, the ſtaffe whereof is almoſt three cubites long, and it hath *palmarem diametrum*, a hand breadth in thickneſs. The ſtaues were armed with a head of iron, equall in length to the ſtaffe it ſelfe: But in that ſort, that halfe the head was faſtened vp to the middle of the ſtaffe, with plates of iron, like the head of a Halbert: and the other halfe ſtucke out at the end of the ſtaffe, like a pike, containing a fingers breadth in thickneſſe, and ſo decreaſing leſſe and leſſe, vnto the point, which was barbed. This head was ſo ſlender toward the point, that the waight of the ſtaffe would bend it as it ſtucke, as appeareth in this battell of the Heluetians. This weapon was peculiar to the Romans, and was called *Pilum*, as Varro noteth of *Pilum* a Peſtell, *quod Hoſtes feriret vt pilum*. Lipſius, finding that *Palmarem diametrum*, was too great a thickneſſe to be managed by any mans hand, interpreteth it to be foure inches in circuit, if the ſtaffe were either round or ſquare, for they had of both ſorts, and ſo hee maketh it very manageable; but nothing anſwerable to the deſcription, giuen by Polybius, either in forme or waight.

Lib. 3. de militia Romana

Patricius, in his Paralleli, maketh the ſtaffe to haue *palmarem diametrum* in the butte end, but the reſt of the ſtaffe he maketh to decreaſe taper-wiſe, vnto the head of iron, where it hath the thickneſſe of a mans finger; and ſo it anſwereth both in forme and waight to a Peſtell, as may be ſeene by the figure, and I take it to bee the meaning of Polybius. Patricius in that place ſetteth downe foure diſcommodities of the Pile. Firſt, a furious and hot ſpirited enemie will eaſily preuent the darting of the Pile, with a nimble and ſpeedy cloſe: And ſo wee read, that in the battell which Cæſar had with Ariouiſtus, the Germaines came ſo violently vpon them, that the ſouldiers caſt away their piles, and betooke them to their ſwords. And likewiſe, in that woorthy battell betweene Cateline and Marcus Petreius, they caſt away their piles on either part. The ſecond diſcommoditie was, that the piles being ſo heauie, could not be caſt anie diſtance; but were onely ſeruiceable at hand. Thirdly, they could not bee caſt with any aime, or as they ſay, point blanke. And laſtly, the ſouldiers were to take aduantage of ground backward when they threw them: which might eaſily diſorder their troopes, if they were not very well experienced.

Lib. 5.

Saluſt.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THe laſt thing which I obſerue in this ſpecialitie, is, that the legionarie ſouldiers had no other offenſiue weapon, but one pile or two at the moſt, and their ſwords. By which it may bee gathered, that all their victories came by buckling at handy-blowes; for, they came alwaies ſo neere before they caſt their pile, that they left themſelues no more time then might conueniently ſerue them to draw their ſwords: neither would their Armes of defence, which was compleat, beſides a large target which they caried on their left arme, ſuffer them to make any long purſuit, or continued chaſe, whenſoeuer a light armed enemy did make any ſpeedie retrait; as will more plainly appeare by that which followeth.

CHAP. IX.

The Heluetians, fainting in the battell, retire to a *Hill: the Romans follow after, and the* battell is continued.

(*.*)

IT vvas a great hinderance to the Galles in their fight, that manie of their Targets vvere ſtrooke through, and tied together vvith one fall of a pile: for, ſo it happened, that it could neither be pulled out by reaſon of the bowing of the Iron, nor could they vſe their left hand for the defence of themſelues. Whereby it fell out, that many of them (after a vvearyſome toile) did caſt away their targets, and fought naked, and vnarmed. At length, fainting vvith wounds, they began to giue place, and retraited to a Hill a mile off. Caſar.

The Hill beeing taken, and the Legions following on to driue them frõ thence, the Boij and Tulingi, to the number of fifteene thouſand, beeing in the Reare of the Enemy, to guard the lagge of their Army, ſetting on our men, as they vvere in purſuit of the reſt, did charge them vpon the open ſide, and beganne to incloſe them about: which, the Heluetians, that had got the Hill, perceiuing, beganne againe to fal vpon our men, & renewed the battell. The Romaines diuiding themſelues, turned their Enſignes two vvaies; the firſt and ſecond Armie fought againſt the Heluetians that returned from the Hill, and the third battell tooke charge of them that ſtood ready to incloſe them about. And heere the fight vvas doubtfull and furious for a long time; vntill at length they were no longer able to indure the violence of the legionarie ſouldiers: and ſo one part betooke themſelues as at the firſt, to the Hill; and the other, to the place where their Carts and baggage were lodged.

And hitherto there vvas not one man ſeene to haue turned his backe in all this conflict; although the fight continued from the ſeauenth houre vntill the euening.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

The Enſignes of the Romaines.

CONcerning the Enſignes of the Romaines; wee are to vnderſtand that the chiefeſt Enſigne of euery Legion, was an Eagle: which alwaies attended vpon the Primipile or chiefe Centurion of the ſaid Legion. The Enſigne of a Maniple was, either a Hand or a Dragon, a Woolfe or a Sphinx; as it appeareth (beſides the teſtimonie of hiſtorie) by the Columne of Traiane in Rome, wherein the Enſignes are figured, vvith ſuch purtraitures: ſo that theſe Enſignes, reſembling the proportions of liuing creatures, had their fore-parts alwaies caried that way which the legions were to march, or where they were to fight. And therefore in this hiſtory, by the aſpect and carying of the Enſignes, the front of the Armie was commonly noted: as in this place it is ſaid, that the Enſignes of the firſt and ſecond battell, were caried towards the hill, whither the Heluetians had made their retrait; & the Enſignes of the third battell looked another way, towards the *Boij* and *Tulingi*, which ſtood on the foote of the hill. By which is ſignified, how the legions were diuided to reſiſt the brunt of the double incounter.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

The diuiſion of their day.

CONcerning the time of the day: wee are to vnderſtand, that the Romaines vſed not the ſame diuiſion of the day as we commonlie doe: for, they diuided their artificiall (which is the ſpace betweene ſunne riſing and ſetting) into twelue equall parts, which the Aſtronomers called vnequall or planetarie houres. The firſt houre of the day beganne alwaies at ſunne riſing; the ſixt houre was alwaies high noone; and the twelfth houre was ſunne ſetting. And, as the day wexed longer or ſhorter, ſo theſe houres were either greater or leſſe: neither did they agree with equall or equinoctiall houres, ſuch as are now vſed, but onely at the *Aequinoctium*: ſo that by this manner of reckoning, *ab hora ſeptima ad veſperum*, is meant, the battell beganne about one of the clocke, according to our Computation, & continued vntill the euening. The like we muſt vnderſtand, throughout this whole hiſtorie, as often as there is mention made of the circumſtance of time.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

The Heluetians continue their fight at the cariages: but at length they left the field, and marched towards Langiers.

(·.·)

IN like manner, the fight was kept on foote at the cariages, vntill it was farre in the night; the place beeing fortified vvith Cartes in ſteed of a Rampier: and the Enemy caſting their vveapons from the vpper ground, and vvith darts and Iauelins, vnder the vvaggons, and from between the wheeles, did vvound and gall many of our men. After a long conflict, our ſouldiers tooke their cariages and their Campe: vvherein Orgetorix daughter, and one of his ſonnes vvere taken. There vvere ſaued out of that battell, about one hundred and thirtie thouſand perſons; vvho marching continually all that night, and making no ſtay in any place, came the fourth day into the confines of the Lingones: for, by reaſon of the ſouldiers hurts, and the buriall of the ſlaine, wherein there was ſpent three daies, there vvas no purſuit made after them. Caſar. Langres.

OBSERVATION.

IF we conſider the nature of the action, and looke into the true cauſe of their ouerthrow, as farre as the right ſenſe of the hiſtorie ſhall direct our iudgement, wee ſhall find valour not to be wanting in the Heluetians, but rather ſuperlatiuely abounding in the Romans. For, that vehement opinion of their valiancie and manhood, which caried them out of the ſtreights of the Country, to ſeek larger fortunes in other kingdoms, was not ſo abated with the loſſe of the fourth part of their Hoſt at the riuer Arar; nor with the terrible furie of thoſe veteran legions: but it yielded this effect, which Cæſar in his eſtimate of valour thought memorable, that for fiue houres ſpace or more, there was not one man ſeene to haue turned his backe. Their maner of imbattailing, had not the Romaines been the enemie, was vnreſiſtable. For, beeing caſt into a Phalanx, which in the Plaines of Aſia had made Alexander the great and the Macedonians famous, they did as farre ſurpaſſe any other forme of imbattelling (ſuppoſing that the conueniencie of the place did fit that diſpoſition) wherein the ſtrength of the whole is diuided into many particulars, as the violence of a great body exceedeth the force & motion of his parts, when it is diuided into ſmaller cantons. For, as in a phalanx, many particular ſouldiers are by a cloſe & cõpact order incorporated into one entire body: ſo their ſeuerall vertues are gathered into one head, & are as parts vnited into one general force; which eaſily ſwaloweth vp the ability of many other leſ-

quantities, into which a greater ſtrength is equally diuided.

The aduantage of the place which they got by retrait,& the double charge wherewith they ingaged the Romaines, both in front and flank, was able in an indifferent conflict,to haue made Fortune fugitiue, and beare armes on their ſide: or at the leaſt, ſo to haue ſteemed the ſwelling tide of victorie, which carried the Romaines ſo violently in the chaſe, that they might haue beene equall ſharers in the honor of the day; had it not followed from an Ocean of valour, whoſe courſe could not be hindered with any ſtops and oppoſitions, vntill it came to that height, which true valour and vnexampled reſolution affected. And yet the height of this courage, could not ſo allay the heat of the Heluetians furie; but it brake forth into dangerous flames, when it came to the place where their cariages were laid, and coſt much bloud and many mens liues before they quitted the place: for, they fought with that ſpirit and induſtrie, as though they meant to make triall,whether their fortune would proue no better in the night then it had done in the day.

The ouerthrowe of the Tigurine Canton at the riuer Arar, proceeded rather from want of good directions (which is the leſſe to be maruelled at, conſidering they had no chiefe Commaunder as wee read of) then from any defect of valour: for, the rules of Militarie gouernment, require eſpeciall care in paſſing ouer a water; for, then eſpecially, an Armie is in greateſt danger, when it is diſordered and diuided. And therefore the Romaines atchiued this victorie by the horrible vigilancy (as Tully calleth it) of their Cõmander: who alwaies watched *opportunitates rei bene gerendæ*,as neceſſary and ſpeedy meanes to ouercome in all his warres.

Periculũ ſemper ab hoſtibus grauiſſimũ ſuſtinet diuiſus & inordinatus exercitus.

CHAP. XI.

Cæſar, after three daies reſpite, followeth after the *Heluetians: he taketh them to mercy,and* ſendeth them backe againe to the Countrey.

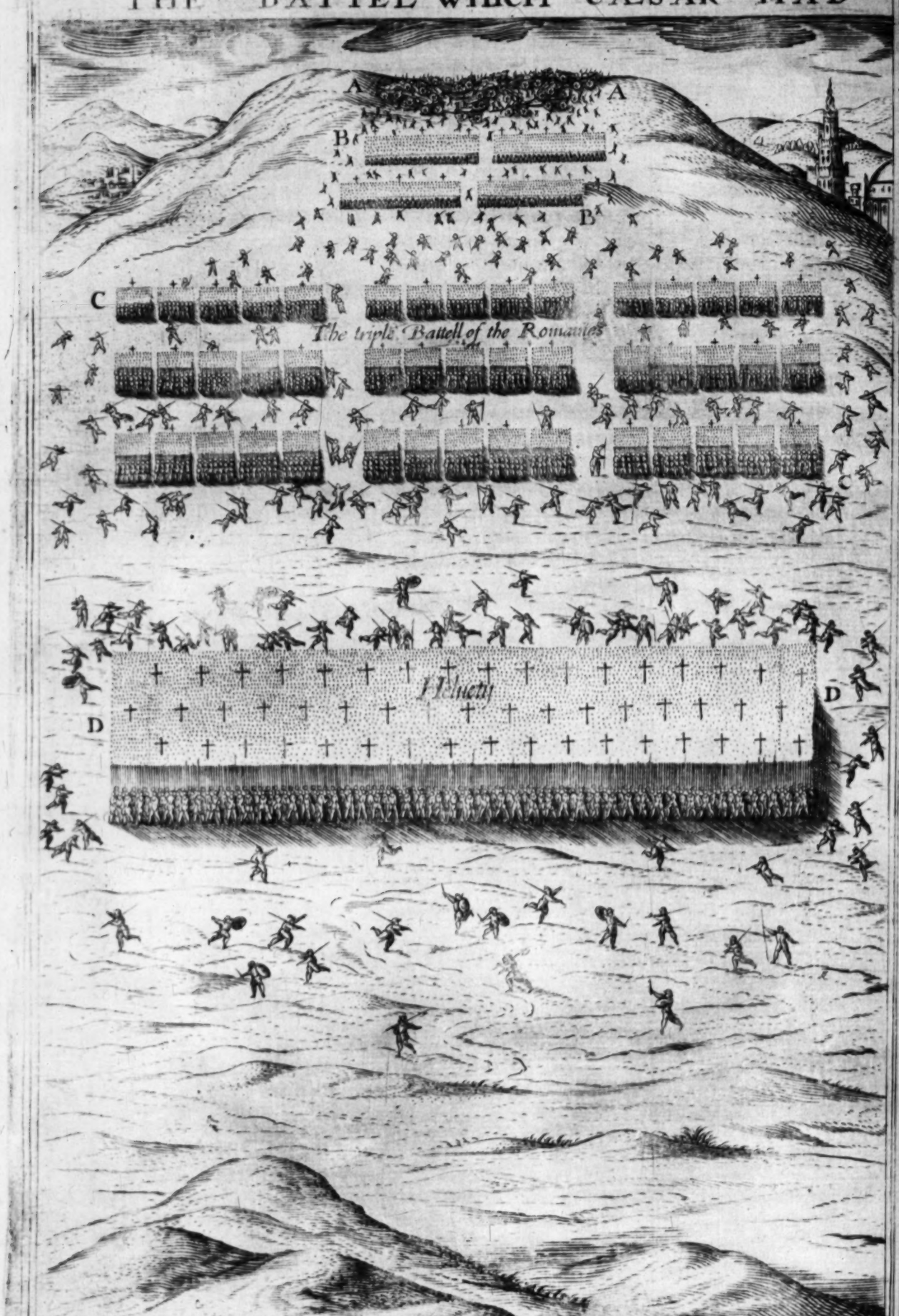
Cæſar.

Cæſar ſent Letters and Meſſengers to the Lingones, forbidding to ſupply them, either vvith Corne, or any other thing; vvhich if they did, hee vvould eſteeme of them as of the Heluetians. Himſelfe, after three daies reſpite, followed after vvith all his forces. The Heluetians, preſſed with the want of all neceſſarie prouiſions, ſent Commiſſioners vnto him, to treat of their reddition. Who, meeting him on the vvay, caſt themſelues at his feete; and vvith humble vvords and teares, deſired Peace. Beeing commaunded to attend in the place they then were, they accordingly obaied. Cæſar,being come vp vnto them, required hoſtages, together vvith their Armes and ſeruants; as alſo the fugitiues that vvere fledde vnto them.

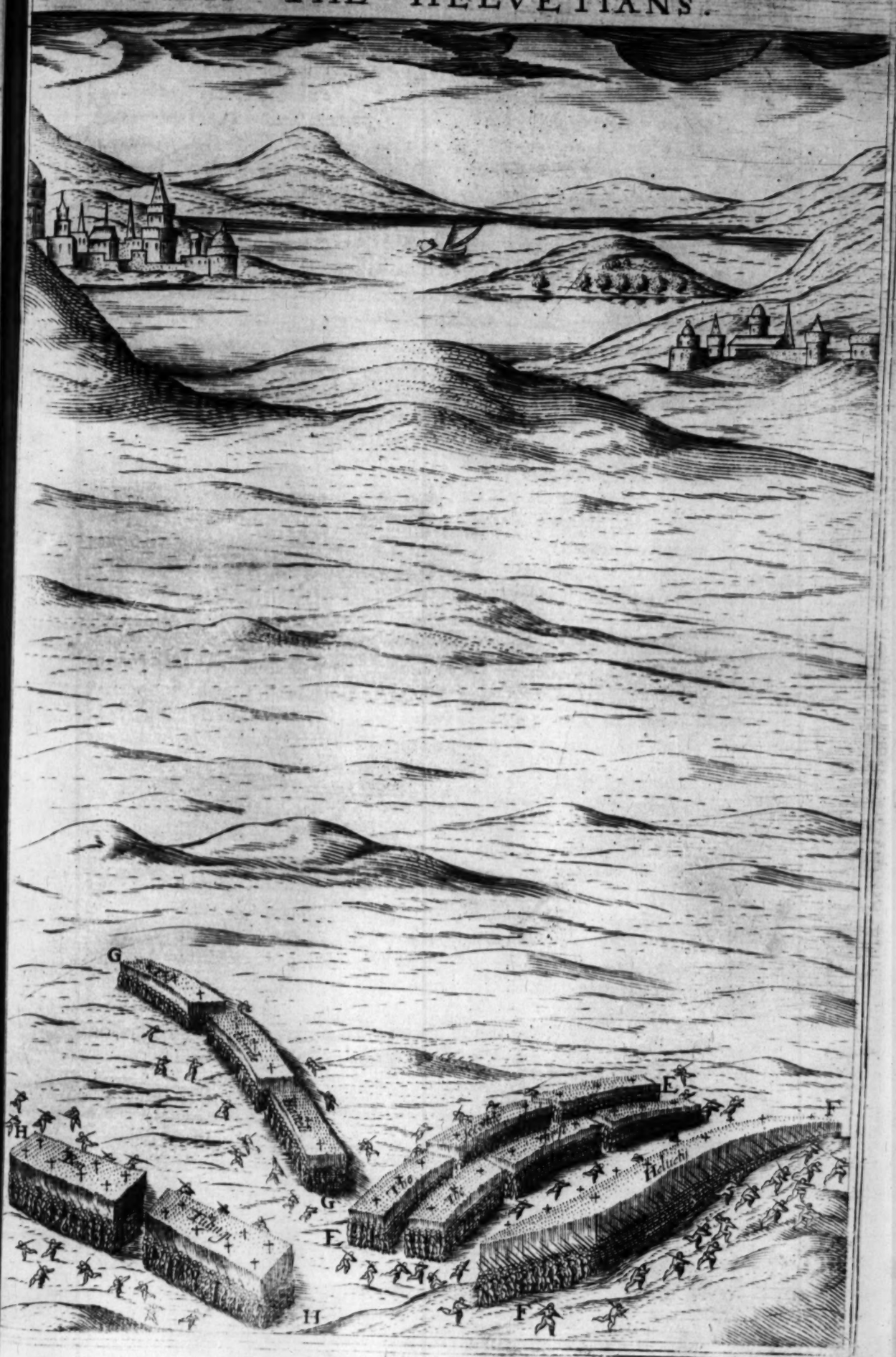
While

7491b

THE BATTEL WHICH CÆSAR HAD



WITH THE HELVETIANS.



749b

While thoſe things vvere ſought out, and brought, in the night time, ſix thouſand men or there-abouts, of the Canton, called Verbigene, *vvhether mooued through feare of beeing executed, after their Armes were giuen vp, or induced with hope of eſcuping (as thinking that amongſt ſuch a multitude of people, that were there to be rendred, their flight ſhould not be miſſed, or at leaſt vvould be concealed) did in the beginning of the night, leaue the Heluetian Camp, & made towards the Rhene, and the confines of the Germaines.*

Cæſar, vnderſtanding through whoſe territories they paſſed, commaunded them to ſeeke them out, and bring them back againe, if they would be blameleſſe in that behalfe: And being brought back, dealt with them as enemies. All the reſt, after Hoſtages, Armes and fugitiues were giuen in, hee receiued to mercie; and commaunded the Heluetians, Tulinges, and Latobrigs, to returne into their Country from whence they came. And foraſmuch, as hauing loſt all their prouiſion of Corne, there remained nothing at home to ſatisfie hunger, hee gaue order to the Allobroges to ſupply them with Corne; and willed the Heluetians to reedifie their Townes and Citties, that they had before deſtroied & forſaken. Which he did ſpecially for this cauſe; that the Germaines inhabiting beyond the Rhene, might not be inuited vvith the richneſſe of that ſoile, to ſeate themſelues ſo neer neighbours to the Prouince of Gallia, and the Allobroges. The Boïj, at the mediation of the Heduans, as knowing them to be men of great valour, were permitted to dwell in their Country; to whom they gaue lands and poſſeſsions, and receiued them into the ſame liberties and immunities, as they themſelues inioyed.

In the Heluetian Campe was found a Liſt, or Regiſter, vvrit in Greeke, and brought to Cæſar, containing by pole, the vvhole number that left their Country, how many of them were able to beare Armes: & in like maner, the boies, old men and women, were inrolled apart by themſelues. The ſummary wherof was, that the whole number of the Heluetians, amounted to 263 thouſand, the Tulinges, to 36 thouſand, the Latobriges to 14, the Rauracks to 23, the Boïj to 32. Of theſe there were that bare Armes, 192 thouſand. The totall of all, vvere 368 thouſand. A view being taken by Cæſars appointment, of thoſe that returned home, there were found 110 thouſand.

OBSERVATION.

THe directions concerning their rendry & returne, were very ſound, and of good conſequence. For firſt, in that he cõmanded them to attend his comming, in the place where they were, hee tooke away all motions of new trouble, which often remoues might haue cauſed, by the opportunity of ſome accident which might haue happened: aſſuring himſelfe, that their aboad in that place would increaſe their miſeries, and conſequently ripen that deſire of peace which they made ſhew of; cõſidering that the Lingones, in whoſe territories they were, durſt not for feare of Cæſars diſpleaſure, furniſh them with any neceſſaries in that extremitie. Touching the ſecuritie, which the Romaines required, of the loyaltie of ſuch people as they conquered; their maner was to take as hoſtages, a ſufficient number of the men

children of the chiefeſt men of that Nation: whoſe liues depended vpon their Parents fidelitie, and ended with the firſt ſuſpicion of their rebellion. Which cuſtome, beſides the preſent good, promiſed the like or better ſecuritie to the next age; when as thoſe children by conuerſation and acquaintance ſhould be ſo affected to the Romaine Empire, that returning to their own country, their actions might rather tend to the aduauncement thereof, then any way be preiudiciall to the ſame. And, leaſt the loue of libertie and freedome, ſhould preuaile more with them, then that affection which Nature had inioyned them to beare to their children; he did what hee could to take away the meanes and inſtruments of their rebellion, by cauſing them to deliuer vp ſuch Armes & weapons as were there preſent: and ſo to become ſutable to that petition of peace which they had made.

The ſumme of all is this; he corrected the inſolencie of a furious people, and reduced them to a feeling of their owne madneſſe. He kept them from ſacking the poſſeſsions of many thouſands, in the continent of Gallia; and ſent them backe againe to continue their name and Nation, in the place where they firſt inhabited; which continueth vnto this day. And thus we ſee, that there is no humour ſo head-ſtrong, nor ſo backt with ſtrength of circumſtances, but it may meete with a remedie to qualifie the inſolencie thereof, and make it ſubiect to correction and controlement.

CHAP. XII.

The States of Gallia congratulate Cæſars victorie: *they call a councell, and diſcouer their inward* griefe, concerning Ariouiſtus and *his forces.*

Cæſar. *THe Heluetian warre beeing thus ended, the Princes and chiefe men of all the States of Gallia, came to Cæſar, to congratulate the happineſſe of this victorie; inſomuch as they vvell vnderſtood, that albeit the people of Rome, had by the courſe of this warre reuenged the iniuries vvhich heere-to-fore they had done vnto them: yet neuertheleſſe, the iſſue thereof did redound no leſſe profitable to the peace of Gallia, then to the Romaine Empire; foraſmuch as the Heluetians, left their houſes and Country, abounding with all plenty and proſperitie, for no other purpoſe, but to inuade the vvhole Country of Gallia, & to bring it in ſubiection to themſelues; and, chuſing out of that large Continent, ſome fitte, and fruitefull place of habitation, to make the reſt of the States their Tributaries: And required further, that with his good leaue they might call a generall aſſembly at a day prefixed, of all the States of Gallia, foraſmuch as they had matters of great importance to be handled, which they deſired (with a common conſent)*

to

to preferre to his consideration. Which beeing graunted, and the day of meeting appointed, they bound themselues by oath, not to reueale the causes of their assembly, but to such as should be designed by common Councell.

The Parlement beeing broken vp, the same Princes returned to Cæsar, and desired that they might in secret treat vvith him, of the safety of themselues, & all the rest: vvhich beeing granted, cast themselues in lamentable manner at his feete, contending vvith as great earnestnes, that those things vvhich they deliuered, might not be reuealed, as they did to haue their petition graunted: forasmuch as they saw, that the discouerie of such declarations as they propounded, would necessarily pull vpon them most grieuous afflictions.

Dinitiacus the Heduan, in the name of the rest, deliuered; that Gallia was diuided into two factions: the Hedui were the head of the one, and the Auerni of the other. These two States, contending many yeeres for the principalitie, the Auerni, with the Sequans their Clients, hired the Germaines to take their part; of whom, at first, there passed ouer the Rhene some fifteene thousand: but afterwards, these barbarous people, hauing tasted the plentie & ciuilitie of the Galles, drew-ouer many more, that now there were no lesse then one hundred & twentie thousand. With these, the Hedui & their Clients, had once or oftener fought; but the successe sorted to their owne calamitie, & the vtter ouerthrowe of their Nobilitie and Senate: vvith which losses, they were so broken and decaied, that where-as heeretofore, as well by their owne credit, as by the fauour of the people of Rome, they strooke a great stroake throughout all Gallia, they vvere now driuen to deliuer the chiefest of their State, as pledges to the Sequans, and to binde themselues by oath, neuer to seeke their release or freedome, nor to implore the aide of the people of Rome, nor to seeke meanes to free themselues from their soueraignty; onely himselfe, of all the Heduans, could not be brought to take that oath, or to giue his children as hostages: for which cause he fled to Rome, and besought helpe of the Senate, beeing no way obliged to the contrary, either by oath or hostages.

But it so fell out, that the victorie became more grieuous to the Sequans then to the Heduans; for-that Ariouistus, king of the Germaines, was planted in their territories: and beeing alreadie possest of a third part of their Country, vvhich vvas the best part of all Gallia, did now require the Sequans to forgoe another third part, for-that a few months before, there vvere come vnto him twentie-foure thousand Harudes, to whom lands and possessions vvere to bee allotted. Whereby it vvould come to passe within a few yeeres, that all the Galles vvould be driuen out of their dwellings, and all the Germaines vvould come ouer the Rhene; for, there was no comparison betweene Gallia and Germanie, either in richnesse of soile or fashion of life.

Concerning Ariouistus, after he had once defeated the Galles in a battell, neer Amagetobrig, he caried himselfe very cruelly, and insolently, requiring the children of all the Nobility for hostages, & shewing strange examples of torture vpon them. If any thing vvere done, not according to his commaund or desire, hee would easilie shew himselfe to be a barbarous, fierce and hasty man; whose tyrannie they could no longer indure: and vnlesse there were help to be found in Cæsar

and

and the people of Rome, all the Galles muſt as the Heluetians did, forſake their Countrey, and ſeeke new houſes, and ſeates of habitation, farre remote from the Germaines, and try their fortunes, what-euer befell them. If theſe things ſhould happely be diſcouered to Arioviſtus, he would doubtleſſe take a ſeuere reuenge of all the pledges in his cuſtodie. Cæſar might by his owne authority, or the preſence of his Armie, or by the renowne of his late victory, or by the countenaunce of the people of Rome, keepe the Germaines from tranſporting any more Colonies into Gallia, and defend it from the iniuries of Arioviſtus. This ſpeech beeing deliuered by Dinitiacus, all that were preſent, vvith much weeping beſought Cæſar to giue them reliefe.

Cæſar obſerued, that onely the Sequans of all the reſt, did no ſuch matter, or were ſo affected as the others vvere; but with their heads hanging downe, looked mournefully vpon the ground: and wondering at it, asked them the cauſe thereof. To vvhich they made no reply, but ſtood ſilent, with the ſame countenaunce of ſorow. And hauing oftentimes iterated his demaund, without gaining any word of aunſwere; Dinitiacus the Heduan, replied, that the ſtate of the Sequans, was heerein more miſerable and grieuous then the reſt; that they of all others, durſt not complaine, or implore aide, although it were in ſecret: as hauing before their eyes the crueltie of Arioviſtus being abſent, no leſſe then if he were preſent. And the rather, for that other men had ſafe meanes of flying away: but the Sequans, hauing receiued Arioviſtus into their Country, and made him Maiſter of their townes, were neceſſarily to vndergoe all miſeries.

Theſe things being knowne, Cæſar incouraged the Galles with good vvords, and promſed them to haue a care of that matter, as hauing great hope, that by his meanes and power, Arioviſtus ſhould bee forced to offer no further iniuries. And thereupon diſmiſſed the Councell.

OBSERVATIONS.

IN this relation, there are diuers points woorthily recommended to the diſcretion of ſuch, as are willing to bee directed by other mens miſaduentures. As firſt, into what extremities ambition doth driue her thirſty fauourites, by ſuppreſsing the better faculties of the ſoule, and ſetting ſuch vnbridled motions on foote, as cary men headlong into moſt deſperate attempts. For, as it had deſerued commendation in either faction, ſo to haue caried their emulation, that by their owne meanes & ſtrength applied to the rule of good gouerment, their authoritie might wholly haue ſwaied the inclination of the weaker ſtates: ſo was it moſt odious in the Sequani, to call in forraine forces, to ſatisfie the appetite of their vntempered humor; and in the end, were accordingly rewarded.

Secondly, it appeareth how dangerous a thing it is, to make a ſtranger a ſtickler in a quarrell which ciuill diſſenſion hath broched, when the partie that called him in, ſhall not be as able to refuſe his aſsiſtance vpon occaſion, as he was willing to entertaine it for aduantage. Laſtly, the often diſcontents of theſe

theſe States ſhew the force of a preſent euill, which poſſeſſeth ſo vehementlie the powers of the ſoule, that any other calamitie, either already paſt, or yet to come, how great ſoeuer, ſeemeth tolerable and eaſie, in regard of that ſmart which the preſent griefe inflicteth.

So the Sequani, choſe rather to captiuate their libertie to the Barbariſme of a ſauage Nation, then to indure the Hedui to take the hand of them. And againe, to make themſelues vaſſalls to the Romans, rather then indure the vſurping crueltie of the Germaines. And finally (as the ſequell of the hiſtorie will diſcouer) to hazard the loſſe of life and Country, then to ſuffer the taxes & impoſitions of the Romans: So predominant is the preſent euill in mens affections, and ſo it preuaileth at the ſeate of out iudgement.

CHAP. XIII.

The reaſons that mooued Cæſar to vndertake this warre.

Caeſar.

MAny vvere the inducements which mooued him to take that buſineſſe to hart; As firſt, that the Heduans, who were oftentimes ſtiled by the Senate with the title of Bretheren, Coſins and Allies, vvere in the ſeruitude and thraldome of the Germaines, and that their hoſtages vvere with Ariouiſtus and the Sequans: vvhich in ſo great a ſoueraigntie of the people of Rome, he tooke to be very dishonourable, both to himſelfe and the Common-weale; as alſo, for-that hee ſaw it very dangerous for the Romaine Empire, that the Germaines ſhould accuſtome, by little and little, to flocke in ſuch multitudes into Gallia. Neither did he thinke he could moderate or reſtraine ſuch fierce & barbarous people; but, that hauing poſſeſſed all the Continent of Gallia, they would, as the Cimbri and Teutons had done before, breake out into the Prouince, and ſo into Italy: eſpecially the Sequans; beeing diuided from the Prouince but with the riuer Rhone.

Theſe things he thought fitte with all ſpeede to preuent: and the rather, for-that Ariouiſtus vvas growne to that pride and arrogancie, as was not to be ſuffered. For vvhich reſpect, he thought it expedient to ſend Embaſſadours vnto him, to appoint ſome indifferent place for parlee; for-that he had to treat vvith him, concerning publique affaires, and ſome matters that did much import both of them.

OBSERVATIONS.

The authoritie of the Romã Generals.

I May heere take an occaſion, to ſpeake ſomewhat concerning the authoritie of the Roman Generals, which we ſee to be very large; conſidering that Cæſar of himſelfe, without any further leaue of the Senate & people of Rome (for what may be gathered by this hiſtorie) did

did vndertake a warre of that conſequence, and put in ieopardie the Legions, the Prouince, or what other intereſt the Romans had in Gallia.

Wherein we are to vnderſtand; that when the ſtate of Rome did allotte the gouernment of any Prouince to a Proconſull, they did likewiſe recommend vnto him, the carefull managing of ſuch accidents, as might any way concerne the good of that regiment. For, conſidering that ſuch cauſes as may trouble a well ordered gouernment, are as well externall and forraine, as internall, and bred within the bounds of that Empire: it had been to ſmall purpoſe, to haue giuen him onely authoritie, to maintaine a courſe of wholeſome gouernment at home; and no meanes to take away ſuch oppoſitions, which forraine accident might ſet vp againſt him. And ſo we ſee, that Cæſar vndertooke the Heluetian warre, in regard of the ſafetie of the Prouince: and this againe with Arioviſtus, leaſt the Germans ſhould ſo multiply in Gallia; that the Prouince it ſelfe might at length bee indangered. Neither had their Generals authoritie onely to vndertake theſe warres: but the abſolute diſpoſition alſo of the whole courſe thereof, whether it were to treat, capitulate, compound, or what els they thought conuenient for the aduauncement of the Common-weale, did wholly reſt vpon their direction; *repub. bene geſta*, beeing the ſtile of the warrant for all their actions.

Neither may we thinke, that any ſubordinate or depending authoritie, can be ſo powerfull in the courſe of buſineſſes, as that which abſolutely commaundeth without controlement, and proceedeth according to the opportunitie of time and occaſion, further then either preſcription or limitation can direct it. And therefore, whenſoeuer the Romaine affaires were diſtreſſed, and driuen to an exigent, they created a Dictator, that had *regiam poteſtatem*, ſuch an abſolute commaund, that whatſoeuer power reſted either in the Conſuls, or in the Tribunes, in the Senate, or in the people, it gaue way to the greatneſſe of that Magiſtrate; that there might bee no let or retracting power to weaken that courſe, which nothing but an abſolute cõmaund could eſtabliſh, for the good of the Common-weale. And yet notwithſtanding this abſolute gouernment, they attributed ſuch power to the courſe of humane actions, that by the puniſhment which they inflicted vpon diſſolute and vnfortunate Leaders, they ſeemed to acknowledge, that no man, how circumſpect ſoeuer, could promiſe more then likelihoods or probabilities of good fortune, as farre foorth as his meanes and induſtry could atchieue it. For, old M. Fabius, pleading for the life of his gallant ſonne, and oppoſing the rigour of Papyrius the Dictator, with examples of antiquitie, ſaith: *Populi quidem, penes quem poteſtas omnium rerum eſſet, ne iram quidem vnquam atrociorem fuiſſe in eos qui temeritate atque inſcitia exercitus amiſiſſent, quàm vt pecunia eos multaret: capite anquiſitum ob rem malè geſtam de imperatore nullum ad eam diem eſſe.* The people, ſaith he, in whom the ſoueraigne power of things conſiſteth, neuer ſhewed greater diſpleaſure againſt ſuch, as had loſt an Armie, either by raſhneſſe or vnskilfulneſſe, then impoſing a fine vpon them: but, to bring the life of a Generall in queſtion for failing in his indeauours, was neuer heard of to that day.

Liuie lib. 8.

The condition of the inferiour Officers of their Campe, was farre otherwiſe

in

in regard of Militarie diſcipline: for, preſcription guided them in all their ſeruices, and the chiefeſt part of their duetie was obedience; although they ſaw euident reaſon to the contrarie, and found their directions vnperfect in that behalfe: and therefore Cæſar ſaith vpon that occaſion: *Aliæ ſunt legati partes atque imperatoris: alter omnia agere ad præſcriptum, alter liberè ad ſummam rerum conſulere debet.* The office of a Legate or Lieutenant, diſſereth from that of a Generall: the one doing all things by preſcription; & the other freely deliberating of whatſoeuer may concerne the cauſe. And this courſe the Romans held, concerning the authoritie of their Generals. *Lib. 3. de bello Ciuili.*

CHAP. XIIII.

Ariouiſtus his anſwere: a ſecond Embaſſage, *with the ſucceſſe thereof.*

(·.·)

TO that Embaſſage, Ariouiſtus anſwered; That if his occaſions had required Cæſars aſsiſtance, he vvould haue furthered them with his owne preſence: and hee thought it as reaſonable, that if it vvere in his meanes to pleaſure the Romans, Cæſar ought not to thinke much of the like labour. For his owne part, hee durſt not come into thoſe parts of Gallia vvhich Cæſar poſſeſſed, vvithout an Armie; nor could draw an Armie to a head without great trouble & expence. The thing that he moſt wondered at, was, that the Romaines, or Cæſar, had to doe in that part of Gallia, vvhich the law of Armes had made his inheritance. *Cæſar.*

Vpon the returne of this aunſwere, Cæſar framed a ſecond Embaſſage; the purport vvhereof was: Foraſmuch as he thus requited the honour vvherewith the people of Rome had beautified his beſt dignity (for, in Cæſars Conſulſhip, the authoritie of their Empire had vouchſafed to eſteeme of him, as a King in his dominions, & as a friend vnto their State) & that he diſdained to admit of a Parlee, concerning the cõmon good; let him knowe, that theſe vvere the things that he required to be performed by him: Firſt, that hee ſhould not ſuffer any more troopes of Germaines to be tranſported ouer the Rhene into Gallia. Secondlie, that he ſhould deliuer vp thoſe Hoſtages which hee had of the Heduans and Sequans; & ſhould ceaſe to moleſt them further vvith war or other iniuries. Theſe things if he did performe, Cæſar vvould aſſure him of a gratefull acceptance on the behalfe of the people of Rome: otherwiſe, foraſmuch as in the Conſulſhips of M. Meſſala, and L. Piſo, the Senate had decreed, That he that ſhould obtaine the gouernment of the Prouince, ſhould as neere as it would ſtand vvith the good of the Common-vveale, indeauour the defence of their Aſſociates and Friends: therefore he would not neglect the iniuries done vnto the Heduans.

To theſe Mandates, Ariouiſtus replied: The law of Armes kept this tenure amongſt

mongſt all Nations; That a Conquerour might gouerne a ſubdued people, according as he thought beſt for his owne ſafetie. The people of Rome, did not direct the courſe of their gouernment, by another mans preſcript, but by their own arbitrement: and, as he had not directed the Romans, ſo ought not they to meddle with his proceedings.

The Heduans, hauing tried the fortune of vvarre, vvere by right become his Stipendaries; wherin Cæſar offered great wrong, for-that his comming thither, had made their tribute much leſſe vnto him then before. Touching their Hoſtages; his purpoſe was ſtill to retaine them. Neither vvould hee make any vniuſt warre vpon any of their Aſſociates, if they obſerued the Articles of agreement, and paid their yeerely tribute: but if they failed in that, the fraternity of the Romaines would come too late to their ſuccour. If Cæſar vvould needs vndertake their quarrell; Hee was to let him knowe, that no man euer contended with Ariouiſtus, but to his owne deſtruction. Try vvhen he would, he ſhould find what valour conſiſted in the Germaines, that for foureteene yeeres ſpace, were neuer couered with other roofe then the Heauens.

OBSERVATION.

AND thus farre proceeded Cæſar with Ariouiſtus, in debating the wrongs and agrieuances of the Hedui. Wherein appeareth the difference betweene a matter handled according to morall ciuilitie, in tearmes of mildneſſe and pleaſing accent, and that which is rudely deliuered, & dependeth rather vpon the plainneſſe of the project, then ſuted with words fitte for perſwaſion. For, that which Ariouiſtus alleadged, to make good his intereſt in Gallia, was as conſonant to reaſon, as any thing to the contrary vrged by Cæſar.

But as the Lacedemonian ſaid of one, That hee ſpake the truth otherwiſe then it ſhould be ſpoken: ſo it may be ſaid of Ariouiſtus aunſwere, that it wanted that ſweeting humanitie which giueth credit to veritie it ſelfe; foraſmuch as it proceedeth from a well tempered ſpirit, wherin no turbulent paſſion ſeemeth to cõtroll the force of reaſon, nor hinder the ſentence of true iudgement; but rather, ſeaſoning her conceptions with humilitie, doth couertly complaine of open wrong, and ſtrengthen her aſſertions with a pleaſing deliuerie. And therefore, how great ſoeuer the controuerſie be, that partie which exceedeth not the boundes of modeſtie, but maketh mildneſſe his chiefeſt aduocate, will ſo preuaile in any auditorie, that albeit equitie doth diſallow her title; yet the manner of his cariage will cleare him from offering wrong, in that he vſeth the ſequels of innocencie, to proue his intereſt in that which he demaundeth. But to leaue this circumſtance, as onely to be noted, let vs proceed to the vvarre it ſelfe, which I made the ſecond part of this hiſtorie.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

The *Treuiri* bring newes of one hundred townes-ſhips *of the Sweui, that were come to the Rhene. Cæſar* taketh in Beſanſon: his ſouldiers are ſurpriſed *vvith an extreame feare of the* Germaines.

AT the ſame time, as this anſwere vvas returned to Cæſar, there came likewiſe Embaſſadours from the Heduans and Treuires. The Heduans complained, that the Harudes, lately tranſported into Gallia, did depopulate and waſte their borders, and that they could not buy their peace of Arioviſtus, vvith giuing of Hoſtages for their alleageance. The Treuires brought newes of one hundred townes-ſhips of the Sweui, that vvere come to the riuer Rhene, to ſeeke a paſſage into Gallia, conducted by Naſua and Cimberius, two bretheren. Whereat, Cæſar beeing exceedingly mooued, thought his beſt meanes of preuention to conſiſt in celeritie, leaſt the difficulty of reſiſting ſhould growe greater, when thoſe new forces of the Sweui, vvere ioyned with the power vvhich was already with Arioviſtus. And therefore, hauing prouided Corne, hee made haſte to ſeeke the Germaines. And hauing gone three daies iourney on his way, he had intelligence, that Arioviſtus with all his forces, was gone to take in Beſanſon, the greateſt towne of the Sequans; and that hee vvas three daies iourney on his way already. *Cæſar.*

Cæſar, knowing how much it imported him to preuent that diſaduantage (foraſmuch as the Towne abounded vvith all neceſsarie prouiſions for vvarre, and vvas ſo ſited, that hee that commaunded it, might prolong the warre at his owne pleaſure: beeing incircled vvith the riuer Alduabis; excepting a ſmall ſpace of ſixe hundred foote, vvhich was fortified vvith an exceeding high Hill, the foote whereof did at each end ioyne vnto the Riuer, and the Hill ſtrengthened with a wall, and ſo ioyned to the towne) made all the haſte hee could to take the towne, and there left a guarizon. And as hee reſted there a few daies, to make prouiſion of Corne, and other neceſſaries, the Romaines inquiring of the Galles and Marchants, concerning the qualitie of the Germaines; vnderſtood that they were men of a huge ſtature, of courage inuincible, and of great practice and experience in feates of Armes; vvhereof the Galles had oftentimes made triall: For, when they incountered them, they vvere not able to indure ſo much as the ſternenеſſe of their countenaunce, or the fierceneſſe of their lookes. The vvhole Armie conceiued ſuch a feare thereat, that all mens minds were wonderfullie appalled. This feare beganne firſt amongſt the Tribunes and Commaunders of horſe, and ſuch others as for friendſhip ſake followed Cæſar from Rome, & had ſmall or no skill in matter of vvar. Theſe men, fayning ſome one excuſe, & ſome another, of very earneſt buſineſs, which called thē home, deſired leaue to depart. Some others, whō ſhame would not ſuffer to forſake the Campe, bewraied the like *le doux.*

paſsion in their countenances & hauiour: for, hiding themſelues in their Tents, they either bewailed their deſtanie ſecretly to thẽſelues, or otherwiſe, with their acquaintance and familiar friends. They lamented the danger they were all like to fall into; ſo that throughout the vvhole Campe, there was nothing but making and ſigning of Teſtaments. And through the talke and fearefulnes of theſe men, the old ſouldiers and Centurions, and ſuch as had great experience in the Campe, beganne by little and little to apprehend the terrour wher-with the reſt were amazed: and thoſe that would ſeeme to be leſſe fearefull, ſaid, they feared not the enemy, but the narrowneſſe of the waies, & the greatneſſe of the woods, that were betweene them and Ariouiſtus; or otherwiſe they caſt doubts vvhere they might haue prouiſion of Corne. And many ſtuck not to tell Cæſar, that vvhenſoeuer he ſhould giue commaundement to march forward, or aduaunce the Standarts, the ſouldiers would refuſe to doe it.

OBSERVATION.

WHerein, for that we find a ſtrange alteration, no way anſwerable to that courage, which a late gotten victorie doth vſually breed in noble ſpirits; it ſhall not bee amiſſe, a little to inſiſt vpon the qualitie of the accident, and to gather ſuch breefe inſtructions from their weakeneſſe, as may beſt ſerue to qualifie the amaſement of horrour, and mittigate the frenſie of ſo violent a paſſion. And albeit my ignorance in the works of Nature, cannot promiſe any ſuch learning, as may diſcouer the true meanes and ſecret motions, whereby a ſore conceiued feare doth trouble the ſenſes, and aſtoniſh the mind; yet ſith the hiſtory offereth it to our ſcanning, giue me leaue onely to note the ſtrangeneſſe of the circumſtance, and rudely to delineat the purtraiture of a beaſt oftener ſeene then wel knowne, vſing the vnwieldie pile for my penſile, and ſuting my ſpeech to a warlike auditorie. I knowe not how it happeneth, but thus it may happen, that when the ſenſes receiue intelligence of an eminent euill, which may either diſpoſſeſſe the ſoule of this earthly manſion, or trouble the quiet wherein ſhee reſteth; the ſpirits (as it ſeemeth) by the direction of their ſoueraigne Miſtreſſe, retire themſelues into the inner cabinets and ſecreter pauillions of the body, where the chiefeſt part of the ſoule is moſt reſident: & ſo they leaue the frontier quarters of her kingdome, naked and vnguarizoned, the better to ſtrengthen that capitall Cittie of the heart, out of which the life cannot flie, but to the vtter ruine and deſtruction of the whole bodie. For, feare is not onelie a perturbation of the ſoule, proceeding from the opinion it hath of ſome euill to come: but it is alſo a contraction, and cloſing vp of the hart, when the blood and the ſpirits are recalled from the outward partes, to aſſiſt that place which giueth life and motion to all the reſt. In this Chaos and confuſion of humours and ſpirits, when the multiplicitie of faculties (which otherwiſe require an ordinate diſtinction in their ſeruice, and by the order of nature, ſhould bee diſpoſed into ſeuerall inſtruments, and be dilated throughout the bodie)

body) are thus blended confuſedly together, the conceptions of the mind, which preſently riſe from theſe aduertiſements, are ſuddenly choaked vvith the diſordered mixture of ſo many ſeuerall properties, and are ſtifled as it were in the throng, before they can be tranſported to our iudgement, or examined by reaſon, for want of that ordinate vniformitie of place which nature requireth in the powers of the mind. And hence proceedeth that amazedneſſe and aſtoniſhment, which ſo daunteth the harts of men, when they are taken with this paſsion, that becauſe the ſoule giueth no counſell, the body can afford no motion, but ſtandeth frozen through the extremitie of the perturbation, benummed in ſenſe, and forſaken of the ſpirits. So we read, that Theophilus the Emperour, in an ouerthrowe which he had giuen him by the Hagerans, was ſtrooken with ſuch an exceſſiue feare, that hee could not betake himſelfe to flight (*Adeo pauor etiam auxilia formidat*) vntill one of his chiefe Commanders ſhaking him by the ſhoulder, as though he were to awake him out of a deep ſleep, threatned him with preſent death, if he would not preuent the ruine of the Empire, by vſing that meanes which was onely left for his ſafetie.

Againe, if in that turbulent conſiſtory, the ſpirits chance diſtinctly to receiue any apprehenſion proceeding from the forging faculties of the ſoule, they carie it preſently to execution, before it be examined by reaſon, and follow the action with ſuch vehemencie, that they leaue no place for better aduice and reknowledgement. And this is the cauſe, that oftentimes through extreamitie of feare, to auoid one euill, we run headlong into a worſe, and find a greater danger in the meanes wee vſe to auoid a leſſe; becauſe reaſon did not firſt trie the apprehenſion, before it was deliuered to externall Agents. And ſo we find in the battell betweene Germanicus and the Almaines, that two groſſe troopes of ſouldiers were driuen into ſuch an extaſie of feare, that taking contrarie courſes to auoid one and the ſame danger, they either of them fledde to that place, which the other had quitted: neither could they bee aduiſed by each others flight, that the places which they ſought after, afforded them no remedie.

And, albeit reaſon be called to counſell, whē a parlee is ſummoned of compoſition, yet it beareth ſo ſmall a ſway in the conſultation, that the will of it ſelfe concludeth to betray vertue to diſhonour; and ſo to purchaſe peace, with the loſſe of the ſoules chiefeſt treaſure: which ought euer to bee eſtimated at a higher rate, then any other happineſſe which can betide the mind. For among all the ſenſible things of this world, there is no creature that hath ſuch a confuſed feare, or is more amazed therewith, then man is: neither is there any miſerie greater, or any bondage more ſhamefull, ſeruile, or vile, then this, which maketh men very abiects of all other creatures, to redeeme the euill which the danger threatneth: and then doth ſhame follow after ſo baſe a part, and aggrauate the burthen of the ſinne with lothſome diſgrace, and penitent diſcontentment; adding oftentimes Aloes to Wormewood, and making the end grieuouſer then the beginning. And thus doth danger breed feare, and feare yieldeth to diſhonour, and diſhonour bringeth ſhame, and ſhame beeing alwaies mingled with wrath & anger, reuengeth it ſelfe vpon it ſelfe, & bringeth more perrill then the firſt danger could threaten.

Whereby it appeareth, that as the affections of the mind are bred one of another: ſo, on the contrarie part, ſome are bridled and reſtrained by others; for, as enuie, hatred, & anger, riſe oftentimes of loue, ſo is ioy leſſened with griefe, enuie with mercie, and feare with ſhame.

But, foraſmuch as all ſuch perturbations, proceede of ignorance and inconſiderateneſſe, whereby we thinke that the euill is greater then indeede it is; let vs conſider what diſpoſition of our iudgement, beſt moderateth the violent heat of theſe affections. And firſt, touching the paſſages, whereby the ſoule receiueth her aduertiſments, as they are of diuers natures, the chiefeſt whereof are the eye and the eare: ſo are their auiſos different in qualitie, and require a ſeuerall conſideration to be rightlie diſcerned. The intelligence by the eye, is more certaine then that which commeth by the way of hearing; foraſmuch as the eie is a witneſſe it ſelfe of euery action, whereof it taketh notice; neither is it deceiued in her proper obiect: and therefore, the iudgement is not much troubled, to determine definitiuely how great or how ſmall the danger is, when the relations carie alwaies that certaintie. And, albeit the eare in like manner bee not deceiued in her proper obiects for it faithfully giueth vp that ſenſe, which ſound hath deliuered vnto it: yet, foraſmuch as the fantaſie hath greater ſcope to coine her vaine conceptions, in regard of the abſence of the action, it is neceſſarie, that the diſcourſing facultie, bee called for an aſſiſtant, before the iudgement can truly determine: and then it will appeare, that the truth doth not alwaies aunſwere the report which is made thereof; inaſmuch as diſeaſed ſpirits, will not ſtick to dilate or qualifie relations, according to the key wherein they themſelues are tuned. And therefore, this firſt commeth to be conſidered of in all ſuch violent commotions, by which of theſe two ſenſes the firſt intelligence was receiued. But concerning the iudgement it ſelfe, this is moſt certaine, that the more it is infected with the corruptions of the fleſh, the more violent are the affections of the ſoule. And againe, the purer the iudgement is, & the higher it is lifted vp from earthly natures, being no further intereſſed therein, then to hold a reſolution of well dooing; the fewer and lighter are the affections, which trouble and moleſt it: for, then it better diſcerneth the truth and falſehood, good or euill that is in things.

To redreſſe this inconuenience, Cæſar betooke himſelfe to the fitteſt & moſt proper remedie: which was by the authoritie of his ſpeech, to reſtore reaſon to her former dignitie, and by diſcourſe, which feare had interrupted in them, to put downe a vſurping paſsion, which had ſo troubled the gouernment of the ſoule; recalling it to the meane of true reſolution, which was to moderate audacitie with warineſſe, but not to choake valour with beaſtly cowardice: for, theſe Oratorie inducing perſwaſions, were not the leaſt point of their diſcipline; conſidering how they framed the inward habite of the mind (beeing the fountaine and beginning of all motion) to giue life and force to thoſe actions, which the ſeueritie of outward diſcipline commanded. For, as lawes and conſtitutions of men, inforce obedience of the bodie: ſo reaſon, and perſwaſions, muſt winne the ſoules conſent: according to that ſaying; *Homines duci volunt, non cogi.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Cæsar his speech to the Armie, concerning *this feare.*

CÆsar being informed of these things, he called a Councell of warre, admitting all the Centurions, of what degrees or orders soeuer, vnto the same: And, beeing thus assembled, he greatly blamed them; First, that any man should be so inquisitiue, as to imagine to himselfe, whither, and vpon what seruice they were caried. Concerning Ariouistus, he had in the time of Cæsars Consulshippe, most earnestly sued for the friendship of the people of Rome: and why then should any man misdeeme, that he should so vnaduisedly goe back from his duetie? For his owne part, he was verily perswaded, that if Ariouistus once knew his demaunds, & vnderstood the reasonable offers that he would make him, he would not easily reiect his friendship, or the fauour of the people of Rome. But if he were so madde, as to make warre vpon them, why should they feare him? or why should they despaire, either of their own prowess, or of Cæsars diligence? For, if it came to that point, the enemie that they were to incounter, had beene tried what he could doe twice before; first, in the memorie of their fathers, when the Cimbri and Teutoni were vanquished by Marius, at what time the Army merited no lesse honour then the Generall: and now of late againe, in Italie, at the insurrection of the bondmen; who were not a little furthered through the practice and discipline they had learned of the Romaines. Whereby it might be discerned, how good a thing it is to be constant & resolute; inasmuch, as whom for a time they feared without cause, beeing naked and vnarmed, the same men afterwards (although well armed, and Conquerers withall) they nobly ouercame. And to be short, these were no other Germaines, then those whom the Heluetians had vanquished in diuers conflicts; and not onely in their owne Country, where the Heluetians dwelt themselues, but also euen at home at their own doores: and yet the same Heluetians were not able to make their party good against our Armies.

If any man were mooued at the flight and ouerthrowe of the Galles, vpon inquirie he should find, that being wearied with continuall warres (after that Ariouistus had for many monthes together kept himselfe within his Campe, in a boggie and fenny Country) and despairing of any occasion of battell, he suddenly set vpon them as they were dispersed, and so ouercame them, rather by policie then by force. Which, although it tooke place against sauage and vnskilfull people, yet was not Ariouistus so simple, as to thinke that hee could insnare our Armies with the like subtilties. As for those that fained the cause of their feare, to bee the difficultie of prouision of Corne, and the dangerousnesse of the way, they seemed very arrogant in their conceits, in presuming to direct their Generall, as if he had not knowne what pertained to his dutie. The Sequans and Lingons, had vndertooke that charge; besides that, Corne was almost ripe euery where in the fields: and what the waies were, should shortly be seene.

749b Edmondes Sir G.

Where-as it vvas giuen out, that the ſouldiers would not obey his Mandates, nor aduaunce their Standarts, he little valued it; for, he was well aſſured, that if an Army refuſed to be obedient to their Generall, it was either becauſe he was thought to be vnfortunate in his enterpriſes; or elſe, for-that he was notoriouſly conuicted of Auarice: but the vvhole courſe of his life, ſhould witneſſe his innocencie; and the ouerthrowe of the Heluetians, his happineſſe. And therefore, that which he was minded to haue put off for a longer time, he would now put in execution out of hand; for, the night following, at the fourth watch, hee would diſlodge frõ thence: that without further delay, he might vnderſtand, whether ſhame, and reſpect of their dutie, vvould preuaile more vvith them, then feare or cowardiſe. And though he wiſt that no man elſe would follow him; yet notwithſtanding, he would goe with the tenth legion alone, of whom he had no doubt or ſuſpicion, and would take them as a guard to his perſon. Cæſar had chiefely fauoured this legion, and put much truſt in them for their valour.

Vpon the making of this ſpeech, the minds of all men were wonderfully changed; for, it bredde in euery one a great alacritie and deſire to fight: neither did the tenth legion forget to giue him thanks by their Tribunes, for the good opinion he had of them; aſſuring him of their readineſſe to ſet forward to the warre. And then likewiſe, the reſt of the legions made meanes, by the Tribunes of the ſouldiers and Centurions of the firſt Orders, to giue Cæſar ſatisfaction; proteſting, they neither doubted nor feared, nor gaue any cenſure of the iſſue of that vvarre, but alwaies left it to the wiſedome of the Generall.

Their ſatisfaction beeing taken, and a view beeing made of the waies by Dinitiacus (whom, of all the Galles, he beſt truſted) and report being by him made, that in fetching a compaſſe of fiftie miles, hee might carie his Armie in open and champaine Countries; in the fourth watch of the night, according to his former ſaying, he ſet forward.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IN the ſpeech it ſelfe, are preſented many ſpecialities, both concerning their diſcipline and Militarie inſtructions, which deſerue examination; amongſt which I note, firſt, the extraordinarie number admitted to the Councell; *Omnium ordinum ad id concilium adhibitis Centurionibus:* Where-as there were vſually no more admitted to their councell of warre, but the Legates, Queſtor, Tribunes, and the Centurions of the firſt Orders; which I vnderſtand to be the firſt *Haſtate*, the firſt *Princeps*, and the firſt *Pilum* of euery legion. And this is manifeſtly prooued out of the fift Commentarie, where Cicero was beſieged by Ambiorix: in which, amongſt other, there were two valiant Centurions, Pulfio, and Varenus; betweene whom, there was euery yeere great emulation for place of preferment: *& iam primis ordinibus appropinquabant*, ſaith Cæſar, that is, they had paſſed by degrees, through the lower orders of the legion, and were very neere the dignitie of the firſt cohort; wherein, as in all the reſt, there were three maniples, and in euery maniple, two orders.

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THe firſt motiue which he vſeth to recall their exiled iudgement, diſcouered their breach of diſcipline: for, contrarie to the courſe of Militarie gouernment, they had preſumed not onely to make inquirie, but to giue out, whether, and vpon what ſeruice they were caried; which in the rigour of Camp-policie, could not paſſe without due puniſhment: for, what can more contradict the fortunate ſucceſſe of an expedition, then to ſuffer to bee meaſured with the vulgar conceit? or weighed in the ballance of ſuch falſe iudgments? eſpecially, when thoſe weake Cenſors are to be Actors, and Executioners of the deſſigne: for, then, euery man will ſute the nature of the action according to his owne humour; although his humour be led with blindneſſe, & haue no other direction, then an vncertaine apprehenſion of profit, or diſaduantage.

And in this caſe, there cannot be a better preſident then Nature hath preſcribed: for, as naturall Agents, whilſt they concur to produce a worke of abſolute perfection, neither know what they do, nor can diſcerne the things they look vpon; but yield themſelues to be guided by a Moderator of infinite knowledge: ſo ought a multitude to ſubmit their ability to the direction of ſome wiſe and prudent Captaine, that beholdeth the action in true honour; and balanceth the loſſe of many particulars, with the health and ſafetie of the publique good. For, if euery man ſhould preſcribe; who ſhould obay? *Tam neſcire quædam milites, quàm ſcire oportet*, ſaith Otho in Tacitus, vpon the like diſorder: and againe, *Parendo potiùs quam imperia ducum ſciſcitando, res militares continentur.* Which proueth, that the greateſt vertue which is required in a ſouldier, is obedience; as a thing wherein the force of all diſcipline conſiſteth.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

Whether men haue greater courage in their owne or in a ſtrangers Country.

IN the reaſon which he vſeth to proue their diſparitie of valour, in regard of the Romans, being ſuperiour to the Heluetians, that had oftentimes ouerthrowne the Germans; hee ſtrengtheneth the argument with the aduantage of the place: and ſaith, that the Heluetians had put them to the worſt; not onely where the Heluetians dwelt themſelues, but euen in their owne Country, and at home at their owne doores: as though an enemie were charged with greater furie in the preſence of a mans owne Country and deareſt friends, then in a ſtrange & vnknowne land.

This queſtion was handled in the Romaine Senate, by Fabius Maximus, & Scipio, ſurnamed Africanus, when they ſate in councell how to ridde their Country of that ſubtile Carthaginian, that for ſixteene yeeres ſpace, had fretted like a canker the beautie of Italie, waſted the land, and brought it to deſolation, ſacked their confederates, or alienated them from their dutie, ouerthrowne their Armies, ſlaine their Conſuls, and threatned their imperiall Cittie with ruine and deſtruction. Fabius, vpon the motion to make warre in Africk,

749b
Edmondes. Sir C.

ſtrick, thought it agreeable to nature, firſt to defend that which was their owne, before they atte mpted other mens poſſeſſions: when peace was eſtabliſhed in Italy, then let war be ſet on foote in Africk; and firſt let them be without feare themſelues, before they went about to terrifie others: for, thoſe forces afforded little hope of victorie in another kingdom, that were not able to free their owne Country from ſo dangerous an enemie. Alcibiades ouerthrew the Athenian Common-weale with the like counſell: and concerning Hanniball, let them be ſure of this, that they ſhould find him a ſorer enemy in his own Country, then in another kingdome.

Scipio, on the other ſide, caried on with the honour of ſo glorious an enterpriſe, wanted neither reaſons nor examples to impugne Fabius his authoritie: for, he ſhewed that Agathocles, the Syracuſian king, beeing a long time afflicted with the Punick warre, auerted the Carthaginean from Cicily, by tranſporting his forces into Africk: but how powerfull it was to take away feare, by retorting danger vpon the Oppreſſor, could there bee a preſenter example then Hanniball? There was great difference in the nature of the action, betweene the ſpoile and waſte of a ſtrangers Country, and to ſee their owne natiue Country waſted with ſword and deſtruction: *Plus animi eſt inferenti periculum, quàm propulſanti.* For, he that inuadeth anothers kingdome, eaſily diſcouereth both the aduantage which may be taken againſt the enemy, and the ſtrength wher-vpon he reſteth. And amongſt the variable euents of war, many vnexpected occaſions ariſe, which preſent victorie to him that is ready to take it; and many ſtrange chances ſo alter the courſe of things, that no foreſight can diſcerne what may happen.

With theſe, and the like remonſtrances, this queſtion of no leſſe doubt then importance, was handled by two famous & woorthy Captaines, whoſe minds (as it ſeemed) were intangled with ſuch particular affections for the preſent, as might rather draw them to wreſt reaſon to their owne humour, then to determine in ſinceritie of iudgement, vpon what ſpecialities the truth was grounded, in the contrarietie of their poſitions. But, to leaue other commodities or diſaduantages, which are annexed vnto either part, I will onely ſet down ſome reaſons, to proue how valour and courage may either grow or be abated, by the accidents which riſe in a warre of that nature. And firſt, this cannot be denied, the teſtimonie of an vnfallible truth beeing grounded vpon the propertie of mans nature; that as aduantage bringeth hope of victory, and hope conceiueth ſuch ſpirits as vſually follow, when the thing which is hoped for, is effected; and thereby the courage becommeth hardie and reſolute in victorie: ſo on the other ſide, diſaduantage and danger breed feare, and feare ſo checketh valour, and controlleth the ſpirits, that vertue and honour giue place to diſtruſt, and yield vp their intereſt to ſuch directors, as can afford nothing but diffidencie and irreſolution.

Neither can it be denied, but he that ſetteth vpõ an enemy in a ſtrange countrey, and ſo preuenteth ſuch attempts as might be made vpon his owne territories, hath that aduantage which giueth life vnto action, and ſteeleth his enterpriſe with reſolution. For, beſides the commoditie of leauing when he liſt, and

procee-

proceeding as farre foorth as hee ſhall find his meanes able to fortunate his attempts; he knoweth that the ſtrife & controuerſie is not for his natiue Country, which he quietly enioyeth, & is reſerued at all times to entertaine him, howſoeuer Fortune ſhall fauour his deſſignes: but, for a Strangers kingdom, which his ambition thirſteth after; wherein, foraſmuch as the riches and wealth of that State, are laid before them, as the recompence of their labour, beſides the honour which is atchieued thereby, euery mans valour ſoareth at a high pitch, and their courage is increaſed, without any trouble or diſturbance of the other faculties of the mind. But, when a Prince ſhall be aſſaulted in his owne kingdome, and in the ſight of his ſubiects haue his land conſumed with ruine and deſtruction; the danger will ſo diſturbe the powers of the ſoule, that through the turbulent diſorder of the weaker parts, the better faculties will loſe their prerogatiue of aduiſing how the enemy may bee beſt reſiſted; when as euerie man ſhall apprehend the terrour of the danger, and few or none conceiue the true meanes to auoide it.

And albeit the preſence of ſuch things as are deareſt to his ſoule, as the pietie and reſpect of aged parents, the tender affection towards wife and children, are ſufficient to raiſe valour to the higheſt point of reſolution; yet the motiues are of ſuch weight, as will rather make them diffident of their owne worth, as vnſufficient to maintaine ſo great a cauſe, then hold them in that key which true honour affecteth: foraſmuch as the terrour and feare of ſo great a danger, will preſent a greater meaſure of woes to their mind, then the hope of victorie can afford them ioy.

Hence therefore groweth the difference, between him that ſeeketh to maintaine that eſtate which he hath in poſſeſsion by force of Armes; and an other, that ſeeketh to increaſe his meanes by valour. For, the former is preſented with the danger of loſing all his eſtate; which affrighteth and troubleth, hauing no other reward propounded vnto him: and the other looketh vpon the aduantage which hee gaineth by ouercomming; which much increaſeth his valour, without any loſſe or diſaduantage, if hee chance to bee put to the worſt. And therefore, there is alwaies great odds betweene him that hath already loſt his goods, and is by that meanes become deſperate, hauing nothing further to loſe; and another, that yet keepeth his ſubſtance, but is in danger to loſe it: for, feare will ſo diſmay his mind, that he will rather diſtruſt his owne abilitie, then entertaine a reſolution of valour.

To prooue this, wee neede not ſeeke other examples, then thoſe imperiall Cities, in whoſe cauſe this controuerſie was firſt mooued. For, when Hanniball was come into Italie, and had defeated Sempronius the Conſull at Trebeas, the Romaines were driuen into ſuch an extaſie of terrour, that they belieued verily, that the enemie was then comming to aſſault the Citty; neither had they any hope or aide in themſelues, to keep or defend the ſame. On the other ſide, Scipio was no ſooner landed in Africk, but there was ſuch a tumult in Carthage, as though the Cittie had beene alreadie taken: neither could the opinion of victorie, which Hanniball by a conquering Armie in Italie had confirmed for ſixteene yeeres together, preuaile in the apprehenſion of ſo immi-

nent

749b
Edmondes. Sir C.

nent a danger. And then that which Fabius borrowed of Nature to teach the Romans (that first men ought to defend their owne, before they seeke other mens possessions) was carefully followed by the Carthaginians: for, with all speed they sent for Hanniball out of Italy, to be their Champion against young Scipio. If therefore other things bee correspondent (as there are many other particularities concerning the power and strength of either Nation to be considered) I take it much better for a Prince to inuade an enemy in his own country, then to attend him at home in his owne kingdome.

THE FOVRTH OBSERVATION.

THe last circumstance which I note in this speech, was the trust which he reposed in the tenth legion, being in it selfe peraduenture as faultie as any other: wherin he shewed great Art and singular Wisdom. For, he that hath once offended, & is both burdened with the guilt of conscience, and vpbraided with the reproache of men, can hardly be perswaded that his fault can be purged with any satisfaction. And although the punishment be remitted, yet the memorie of the fact will neuer be blotted out with any vertuous action; but still remaineth, to cast dishonour vpon the offender, and to accuse him of disloialtie.

And therefore, it oftentimes happeneth, that an errour beeing once rashlie committed, through despaire of remission, admitteth no true penitencie, but either draweth on more grieuous crimes, confirming that of the Poet, *Scelere scelus luendum est*; or maintaineth his errour by wilfull obstinacie: as it is said of the Lion, that beeing found by Hunters in a Caue, will rather die in the place then quit it, for shame that he was found in so base a place of refuge; and therefore his propertie is thus expressed, *ingrediendo cæcus, exeundo protervus.* This did Cæsar wisely preuent, by cleering the tenth legion of that, which he accused the rest of the Armie; which made them the more earnest to answer his expectation, inasmuch as they were witnes to themselues of a common errour: and the other legions, enuying at their fortune, resolued to shew as great alacritie in the sequell of the warre, and to deserue more then the iudgement of the Emperour had imputed to their fellowes.

CHAP. XVII.

The treatie betweene Cæsar and *Ariouistus.*

Cæsar. *THe seauenth day, as hee continued on his march, his Espialls brought him word, that Ariouistus with all his forces, vvas within twentie foure miles of that place: who as soone as he vnderstood of Cæsars comming, sent Embassadours vnto him; Declaring that forasmuch as hee was come some-vvhat neerer, and that he might doe it without danger, he was content*

tent to admit of a parlee. Cæsar refused not the offer; thinking now to find him reasonable, in that he offered of his owne accord, vvhat he had formerly denied at Cæsars requeſt: and thereby was in good hope, that vnderſtanding vvhat was required, he would in the end, conſider of the many fauours he had receiued frō the people of Rome, and deſiſt from ſuch wilful courſes.

The fift day following was appointed for the Treaty. In the meane time, there paſſed often Meſſages reciprocally betweene them. Arioviſtus required, that Cæsar would not bring any footmen to the parlee, for that hee feared to be circumuented by treacherie; and therefore thought fitte, that either partie ſhould come onely with their Caualrie: otherwiſe he vvould not giue meeting.

Cæsar, not vvilling to put off the Treatie for any ſuch cauſe, nor yet daring to put himſelfe in truſt to the French horſe, thought it moſt conuenient to leaue the French Riders behind him; and to ſet the ſouldiers of the tenth legion (whom he beſt truſted) vpon their horſes: that if he ſtood in need, he might haue a faithfull guard of his friends about him. Whereupon, one of the ſouldiers ſaid prettily, that Cæsar had doone more for them then he had promiſed; for, hee had ſaid before, he would make the tenth legion as a guard to his perſon, and now he had inrolled them all for horſemen.

There vvas a great and open Plaine, and in the midſt thereof a riſing Mount, vvhich was almoſt in the mid-way, betweene both the Campes: and thither, according to the agreement, they came to parlee. The legion vvhich Cæsar had brought vvith him on horſebacke, hee placed two hundred paſes from the ſaid Mount: and likewiſe the horſemen of Arioviſtus, ſtood in the ſame diſtance. Arioviſtus requeſted, they might talke on horſeback, and bring each of them tenne perſons to the conference. At their meeting, Cæsar beganne his ſpeech vvith a commemoration of the fauours and beneſites the Senate had done vnto him; in that hee vvas by their authoritie, intitaled by the name of a King and a Friend: & therupon, had receiued great gifts. Which fauour fell but vnto a few; and was by the Romaines giuen onely to men of great deſert: Whereas hee, vvithout anie occaſion of acceſſe vnto them, or other iuſt cauſe on his behalfe, had obtained thoſe honours, through his curteſie, and the bountie of the Senate.

Hee ſhewed him further, vvhat ancient and reaſonable cauſes of amitie, tied them ſo firme to the Heduans: What Decrees & orders of Senate, had oftentimes been made in their fauour and behoofe: That from all antiquity, the Heduans had held the principalitie of Gallia; and that, long before they vvere in amitie vvith the Romaines. The people of Rome had alwaies this cuſtome, not onelie to indeauour that their Allies and Confederates ſhould not loſe any thing of their proper; but alſo, that they might increaſe in dignitie and reputation: and therfore, vvho could indure to ſee that forced from them, which they quietly poſſeſſed, when they entered league with the Romaines?

In like manner, he required the performance of ſuch things, which he had formerly giuen in charge to his Embaſſadours; that hee ſhould not make vvarre, either vpon the Heduans, or their Aſſociates. That he ſhould reſtore their hoſtages: and if hee could not returne any part of the Germaines backe againe ouer the Rhene, yet he ſhould forbeare to bring any more into that Country.

Arioviſtus

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

Arioui∫tus made little aun∫were to Cæ∫ars demaunds, but ſpake much of his owne vertues and valour; That he was come ouer the Rhene, not out of his owne deſire, but at the mediation and intreatie of the Galles; that hee had not left his houſe and kindred but with great hope of high rewards; the poſſeſsions hee had in Gallia, were giuen him by themſelues; their hoſtages vvere voluntarily deliuered vnto him; he tooke tribute by the law of Armes, which was ſuch, as Conquerours might lay vpon the vanquiſhed; he made no war vpon the Galles, but the Galles made warre vpon him: All the States of Gallia came to fight againſt him, and had put themſelues into the field; whoſe forces vvere in one battell all diſperſed and ouerthrowne. If they were deſirous to make another triall, he was ready to vndertake them: but if they would haue peace, it vvere an iniury to retract that tribute, which of their owne accord they had paid vntill that time. He expected that the Amitie of the people of Rome, ſhould be rather an honor and a ſafety, then a loſſe vnto him, and that he had ſought it to that end: but if by their meanes, the tribute due vnto him ſhould be retracted, hee would as willingly refuſe their friendſhip as he had deſired it. In that hee had brought ſo many Germans into Gallia, it was rather for his own defence, thē of any purpoſe to ſubdue the Country; as might appeare, by that he had not come thither but vpon intreatie, & ſet no war on foot but for his own defence. He was ſeated in Gallia before the Romaines came thither; neither had the people of Rome before that time, caried their Army beyond the bounds of their Prouince: and therefore he knew not what he meant to intrude himſelfe into his poſſeſsions. This was his Prouince of Gallia, as that was ours: and as it was not lawfull for him to commaund in our quarters; ſo it was not fitting, that they ſhould diſturb his gouernment.

In that hee alleadged, the Heduans were by decree of Senate adopted into the amitie of the people of Rome; he was not ſo barbarous, or vnacquainted with the courſe of things, as to be ignorant, that in the laſt warre of the Allobroges, they were ayding and aſsiſting to the Romaines: and in the quarrell the Heduans had with the Sequans, the Romans were in like manner aſsiſting vnto them. Whereupon he had good occaſion to ſuſpect, that Cæſar, vnder pretence of league & amity, kept his Army in Gallia for his ruine and deſtruction: and that if hee did not depart and withdraw his Army out of thoſe Countries, hee would no longer take him for a friend, but for an enemy. And if his fortune were to ſlay him, hee ſhould performe a very acceptable ſeruice to many noble & cheefe men of Rome: as he had well vnderſtood by Letters and Meſſengers he had receiued from them, whoſe fauour and amity hee ſhould purchace, by taking away his life. But if hee would depart, and leaue him the free poſſeſsion of Gallia, hee would gratifie him with great rewards: and what warſoeuer hee deſired to be vndertaken, ſhould be gone through withall, without his perill or charge.

Many things were ſpoken by Cæſar, to ſhew why he could not deſiſt from that courſe; for, neither was it his vſe, nor the cuſtome of the people of Rome, to forſake their wel-deſeruing Aſſociates: neither could he think, that Gallia did rather belong to Arioui∫tus then the Romans. The Aruerns and Rutenes, were in due courſe of war ſubdued by Q. Fabius Maximus: whō the people of Rome had pardoned, and not reduced to a Prouince, or made them ſtipendaries. And if antiquitie

tiquitie were looked into, the people of Rome had good claime to that Countrey: but, forasmuch as the intention and will of the Senate was, they should remaine a free people, they were suffered to be gouerned by their owne lawes, and left vnto themselues, notwithstanding any former conquest by force of Armes.

Whilst these things were treated of in parlee, it was told Cæsar, that Ariouistus horsmen did approach neerer to the Mount, and that accosting our men, they assaulted them with stones and other vveapons: whereupon he brake off, and betooke himselfe to his Party, commaunding them not to cast a weapon at the enemie. For, albeit hee well perceiued, hee might without perill of that elect legion, giue battell to his Caualry; yet he thought fit to refraine, least it should be said, he had intrapped them with a parlee, contrary to faith made, and agreement. After it was reported amongst the vulgar souldiours, how arrogantly Ariouistus had caried himselfe in the treaty; forbidding the Romaines to frequent any part of Gallia, and that their Caualry had assaulted our men, and that thereupon the parlee brake off: the Army was possessed vvith a greater alacrity and desire to fight, then before. Two daies after, Ariouistus sent Messengers to Cæsar, signifying, that he desired to treat with him, cõcerning those things which were left vnperfit, & therupõ willed him to appoint another day of meeting; or if he liked not that, to send some vnto him with authority, to cõclude of such things as should be foũd expedient. Cæsar was vnwilling to giue any further meeting; & the rather, for-that the day before, the Germaines could not be restrained from violence, & force of Armes: Neither did hee think hee might safely expose the person of any of his followers, to the inhumanity of such barbarous people; and therefore thought it fittest, to send vnto him M. Valerius Procillus, the sonne of C. Valerius Caburius, a vertuous yong mã, & wel bred, whose father was made free of Rome by C. Valer. Flaccus: which he did, the rather in regard of his singular integrity, & his perfectnes in the French tongue, which Ariouistus through long continuance had learned; & that the Germans had no cause of offence against him. And with him he sent M. Titius, that was familiarly acquainted with Ariouistus; with instruction to heare what was said, and to make report thereof to Cæsar. Whom, as soone as Ariouistus saw come into his Campe, hee cried out in the presence of his Army; demaunding wherfore they came thither? and whether they were not sent as Spies? And as they were about to make answere, hee cutte them off, and commaunded them to be put in Irons.

The same day he remooued his Campe, and lodged himselfe vnder a hill, sixe miles from Cæsar. The next day, he brought his forces along by Cæsars Campe, and incamped himselfe two miles beyond him; of purpose to cut off all such corne and convoies, as should be sent to the Romaines by the Heduans and Sequans. From that day forward, by the space of fiue daies together, Cæsar imbattelled his men before his Campe; to the intent, that if Ariouistus had a mind to giue battell, hee might doe it vvhen he would. But Ariouistus all this while, kept his Armie vvithin his Campe, and dailie sent out his horsemen to skirmish vvith the Romaines.

This was the maner of fighting which the Germans had practiced: there were 6000 horsmen, & as many strong and nimble footmen, whom the horsemen had

ſelected out of the vvhole hoſt, euery man one for his ſafeguard: theſe they had alwaies at hand vvith them in battell, and vnto theſe they reſorted for ſuccour. If the horſemen vvere ouer-charged, theſe euer ſtept in to helpe them. If any one vvere wounded or vnhorſed, they came about him, & ſuccoured him. If the matter required either to aduenture forward, or to retire ſpeedily back againe, their ſwiftneſſe vvas ſuch (through continuall exerciſe) that hanging on the horſemane by the one hand, they would runne as faſt as the horſes.

OBSERVATION.

Footmen intermingled amongſt horſemen.

IT may ſeeme ſtrange vnto the ſouldiours of our time, that the footmen ſhould be mingled pell mell amongſt the horſemen, without hurt and diſaduantage to themſelues; ſo vnlikely it is, that they ſhould either ſuccour the horſmen in any danger, or annoy the enemie: and therefore ſome haue imagined, that theſe footmen in the incounter, caſt themſelues into one bodie, and ſo charging the enemy, aſſiſted the horſemen. But the circumſtances of this place, and of others which I will alleage to this purpoſe, plainly euince that theſe footmen were mingled indifferentlie amongſt the horſemen, to aſſiſt euery particular man, as his fortune and occaſion required: and therefore, the choiſe of theſe footemen, was permitted to the horſemen, in whoſe ſeruice they were to be imploied; that euery man might take his friend, in whom he repoſed greateſt confidence. When they were ouercharged, theſe ſtept in to helpe them; if any man were wounded, or vnhorſed, he had his footman ready to aſſiſt him: and when they were to goe vpon any ſpeedy ſeruice, or ſuddainly to retire vpon aduantage, they ſtaied themſelues vpon the mane of the horſes, with one hand, & ſo ran as faſt as the horſmen could go. Which ſeruices, they could not poſsibly haue performed, without confuſion & diſorder, if the footemen had not ſeuerally attended vpon thē, according to the affection ſpecified in their particular election.

The principall vſe of theſe footmen of the Germaines, conſiſted in the aide of their owne horſemen vpon any neceſsitie, not ſo much regarding their ſeruice vpon the enemie, as the aſsiſtance of their horſemen. But the Romans had long before practiced the ſame Arte, to a more effectuall purpoſe; namely, as a principall remedy not onely to reſiſt, but to defeat far greater troopes of horſe, then the enemy was able to oppoſe againſt them. Whereof the moſt ancient memorie which hiſtorie mentioneth, is recorded by Liuie, in the ſecond Punick warre, at the ſiege of Capua, vnder the regiment of Quintus Fuluius the Conſull: where it is ſaid, that in all their conflicts, as the Romaine legions returned with the better; ſo their caualrie was alwaies put to the worſt: & therefore they inuented this meanes, to make that good by Arte, which was wanting in force.

Out of the whole army were taken the choiſeſt young men, both for ſtrength and agilitie, and to them were giuen little round bucklers, and 7 darts apeece in ſtead of their other weapons; theſe ſouldiers practiced to ride behind the horſemen,

men, and speedilie to light from the horses at a watch-word giuen, and so to charge the Enemie on foote. And when by exercise they were made so expert, that the nouelty of the inuention no whit affrighted them, the Romaine horsemen went forth to incounter with the enemy, euery man carying his foot souldiour behind him; who at the encounter suddainly alighting, charged vpon the enemy with such a furie, that they followed them in slaughter to the gates of Capua. And hence, saith Liuie, grew the first institution of the Velites: which euer after that time were inrolled with the legions. The author of this stratagem, is said to be one Q. Nauius, a Centurion, and was honourablie rewarded by Fuluius the Consull, for the same.

Salust, in the historie of Iugurth, saith, that Marius mingled the Velites with the Caualrie of the associates, *vt quacunque inuaderent equitatus hostium propulsarent.* The like practice was vsed by Cæsar, as appeareth in the 3 book of the Ciuil war; sauing that in stead of the Velites, he mingled with his horsmen, 400 of the lustiest of his legionarie souldiers, to resist the caualrie of Pompey, while the rest of his Armie passed ouer the riuer Genusum, after the ouerthrow he had at Dyrrachium: *qui tantum profecere*, saith the text; *Vt equestri prælio commisso, pellerent omnes, complures interficerent, ipsique incolumes ad agmen se reciperent.* Many other places might bee recited: but these are sufficient to proue, that the greatest Captaines of auncient times, strengthened their caualrie with footmen dispersed amongst them. The Romane horsemen, saith Polibius, at the first, caried but a weake limber pole, or staffe, & a little round buckler; but afterwards, they vsed the furniture of the Grecians: which Iosephus affirmeth to be a strong launce or staffe, and three or foure darts in a quiuer, with a buckler, and a long sword by their right side. The vse of their launce was most effectuall when they charged in troope, pouldron to pouldron; and that manner of fight afforded no meanes to intermingle foot-men: but when they vsed their dartes, euery man got what aduantage of ground hee could, as our Carbines for the most part do, & so the foot-men might haue place among them: or otherwise, for so good an aduantage, they would easily make place for the foot-men to serue among them. But, howsoeuer it was, it appeareth by this circumstance, how little the Romaines feared troopes of horse, considering that the best meanes to defeate their horse, was by their foote companies. But to make it more plaine, of many examples I will onely alleage two; the one out of Liuie, to proue that the Romaine horsemen were not comparable for seruice to foot-men: the other out of Hirtius, to shew the same effect against strangers, and Numidian horsemen.

Lib. 6.

Lib. 3. de excid.

Lib. 3.

De bello Africano.

In the Consulships of L. Valerius, and Marcus Horatius, Valerius, hauing fortunately ouerthrowne the Equi and the Volsci, Horatius proceeded with as great courage in the warre against the Sabines; wherein it happened, that in the day of battell, the Sabines reserued two thousand of their men to giue a fresh assault vpon the left Cornet of the Romaines, as they were in conflict: vvhich tooke such effect, that the legionarie foote-men of that Cornet were forced to retreit. VVhich the Romaine horsemen (beeing in number six hundred) perceiuing, and not being able with their horse to make head against the

enemy; they presently forsooke their horses, and made haste to make good the place on foote; wherein they caried themselues so valiantly, that in a moment of time they gaue the like aduantage to their footemen, against the Sabines; and then betooke thēselues againe to their horses, to pursue the enemy in chase as they fled. For the second point; the Numidians, as Cæsar witnesseth, were the best horsemen that euer he met with, and vsed the same Arte as the Germaines did, mingling among them light-armed footemen. An Ambuscado of these Numidians charging the legions vpon a suddaine, the historie saith, that *primo impetu legionis Equitatus & leuis armatura hostium, nullo negotio, loco pulsa & deiecta est de colle.* And, as they sometimes retired, and sometimes charged vpon the rereward of the Armie, according to the maner of the Numidian fight; the historie saith, *Cæsariani interim, non amplius tres aut quatuor milites veterani si se conuertissent & pila viribus contorta in Numidas infestos coniecissent, amplius duorum millium ad vnum terga vertebant.* So that to free himselfe of this inconuenience, he tooke his horsemen out of the rereward, and placed his legions there, *ita vim hostium per legionarium militem cōmodius sustinebat.* And euer as he marched, he caused 300 souldiers of euery legion to be free and without burthen, that they might bee ready vpon all occasions, *Quos in Equitatum Labieni immisit. Tum Labienus, conuersis equis, signorum conspectu perterritus turpissimè contendit fugere, multis eius occisis, compluribus vulneratis, milites legionarij ad sua se recipiunt signa, atque iter inceptum ire cæperunt.* I alleage the very words of the history, to take away all suspicion of falsifying, or wresting any thing to an affected opinion. If any man will looke into the reason of this disparitie, he shall find it to be chiefely the worke of the Romaine pile (an vnresistable weapon) and the terrour of horsemen; especially, when they were cast with the aduantage of the place, & fell so thick, that there was no meanes to auoide them.

But to make it plaine, that any light armed footmen could better make head against a troope of horse, then the Caualrie of their owne partie, although they beare but the same weapons: Let vs consider how nimble and ready they were that fought on foote, either to take an aduantage, or to shunne and auoide anie danger; casting their darts with far greater strength and more certaintie, then the horsemen could doe. For, as the force of all the engines of old time, as the *Balistæ, Catapultæ* and *Tolenones*, proceedeth from that stabilitie and resting Center, which nature affordeth, as the onely strength and life of the engine: so what force soeuer a man maketh, must principally proceede from that firmenesse and stay, which Nature, by the earth, or some other vnmoueable rest, giueth to the body, from whence it taketh more or lesse strength, according to the violence which it performeth; as hee that lifteth vp a waight from the ground, by so much treadeth heauier vpon the earth, by how much the thing is heauier then his body. The footmen therefore, hauing a surer stay to counterpoise their forced motion, then the horsemen had, cast their darts with greater violence, and consequently with more certaintie.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Cæsar preuenteth Ariouistus of his purpose, by *making two Campes.*

Cæsar.

When Cæsar perceiued that Ariouistus meant nothing lesse then to fight, but kept himselfe within his Camp: least peraduenture he should intercept the Sequans, & others of his Associates, as they came with conuoies of Corne to the Romaines, beyond that place wherein the Germaines aboad; about six hundred pases from their Camp, he chose a ground meet to incamp in: and marching thither in three battells, commaunded two of them to stand ready in Armes, and the third to fortifie the Campe. Ariouistus sent sixteene thousand foote, and all his horse, to interrupt the souldiers, and hinder the intrenchment. Notwithstanding, Cæsar, as he had before determined, caused two battells to withstand the enemy, and the third to goe through with the worke: vvhich beeing ended, he left there two legions, & part of the associate forces, and led the other foure legions backe againe into the greater Campe.

The next day, Cæsar, according to his custome, brought his whole power out of both his Campes; and marching a little from the greater Campe, hee put his men in array, and profered battell to the enemie: but perceiuing that Ariouistus vvould not stirre out of his trenches; about noone, hee conuaied his Armie into their seuerall Campes. Then at length, Ariouistus sent part of his forces to assault the lesser Campe. The incounter continued very sharp on both parts, vntill the euening; and at sunne-setting, after many wounds giuen and taken, Ariouistus conuaied his Army againe into their Campe. And as Cæsar made inquirie of the Captiues, what the reason vvas that Ariouistus refused battell, hee found this to be the cause. The Germaines had a custome, that the women should by casting of Lots, and Southsaying, declare whether it were for their behoofe to fight or no: and that they found by their Arte, the Germaines could not get the victorie, if they fought before the new Moone.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

FIrst, we may obserue what especiall importance, this manner of incamping carried in that absolute discipline which the Romans obserued, and by which they conquered so many Nations: for, besides the safetie which it affoorded their owne troops, it serued for a hold well fenced and manned, or as it were a strong fortified towne in any part of the field, where they saw aduantage: and as oft as they thought it expedient, either to fortifie themselues, or impeach the enemy, by cutting off his passages, hindering his attempts, blocking vp his Campe, besides many other aduantages, all auerring the saying of Domitius Corbulo: *dolabra vincendũ esse hostẽ:*

a thing long time neglected, but of late happily renewed, by the Commaunders of ſuch forces as ſerue the States, in the vnited Prouinces of Belgia: whom time and practice of the warres hath taught to entertaine the vſe of the ſpade, & to hold it in as great reputation as any weapons whatſoeuer, which may bee thought worthy executioners of the deeds of Armes.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

IN the ſecond place wee may obſerue, that there was no Nation ſo barbarous (for, I vnderſtand the Germaines to bee as barbarous, in regard of the motions of religion, as any knowne Nation of that time, beeing in a Climate ſo neere the North, that it afforded no contemplation at all) that could not make vſe in their greateſt affaires, of that ſuperſtition to which their mind was naturally inthralled; and forge propheſies and diuinations, as well to ſtir vp, as to moderate the irregular motions of a multitude, according as they might beſt ſerue to aduantage their proceedings. Neither did Cæſar let ſlippe the occaſion of making vſe of this their religion: for, vnderſtanding by their priſoners, that their diuinations forbadde them to fight before the new Moone, he vſed all the meanes he could to prouoke them to battell; that their religious opinion of miſchiefing, might preiudice their reſolution to returne Conquerers. Which may ſerue to prooue, that a ſuperſtitious people are ſubiect to many inconueniences, which induſtry or Fortune may diſcouer to their ouerthrowe.

It is recorded, that Columbus, beeing Generall of ſome forces, which Ferdinando king of Caſtile ſent to diſcouer the Weſt Indies, and ſuffering great penurie for want of victuals in the Ile of Iamaica: after that hee had obſerued how the Ilanders worſhipped the Moone, and hauing knowledge of an Eclipſe that was ſhortly after to happen; hee told the inhabitants, that vnleſſe they would furniſh him with ſuch neceſſaries as he wanted for the time, the vvrath of their God ſhould quickly appeare towards them, by changing his bright ſhining face into obſcuritie and darkneſſe: which was no ſooner happened, but the poore Indians, ſtrooken with a ſuperſtitious feare of that which the courſe of nature required, kept nothing backe that might aſſiſt their enemies, to depopulate and ouer-runne their owne Country.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Cæsar seeketh meanes to giue them battell, *and the Germans dispose themselues* thereunto.

THe next day, Cæsar left a sufficient Guarizon in each of his Campes; and, forasmuch as the number of his legionarie souldiers vvas small, in respect of the multitude of the Germaines, hee placed all the Auxiliarie troopes for a shew, before the lesser Camp: and putting his legions in a triple battell, he marched towards the Camp of Ariouistus. And then at length, vvere the Germaines constrained to bring out their power, setting euerie Tribe and people by themselues, in like distance and order of battell (as, the Harudes, Marcomans, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusians and Sweuians) and inuironing their vvhole Army with Cartes and cariage, that there might be no hope at all left to saue any man by flight. And in these they placed their vvomen, that they by their out-stretched hands and teares, moouing pittie, might implore the souldiers, as they descended by course to the battell, not to deliuer them into the bondage and thraldome of the Romaines. Cæsar.

Cæsar, assigned to euery legion a Legat and a Questor, that euery man might haue an eye-witnesse of his valour: and he himselfe, began the battell vvith the right Cornet, forasmuch as he perceiued that part of Ariouistus Armie to be the vveakest.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THe Romaines, euen from the infancie of their state, were euer zealous admirers of true honour, and alwaies desired to behold with the eye, to what measure of vertue euery man had attained; that the tongue with greater feruencie of spirit, might sound out the celebration of *Macte virtute*; which imported more honour then any wealth that could be heaped vpon them. Neither was this the least part of their wisedome; considering that the most pretious things that are, lose much much of their worth, if they be not suted with other correspondent natures, whose sympathy addeth much more excellencie then is discerned, when they appeare by themselues without such assistance. For, how small is the beautie which Nature hath giuen to the eye-pleasing Diamond, when it is not adorned with an artificiall forme? or what perfection can the forme giue, without a foile to strengthen it? or what good is in either of them, if the light doe not illuminate it? or what auaile all these, where there wanteth an eye to admire it, a iudgement to value it, and an hart to imbrace it? Such a vnion hath Nature imprinted in the diuersitie

749b

ſitie of creatures concurring to perfection, and eſpecially in morall actions, in whoſe cariage there is a far greater exactneſſe of correſpondencie required to approue them honorable, then was requiſite to make the iewel beautifull. And this did Cæſar in all his battels; amongſt the reſt, that at Aleſia is particularlie noted in this manner, *Quod in conſpectu imperatoris res gerebatur, neque rectè aut turpiter factum celari poterat, vtroſque & laudis cupiditas & timor ignominiæ ad virtutem excitabat.* And when Liuie would expreſſe how valiantly an action was caried, hee ſaith no more but *in conſpect imperatoris res gerebatur:* which is as much to ſay, that foraſmuch as the Romaines were diligent obſeruers of euery mans worth, rewarding vertue with honour, and cowardice with reproch; euery man bent his whole indeauour to deſerue the good opinion of his Generall, by diſcharging that dutie which he owed to the Commonwealth, with all loyaltie and faithfulneſſe of ſpirit.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THe Romaines had foure formes of the front of their battell: the firſt was called *Acies recta*, when neither the cornets nor the battell was aduaunced one before another, but were all caried in a right line, and made a ſtraight front; and this was their moſt vſuall manner of imbattailing.

The ſecond forme of the front was called *obliqua*, when as one of the cornets was aduanced neerer vnto the enemy then the reſt, to beginne the battell: and this was commonly as Vegetius noteth, the right cornet: for the right cornet of an Army had great aduantage againſt the left of the enemies, in regard of their vweapons and furniture. But Cæſar did it in this place, becauſe he perceiued that the enemy was weakeſt in that part; following a maxime of great authoritie, that the weakeſt part of an enemie, is in the beginning to be charged with the ſtrength of an Armie: for, ſo fauourable are mens iudgements to that which is already happened, that the ſequell of euery action, dependeth for the moſt part vpon the beginning. *Dimidiũ facti qui bene cœpit habet*, ſaith a Poet: and not without great reaſon, ſo forcible continually is the beginning, and ſo connexed to the ſequell by the nature of a precedent cauſe, that the end muſt needs erre from the common courſe, when it doth not participate of that qualitie which was in the beginning. Neither can there be any good end without a good beginning: for, although the beginning be oftentimes diſaſtrous & vnluckie, and the end fortunate and happy, yet before it came to that end, there was a fortunate beginning: for, the bad beginning, was not the beginning of a good, but of an euill end. And therefore, that his men might foreſee a happy end in a good beginning, it behooued him with the beſt of his Army to aſſault the weakeſt part of the enemie.

The third forme of the front, is called *Sinuata*, when both the cornets are aduanced forward, and the battell ſtandeth backward off from the enemy, after the faſhion of a halfe moone. Scipio vſed it in Spaine, hauing obſerued ſome

daies

daies before, that the enemy continually ſo diſpoſed of the battell, that his beſt ſouldiers were alwaies in the midſt; and therefore Scipio put all his old ſouldiours in the cornets, and brought them out firſt to charge vpon the weakeſt part of the enemy, that thoſe might decide the controuerſie, before the other that were in the midſt could come to fight.

The laſt forme is called *gibboſa*, or *gibbera Acies*; when the battell is aduanced, and the two cornets lag behind. This forme did Haniball vſe in the battell of Cannas; but with this Art, that hee ſtrengthened his two cornets with the beſt of his ſouldiers, and placed his weakeſt in the middeſt, that the Romaines following the retreit of the battell, which was eaſily repeld, might bee incloſed on each ſide with the two cornets.

CHAP. XX.

The Battell betweene Cæſar and Ariouiſtus.

The ſigne of the battell being therevpon giuen, our men charged vpon the enemy very fiercely; and they on the other ſide, returned ſo ſpeedy a counterbuffe, that the legions had no time to caſt their piles, and in that regard, made haſte to betake themſelues to their ſwords: But the Germaines, according to their manner, putting themſelues into a Phalanx, receiued the force of their ſwords. In the battell, there were many legionary ſouldiours ſeene to leape vpon the Phalanx, and to pull vp with their hands, the targets that couered it, and ſo to wound and kill thoſe that were vnderneath: and ſo the left Cornet of the enemy was ouerthrowne and put to flight. Cæſar.

Now, while the right Cornet was thus buſied, the left Cornet was ouercharged vvith an vnequall multitude of the Germaines: vvhich young Craſſus the Generall of the horſe no ſooner perceiued (hauing more ſcope and libertie then any of the Commaunders that vvere in the battell) hee ſent tertiam Aciem, *the third battell, to reskew and aide their fellowes that were in danger; by meanes whereof, the fight vvas renewed, and all the enemy was put to flight, and neuer looked backe, vntill they came to the Rhene, which was about fiue miles from the place where they fought. Where, ſome few of them ſaued themſelues by ſwimming: others found ſome boate, and ſo eſcaped. Ariouiſtus, lighting vpon a little Barke tied to the ſhore, recouered the other ſide, & ſo ſaued himſelfe: the reſt, were all ſlaine by the horſemen. Ariouiſtus had two vviues: one a Sweuian, whom he brought with him from home; and the other, of Noronberge, the ſiſter of King Voccion, ſent vnto him by her brother into Gallia, and maried there: both theſe periſhed in that fight. His two daughters likewiſe being there, one was ſlaine, and the other taken.*

As Cæſar purſued the Germaine horſemen, it was his chaunce to light vpon Valerius Procillus, as he was drawne vp and downe by his Keepers, bound in three chaines: which accident, was as gratefull to him as the victorie it ſelfe; beeing ſo

749b

ſo fortunate to recouer his familiar friend, and a man of ſort in the Prouince, vvhom the barbarous enemy (contrary to the law of Nations) had caſt in priſon. Neither vvould Fortune by the loſſe of him, abate any thing of ſo great pleaſure and contentment: for, he reported, that in his owne preſence, they had three ſeuerall times caſt lots, whether he ſhould be burned aliue; and ſtill eſcaped by the fortune of the lots: And M. Titius was found in like manner, and brought vnto him. The fame of this battell being caried beyond the Rhene, the Sweuians that vvere come to the banks of Rhene, returned home againe: vvhom the inhabibants neere vpon that riuer purſued, finding them terrified and diſtracted, and ſlew a great number of them.

Cæſar, hauing thus ended two great vvarres in one Sommer, hee brought his Armie into their vvintering Campes, ſome-what ſooner then the time of the yeere required: and leauing Labienus to commaund them, himſelſe returned into the hither Gallia, to keepe Courts and publique Diets.

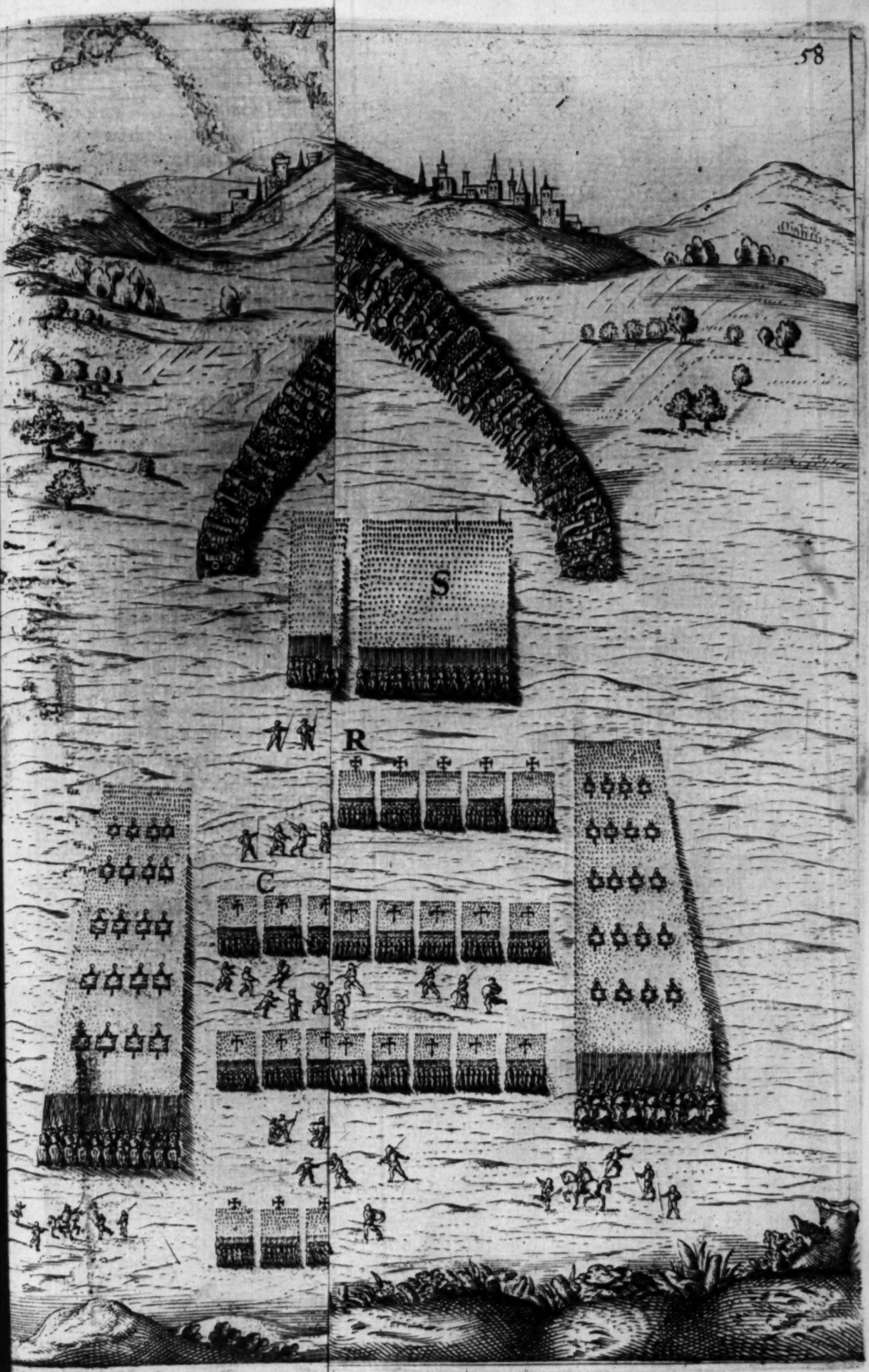
THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THis Phalanx, here mentioned, can hardly be proued to be the right Macedonian Phalanx; but wee are rather to vnderſtand it to bee ſo tearmed, by reaſon of the cloſe and compact imbattailing, rather then in any other reſpect: and it reſembled much a *teſtudo*, as I ſaid of the Heluetian Phalanx. Secondly, I obſerue, that Cæſar kept the old rule concerning their diſcipline in fight: for, although the name of *Triaries* be not mentioned in his hiſtorie; yet he omitted not the ſubſtance: which was, to haue *primam, ſecundam, & tertiam Aciem*; and that *prima Acies* ſhould beginne the battell, and the ſecond ſhould come freſh and aſsiſt them: or peraduenture if the enemy were many and ſtrong, the firſt and ſecond battell vvere ioyned together, and ſo charged vpon the enemie with greater furie and violence; but at all aduentures, the third battell was euer in *ſubſidio*, as they tearmed it, to ſuccour any part that ſhould be ouercharged: which was a thing of much conſequence, and of great wiſedome. For, if wee either reſpect the incouragement of the ſouldiours, or the caſualtie of Fortune, what could bee more added to their diſcipline in this behalfe, then to haue a ſecond and a third ſuccour, to giue ſtrength to the fainting weakeneſſe of their men, and to repaire the diſaduantage which any accident ſhould caſt vpon them? or if their valour were equally ballanced, and victorie ſtood doubtfull which of the two parties ſhe ſhould honour, theſe alwaies ſtept in, beeing freſh, againſt wearie & ouerlaboured ſpirits, and ſo drew victorie in deſpight of caſualtie, vnto themſelues.

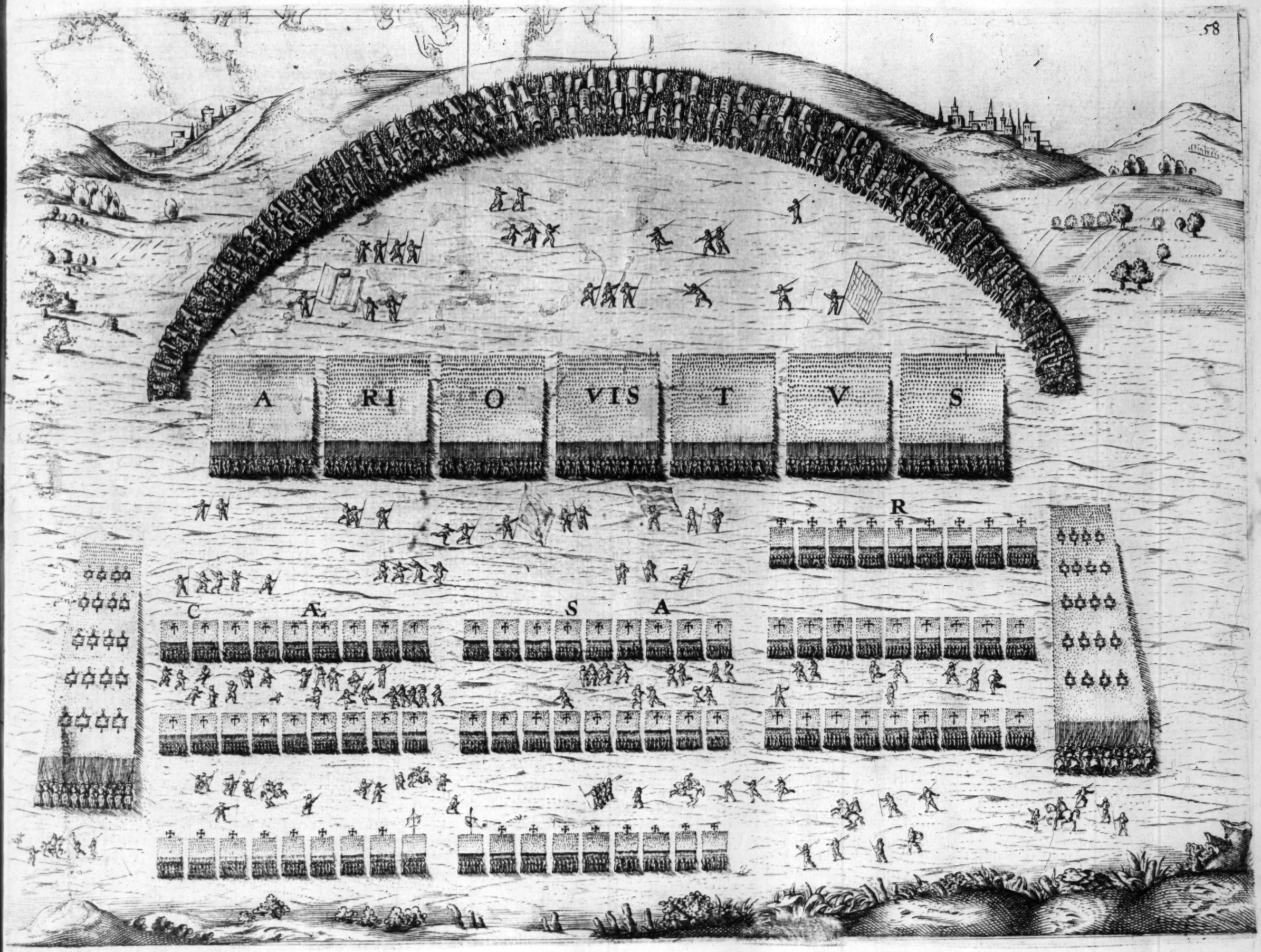
THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

The vſe of lots.

COncerning vſe of lottes, it ſhall not be amiſſe to looke into the nature of them; beeing in former times ſo generall, that there was no Nation, ciuill or barbarous, but were directed in their greateſt affaires, by the ſentence of lots. As wee may not refuſe for an vndoubted



749b


A
RI
O
VIS
T
V
S
R
C
A
S
A

doubted truth, that which Salomon ſaith in the 16 of Prouerbs; The lottes are caſt into the lap, but the direction thereof belongeth to the Lord: through the knowledge whereof, Ioſua was directed to take Achan, the Mariners Ionas, & the Apoſtles to conſecrate Matthias; So, whether the heathen and barbarous people, whoſe blindneſs in the way of truth, could direct them no further then to ſenſeleſſe ſuperſtition, & put them in mind of a dutie which they owed; but could not tell them what it was, nor how to be performed: whether theſe, I ſay, were perſwaded that there was any ſupernaturall power in their lotteries, which directed the action to the decree of deſtinie, & as the Gods would haue it, it remaineth doubtfull.

Ariſtotle, the wiſeſt of the heathen, concerning things naturall, nameth that euent caſuall, or proceeding from Fortune, of which the reaſon of man could aſsigne no cauſe, or (as he ſaith) which hath no cauſe. So that whatſoeuer happened in any action, beſides the intent of the agent and workman, was tearmed an effect of Fortune, or chance of hab-nab: For, all other effects, which depended vpon a certaintie and definite cauſe, were neceſſarily produced; and therfore could not be caſuall, or ſubiect to the inconſtancie of chance. And becauſe many and ſundry ſuch chances daily happened, which like *terræ filij* had no Father, and could not be warranted as lawfull children, either to nature, or to reaſon, by the appearance of an efficient cauſe, they reduced them all to the power of Fortune; as the principall efficient and ſoueraigne Motor, of all ſuch vnexpected euents: that is, they made nothing elſe the Gouerneſſe, and directreſſe of many things. Which afterward grew to ſuch credit amongſt men, that it ſurpaſſed in dignity all naturall cauſes, and was deified with celeſtial honour, as the Poet ſaith: *Nos te facimus Fortuna deam cæloque locamus.* By the prouidence of this blind Goddeſſe, which held her Deitie by the tenure of mens ignorance, were all caſuall actions directed, and eſpecially lots; the euent whereof, depended onely vpon her pleaſure and decree: neither could their direction be aſsigned to any other power; for, then their nature had been altered from chance to certaintie, and the euent could not haue beene called *Sors*, but muſt haue been reputed in the order of neceſſarie effects, whereof diſcourſe of reaſon acknowledgeth a certaine foregoing cauſe. Whereby we ſee vpon how weake an axletree, the greateſt motions of the godleſſe world were turned, hauing irregularitie and vncertaintie, for the *intelligentiæ*, that gouerned their reuolutions. All heerein all ſorts of men (although in diuers reſpects) reſted as well contented, as if an Oracle had ſpoken vnto them, and reuealed the myſteries of fatall deſtinie.

Rome directed the maine courſe of her gouernment, by the fortune of this mocke deſtinie: For, although their Conſuls & Tribunes were elected by the people, who pleaſed their owne fancie with the free choice of their Commanders, and ſuted their obedience with a well liking authoritie: yet the publique affaires, which each Conſull was ſeuerally to manage, was ſhared out by lots. For, if an enemy were entered into their confines, to depopulate and waſte their territories, the lots aſsigned this Conſull for the gouernment of the Citty; and the other to commaund the legions, and to manage the war.

If

749b

If forces were to be ſent into diuers Prouinces, & againſt ſeuerall enemies, neither the Senate nor the people could giue to either Conſull his taske: but their peculiar charges were authoriſed by lottes. If any extraordinary action were to be done in the Cittie, as the dedication of a Temple, the ſanctifying of the Capitoll after a pollution, *Sors omnia verſat*, did all in all. And yet (notwithſtanding the weake foundation of this practiſe in their Theologie and deepeſt diuinity) we may not thinke but theſe skilfull Architectors of that abſolute gouernment, wherein vertue ioyned with true wiſedome, to make an vnexampled patterne: we may not thinke, I ſay, but they foreſaw the manifold danger, which in the courſe of common actions could no otherway be preuented, but by the vſe of lots. For, when things are equally leueled between diuers obiects, and runne with indifferencie to equall ſtations, there muſt be ſome controlling power, to draw the current towardes one Coaſt, and to appropriate it vnto one chanell, that the order of Nature bee not inuerſed, nor a well eſtabliſhed gouernment diſturbed: So the ſtate of Rome, caſting many things with equall charge vpon her two ſoueraigne Magiſtrates, which could not be performed but by one of them; what better meanes could there be inuented, to intereſſe the one in that office, and to diſcharge the other, then to appoint an Arbiter, whoſe decree exceeded humane reaſon? Of which, it could not bee ſaid why it was ſo, but that it was ſo: for, if the wiſedome of the Senate had been called to counſell, or the voices of the people calculated to determine of the matter; it might eaſily haue burſt out into ciuill diſcord, conſidering the often contentions betweene the Senate and the people, the factions of Clients, and the conſtant mutabilitie of euerie mans priuate affections neceſſarily inclining vnto one, although their worth were equall, & by true reaſon indiſcernable; which might haue made the one proud of that which peraduenture he had not, and caſt the other lower then would haue well beſeemed his vertues: and therefore to cut off theſe, with many other inconueniences, they inuented lots; vvhich without either reaſon or will, might decide ſuch controuerſies.

By this it appeareth, how little the ancient Law-makers reſpected the ground and reaſon of an ordinance, ſo the commoditie were great, and the vſe important to the good of the State: for, as they ſaw the thing it ſelfe to be caſuall, ſo they ſaw that caſuall things are ſometimes more neceſſarie, then demonſtratiue concluſions: neither ought the nature, and ſpeculatiue conſideration of Lawes and Statutes, belong to the common people: but the execution and obedience thereof, maketh the Common-weale flouriſh. And thus endeth the firſt Commentarie of Cæſar his warre in Gallia.

THE

THE SECOND COMMENTARIE OF THE WARS IN GALLIA.

THE ARGVMENT.

LIke as when a heauy body lieth vpon the skirt of a larger continued quantitie, although it couer but a smal parcell of the whole surface; yet the other quarters are burthened & kept vnder with a proportionable measure of that waight; and through the vnion and continuation which bindeth all the parts into one Totality, feele the same suppression which hath really seised but vpon their fellow part: In like maner the Belgæ, inhabiting the furthest skirt of that triple Continent, seemed to repine at that heauy burthen, which the Romane Empire had laid vpō the Prouince, the Hedui, & other States of that kingdome. And least it might in time be further remoued, and laide directly vpon their shoulders, they thought it expedient whil'st they felt it but by participiation, to gather their seuerall forces into one head, and try whether they could free their neighbour Nations from so greeuous a yoake; or at the least keep it from comming any neerer vnto themselues. And this is the Argument of this second booke; which diuideth it selfe into two parts: the first containing the warres betweene Cæsar and all the States of Belgia vnited togither; the second recording the battailes which he made with some of the States thereof in particular, as time and occasion gaue him meanes to effect it.

CHAP. I.

Cæsar hasteth to his Armie, marcheth towards the Confines of the Belgæ, and taketh in the men of Rheimes.

THE report of this confederacie beeing brought vnto Cæsar, whileſt he wintered beyond the Alpes, as well by Letters from Labienus, as by the common heare say of the world: he leuied two new legions in Lumbardie, and sent them by Q. Pedius into Gallia: and assoone as there was any forrage in the fieldes, he himselfe came to the Army. At his arriuall, vnderstanding the Sebones and the reſt of Cæsar.

the Galles that bordered vpon the Belgæ (to whome hee gaue in charge to learne what was done amongſt them) that there was nothing in Belgia but muſtering of ſoldiers, and gathering their forces into one head: he thought it not ſafe to make any further delay; but hauing made prouiſion of corne, hee drew out his Armie from their wintering campes, and within fifteene daies he came to the borders of the Belgæ. Aſſoone as he was come thither, which was much ſooner then was looked for; the men of Rheimes being the vttermoſt of the Belgæ, next adioyning to the Celtæ, thought it beſt to entertaine a peaceable reſolution, and ſent Iccius & Antebrogius, two of the chiefe mẽ of their State, vnto Cæſar, to ſubmit thẽſelues and all that they had, to the mercy of the Romane Empire; affirming that they were innocent both of the counſell of the Belgæ, and of their conſpiracie againſt the Romanes. For proofe whereof they were ready to giue hoſtages, to receiue them into their townes, & to furniſh them with corne or what other thing they ſtood in need of. That the reſt of the Belgæ were all in Armes, and the Germains on the other ſide of the Rhene had promiſed to ſend them ſuccor: yea their madneſs was ſo great, that they themſelues were not able to hold backe the Sueſſones from that attempt, being their brethren & kinſmen in blood, and vſing the ſame lawes and cuſtomes as they did, hauing both one magiſtrate and one forme of gouernment; but they would needs ſupport the ſame quarrell which the reſt of the Belgæ had vndertaken.

OBSERVATION.

I Might heere take occaſion to ſpeak ſomwhat of a particular reuolte in a generall cauſe; and howe a confederate State may in regard of their owne ſafetie forſake a common quarrell, or whatſoeuer the vniuerſall ſocietie hath enacted preiudiciall to their common weale; but that I onely intend to diſcouer warlike practiſes, leauing theſe queſtions of lawe and policie to men of greater iudgement and better experience. Onely I obſerue in the behalfe of the Romaine gouernment, that ſuch cities as yeelded to the Empire, and became tributarie to their treaſurie (howſoeuer they were otherwiſe combined by confederacie) ſeldome or neuer repented them of their facte, in regard of the noble patronage which they found in that State, and of the due reſpect obſerued towards them.

CHAP. II.

The power of the Belgæ, and their prepa-*tation for this warre.*

Cæſar.

Cæſar inquiring of the Embaſſadors which came from Rheimes what the States were that had taken Armes, and what they were able to doe in matter of Warre: found the Belgæ to be deſcended frõ the Germaines; who paſſing ouer the Rhene, time of out mind, droue away the Galles and ſeated themſelues in their poſſeſſions: and that theſe only of all the Galles kept the Cimbri & Teutoni frõ entering into their

their country: and in that regard they chalenged to themſelues great authoritie, and vaunted much in their feats of Armes. Concerning their number, they had theſe aduertiſemẽts: the [a] *Bellouaci exceeded al the Belga in proweſſe, authority, and number of men, and promiſed 60000. men: and in that regard they demanded the adminiſtration of the whole warre. The* [b] *Sueſſones inhabiting a large and fertile countrey, and hauing 12 walled townes, promiſed to ſet out 50000. The* [c] *Neruÿ as many; the* [d] *Attrebatÿ 15000. the* [e] *Ambiani 10000. the Vellocaſſÿ, and* [f] *Veromandui as many; the* [g] *Morini 25000. the Menapÿ 7000. the Caletani 10000. the Catuaci 19000. the* [h] *Eburones, Condruſones, and others 40000. Cæſar incouraging the mẽ of Rheimes to perſiſt in their faithfulneſs to the Romane Empire, propounded vnto them great offers and liberall promiſes of recompence, and commaunded all their ſenate to come before him, and bring with them their Noble mens Sonnes to be giuen vp for hoſtages: which they diligently performed by a day appointed. And hauing receiued two eſpeciall aduertiſemẽts from the men of Rheimes, the one concerning the multitude of the enemie; and the other touching the ſingular opinion which was generally held of their manhood: he prouided for the firſt by perſwading Diuitiacus the Heduan, that it much imported the whole courſe of thoſe buſineſſes, to keepe aſunder the powre of the enemie; and to withhold their forces from making a head, that ſo he might auoid the danger of encountering ſo great a power at one inſtant. Which might eaſily be brought to paſſe, if the Hedui would enter with a ſtrong power into the Marches of the Bellouaci, and ſacke their Territories with ſword and confuſion: which Diuitiacus promiſed to performe, and to that purpoſe he ſpeedily returned into his country. Vpon the ſecond aduertiſement, which preſented vnto him the great valour and manhood of his enemies, hee reſolued not to bee too haſtie in giuing them battell, but firſt to proue by skirmiſhing with his horſemen what his enemies by their proweſſe could doe, and what his owne men durſt doe.*

[a] *The country about Beauuois.*
[b] *The country about Soiſſons*
[c] *The people about Turnai*
[d] *Arras*
[e] *Amyens.*
[f] *Vermandois.*
[g] *Terwene*
[h] *Liege.*
296000. in all.

OBSERVATION.

THis rule of making trial of the worth of an enemy, hath alwaies been obſerued by prudent & graue commanders, as the ſureſt principle wheron the true iudgement of the euent may be groũded. For, if the doctrine of the old Philoſophers, which teacheth that the worde *non putabã* was neuer heard out of a wiſe mans mouth, haue any place in the courſe of humane actions: it ought eſpecially to be regarded in managing theſe maine points, whereon the State of Kingdomes and Empires dependeth. For, vnleſſe we be perſuaded that blind Chance directeth the courſe of this world with an vncertaine confuſion, and that no foreſight can ſway the ballance of our hap into either part of our fortunes: I ſee no reaſon why we ſhould not by al meanes indeuor to ground our knowledge vpon true cauſes, and leuel our proceedings to that certainty whith riſeth from the things themſelues. And this is the rather to be vrged, inaſmuch as our leaders are oftentimes deceiued whẽ they look no further then to match an enemie with equalitie of number, referring their valour to bee tried in the battell; not conſidering that the eye of it ſelfe cannot

diſcerne the difference betweene two champions of like preſence and outward cariage, vnles it ſee their ſtrength compared together and weighed as it were in the ſcale of triall: which Cæſar omitted not diligently to obſerue, before he would aduenture the hazard of battell. For, beſides his owne ſatisfaction, it gaue great encouragement to his men, when they ſaw themſelues able to countermatch an enemie, & knew their task to be ſubiect to their ſtrength: Neither did hee obſerue it onely at this inſtant, but throughout the whole courſe of his actions; for, we finde that he neuer incountered any enemie, but with ſufficient power, either in number or in valour, to make head againſt them: which equalitie of ſtrength, being firſt laid as a ſure foundation, he vſed his owne induſtrie and skill, and the diſcipline wherein his men were trained, as aduantages to ouerſway his aduerſarie: and ſo drew victorie maugre fortune vnto himſelfe, and ſeldome failed in any of his battels.

CHAP. III.

Cæſar paſſeth his Armie ouer the riuer * Axona, *leauing Titurius Sabinus incamped on the* other ſide with ſixe cohorts.

**La diſne.*

Caſar.

ASSOONE as Cæſar vnderſtood, as well by his diſcouerers, as from the men of Rheimes, that all the power of Belgæ was aſſembled together into one place, and was now making towards him no great diſtance off; he made all the haſte he could to paſſe his Armie ouer the Riuer Axona, which diuided the men of Rheimes from the other Belgæ. Whereby he brought to paſſe, that no enemy could come on the backe of him to work any diſaduantage: and that corne might be brought vnto him from Rheimes, and other citties without danger. And further, that hee might command the paſſage backe againe, as occaſion ſhould ſerue to his beſt aduantage, hee fortified a bridge which he found on the riuer, with a ſtrong guarriſon of men, and cauſed Titurius Sabinus a Legate, to incampe himſelfe on the other ſide of the riuer with ſixe cohorts, cõmanding him to fortifie his campe with a rampier of 12 foote in altitude, and a trench of 18 foote in breadth.

OBSERVATION.

IF it be demaunded, why Cæſar did paſſe his Armie ouer the riuer, leauing it on his backe, and did not rather attend the enemy on the other ſide, and ſo take the aduantage of hindring him, if hee ſhould attempt to paſſe ouer: I will ſet downe the reaſons in the ſequell of this warre, as the occurrences ſhal fall out to make them more euident. In the meane time, let vs enter into the particularitie of theſe ſixe cohortes, that we may the better iudge of ſuch troupes which were imploied in the ſeruices of this warre: but that wee may the better coniecture what number of ſouldiers theſe

theſe ſixe cohortes did containe; it ſeemeth expedient, a little to diſcourſe of the companies and regiments, which the Romans vſed in their Armies.

A legion what it was.

And firſt we are to vnderſtand, that the greateſt and chiefeſt regiment in a Roman Armie, was tearmed by the name of Legio: as Varro ſaith, *quòd leguntur milites in delectu:* or as Plutarch ſpeaketh, *quòd lecti ex omnibus eſſent militares;* ſo that it taketh the name Legio, of the choiſe & ſelecting of the ſoldiers. Romulus is ſaid to be the firſt author & founder of theſe legions, making euery legion to containe 3000. ſoldiers: but ſhortly after they were augmented, as Feſtus recordeth, vnto 4000: and afterward againe from 4000, to 4200. And that number was the common rate of a legion vntill Hannibal came into Italy, and then it was augmented to 5000: but that proportion continued onely for that time. And againe, whē Scipio went into Africke, the legions were increaſed to 6200 footmen, and 300 horſe. And ſhortly after the Macedonian warre, the legions that continued in Macedonie to keepe the Prouince from rebellion, conſiſted of 6000 footmen and 300. horſe. Out of Cæſar it cannot be gathered, that a legion in his time did exceede the number of 5000 men, but oftentimes is was ſhort of that number: for he himſelfe ſaith that in this warre in Gallia his ſoldiers were ſo waſted, that he had ſcarce 7000 men in two legions. And if we examine that place out of the 3. of the ciuill warre, where he ſaith, that in Pompei his Armie were 110 cohorts, which amoũted to the number of 55000 men: and being manifeſt as well by theſe number of cohorts, as by the teſtimony of diuers authors that Pompei his Armie conſiſted of 11 legions; if wee deuide 55000 into 11. parts, we ſhall find a legion to cõſiſt of 5000 men. Which number or thereabout, being generally knowne to be the vſũal rate of a legion, the Romans alwaies expreſſed the ſtrength of their Armie by the number of legions that were therein: as in this warre it is ſaid, that Cæſar had eight legions: which by this account might ariſe to 40000 men, beſides aſſociates, & ſuch as neceſſarily attended the Armie. Further, we are to vnderſtand, that euery legion had his peculiar name, by which it was knowne and diſtinguiſhed from the reſt: & that it tooke either from their order of muſter, or inrolement; as that legion, which was firſt inrolled, was called the firſt legion; and that which was ſecond in the choice, the ſecond legion; and ſo conſequently of the reſt; and ſo we reade in this hiſtorie, the ſeuenth, the eighth, the ninth, the tenth, the eleuenth and twelfth legion: or otherwiſe from the place of their warfare, and ſo we read of *legiones Germanicæ, Panonicæ, Britannicæ,* and ſuch others: and ſome time of their Generall, as *Auguſta, Claudia, Vitelliana legiones,* and ſo forth. Or to conclude, from ſome accident of qualitie, as *Rapax, Victrix, Fulminifera* & ſuch like. And thus much of the name and number of a legion: which I muſt neceſſarily diſtinguiſh into diuers kindes of ſoldiers, according to the firſt inſtitution of the old Romans, and the continuall obſeruation thereof vnto the decay of the Empire, before I come to the deſcription of theſe ſmaller parts whereof a legion was compounded.

Lib. 4. De vita Romuli.

Liu. lib. 22.

Tacitus 3. hiſt.

Velites.

Firſt therefore we are to vnderſtand, that after the Conſuls had made a generall choiſe and ſworne the ſouldiers, the Tribunes choſe out the youngeſt and pooreſt of all the reſt, and called them by the name of Velites. Their place

in regard of the other ſoldiers was both baſe & dishonorable: not only becauſe thy fought a far off, and were lightly armed; but alſo in regard they were commonly expoſed to the enemy, as our forlorne hopes are. Hauing choſen out a competent number for this kinde, they proceeded to the choiſe of them which they called Haſtati, a degree aboue the Velites, both in age and wealth, and tearmed them by the name of Haſtati; foraſmuch as at their firſt inſtitution they fought with a kind of Iauelin, which the Romanes called Haſta: but before Polybius his time they vſed Piles; notwithſtāding their ancient name continued vnto the later time of the Empire. The third choiſe which they made, was of the ſtrongeſt and luſtieſt bodied men, who for the prime of their age were called Principes: the reſt that remain'd were named Triarii, as Varro ſaith; *Quòd tertio ordine extremis ſubſidio deponũtur:* Theſe were alwaies the eldeſt and beſt experienced men, and were placed in the third diuiſion of the battell, as the laſt help and refuge in all extreamitie. Polybius ſaith, that in his time the Velites, Haſtati, and Principes, did conſiſt of 1200 men a peece; and the Triarii neuer exceeded the number of 600. although the generall number of a legiõ were augmented: wherof Lypſius alledgeth theſe reaſons; Firſt bicauſe theſe Triarii conſiſted of the beſt of the ſoldiors, and ſo might counteruaile a greater number in good worth and valour. Secondly, it ſeldome came to buckle with the enemie, but when the controuerſie grew very doubtfull. Laſtly, wee may well conieƈture that the voluntaries and extraordinary followers, ranged themſelues amongſt theſe Triaries, & ſo made the third battel equal to either of the former: but howſoeuer, they neuer exceeded the number of 600. And by this it appeareth, that in Polybius his time the common rate of a legion was 4200.

Haſtati.

Principes.

Lib. 6.

Lib. 1. de mil. Rom.

In this diuiſion of their men, conſiſted the ground of that well ordered diſcipline; for, in that they diſtinguiſhed them according to their yeeres and ability, they reduced their whole ſtrength into ſeuerall claſſes; and ſo diſpoſed of theſe different parts, that in the generall compoſition of their whole body, euerie part might be fitted with place & office, according as his worth was anſwerable to the ſame: and ſo they made not only a number in groſſe, but a number diſtinƈt by parts and properties; that from euery accident which met with any part of the Army, the iudgment might determine how much or how little it imported the whole bodie: beſides the great vſe which they made of this diſtinƈtion in their degrees of honour and preferment; a matter of no ſmall conſequence, in the excellencie of their gouernment.

The vſe of this diuiſion.

The diſtinƈtion of their companies.

Manipuli.

Ordo.

The ſouldiers, at their inrolement beeing thus diuided according to their yeeres and abilitie, they then reduced them into ſmaller companies, to make them fitter for command and fight: and ſo they diuided the Haſtati, Principes, and Triarii, each of them into 10 companies, making of thoſe three ſorts of ſoldiours 30 ſmall regiments, which they called Manipuli: And againe, they ſubdiuided euery maniple into two equal parts, and called them Ordo, which was the leaſt company in a legion; and according to the rate ſet down by Polybius, contained 60 ſoldiours. In euery Ordo there was a Centurion, or Captaine, and a Lieutenant, whom they named Optio or Tergiductor. The maniples of the Triarii were much leſſer thē the maniples of either the Haſtati or the Principes;

cipes; for as much as their whole band consisted but of 600. men. The Velites were put into no such companies, but were equally distributed amongst the other Maniples; and therefore the Hastati, Principes, and Triarii were called *subsignani milites*, to make a difference betweene them & the Velites, which were not diuided into bands; and so consequently had no ensigne of their own, but were distributed amongst the other companies: so that euery Maniple had 40. Velites attending vpon it. And now I come to the description of a cohort, which the history heere mentioneth.

Cohors. Lib. 3. de re rust.

The worde *Cohors* in latine doth signifie that part of ground which is commonly inclosed before the gate of a house; which from the same word wee call a court: and Varro giueth this reason of the metaphor. As in a farme house, saith he, many out-buildings ioyned together make one inclosure; so a cohort consisteth of seuerall maniples ioined together in one body. This cohort consisted of three maniples; for euerie legion had ten cohorts, which must necessarilie comprehend those thirty maniples: but these three maniples were not al of one and the same kind of soldiers, as three maniples of the Hastati, 3 of the Principes, and 3. of the Triarii, as Patricius in his Paralleli seemeth to affirme; for so there would haue remained an odde maniple in euery kind, that could not haue beene brought into any cohort: But a cohort contained a maniple of the Hastati, a maniple of the Principes, and a maniple of the Triarii; and so all the 30. maniples were included into 10. cohorts; and euery cohort was as a little legion; forasmuch as it consisted of all those sorts of souldiours that were in a legion. So that making a legion to containe 5000. men; a cohort had 500. and so these 6. cohorts, which he incamped on the other side of the riuer, vnder the command of Titurius Sabinus, contained 3000 soldiers: but if you make a legion to consist but of 4200 which was the more vsuall rate, there were 2520 soldiers in these sixe cohorts.

By this therefore it may appeare, that a legion consisted of foure sorts of soldiours, which were reduced into ten cohorts, and euery cohort contained 3. maniples; and euery maniple 2 orders; and euery order had his Centurion marching in the head of the troupe; and euery Centurion had his optionem, or Lieutanant, that stood in the taile of the troupe.

A legion ranged in battell.

When a legion stood ranged in battell ready to confront the enemie, the least body or squadron that it contained was a maniple; wherein the two orders were ioined together, making iointly ten in front, and twelue in file: and so euerie fiue files had their Centurion in front, & Lieutenant in the rereward, to direct them in all aduentures. In the time of the Emperours, their battailions consisted of a cohort, and neuer exceeded that number how great soeuer the Armie were.

The first order.

Polybius distinguishing a maniple into two centuries or orders, saith, that the Centurion first chosen by the Tribunes, commanded the right order, which was that order which stood on the right hand, knowne by the name of *Primus ordo*: and the Centurion elected in the second course, commanded the left order; and in the absence of either of them, hee that was present of them two, commanded the whole maniple. And so we finde that the Centurion of the first

3 *De bello ciuili.*

first place was called *Prior Centurio:* in which ſenſe Cæſar is to be vnderſtood, where he ſaith that all the Centurions of the firſt cohorte were ſlaine, *Præter principem priorem.* From whence we gather two ſpecialities: firſt, the priority betweene the Centurions of the ſame Maniple: for, a cohorte conſiſting of 3. Maniples, whereof the firſt Maniple were Triarii, the ſecond Principes, and the third Haſtati; and euery Maniple containing two orders; and euery order a Centurion: he ſaith, that al the Centurious of this cohort were ſlaine; ſauing the firſt or vpper Centurion of the Principes. The ſecond thing which I obſerue, is the title of the firſt cohort: for theſe 10. cohortes, whereof a Legion conſiſted, were diſtinguiſhed by degrees of worthineſs; and that which was held the worthieſt in the cenſure of the Electors, tooke the prioritie both of place and name, and was called the firſt cohort: the next, the ſecond cohort; and ſo conſequently vnto the tenth and laſt.

Primi cohors.

Neither did the Legions want their degrees of preheminence, both in imbattailing and in incamping, according either to the ſenioritie of their inrolement, or the fauor of their Generall, or their owne vertue: And ſo we reade that in theſe wars in Gallia, the tenth Legion had the firſt place in Cæſars Armie. And thus much concerning the diuiſions, and ſeuerall companies of a Legion, and the degrees of honour which they held in the ſame.

The benefit of this diſcipline.

Vpon this deſcription it ſhal not be amiſſe, briefely to lay open the moſt apparant commodities depending vpon this diſcipline; the excellencie whereof more plainely appeareth, being compared to that order, which Nature hath obſerued in the frame of her worthieſt creatures: for it is euident, that ſuch workes of Nature come neereſt to perfect excellẽcy, whoſe materiall ſubſtãce is moſt particularly diſtinguiſhed into parts, and hath euery part indued with that propertie, which beſt agreeth to his peculiar ſeruice. For, being thus furniſhed with diuerſitie of inſtruments, and theſe directed with fitting abilities; the creature muſt needs expreſſe many admirable effectes, and diſcouer the worth of an excellent nature: whereas thoſe other bodies, that are but ſlenderly laboured, and find leſſe fauour in Natures forge, being as abortiues, or barbarouſly compoſed, wanting the diuerſitie both of parts and faculties; are no way capable of ſuch excellent vſes, nor fit for ſuch diſtinct ſeruices, as the former that are directed with ſo many properties, & inabled with the power of ſo wel diſtinguiſht faculties. Which better workes of Nature the Romans imitated in the Architecture of their Army, diuiding it into ſuch neceſſary & ſeruiceable parts, as were beſt fitting al vſes & imploiments: as firſt Legions, and legions into cohorts, and cohorts into maniples, and maniples into centuries or orders, and theſe into files; wherein euery man knew his place, and kept the ſame without exchange or confuſion: and thus the vniuerſall multitude was by order diſpoſed into parts, vntill it came vnto a vnitie. For it cannot be denied, but that theſe centuries were in themſelues ſo ſenſiblie diſtinguiſhed, that euery ſouldiour carried in his minde the particular Mappe of his whole centurie: for in imbattailing, euery centurie was diſpoſed into 5. files, containing twelue in a file; whereof the leaders were alwaies certaine, and neuer changed but by death or ſome other ſpeciall occaſion: and euerie leader

leader knew his follower, and euery second knew the third man, and so consequently vnto the last.

Vpon these particularities it plainely appeareth, how easie a matter it was, to reduce their troupes into any order of a march or a battell, to make the front the flanke, or flanke front, when they were broken and disrankt to rallie them into any forme, when euery man knew both his owne and his fellowes station. If any companies were to be imploied vpon sudden seruice, the general Idea of the Armie being so deeply imprinted in the mind of the commanders, would not suffer them to erre in taking out such cõuenient troupes, both for number and qualitie, as might best agree with the safety of the Armie, or nature of the action. At all occasions and opportunities, these principles of aduantage offered thẽselues, as ready meanes, to put in execution any dessigne, or stratagem whatsoeuer: the proiect was no sooner resolued of, but euerie man could readily point out the companies that were fit to execute the intention. And which is more important, in regard of the life and spirit of euery such part, their sodalitie was sweetned, or rather strengthned with the mutuall acquaintance, and friendship one of another; the captaine marching alwaies in the head of the troupe, the ensigne in the middest, and the lieutenant in the rereward, and euery man accompanied with his neighbour and his friend: which bred a true and vnfained courage, both in regard of themselues, and of their followers. Besides these specialities, the places of title and dignity depending vpon this order, were no smal meanes to cut off all matter of ciuill discorde, and inteſtine dissension: for, here euery man knew his place in the File, and euerie File knew his place in the Centurie, and euery Centurie in the Maniple, and euery Maniple in the Cohort, and euery Cohort in the Legion, and euery Legion in the Armie; and so euery souldier had his place, according to his vertue; and euery place gaue honour to the man, according as their discipline had determined thereof.

The want of this discipline hath dishonoured the martiall gouernment of this age, with bloudshed and mutthers; whereof France is too true a witnes, as well in regard of the French themselues, as of our English forces that haue beene sent thither to appease their tumults: for, through defect of this order, which allotteth to euery man his due place, the controuersie grew betweene Sir William Drurie & Sir Iohn Bowrowes; the issue wherof is too well known to the world: wherein as our commanders in France haue beene negligent, so I may not forget to giue due commendation to the care which is had of this point amõgst the English troupes, in the seruice of the States in the vnited prouinces; where they are very curious in appointing euerie man his place in the File, and euery File in the troupe, and find much benefit thereby, besides the honour of reuiuing the Roman discipline.

The benefit of small battailions: and the disaduantage of great squadrons.

To conclude this point, I will onely touch in a word the benefite, which the Romans found in their small battailions, & the disaduantage, which we haue in making great squadrons. And first it cannot be denied, but that such troups stand best appointed for disposition & array of battell, which standing strong to receiue a shocke, bring most men to fight with the enemy: for, the principal things

things which are required in ſetting of a battel, are ſo to order the troupes, that the depth in flanke may ſerue conueniently to withſtād the aſſault, taking vp no more men then may well ſerue for that purpoſe; and giuing meanes to the reſt to fight with the enemie: and in theſe two points, were both their defenſiue and offenſiue conſiderations comprehended. But ſmaller troupes and battailions afforde this conueniencie better then great ſquadrons: which drowne vp manie able men in the depth of their flankes, and neuer ſuffer them to appeare, but when the breaking of the ſquadron doth preſent them to the butchery of the enemie. The Macedonian Phalanx, as I haue noted in the firſt booke, neuer caried aboue 16. in flanke, & brought 500 to fight in front. And theſe little battailions (conſidering them as they ſtood in battel ray) made as great a front or greater, then that of the Phalanx, keeping a depth anſwerable to the ſame; beſides the 2 and ; battell, which alwaies were to ſuccour thē, which the Phalanx wanted: neither would their thicke and cloſe imbattailing admit any ſuch ſuccour behind them. Now if we compare the aduantages and diſcommodities, which by place and accident were incident to either of theſe, we ſhall find great odds betweene them. Theſe great ſquadrons are not faiſable, but in plaine and open places, where they may either ſtand immoueable, or make eaſy & ſlow motions without ſhaking or diſordering their body: but the leſſer are a ſcantling for all places, champion or wooddie, leuell or vneuen, or of what ſite or qualitie ſoeuer. And to conclude, if two or three ranks of theſe great battailions chance to be broken and diſordered, the whole body is as much intereſſed in the diſorder, as the ſaid rankes are; and hath leſſe meanes to rally it ſelfe, then any other leſſer company: but if any violence chance to rout a Maniple, it proceedeth no further in the Army, then that part which it taketh: Neither can the diſranking of any one part, betray the ſafety of the Armie to diſorder & confuſion; for as much as their diſtinction ſerued to cut off ſuch inconueniences, & yet no waie hindered the generall vniting of their ſtrength into one body. More maie bee ſaid concerning this matter: but I onely point at it, and leaue the due conſideration thereof, to the iudgement of our commanders, & returne to our hiſtory.

CHAP. IIII.

The Belgæ attempt the ſurpriſe of * Bibrax: Cæſar ſendeth ſuccour vnto it.

* *Bray in the county of Retell.*

THERE was a towne called Bibrax, belonging to the ſtate of Rheimes, about eight miles from Cæſars Campe; which the Belgæ thought to haue ſurpriſed, as they came along to meete with Cæſar; and ſuddenly aſſaulted it with ſuch furie, that the townesmen could hardly holde out the firſt day. The Celtæ and Belgæ vſe one and the ſame manner, in aſſaulting a towne: for, hauing beſet the whole compaſſe of the wall with rankes

rankes of ſouldiers, they neuer ceaſe ſlinging of ſtones vntill they finde the wall naked of defendants; and then caſting themſelues into a Teſtudo, they approche to the gate & vndermine the walls. Aſſoone as the night had made an end of the aſſault, Iccius of Rheimes, a man of great birth and authoritie in his countrey, who at that time was gouernour of the towne, and had beene before with Cæſar, to treat and conclude a Peace: ſent him worde by meſſengers, that if there came not preſent ſuccour, he was not able to hold out any loger. The ſame day about midnight (vſing the ſame meſſengers for guides) he ſent both Numidian and Cretian Arthers, & Slingers of the Iles of Baleares, to relieue the towne; by meanes whereof, the towneſmen were put in good hope to make their partie ſtrong, and the enemie made hopeleſs of winning the towne: and therefore after a ſmal ſtay, hauing populated their fields, and burned their villages and out-buildings, they marched with all their power towards Cæſars Campe; and within leſſe then two miles of the Armie, they incamped their whole hoaſt: which, as was gathered by the ſmoke and fire, occupied more ground then eight miles in breadth.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IN the deſcription of their aſſault, we are to obſerue two circumſtances: The firſt is, the manner they vſed in a ſudden ſurpriſe: The ſecond is, the forme and qualitie of a Teſtudo. Although Cæſar ſeemeth to attribute this manner of aſſaulting a towne, as peculiar, to the Galles; yet wee may not thinke but that the Romans vſed it, as often as they had occaſion to ſurpriſe any cittie: but becauſe the Galles knew no other meanes to take a towne but this, therefore he ſetteth it downe as peculiar vnto them. The Romans called this manner of aſſault *Corona*; and ſo we read oftentimes this phraſe, *Cingere vrbem corona*: foraſmuch as the ſoldiers incloſed the towne with a circle, and ſo reſembled a crowne or garland. Ammianus ſpeaketh of a triple crowne of ſouldiers, which incompaſſed a towne: And Ioſephus telleth of Iotapatam, which the Romans beſieged *duplici peditum corona*: and beſides theſe, there was a third circle of horſemen vtmoſt of al. There is no further matter to be obſerued but this; that in ſurpriſing a towne, they incircled it round about with thicke continued rankes of men, and where they found the wall weakeſt, there they entered as they could.

To take a towne by ſurpriſe.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE Teſtudo requireth a larger diſcourſe, and is liuely deſcribed in Liuie, after this manner. In the Amphitheater, where the people did often aſſemble to ſee ſtrange ſightes and publike ſhewes, were brought in (ſaith he) 60 luſty young men, who after ſome motion, & ſeemely march, caſt themſelues into a ſquare troupe, and roofing their heades cloſe with their targets, the firſt ranke which made the front of the Teſtudo, ſtood vpright on their feete; the ſecond ranke bowed it ſelfe ſomewhat lower; the

A Teſtudo deſcribed. Lib. 44.

the third and fourth rankes did more incline themselues, and so consequentlie vnto the last ranke, which kneeled on the ground: and so they made a bodie resembling halfe the side of an house, which they called Testudo. Vnto this squadron so strongly combined togither, came two souldiers running some fiftie foot off; and threatning each other with their weapons, ran nimbly vp the side of the roofe; & sometimes making as though they would defend it against an enemie, that would haue entred vpon it; somtimes againe incountering each other in the midst of it, leaped vp and downe as steadily as if they had been vpon firme ground. And which is more strange, the front of a Testudo being applied to the side of a wal, there ascended many armed men vpon the said Testudo, and fought in an equall height with other souldiers, that stood vpon the said wall to defend it. The dissimilitude in the composition was this, that the soldiers that were in front, and in the sides of the square, caried not their Targets ouer their heads, as the other did; and couered their bodies with them: & so no weapons either cast from the wall, or otherwise throwne against it, could any waie hurt them; and whatsoeuer waight fell vpon the Testudo, it quickly glyded downe by the decliuitie of the roofe, without any hurt or annoyaunce at all.

Thus far Liuie goeth; neither doe I know what to say further of it: the chiefest vse thereof was in a surprise or suddaine attempt against a towne, before the townes men were throughly prepared to defend the same. This inuention serued them to approach the wall with safetie, and so either to vndermine it, or to clime vp: and to that end they oftentimes erected one Testudo vpon another. Tacitus saith, that the souldiers climed vpon the wall, *super iteratam testudinem*, by one Testudo made vpon another; and this was the ancient forme and vse of a Testudo in a suddaine assault or surprise.

Lib. 49 Dio Cassius, in the actes of Antonie, saieth, that beeing galled with the Parthian Archers, he commanded his whole Armie to put it selfe into a Testudo: which was so strange a sight to the Parthians, that they thought the Romaines hadde sunke downe for wearinesse and faintnesse; and so forsaking their horse, drewe their swordes to haue made execution: and then the Romanes, at a watch-worde giuen, rose againe with such a furie, that they put them all to sworde and flight. Dio describeth the saide Testudo after this manner: They placed, saith hee, their baggage, their light armed men and their horsemen, in the middest; and those heauie armed footemen that caried long gutter-tiled Targettes, were in the vtmost circles next vnto the Enemie: The reste (which bare large Ouall Targettes) were thronged togither throughout the whole troupe; and so couered with their Targets both themselues and their fellowes, that there was nothing discerned by the Enemy but a roofe of Targets: which were so tiled togither, that men might safely goe vpon them.

Further, wee oftentimes reade, that the Romaines cast themselues into a Testudo, to breake through an Enemy, or to route and disranke a troupe. And this vse the Romaines had of a Testudo in field seruices, and only by the benefit of their Target. It was called a Testudo, in regard of the strength, for that it

couered

couered and sheltred, as a shell couereth a fish. And let this suffice concerning a Testudo.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THirdly, we may obserue, how carefully Cæsar prouided for the safetie of such succours as he sent vnto Bibrax: for, hee commanded the same messengers to direct them that came from the towne, as the best & surest guides in that iourney; least peraduenture through ignorance of the way, they might fall into inconueniences or dangers. A matter of no small consequence in managing a war; but deserueth an extraordinary importunitie, to perswade the necessitie of this diligence: for, a Generall, that hath perfectlie discouered the nature of the country, through which he is to march, & knoweth the true distances of places, the qualitie of the waies, the compendiousnes of turnings, the nature of the hils, & the course of the riuers, hath all these particularities, as maine aduantages, to giue meanes of so many seuerall attempts vpon an enemy. And in this point, Haniball had a singular dexteritie, and excelled all the Commaunders of his time, in making vse of the way, by which he was to passe. But, he that leadeth an Army, by an vnknowne and vndiscouered way, and marcheth blindfold vpon vncertaine aduentures, is subiect to as many casualties and disaduantages, as the other hath opportunitie of good fortune. Let euery man therefore perswade himselfe, that good Discouerers are as the eyes of an Armie, and serue for lights in the darknesse of ignorance, to direct the resolutions of good prouidence, and make the path of safety so manifest, that we need not stumble vpon casualties. Cæsar, in his iourney to Ariouistus, vsed the help of Diuitiacus the Heduan, in whō amongst all the Galles, he reposed greatest confidence, to discouer the way, and acquaint him with the passages: and before he would vndertake his voyage vnto * Britanie, hee vvell enformed himselfe by Marchants and trauailers, of the quantitie of the Iland, the qualitie of the people, their vse of war, and the opportunitie of their hauens. Neither was he satisfied with their relations, but he sent Caius Volusenus in a ship of war, to see what he could further discouer, concerning these points. Suetonius addeth moreouer, that he neuer caried his Army, *per insidiosa itinera*, vnlesse he had first well discouered the places.

The necessity of good discouerie.

** Now England.*

Concerning the order, which skilfull Leaders haue obserued in discoueries, we are to knowe that this point consisteth of two partes: the one, in vnderstanding the perfect description of the country; and the second, in obseruing the motions of the enemy. Touching the first, wee find as well by this as other histories, that the Romans vsed the inhabitants of the country for Guides, as best acquainted with their natiue places, that they might not erre in so important a matter; prouided alwaies, that their owne scoutes were euer abroad to vnderstand what they could of themselues, that they might not altogether relie vpon a strangers direction. The motions of the Enemy were obserued by the horsemen: and these for the most part were Veterani, well experienced in the matter

The order which is to be obserued in discouery.

749b

of warre, and ſo the Generall receiued ſound aduertiſements: & yet they were not too forward vpon any new motion, vnleſſe they found it confirmed by diuers waies: for, ſome Eſpials may erre, either through paſſion or affection, as it happened in the Heluetian war. If therefore the vſe and benefit, which prudent and wiſe Commaunders made of this diligence, or the misfortune which the want of this knowledge brought vpon the ignorant, haue any authoritie to perſwade a circumſpect care heerein, this little that hath been ſpoken, may be ſufficient for this point.

THE FOVRTH OBSERVATION.

Slingers with their arte & vſe.

THe ſouldiers vvhich Cæſar ſent to relieue Bibrax, were Archers of Creta and Numidia, & Slingers of the Iles Baleares, which are now called Maiorica, and Minorica: which kinde of weapon, becauſe it ſeemeth ridiculous to the ſouldiers of theſe times, whoſe conceites are held vp with the furie of theſe fierie engines; I will in briefe diſcouer the nature and vſe of this weapon.

The Latines, ſaith Iſodore, called this weapon *funda: quòd ex ea fundantur lapides.* Plinie attributeth the inuention therof to the Inſulairs, called Baleares. Florus, in his 3 booke and 8 chap. ſaith, that theſe Baleares vſed 3 ſorts of ſlings and no other weapon beſides: for, a boy had neuer any meate giuen him, before hee had firſt ſtrooke it with a ſling. Strabo diſtinguiſheth theſe three ſorts of ſlings, which the Baleares vſed; and ſaith, that they had one ſling with long raines, which they vſed when they would caſt a far off: and another with ſhort raines, which they vſed neere at hand: & the third, with raines of a meane ſiſe, to caſt a reaſonable diſtance. Lipſius ſaith, that in *Columna Antonina* at Rome, he obſerued that the Balearean was made with one ſling about his head, another about his belly, and the third in his hand; which might bee their ordinarie manner of carying them. The matter whereof they were made, was threefold: the firſt was hempe or cotton, the ſecond haire, and the third ſinewes: for, of either of theſe ſtuffes, they commonly made them: the forme and faſhion of a ſling, reſembled a platted rope, ſomewhat broad in the middeſt, with an Ouall compaſſe; and ſo by little & little, decreaſing into two thongs or raines. Their manner of ſlinging, was to whirle it twice or thrice about their head, and ſo to caſt out the bullet. Virgill ſpeaking of Mezentius, ſaith;

Ipſe ter adducta circum caput egit habena.

But Vegetius preferreth that skill, which caſt the bullet with once turning it about the head. In Suidas wee find, that theſe Baleares did cõmonly caſt a ſtone of a pound waight: which agreeth to theſe names in Cæſar, *fũdas, librales.* The leaden bullets are mentioned by Saluſt, in the war with Iugurth; and by Liuie, where he ſaith, that the Conſull prouided great ſtore of arrowes, of bullets, and of ſmall ſtones to be caſt with ſlings. This weapon was in requeſt amongſt diuers nations, as well in regard of the readineſs, & eaſy reiterating of the blowe, as alſo for that the bullet fledde very farre, with great violence: the diſtance

which

which they could easily reach with their sling, is expressed in this verse,

Fundum Varro vocat, quem possis mittere funda. *Lib. 2.*

Which Vegetius interpreteth to be 600 foote: their violence was such, as the same author affirmeth in his first booke & 16 chap. that neither helmet, gaberdine, nor corselet could beare out the blowe; but hee that was hit with a sling, was slaine *sine inuidia sanguinis*, as he saith in the same place. Lucrece, Ouid, and Lucan, 3 of the Latine Poets, say, that a bullet skilfully cast out of a sling, went with such violence, that it melted as it flew: whereof Seneca giueth this reason: Motion, saith he, doth extenuate the ayre, and that extenuation or subtiltie doth inflame: and so a bullet cast out of a sling, melteth as it flieth. But howsoeuer; Diodorus Siculus affirmeth, that these Balearean slingers, brake both target, head-piece, or any other armour whatsoeuer. *Lib. 2. natur. questions.*

There are also two other sorts of slings, the one mentioned by Liuie, and the other by Vegetius. That in Liuie is called *Cestrophendo*, which cast a short arrow with a long thick head: the other in Vegetius, is called *fustibalus*; which was a sling made of a corde and a staffe. But let this suffice for slings & slingers, which were reckoned amongst their light-armed souldiers, and vsed chiefelie in assaulting, and defending townes & fortresses, where the heauie armed souldiers could not come to buckle; and present the place of our Hargebusiers, which in their proper nature, are *leuis armatur æ milites*, although more terrible then those of ancient times.

CHAP. V.

Cæsar confronted the Belgæ in forme of battell, *but without any blowe giuen: the Belgæ attempt the passing of the riuer Axona; but in vaine, and to their losse: they consult of breaking vp the vvarre.*

CAESAR at the first resolued not to giue thē battell, as well in regard of their multitude, as the generall fame & opinion conceiued of their valour: notwithstanding hee daily made triall by light skirmishes with his horsemen, what the enemie could do, & what his owne men durst do. And whē he found that his owne men were nothing inferiour to the Belgæ, hee chose a conuenient place before his camp, and put his Army in battell: the banke where he was incamped rising somwhat from a plaine leuell, vvas no larger then would suffice the front of the battell; the two sides were steep, and the front rose aslope by litle & litle, vntil it came again to a plain, where the legions were imbattailed. And least the enemy abounding in multitude, shold cir cumuēt his men & charge thē in the flank as they were fighting, he drew an ouerthwart dich behind, his Army frō one side of the hil to the other, 600 paces in length; the ends whereof *Cæsar.*

hee fortified with bulwarkes, and placed therein ſtore of engines: and leauing in his Campe the two legions which he had laſt inrolled in Lombardie, that they might be ready to be drawne forth when there ſhould need any ſuccour, he imbattailed his other ſixe legions in the front of the hill, before his Campe. The Belgæ alſo bringing forth their power, confronted the Romans in order of battell. There lay, betweene both the Armies a ſmall Mariſh: ouer which the enemie expected that Cæſar ſhould haue paſſed: and Cæſar on the other ſide, attended to ſee if the Belgæ woulde come ouer, that his men might haue charged them in that troubleſome paſſage. In the mean time the Caualry on both ſides incountered between the two battels, and after long expectation on either ſide, neither party aduenturing to paſſe ouer; Cæſar hauing got the better in the skirmiſh betweene the horſmen, thought it ſufficient for that time, both for the encouraging of his owne mẽ, & the conteſting of ſo great an Army; and therefore hee conuaied all his men againe into their Campe. From that place the enemy immediatly tooke his way to the Riuer Axona, which lay behind the Romans Campe: and there finding foords, they attempted to paſſe ouer part of their forces, to the end they might either take the fortreſſe which Q. Titurius kept, or to breake downe the bridge, or to ſpoile the territories of the State of Rheimes, & cut off the Romans from prouiſion of corne. Cæſar, hauing aduertiſement thereof from Titurius, tranſported ouer the riuer by the bridge all his horſemen and light armed Numidians, with his Slingers and Archers, and marched with them himſelfe. The conflict was hot in that place: the Romans charging their enemies as they were troubled in the water, ſlew a great number of them; the reſt like deſperate perſons, aduenturing to paſs ouer vpon the dead carkaſes of their fellowes, were beaten backe by force of weapons: and the horſemen incompaſſed ſuch as had firſt got ouer the water, and ſlew eueman of them.

When the Belgæ perceiued themſelues fruſtrated of their hopes, of winning Bibrax, of paſſing the Riuer, and of drawing the Romans into places of diſaduantage, and that their owne prouiſions began to faile them: they called a counſell of warre, wherein they reſolued, that it was beſt for the State in generall, and for euery man in particular, to breake vp their Camp, & to returne home vnto their own houſes: and in whoſe confines or territories ſoeuer, the Romans ſhoulde firſt enter, to depopulate & waſte them in hoſtile maner, that thither they ſhould haſtẽ from all parts, and there to giue them battell; to the ende they might rather try the matter in their own country, then abroad in a ſtrange & vnknowne place; & haue their own houſhold prouiſion alwaies at hand to maintaine them. And this the rather was concluded, for as much as they had intelligence, that Diuitiacus with a great power of the Hedui, approached neere to the borders of the Bellouaci; who, in that regard, made haſte homeward to defend their country.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

FIRST we may obſerue the Art, which he vſed to counteruaile the ſtrength of ſo great a multitude, by chooſing out ſo conuenient a place, which was no broader in front thẽ would ſuffice the front of his battell; and hauing both the ſides of the hill ſo ſteepe, that the enemie

enemie could not ascend nor clime vp, but to their owne ouerthrow; he made the back part of the hill strong by Art, & so placed his souldiers as it were in the gate of a fortresse, where they might either issue out, or retire at their pleasure. Whereby it appeareth, how much he preferred securitie and saletie before the vaine opinion of foole-hardy resolution; which sauoureth of Barbarisme rather then of true wisedome: for he euer thought it great gaine, to loose nothing; and the day brought alwaies good fortune, that deliuered vp the Army safe vnto the euening; attending, vntill aduantage had laid sure principles of victory: and yet Cæsar was neuer thought a coward.

And now it appeareth, what vse hee made by passing his Armie ouer the riuer, and attending the enemie on the further side, rather then on the side of the state of Rheimes: for, by that meanes he brought to passe, that whatsoeuer the enemie should attempt in any part or quarter of the land, his forces were readie to trouble their proceedings; as it happened in their attempt of Bibrax: and yet notwithstanding, hee lost not the opportunitie of making slaughter of them, as they passed ouer the riuer. For, by the benefit of the bridge which he had fortified, he transported what forces hee would, to make head against them, as they passed ouer; and so hee tooke what aduantage either side of the riuer could affoord him.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

AND heere the Reader may not maruel, if when the hils are in labor, they bring forth but a mouse; for how soon is the cõrage of this huge Army abated? or what did it attempt worthy such a multitude? or answerable to the report which was bruted of their valour? but being hastily caried together by the violence of passion, were as quickly dispersed vppon the sight of an enemie: which is no strange effect of a suddaine humour. For, as in Nature all violent motions are of short continuance, & the durabilitie, or lasting qualitie of all actions, proceedeth from a slow and temperate progression; so the resolutions of the minde that are caried with an vntemperate violence, and sauour so much of heat and passion, do vanish away euen with the smoake therof, & bring forth nothing but leasurable repentance: and therefore it were no ill counsell for men of such natures, to qualifie their hastie resolutions, with a mistrustfull lingering; that when their iudgement is well informed of the cause, they may proceed to a speedie execution.

But that which most bewraieth their indiscreet intemperãce, in the hote pursuit of this enterprise, is, that before they had scarce seene the enemie, or hadde opportunity to contest him in open field, their victual began to faile them: for, their minds were so caried away with the conceit of warre, that they had no leisure to prouide such necessaries, as are the strength and sinewe of the warre. It was sufficient for euery particular man, to be knowne for a souldier in so honorable an action, referring other matters to the care of the State. The States

7491

in like manner thought it enough to furniſh out fortie or fiftie thouſand men a-peece, to diſcharge their oath, and to ſaue their hoſtages, committing other requiſites to the generall care of the confederacie: which, being directed by as vnskilfull gouernors, neuer looked further then the preſent multitude; which ſeemed ſufficient to ouerthrow the Romaine Empire. And thus each man relied vpon an others care, and ſatisfied himſelfe with the preſent garbe; So many men of all ſorts and qualities, ſo many helmets and plumed creſts, ſuch ſtriſe and emulation, what ſtate ſhould ſeeme in greateſt forwardneſs; were motiues ſufficient to induce euery man to go, without further inquiry, how they ſhould goe. And herein the care of a Generall ought eſpecially to bee ſeene, conſidering the weakeneſſe of particular iudgements, that hauing the liues of ſo many men depending altogither vpon his prouidence, and engaged in the defence of their ſtate & country, he do not faile in theſe maine points of diſcipline, which are the pillars of all warlike deſignes. To conclude this point, let vs learne by their errour, ſo to carrie a matter (eſpecially of that conſequence) that we make it not much worſe by ill handling it, then it was before we firſt tooke it to our charge; as it heere happened to the Belgæ. For their tumultuous armes ſorted to no other end, then to giue Cæſar iuſt occaſion to make warre vpon them, with ſuch aſſurance of victorie, that he made ſmall account of that which was to follow, in regard of that which had already happened: conſidering that he ſhould not in all likelihood, meete with the like ſtrength againe, in the continuance of that warre. And this was not onely *grauius bellum ſucceſſori tradere*, as it often falleth out in the courſe of a long continued warre; but to draw a dangerous warre vpon their heads, that otherwiſe might haue liued in peace.

CHAP. VI.

The Belgæ brake vp their Campe; and as they *returne home, are chaſed and ſlaughtered* by the Romaines.

Cæſar.

THIS generall reſolution beeing entertained by the conſent of the whole Councell of warre; they departed out of their Campe with a great noiſe and tumult, without any order (as it ſeemed) or gouernment, euerie man preſſing to bee formoſt on his iourney; in ſuch a turbulent manner, that they ſeemed all to run away. Whereof Cæſar hauing notice by his ſpies, and miſtruſting ſome practiſe, not as yet perceiuing the reaſon of their departure, he kept his Army within his Campe. In the dawning of the day, vpon certaine intelligence of their departure, he ſent firſt his horſemen to ſtay the rereward, commaunding Labienus to follow after with three legions: theſe ouertaking the Belgæ, and chaſing them many miles, ſlew a great number of them. And while the rereward ſtaied, and valiantly receiued the charge of the Romaines, the vantguard beeing out of danger, and vnder no gouernment,

aſſoone

assoone as they heard the alarum behind them, brake out of their ranks & betook themselues to flight; & so the Romaines slew them as long as the sunne gaue them light to pursue them: and then sounding a retrait, they returned to their Campe.

OBSERVATION.

IT hath beene an old rule amongst souldiers, that A great and negligent errour cõmitted by an enemy, is to be suspected as a pretence to trecherie. Wee reade of Fuluius a Legate in the Romaine Armie, lying in Tuscanie, the Consul being gon to Rome to performe some publike dutie; the Tuscanes tooke occasion by his absence to trie whether they could draw the Romaines into any inconuenience; and placing an ambuscado neere vnto their campe, sent certaine souldiers, attired like shepheards, with droues of cattell to passe in view of the Romaine Army: who handled the matter so, that they came euen to the rampier of the campe. Whereat the Legate wondering as at a thing void of reason, kept himselfe quiet vntill he had discouered their treacherie, and so made frustrate their intent: In like manner, Cæsar not perswaded that men should bee so heedlesse, to carry a retrait in that disorderly and tumultuous manner, would not discampe his men to take the opportunity of that aduantage, vntill hee had found that to be true, which in all reason was vnlikely. And thus 296000. Belgæ were chased and slaughtered by three legions of the Romaines, for want of gouernment and order in their departure.

CHAP. VII.

Cæsar followeth after the Belgæ into the Countrey of the Suessones; and there besiegeth *Nouiodunum.

*Noyon.

*THE next day after their departure, before they could recouer themselues of their feare and flight; or had time to put themselves againe in breath: Cæsar, as it were continuing still the chase and victorie, ledde his Armie into the country of the *Suessones, the next borderers vnto the men of Rheimes: and after a long iourney came vnto Nouiodunum a towne of good importance, which hee attempted to take by surprise, as hee passed along by it. For, hee vnderstoode, that it was altogether vnfurnished of defensiue prouision, hauing no forces within to defende it: but in regard of the breadth of the ditch and height of the wall, hee was for that time disappointed of his purpose: and therefore hauing fortified his campe, hee began to make preparatiõ for a siege. The night following, the whole multitude of the Suessones, that had escaped by flight, were receiued into the towne: howbeit when the Vineæ were with great expedition brought vnto the wall, the mount raised, & the turrets built; the Galles being amazed at the highnes of the workes, such as they had neuer*

Cæsar.

*Soyssons.

neuer ſeene nor heard of before, and the ſpeede which was made in the diſpatch thereof, ſent ambaſſadours to Cæſar, to treate of giuing vp the towne; and by the mediation of the men of Rheimes obtained their ſuite.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IN this relation, we may obſerue the induſtrious art, which the Romans vſed in aſſaulting, and taking holdes and townes; wherein we find three ſorts of engines deſcribed, Vinea, Agger, and Turres.

**Lib. 4. A vinea or vine deſcribed.*

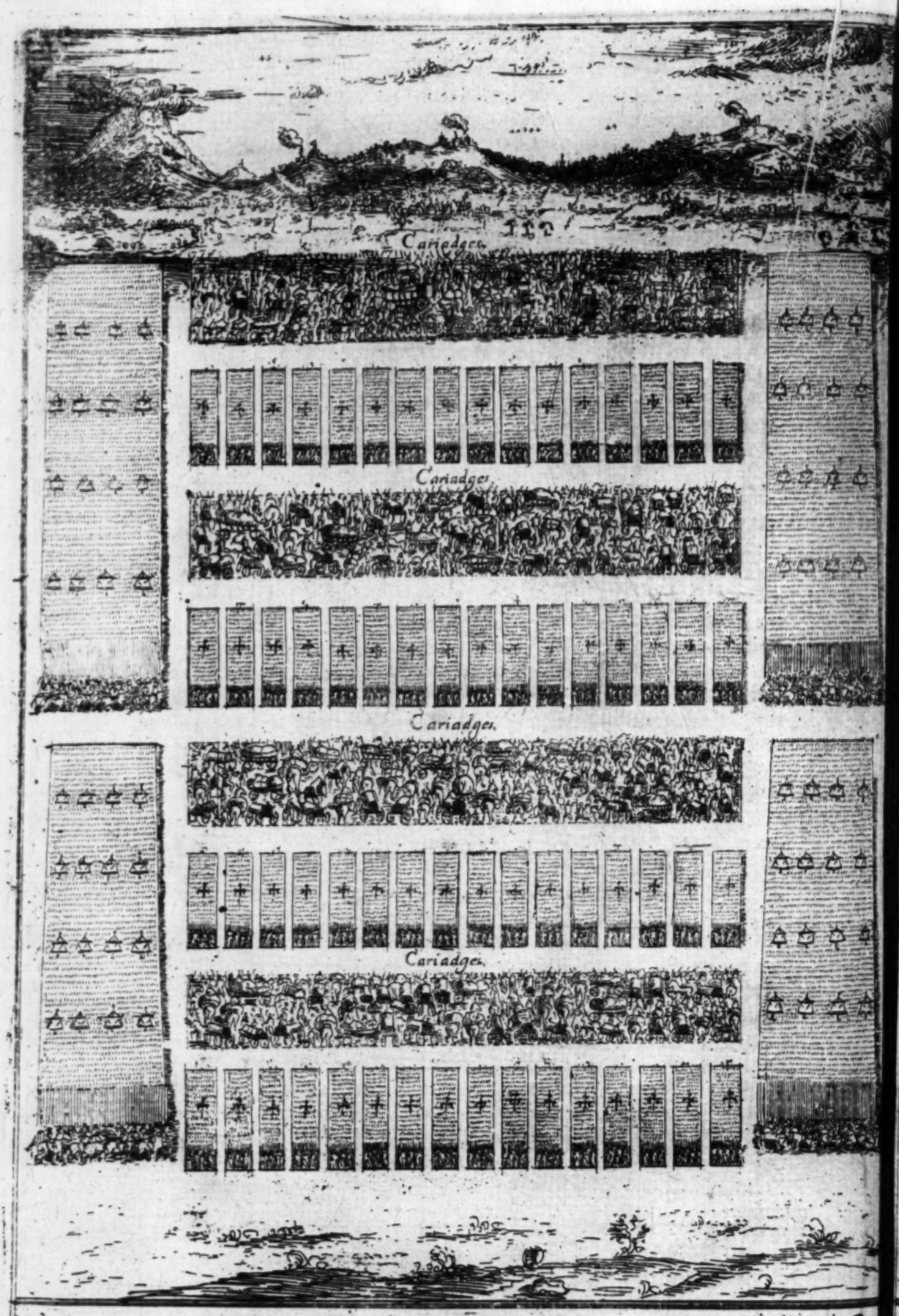
Vinea is thus deſcribed by Vigetius: a little ſtrong-built houſe or houell, made of light wood, that it might be remoued with greateſt eaſe; the roofe was ſupported with diuers pillars of a foote ſquare, whereof the formoſt were 8. foot high, and the hindmoſt 6. and betweene euerie one of theſe pillars, there was 5 foot diſtance: it was alwaies made with a double roofe; the firſt or lower roofe was of thick plankes, and the vpper roofe of hurdles, to breake the force of a waight without further ſhaking or disioyning the building: the ſides were likewiſe walled with hurdles, the better to defend the ſouldiers that were vnder it: the whole length was about 16 foote, and the breadth 7: the vpper roofe was commonly couered with greene or raw hides, to keepe it from burning. Many of theſe houels were ioyned together in ranke, when they went about to vndermine a wal: the higher end was put next vnto the wal, that all the waights which were throwen vpon it might eaſily tumble down, without any great hurt to the engine: the foure ſides and groundſils, had in euery corner a wheele, & by them they were driuen to any place as occaſion ſerued: the chiefeſt vſe of them was to couer and defend the ſouldiers, as they vndermined or ouerthrew a wall. This engine was called Vinea, which ſignifieth a Vine, for it ſheltered ſuch as were vnder the roofe thereof, as a Vine couereth the place where it groweth.

Agger or mount.

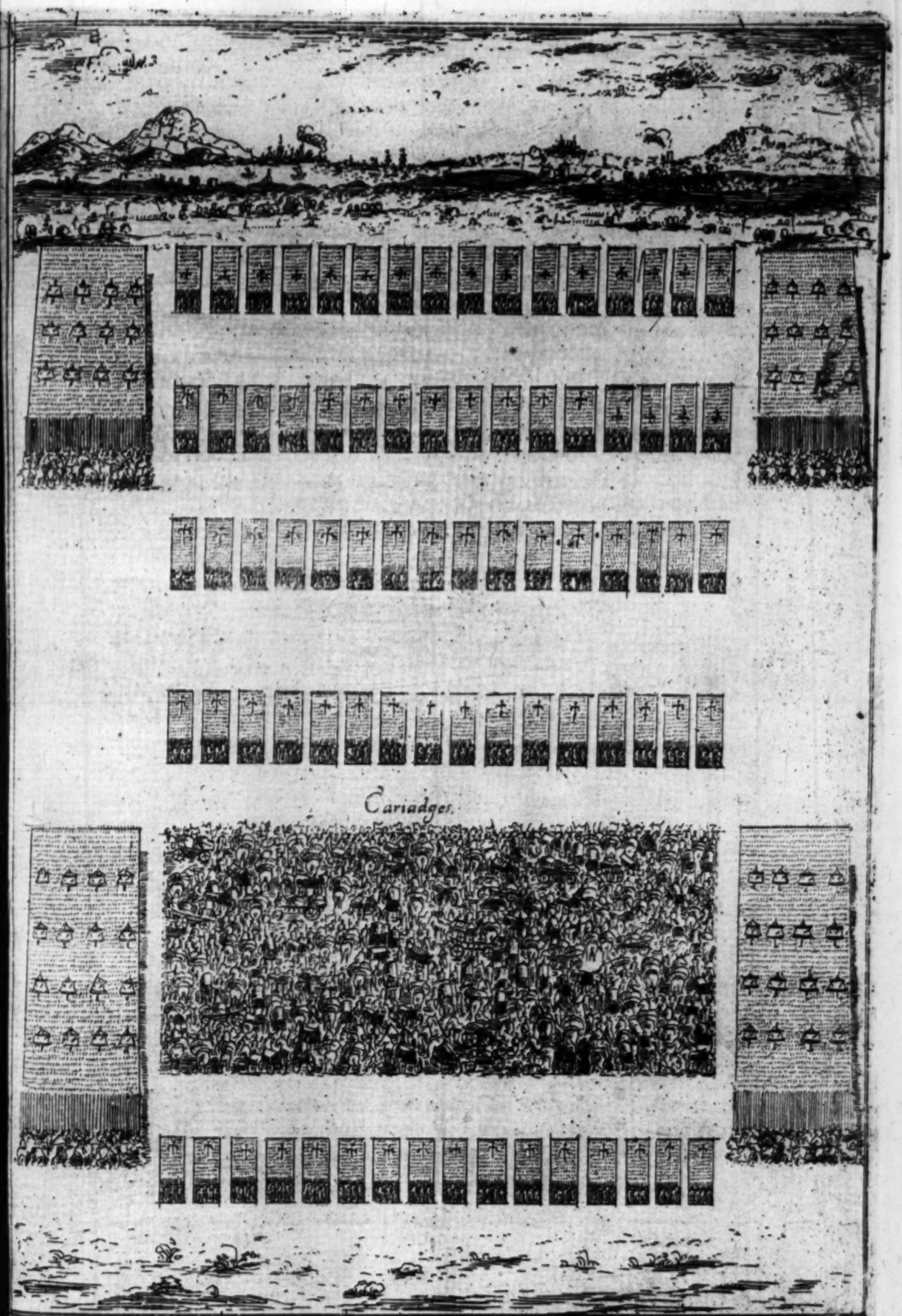
Agger, which we call a mount, is deſcribed in diuers hiſtories to be a hill or eleuation made of earth & other ſubſtance, which by little and little was raiſed forward, vntil it approched neere vnto the place, againſt which it was built; that vpon this mount they might erect fortreſſes and turrets, and ſo fight with an aduantage of height. The matter of this mount, was earth and ſtones, fagots, and timber. Ioſephus ſaith, that at the ſiege of Ieruſalem, the Romans cut downe all the trees within 11 mile compaſſe, for matter and ſtuffe to make a mount. The ſides of this Agger were of Timber, to keepe in the looſe matter; the forepart which was towards the place of ſeruice, was open without any timber work: for on that part they ſtil raiſed it & brought it neerer the wals. That which was built at Maſſilia was 80 foot high, and that at Auaricum 80. foote high and 30. foot broad. Ioſephus and Egeſippus writ, that there was a fortreſſe in Iudea, 300. cubites high: which Sulla purpoſing to win by aſſault, raiſed a mount 200. cubites high; and vpon it he built a caſtle of ſtone 50. cubites high, and 50. cubites broad; and vpon the ſaid caſtell hee erected a turret of 60 cubites in height, & ſo took the fortreſſe. The Romans oftentimes raiſed theſe mounts in the mouth of a hauen, and commonly to ouer-toppe a towne, that ſo they might fight, with much aduantage.

Amongſt

749b



CÆSARS *march where in euery Legion had his Cariadges in from*



CÆSARS march where the Enemy was neerer at hand.

749b

Amongſt other engines, in vſe amongſt the Romans, their moueable Turrets were verie famous: for, they were built in ſome ſafe place out of danger; & with wheels put vnder them, were driuen to the walles of the towne. Theſe turrets were of two ſorts, either great or little: the leſſer ſort are deſcribed, by Vitruuius, to be ſixtie cubits high, and the ſquare ſide ſeauenteene cubites: the breadth at the top, was a fiſt part of the breadth at the baſe; and ſo they ſtood ſure without any danger of falling. The corner pillars, were at the baſe nine inches ſquare, and 6 inches at the top: there were commonly 10 ſtories in theſe little turrets, and windowes in euerie ſtorie. The greater ſort of towers were 120 cubits high, and the ſquare ſide was 24 cubites: the breadth at the top was a fiſt part of the baſe; and in euery one of theſe, were commonly 200 ſtories. There was not one & the ſame diſtance kept between the ſtories; for the loweſt commonlie was 7 cubites, and 12 inches high: the higheſt ſtorie 5 cubites, and the reſt 4 cubites, and a third. In euerie one of theſe ſtories, were ſouldiers and engines, ladders and caſting bridges, by which they got vpon the wall and entered the towne. The forepart of theſe turrets were couered with yron, and wet couerings, to ſaue them from fire. The ſouldiours that remooued the tower to and fro, were alwaies within the ſquare thereof, and ſo they ſtood out of danger. The new water-worke by Broken-wharfe in London, much reſembleth one of theſe towers.

Towers or Turrets deſcribed.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

VPon the building of theſe mightie engines, it was no maruell if the Sueſſones ſubmitted themſelues to ſuch powerfull induſtrie. For, whatſoeuer is ſtrange and vnuſuall, doth much affright the ſpirits of an enemie, and breed a motion of diſtruſt and diffidencie, when as they find themſelues ignorant of ſuch warlike practices: for, noueltie alwaies breedeth wonder; in as much as the true reaſons and cauſes beeing vnknowne, we apprehend it, as diuers from the vſuall courſe of things, and ſo ſtand gazing at the ſtrangeneſſe thereof: and wonder, as it addeth worth to the noueltie; ſo it inferreth diffidencie, and ſo conſequently feare, the vtter enemie of martiall valour.

CHAP. VIII.

Cæſar carieth his Armie to the Territories of the Bellouaci, Ambiani and the Neruij.

CAESAR, taking for pledges the chiefeſt of their Cittie, vpon the deliuerie of all their Armes, receiued the Sueſſones to mercy: and from thence led his Army againſt the Bellouaci; who, hauing conuaied both themſelues and their goods into the towne, called Bratiſpantium, and vnderſtanding that Cæſar was come within fiue mile of the place, all the elder ſort came foorth to meete him, ſignifying their ſubmiſſion.

Cæſar.

The Bellouaci taken to mercie.

7491

miſsion, by their lamentable demeanour. For theſe, Diuitiacus became a mediator: who, after the Belgæ had broken vp their campe, had diſmiſſed his Heduan forces and was returned to Cæſar. The Hedui, ſaith he, haue alwaies found in the Bellouaci, a faithfull and friendly diſpoſition to their State: and if they had not beene betraied by their nobilitie (who made them belieue, that the Hedui vvere brought in bondage by the Romaines, & ſuffered all villanie & deſpight at their hands) they had neuer withdrawne themſelues from the Hedui, nor conſented to conſpire againſt the Romaines. The authors of this counſell, perceiuing into what great miſery they had brought their country, were fled into Britanie: wherfore, not only the Bellouaci, but the Hedui alſo in their behalfe, beſought him to vſe his clemencie towards them. Cæſar, in regard of the Hedui and Diuitiacus, promiſed to receiue them to mercy; but foraſmuch as the State was very great and populous, he demaunded ſix hundred hoſtages: which, beeing deliuered, and their armour brought out of the towne, he marched frō thence into the coaſt of the Ambiani: who, without further lingering, gaue both themſelues & all that they had into his power. Vpon theſe bordered the Neruÿ; of whom Cæſar found this much by inquirie, that there was no recourſe of Marchants vnto them, neither did they ſuffer any wine, or what thing elſe might tend to riot, to bee brought into their country: for, they were perſwaded, that by ſuch things their courage was much abated, and their vertue weakened. Further, he learned, that theſe Neruÿ were a ſauage people, and of great valour; often accuſing the reſt of the Belgæ, for yielding their necks to the Romaine yoake, openly affirming, that they would neither ſend Embaſſadors, nor take peace vpon any condition.

The Ambiani yeeld vp themſelues.

The Neruÿ.
** Sābre neer Namours.*

Cæſar, hauing marched 3 daies iourney in their country, hee vnderſtood that the riuer * Sabis was not paſt ten miles from his campe; and that on the further ſide of this riuer, all the Neruÿ were aſſembled together, and there attended the comming of the Romaines. With them were ioyned the Attrebatÿ, and Veromandui, whom they had perſwaded to abide the ſame fortune of war with them. Beſides, they expected a power from the Aduatici: the women, and ſuch as were vnmeet for the field, they beſtowed in a place vnacceſsible for any Armie, by reaſon of fens and bogs, and mariſhes. Vpon this intelligence, Cæſar ſent his diſcouerers and Centurions before, to chuſe out a fit place to incampe in.

Now, whereas many of the ſurrendred Belgæ, and other Galles, were continually in the Romaine Army, certaine of theſe (as it was afterward known by the captiues) obſeruing the order which the Romaines vſed in marching, came by night to the Neruÿ, and told them, that between euery legion went a great ſort of cariages; and that it was no matter of difficulty, as ſoone as the firſt legion was come into the camp, & the other legions yet a great way off, to ſet vpon them vpon a ſuddaine, before they were disburdened of their cariages, and ſo to ouerthrow them: vvhich legion beeing cut off, and their ſtuffe taken, the reſt vvould haue ſmall courage to ſtand againſt them. It much furthered this aduiſe, that, foraſmuch as the Neruÿ were not able to make any power of horſe, that they might the better reſiſt the caualry of their borderers, whenſoeuer they made any rode into their marches: their maner was to cut young trees halfe aſunder, and bowing the tops down to the ground, plaſhed the boughes in breadth, and vvith thornes and briers planted between them, they made them ſo thick, that it vvas

impoſsible to ſee through them, ſo hard it was to enter or paſſe through them; ſo that, when by this occaſion, the paſſage of the Romaine Army muſt needs be hindred, the Neruÿ thought the foreſaid counſell not to be neglected.

The place which the Romaines choſe to incamp in, was a hill, of like leuell from the top to the bottome, at the foot whereof ran the riuer Sabis: & with the like leuel, on the other ſide, roſe another hill directly againſt this, to the quantity of 200 paſes; the bottom whereof was plaine and open, and the vpper part ſo thick with wood, that it could not eaſily be looked into. Within theſe woods the Neruians kept themſelues cloſe: and in the open ground, by the riuer ſide, were onely ſeene a few troupes of horſe, and the riuer in that place, was about three foote deepe.

Cæſar, ſending his horſmen before, followed after with all his power; but the maner of his march differed frõ the report which was brought to the Neruÿ: for, inaſmuch as the enemy was at hand, Cæſar (as his cuſtome was) led ſix legions alwaies in a readineſs, without burthen or cariage of any thing, but their Armes: after them he placed the impediments of the vvhole Armie. And the two legions which were laſt inrolled, were a rereward to the Army, & guarded the ſtuffe.

OBSERVATION.

THis trecherous practice of the ſurrendred Belgæ, hath fortunately diſcouered the maner of Cæſars march, as well in ſafe paſſages, as in dangerous and ſuſpected places: which is a point of no ſmall conſequence in martiall diſcipline, being ſubiect to ſo many inconueniences, & capable of the greateſt art that may be ſhewed in managing a war. Cõcerning the diſcreet cariage of a march, by this circumſtance it may be gathered, that Cæſar principally reſpected ſafety: and ſecondly conueniencie. If the place afforded a ſecure paſſage, and gaue no ſuſpicion of hoſtilitie, he was content in regard of conueniency, to ſuffer euery legion to haue the ouerſight of their particular cariages, & to inſert them among the troupes, that euery man might haue at hand ſuch neceſſaries as were requiſite, either for their priuate vſe or publique diſcipline. But if he were in danger of any ſuddaine attempt, or or ſtood in hazard to be impeached by an enemy, he then omitted conuenient diſpoſition, in regard of particular vſe, as diſaduantageous to their ſafety; & caried his legions in that readines, that if they chanced to be ingaged by an enemy, they might without any alteration of their march, or incumbrance of their cariages receiue the charge, in that forme of battell, as was beſt approoued by their militarie rules, and the ancient practice of their fortunate progenitors.

The maner of the Romaine march.

The two reſpects which Cæſar had in ordering a march.
1 *Safety.*
2 *Conueniẽcy*

The old Romans obſerued likewiſe the ſame reſpects: for, in vnſafe & ſuſpected places, they caried their troupes *agmine quadrato*, which as Liuie ſeemeth to note, was free frõ all cariage & impediments, which might hinder thẽ in any ſodaine alarum. Neither doth that of * Hirtius any way cõtradict this interpretation, where he ſaith, that Cæſar ſo diſpoſed his troupes againſt the Bellouaci, that 3 legions marched in front, and after them came all the cariages, to which the 10 legion ſerued as a rereward; & ſo they marched, *pene agmine quadrato.* * Seneca in like maner noteth the ſafety of *agmẽ quadratũ*, where he ſaith, that where an enemy is expected, wee ought to march *agmine quadrato*, readie to fight.

Agmen quadratum.

* *Lib. 8. de bel. Gall.*

* *60. Epiſtle.*

fight. The moſt materiall conſequence of theſe places alleadged, is, that as oft as they ſuſpected any onſet or charge, their order in a march little or nothing differed from their vſuall maner of imbattailing; and therefore it was called *agmen quadratũ*, or a ſquare march, inaſmuch as it kept the ſame diſpoſition of parts, as were obſerued *in quadrata Acie*. For that triple forme of imbattailing which the Romans generally obſerued in their fights, hauing reſpect to the diſtances between each battell, contained almoſt an equall dimenſion of front and file: & ſo it made *Aciem quadratã*; and when it marched, *Agmen quadratum*.

Lib. 6. Polybius expreſſeth the ſame in effect, as often as the place required circumſpection; but altereth it ſomewhat in regard of the cariages: for, he ſaith, that in time of danger, eſpecially where the country was plaine and champaine, and gaue ſpace and free ſcope to cleere themſelues, vpon any accident, the Romans marched in a triple battell, of equall diſtance one behind another, euery battell hauing his ſeuerall cariages in front. And if they were by chance attacked by an enemy, they turned themſelues according to the oportunity of the place, either to the right or left hand: and ſo placing their cariages on the one ſide of their Armie, they ſtood imbattailed, ready to receiue the charge.

Agmẽ longũ The contrary forme of marching, where the place afforded more ſecuritie, and gaue ſcope to conueniencie, they named *agmen longum*; when almoſt euerie maniple or order, had their ſeueral cariages attending vpon them, and ſtroue to keep that way which they found moſt eaſie, both for themſelues, & their impediments. Which order of march, as it was more commodious then the former, in regard of particularity, ſo was it vnſafe and dangerous, where the Enemy was expected: and therefore Cæſar much blamed Sabinus and Cotta, for marching, whẽ they were deluded by Ambiorix, *longiſsimo agmine*; as though they had receiued their aduertiſements from a friend, & not from an enemy.

Lib. 5. de bel. Gallico.

The vſe that may be made of this, in our modern wars And albeit our moderne wars are far different, in qualitie, from them of ancient times; yet in this point of diſcipline, they cannot haue a more perfect direction, then that which the Romaines obſerued, as the two poles of their motions, Safety and Conueniencie: whereof the firſt dependeth chiefely vpon the prouident diſpoſition of the Leaders; and the other will eaſily follow on, as the commoditie of euery particular ſhall giue occaſion.

Concerning ſafety in place of danger, what better courſe can be taken then that maner of imbattailing, which ſhall be thought moſt conuenient, if an enemy were preſent to confront them? for, a well ordered march, muſt either carie the perfect forme of a battell, or containe the diſtinct principles and elements therof, that with little alteration it may receiue that perfection of ſtrẽgth, which the fitteſt diſpoſition can affoord it. Firſt therefore, a prudent and circumſpect Leader, that deſireth to frame a ſtrong and orderly march, is diligentlie to obſerue the nature and vſe of each weapon in his Army, how they may be placed for greateſt vſe and aduantage, both in reſpect of their different and concurring qualities, as alſo in regard of the place wherein they are managed: and this knowledge will conſequentlie inferre the beſt and exacteſt diſpoſition of imbattailing, as the ſaid forces are capable of; which, if it may be obſerued in a march, is no way to be altered. But, if this exactnes of imbattailing will not admit

mit conuenient carriage of ſuch neceſſarie adiuncts, as pertain to an Army: the inconuenience is to be releeued, with as little alteration from that rule, as in a wary iudgement ſhall be found expedient: that albeit the forme bee ſomewhat changed; yet the principles and ground wherein their ſtrength and ſafety conſiſteth, may ſtill be retained.

Neither can anie man well deſcend to more particular precepts in this point: he may exemplifie the practices of manie great and experienced commanders; what ſort of weapon marched in front, and what in the rereward, in what part of the Armie the Munition marched, and where the reſt of the carriage was beſtowed, according as their ſeuerall iudgements thought moſt expedient, in the particular nature of their occurrences. But the iſſue of all wil fall out thus; that he that obſerued this rule before preſcribed, did ſeldom miſcarrie through an vnſafe march. Let a good Martialliſt well know their proper vſe in that diuerſity of weapons in his Army; how they are ſeruiceable or diſaduantageous, in this or that place, againſt ſuch or ſuch an Enemie: and he will ſpeedily order his battell, diſpoſe of his march, and beſtowe his cariages, as ſhall beſt fall out both for his ſafety, and conueniency.

Cæſars cuſtome was, to ſend his Caualrie and light armed footmen, before the body of his Armie, both to diſcouer and impeach an Enemie; for theſe troupes were nimble in motion and fit for ſuch ſeruices: but if the danger were greater in the rereward then in the front, the horſemen marched in the tayle of the Army, and gaue ſecuritie where there was moſt cauſe of feare. But if it happened that they were found vnfit to make good the ſeruice in that place, as oftentimes it fell out, and eſpecially in Africa againſt the Numidians: hee then remoued them, as he beſt found it conuenient, and brought his legionarie ſoldiers, which were the ſinewes and ſtrength of his forces, and marched continually in the bulke of the Armie, to make good that which his horſemen could not perform. And thus he altred the antique preſcription, and vniformitie of cuſtome, according as he found himſelfe beſt able to diſaduantage an Enemie, or make waie to victorie.

CHAP. IX.

The Romans begin to fortifie their campe: but are *interrupted by the Neruij. Cæſar maketh haſte* to prepare his forces to battell.

THe Roman horſemen, with the ſlingers and archers, paſſed ouer the riuer, and incountred the Caualry of the Enemy: who at firſt retired backe to their companies in the wood, & from thence ſallied out againe vpon them: but the Romans durſt not purſue them further then the plaine and open ground: in the meane time the ſixe legions that were in front, hauing Cæſar.

their work measured out vnto them, began to fortifie their camp. But assoon as the Neruij perceiued their former cariages to be come in sight, which was the time appointed amongst them to giue the charge, as they stood imbattailed within the thicket, so they rushed out with all their forces, and assaulted the Roman horsemen; which being easily beaten backe, the Neruij ranne downe to the riuer, with such an incredible swiftnes, that they seemed at the same instant of time to be in the woods at the riuer, & charging the legions on the other side: For with the same violẽce, hauing passed the riuer, they ran vp the hil to the Roman Camp, where the souldiers were busied in their intrenchment. Cæsar had all parts to plaie at one instant: the flagge to be hung out, by which they gaue the souldiers warning to take Armes, the battell to be proclaimed by sound of trumpet, the soldiers to be recalled from their worke, and such as were gone far off to get turf & matter for the rampier, to be sent for; the battell to be ordered, his men to be incouraged, and the signe of battell to be giuen: the most of which were cut off by shortnesse of time, and the sudden assault of the Enemie.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

The description of the Roman camp with all the parts belonging vnto it.

AS the Romans excelled all other nations in many good customes; so especially in their camp-discipline, they stroue to be singular: for, it seemed rather an Academie, or a Citie of ciuil gouernment, then a camp of soldiers; so careful were they both for the safety, & skilful experience of their men at Arms. For, touching the first, they neuer suffered their souldiers to lodge one night without a campe; wherein they were inclosed with ditch and rampier, as in a walled towne: neither was it any new inuention or late found out custom in their State, but in vse amongst the auncient Romans, and in the time of their kings; their manner of incamping was included within these circumstances.

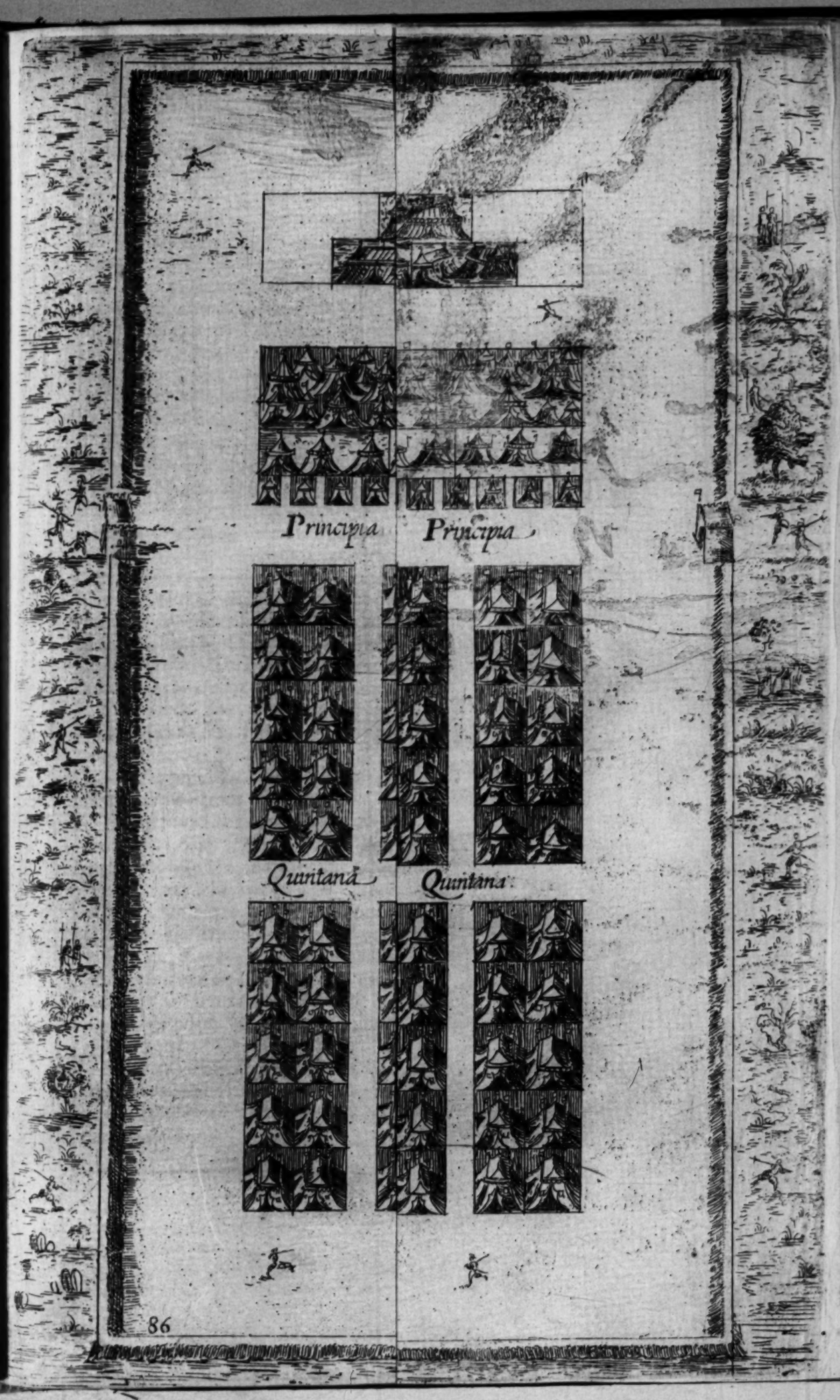
The Centurions made choise of the place.

The Centurions, that went before to choose out a conuenient place, hauing found a fit situation for their camp, first assigned the standing for the Emperors pauilion, which was commonly in the most eminent place of the camp; from whence he might easily ouerview all the other parts, or any allarum or *signum pugnæ*, might from thence bee discouered to all quarters. This pauilion was known by the name of *Prætorium*, for as much as amongst the ancient Romans the Generall of their Army was called Prætor: in this place where the *Prætorium* was to be erected, they stuck vp a white ensign, and from it they measured euery way 100. foot, & so they made a square containing 200. foot in euerie side; the Area, or content whereof, was almost an acre of ground: the forme of the *Prætorium* was round & high, being as eminent among the other tents, as a Temple is amongst the priuate buildings of a Cittie: and therfore Iosepus compareth it to a Church. In this *Prætorium* was their Tribunal or chair of the estate, and the place of diuination, which they called *Augurale*, with other appendices of maiestie and authority.

The Prætorium.

The lodging of the legions.

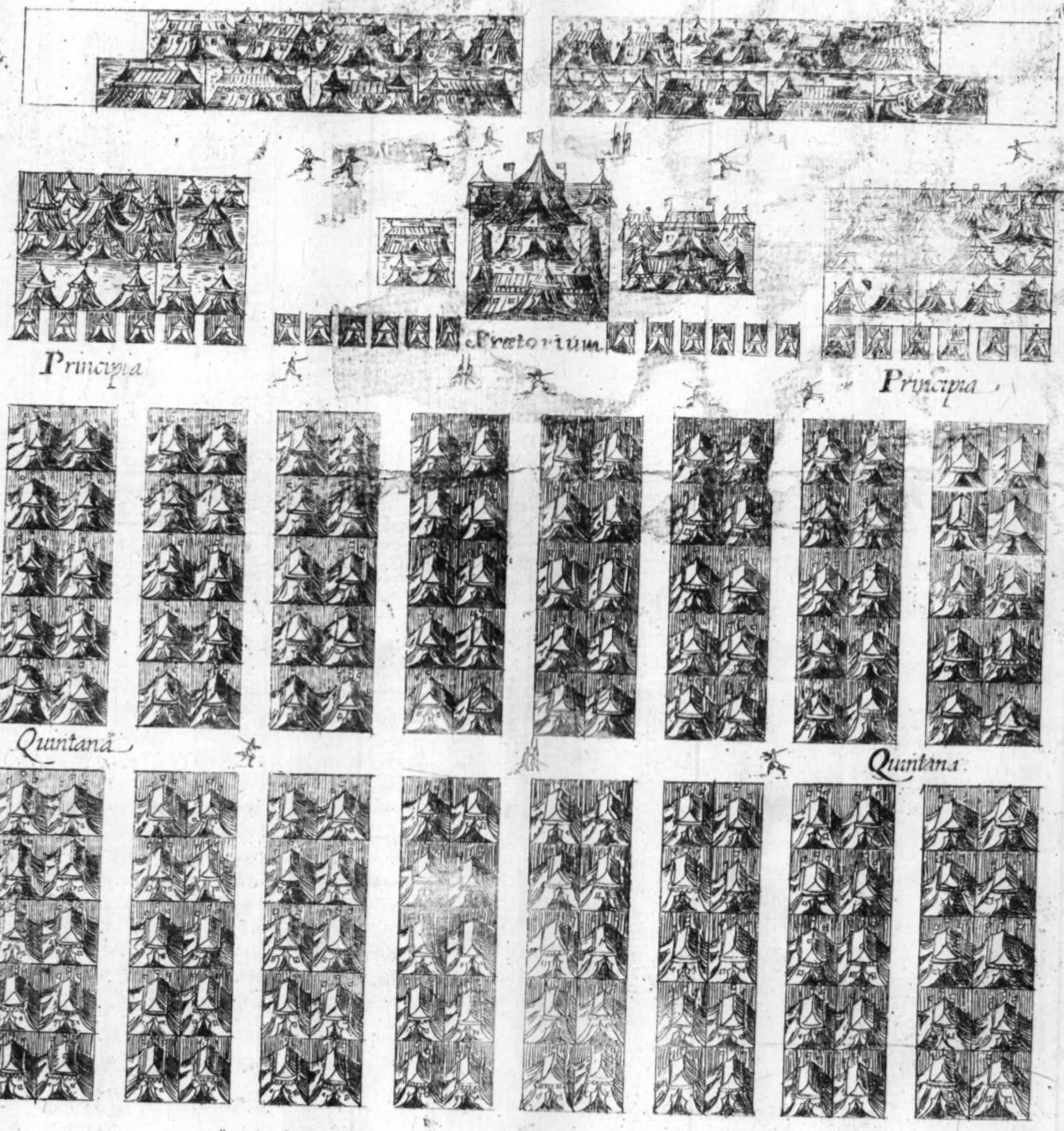
The Generals tent being thus placed, they considered which side of the pa-



749.b

Porta Prætoria

THE ROMAINE CAMPE.



pauilion laie moſt commodious for forrage and water, and on that ſide they lodged the legions, euery legion diuided one from another by a ſtreete or lane of 50. foot in breadth; and according to the degree of honour, that euery legion had in the Armie, ſo were they lodged in the campe, either in the midſt which was counted moſt honorable, or towards the ſides, which was of meaner reputation. And againe, according to the place of euery cohort in his legion, ſo was it lodged neerer the pauilion of the Emperour, towardes the heart of the camp; and ſo conſequently euery maniple tooke place in the cohort, diſtinguiſhing their preheminence, by lodging them either toward the middle or to the outſideward; according as they diſtinguiſhed the place of their legions: there went a ſtreet of fiftie in breadth ouerthwart the middeſt of all the legions, which was called Quintana; for that it diuided the fift cohort of euery legion from the ſixt. *Quintana.*

Betweene the tents of the firſt maniples in euerie legion and the *Prætorium*, there went a waie of 100. foote in breadth throughout the whole camp; which was called Principia; in this place the Tribunes ſate to heare matters of iuſtice; the ſouldiers exerciſed themſelues at their weapons, and the leaders and chiefe commanders frequented it as a publick place of meeting; and it was held for a reuerent and ſacred place, and ſo kept with a correſpondent decency. On either ſide the Emperours pauilion, in a direct line to make euen & ſtraight the vpper ſide of the Principia, the Tribunes had their Tents pitched, euerie Tribune confronting the head of the legion wherof hee was Tribune: aboue them, towards the head of the campe, were the Legates and Treaſurer: the vpper part of the camp was ſtrengthened with ſome ſelect cohorts and troupes of horſe, according to the number of legions that were in the Armie. *Principia.* *The tentes of the Tribunes.*

Polybius deſcribing the manner of incamping, which the Romans vſed in his time, when as they had commonly but two legions in their Armie, with as manie aſſociates, placeth the *Ablecti* and *extraordinarij*, which were ſelect bandes & companies, in the vpper part of the camp; and the aſſociates on the outſide of the legions.

The ditch and the rampier, that compaſſed the whole camp about, was 200 foote diſtant from any tent: whereof Polybius giueth theſe reaſons; firſt, that the ſoldiers marching into the camp in battell array, might there diſſolue themſelues into maniples, centuries and decuries, without tumult or confuſion: for, order was the thing which they principally reſpected, as the life and ſtrength of their martiall body. And again, if occaſion were offered to ſallie out vpon an Enemie, they might very conueniently in that ſpacious roome, put themſelues into companies and troupes: and if they were aſſaulted in the night, the dartes and fire workes, which the Enemie ſhould caſt into their campe, would little indammage them, by reaſon of the diſtance betweene the rampier and the tents. *The ſpace betweene the tents and the rampier.*

Their tents were all of skins and hides, held vp with props, and faſtened with ropes: there were 11. ſouldiers, as Vegetius ſaith, in euerie tent, and that ſocietie was called *Contubernium*, of whom the chiefeſt was named *Decanus*, or *Caput Contubernij*. *Contubernium.*

The ditch & the rampier. The ditch and the rampire were made by the legions, euery maniple hauing his part measured out, and euery Centurion ouerseeing his Centurie; the approbation of the whole work belonged to the Tribunes. Their manner of intrenching was this: the soldiers being girt with their swords & daggers, digged the ditch about the camp, which was alwaies 8. foot in breadth at the least, and as much in depth, casting the earth thereof inward; but if the enemy were not far off, the ditch was alwaies 11. or 15. or 18. foot in latitude, & altitude; according to the discretion of the General: but what scantling soeuer was kept, the ditch was made *directis lateribus*, that is, as broad in the bottom as at the top. The rampier from the brim of the ditch, was three foote in height, and sometimes foure, made after the manner of a wall, with green turfes cut all to one measure, halfe a foot in thicknesse, a foot in breadth, and a foote and a halfe in length. But if the place, wherein they were incamped, would afford no such turfe; they then strengthened the loose earth, which was cast out of the ditch, with boughes & fagots, that it might be strong and well fastened. The rampier they properly called *Agger*: the outside whereof, which hung ouer the ditch, they vsed to stick with thicke and sharp stakes, fastened deep in the mound, that they might be firm; and these for the most part were forked stakes: which made the rampier very strong, and not to be assaulted but with great difficulty. Varro saith, that the front of the rampier thus stuck with stakes, was called *vallum*, a *varicando*, for that no man could stride or get ouer it.

Agger.

Vallum.

Praetoria porta. The campe had foure gates: the first was called *praetoria porta*, which was alwaies behind the Emperours tent: and this gate did vsually looke either toward the east, or to the Enemie, or that waie that the Army was to march. The gate on the other side of the camp opposit to this, was called *Porta Decumana à decimis cohortibus*; for the tenth or last Cohort of euery legion, was lodged to confront this gate: by this gate the soldiers went out to fetch their wood, their water, and their forrage, and this waie their offendours were carried to execution. The other two gates were called *Porta principales*, forasmuch as they stood opposite to either end of that so much respected place, which they called *principia*, only distinguished by these titles, *laeua*, *principalis*, and *dextra*: all these gates were shut with doores, & in standing Camps fortified with Turrets, vpon which were planted Engins of defence, as Balistæ, Catapultæ, Tolenones and such like.

Porta Decumana.

Porta principales. Laeua. Dextra.

Castra. Aestiua. The Romanes had their summer Camps, which they tearmed *Aestiua*, and their winter Camps, which they called *Hiberna*, or *Hibernacula*: their summer campes were in like manner differenced, according to the time, which they continued in them. For, if they remained in a place but a night or two, they called them *Castra* or *Mansiones*; but if they continued in them any long time, they called them *Aestiuas* or *Sedes*: And these were more absolute, aswell in regard of their tents, as of their fortificatiõ, then the former, wherin they staied but one night. The other which they called *Hiberna*, had great labor & cost bestowed vpon them, that they might the better defend them from the winter season. Of these we read, that the tents were either thatched with straw, or roofed with boards, & that they had their armory, hospital, & other publike houses.

Hiberna

These

These camps haue bin the beginning of many famous towns, especially when they continued long in a place, as oftentimes they did, vpon the bankes of Euphrates, Danow, and the Rhene. The order which they alwaies obserued in laying out their Campe, was so vniforme, and well knowen to the Romanes, that when the Centurions had limitted out euerie part, and marked it with different ensignes and colours, the Souldiers entered into it, as into a knowen and familiar Citie: wherein euery societie or small contubernie, knewe the place of his lodging: and which is more, euerie particular man could assigne the proper station of euerie company, throughout the whole Armie.

The commodity of this incamping.

The vse and commoditie of this incamping, I briefly touched in my first booke: But if I were worthy any waie to commend the excellencie thereof to our moderne Souldiers, or able by perswasion to restablish the vse of incamping in our warres; I woulde spare no paines to atchieue so great a good, and vaunt more in the conquest of negligence, than if my selfe had compassed a new found out meanes: and yet reason would deeme it a matter of small difficultie, to gaine a point of such worth, in the opinion of our men, especially when my discourse shall present securitie to our forces, and honour to our leaders, maiestie to our Armies, & terrour to our enemies, wonderment to strangers, and victorie to our nation. But sloth hath such interest in this age, that it commendeth vaine glory and foole-hardinesse, contempt of vertue, and derision of good discipline, to repugne the designes of honour, and so far to ouermaister reason, that it suffereth not former harmes to beare witnesse against errour, nor correct the ill atchieuements of ill directions: and therefore ceasing to vrge this point any further, I will leaue it to the carefull respect of the wise.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

The ceremonies which they vsed in their preparation to battell.

THe fury of the Enemy, and their sodain assault, so disturbed the ceremonies which the Romane discipline obserued, to make the Soldiers truely apprehend the waight and importance of that action, which might cast vpon their state either soueraignty or bondage; that they were all for the most part omitted; notwithstanding they are here noted vnder these titles; the first was *vexillum proponendū, quod erat insigne cum ad Arma concurri oporteret*: for when the General had determined to fight, he caused a skarlet coate or red flag to be hung out vpon the top of his tent, that by it the Soldiors might be warned, to prepare themselues for the battell; and this was the first warning they had: which by a silent aspect presented blood and execution to their eyes, as the onely meanes to worke out their owne safety, and purchase eternal honour. The second was *Signum tuba dandum*; this warning was a noise of manie trumpets, which they tearmed by the name of *classicum a calando*, which signifieth calling: for after the eye was filled with *species* sutable to the matter intended; they then hasted to possesse the eare, and by the sense of hearing to stir vp warlike motions, & fill them with resolute thoughts, that no diffident or base conceites might take hold of their mindes. The third

was, *milites cohortandi*: for it was thought conuenient to confirme this valor, with motiues of reason, which is the strength and perfection of all such motions. The vse and benefit wherof I somwhat inlarged in the Heluetian wars and could affoord much more labour to demonstrate the commodity of this part, if my speech might carrie credit in the opinion of our souldiers, or bee thought worthie regard to men so much addicted to their owne fashions. The last was *signum dandum*; which, as some think, was nothing but a word, by which they might distinguish & know themselues from their enemies. Hirtius in the war of Afrike saith, that Cæsar gaue the word *Felicitie*; Brutus and Cassius gaue *Libertie*; others haue giuen *Virtus, Deus nobiscum, Triumphus Imperatoris*, & such like words, as might be ominous to a good successe. Besides these particularities, the manner of their deliuerie gaue a great grace to the matter. And that was distinguished by times, and cues: whereof Cæsar now complaineth; that all these were to be done at one instant of time: for without all controuersie, there is no matter of such consequence in it selfe, but may be much graced with ceremonies & complements, which like officers or attendants adde much respect and maiestie to the action; which otherwise being but barely presented, appeareth far meaner and of lesse regarde.

CHAP. X.

The battell betweene Cæsar and the Neruij.

Cæsar.

IN these difficulties, two things were a help to the Romans; the one was the knowledge & experiẽce of the soldiers: for by reason of their practice in former battels, they could as wel prescribe vnto themselues, what was to be done, as any other commaunder could teach them. The other was, that notwithstanding Cæsar gad giuen commandment to euery Legate, not to leaue the worke or forsake the legions, vntill the fortifications were perfited; yet when they sawe extreamitie of danger, they atttended no countermand from Cæsar: but ordered all things as it seemed best to their owne discretion. Cæsar hauing commanded such things as he thought necessarie, ranne hastily to incourage his souldiers, and by fortune came to the tenth legion; where he vsed no further speech, then that they should remember their ancient valour, and valiantly withstand the brunt of their enemies. And for as much as the enemie was no further off, then a weapon might be cast to incounter them, hee gaue them the signe of battell: and hastening from thence to another quarter, he found them already closed and at the incounter. For the time was so short & the enemy so violent, that they wanted leisure to put on their head peeces, or to vncase their targets: & what part they lighted into from their work, or what ensigne they first met withall, there they staied; least in seeking out their

And therefore I rather take it to bee something els then a word.

owne

owne companies, they ſhould loſe that time as was to be ſpent in fighting. The Army being imbattailed rather according to the nature of the place, the deeliuity of the hill, & the breuity of time, then according to the rules of art; as the legions incountred the Enemie in diuers places at once, the perfect view of the battell being hindred by thoſe thicke hedges before ſpoken of, there could no ſuccors be placed any where; neither could any man ſee what was needfull to be done: & therefore in ſo great vncertainty of things, there happened diuers caſualties of fortune.

The ſoldiers of the 9. & 10. legion, as they ſtood in the left part of the Army, caſting their piles, with the aduantage of the hil, did driue the Attrebatij, breathleſs with rũning & wounded in the incoũter, down into the riuer; & as they paſſed ouer the water, ſlew many of them with their ſwords: Neither did they ſtick to follow after them ouer the riuer, & aduẽture into a place of diſaduantage, where the battell being renued againe by the Enemy, they put them to flight the ſecond time. In like manner two other legions, the 11. & the 8. hauing put the Veromãdui frõ the vpper ground, fought with them vpon the banks of the riuer; and ſo the front & the left part of the camp was well neere left naked. For in the right cornet were the 12. & the 7. legions, where as all the Neruij, vnder the cõduct of Boduognatus, were heaped together; & ſom of them began to aſſault the legions on the opẽ ſide, & other ſom to poſſeſs themſelues of the higheſt part of the camp

At the ſame time the Roman horſemen, & the light armed footmen that were intermingled amongſt them, & were at firſt al put to flight by the Enemy, as they were entering into the camp, met with their enimies in the face, & ſo were driuen to flie out another waie. In like manner, the pages & ſouldiers boies, that frõ the Decumane port & top of the hill, had ſeen the tenth legion follow their enemies in purſuit ouer the riuer, and were gone out to gather pillage, when they looked behind them, and ſaw the enemy in their camp; betook them to their heels as faſt as they could. Which accident ſo terrified the horſemen of the Treuiri (who for their proweſſe were reputed ſingular amongſt the Galls, and were ſent thither by their State, to aid the Romanes) firſt when they perceiued the Roman camp to be poſſeſt, by a great multitude of the Enemy, the legions to be ouercharged & almoſt incloſed about, the horſemen, ſlingers, and Numidians to be diſperſed and fled, that without anie further expectation they took their waie homeward, & reported to their State, that the Romans were vtterly ouerthrowen.

Cæſar departing from the tenth legiõ, to the right cornet, found his men exceedingly ouercharged, the enſignes crowded together into one place, & the ſoldiers of the 12 legiõ ſo thick thronged on a heap, that they hindred one another; all the Centurions of the fourth cohort being ſlain, the enſign bearer kild and the enſign taken, and the Centurions of the other cohorts either ſlain, or ſore wounded; amongſt whõ Pub. Sextus Baculus, the Primipile of that legion, a valiant man, ſo grieuouſly woũded, that he could ſcarce ſtand vpon his feet; the reſt not very forward, but many of the hindmoſt turning taile & forſaking the field; the Enemy on the other ſide, giuing no reſpite in front, although he fought againſt the hil, nor yet ſparing the open ſide, and the matter brought to a narrow iſſue, without any means or ſuccor, to relieue thẽ: he took a target from one of the hindmoſt ſoldiers

(for he himself was come thither without one) & pressing to the front of the battell, called the Centurions by name, and incouraging the rest, commaunded the ensignes to be aduaunced toward the enemie, and the Maniples to bee inlarged, that they might with greater facilitie and readinesse vse their swords.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

The place and office of a primipile.

THis Publius Sextus Baculus was the chiefest Centurion of the 12. legion, beeing the first Centurion of that Maniple of the Triarij, that was of the first Cohort in that legion; for that place was the greatest dignitie that could happen to a Centurion; and therefore he was called by the name of *Centurio primipili*, or simply *Primipilus*, and somtimes *Primopilus*, or *Primus Centurio*. By him were commonly published, the mandates and edicts of the Emperour, and Tribunes: and therefore the rest of the Centurions, at all times had an eie vnto him; and the rather for that the eagle, which was the peculiar ensigne of euery legion, was committed to his charge and carried in his Maniple: Neither was this dignitie, without speciall commoditie, as may be gathered out of diuers authours. We read further, that it was no disparagement for a Tribune, after his Tribunalitie was expired, to be a Primipile in a legion; notwithstanding, there was a lawe made, I know not vpon what occasion, that no Tribune should afterward be Primipile. But let this suffice concerning the office and title of P. S. Baculus.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

The Target described.

AND heere I may not omit to giue the Target anie honour I may: and therefore I will take occasion to describe it in Cæsars hand, as in the place of greatest dignitie, and much honouring the excellency therof. Polybius maketh the Target to containe two foot and an halfe in breadth, ouerthwart the conuex surface thereof; and the length foure foot, of what form or fashion soeuer they were of: for the Romans had two sorts of Tragets amongst their legionarie; the first carried the proportion of that figure, which the Geometricians call Oual, a figure of an vnequal latitude, broadest in the midst, and narrow at both the ends like vnto an egge, described in *Plano*: the other sort was of an equall latitude, and resembled the fashion of a gutter-tile; and thereupon was called *Scutum imbricatum*. The matter whereof a target was made, was a double board, one fastened vpon another, with lint and Buls glewe; and couered with an Oxe hide, or som other stiffe leather; the vpper and lower part of the target were bound about with a plate of iron, to keepe it from cleauing; and in the middest there was a bosse of iron or brasse, which they called *Vmbo*. Romulus brought them in first among the Romanes, taking the vse of them from the Sabines. The wood whereof they were made, was for the most part either tallow, alder or figtree: whereof Plinie giueth this reason, for as much

Lib. 16. c. 40.

as

as these trees are colde and wateriſh, and therefore any blow or thruſt that was made vpon the wood, was presently contracted and ſhut vp againe. But for as much as the Target was of ſuch reputation amongſt the Roman Armes, and challenged ſuch intereſt in the greateſt of their Empire, let vs enter a little into the conſideration of the vſe and commoditie thereof; which cannot be better vnderſtood, then by that conference, which Polybius hath made betweene the weapons of the Romans and the Macedonians: and therefore I haue thought it good to inſert it in theſe diſcourſes. And thus it followeth.

Of the difference of the Roman and Macedonian WEAPONS.

I Promiſed in my ſixt booke that I would make a compariſon, betweene the weapons of the Romans, and Macedonians. And that I woulde likewiſe write of the diſpoſition of either of their Armies; how they do differ one from another: and in what regarde, the one, or the other, were either inferiour, or ſuperiour: which promiſe I will now with diligence endeuour to perform. And for as much as the Armies of the Macedonians haue giuen ſo good teſtimonies of themſelues by their actions, by ouercomming the Armies as well of thoſe of Aſia, as of Greece; and that the battailes of the Romans haue conquered, as well thoſe of Africa, as all the eſterne countries of Europ: It ſhall not be amiſſe, but very profitable, to ſearch out the differene of either; eſpecially ſeeing that theſe our times haue not once, but many times ſeene triall, both of their battailes & forces; that knowing the reaſon why the Romans do ouercome, and in their battailes cary away the better, wee doe not as vaine men were wont to do, attribute the ſame to fortune, and eſteem them without reaſon happy victors; but rather looking into the true cauſes, we giue thē their due praiſes, according to the direction of reaſon, and ſound iudgement. Concerning the battails between Hanniball and the Romans; and concerning the Romans their loſſes, there is no need that I ſpeak much. For their loſſes are neither to bee imputed to the defect of their Armes, or diſpoſition of their Armies; but to the dexteritie and induſtrie of Hanniball: but wee haue entreated thereof when wee made mention of the battels themſelues; and the end it ſelfe of that warre, doth eſpecially confirme this our opinion: for when they had gotten a Captaine equall with Hanniball, euen conſequentlie withall his victories vaniſhed. And hee had no ſooner ouercome the Romans, but by and by, reiecting his owne weapons, he trayned his Armie to their weapons: and ſo taking them vp in the beginning, hee continued them on vnto the end.

And Pyrrhus in his war againſt the Romans, did vſe both their weapons and order, and made as it were a medlie both of the cohort, and phalanx: but notwithſtanding, it ſerued him not to get the victory; but alwaies the euent by ſome meanes or other, made the ſame doubtful: concerning whom it were not vnfit, that

749b

that I ſhould ſay ſomething, leaſt in being altogether ſilent, it might ſeeme to preiudice this mine opinion. But notwithſtanding I wil haſten to my purpoſed compariſon.

Now touching the phalanx, if it haue the diſpoſition, and forces proper to it, nothing is able to oppoſe it ſelfe againſt it, or to ſuſtaine the violence thereof; as may eaſily by many documents be approued. For when an armed man doth ſtand firme in the ſpace of three foote in ſo thicke an arraie of battell, and the length of their pikes being according to the firſt baſis, or ſcantling ſixteene foote; but according to the true and right conueniency of them, 14. cubits, out of which are taken foure allowed for the ſpace betweene the left hand, which ſupporteth the ſame, and the butte end thereof, whiles hee ſtands in a readineſſe to attend the incounter: being thus ordered, I ſaie, it is manifeſt that the length of tenne cubites dooth extend it ſelfe before the bodie of euerie armed man, where with both his hands he doth aduance it ready to charge the Enemie. By which meanes it followeth, that ſome of the pikes doe not onely extend themſelues before the ſecond, third, and fourth ranke, but ſome before the formoſt, if the phalanx haue his proper and due thickeneſſe, according to his naturall diſpoſition, both on the ſides and behinde: as Homer maketh mention when he ſaith, that one target doth encloſe and fortifie another; one head-piece is ioined to another, that they may ſtand vnited and cloſe together.

Theſe circumſtances being rightly and truely ſet downe, it muſt follow, that the pikes of euerie former ranke in the phalanx, doe extend themſelues two cubites before each other, which proportion of difference they haue betweene themſelues: by which may euidently be ſeene the aſſault, and impreſſion of the whole phalanx, what it is, and what force it hath, conſiſting of 16. rankes in depth, or thickneſſe; the exceſſe of which number of ranks aboue fiue. For as much as they cannot commodiouſly couch their pikes, without the diſturbance of the former, the points of them not being long inough to enlarge thẽſelues beyond the formoſt ranks, they grow vtterly vnprofitable, & cannot man by man, make any impreſſion, or aſſault: but ſerue only, by laying their pikes vpon the ſhoulders of thoſe which ſtand before them, to ſuſtaine and hold vp the ſwaies and giuing backe of the former rankes, which ſtand before them to this end, that the front may ſtand firme and ſure; and with the thickeneſſe of their pikes they doe repell all thoſe darts, which paſſing ouer the heads of thoſe that ſtand before, would annoy thoſe rankes which are more backward.

And farther by mouing forward, with the force of their bodies, they doe ſo preſſe vpon the former, that they doe make a moſt violent impreſſion. For it is impoſſible that the formoſt rankes ſhould giue back.

This therefore being the generall and particular diſpoſition of the phalanx: we muſt now ſpeake on the contrarie part, touching the properties & differences, as well of the Arms, as of the whole diſpoſition of the Roman battell. For euery Roman ſoldier for himſelfe, and his weapon, is allowed three foot to ſtand in, and in the incounter, are moued man, by man, euery one couering himſelfe with his target; and mutually moouing whenſoeuer there is occaſion offered.

But

But those which vse their swords, do fight in a more thin and distinct order; so that it is manifest, that they haue three foot more allowed them to stand in both from shoulder to shoulder, and from backe to belly, that they may vse their weapons with the better commodity. And hence it commeth to pass, that one Roman souldier taketh vp as much ground, as two of those which are to encounter him of the Macedonian Phalanx: so that one Roman is as it were to oppose himselfe against ten pikes, which pikes the saide one souldier can neyther by any agility come to offend, or else at handy blowes otherwise annoy: And those which are behinde him, are not only vnable to repell their force, but also with conueniency to vse their owne weapons. Whereby it may easily be gathered, that it is impossible, that any battaile being assaulted, by the front of a phalanx, should be able to sustaine the violence thereof, if it haue his due and proper composition.

What then is the cause that the Romans doe ouercome, and that those that doe vse the phalanx are voyde of the hope of victory? Euen from hence, that the Roman Armies haue infinite commodities, both of places, and of times, to fight in. But the phalanx hath only one time, one place, and one kinde, whereto it may profitably apply it selfe: so that if it were of necessitie, that their enemy should incounter them at that instant, especially with their whole forces, it were questionlesse not only, not without danger, but in all probability likelie, that the phalanx should euer carry away the better. But if that may bee auoided, which is easily done: shall not that disposition then, be vtterly vnprofitable, and free from all terror? And it is farther euident, that the phalanx must necessarily haue plaine and champion places, without any hinderances, or impediments; as ditches, vneuen places, vallies, little hils and riuers: for all these may hinder and disioine it. And it is almost impossible to haue a Plain of the capacity of 20. *stadia*, much lesse more, where there shall bee found none of these impediments. But suppose there bee found such places, as are proper for the phalanx: If the Enemy refuse to come vnto them, and in the mean time, spoile, and sack the Cities, and country round about; what commodity, or profit shall arise by any Army so ordered? for, if it remaine in such places, as hath been before spoken of; it can neither relieue their friends, nor preserue themselues. For the conuoies which they expect from their friends, are easily cut off by the Enemy, whiles they remain in those open places.

And if it happen at any time, that they leaue them vpon any enterprise, they are then exposed to the Enemy. But suppose, that the Roman Army should find the phalanx in such places, yet would it not aduenture it selfe in gross at one instant; but would by little and little retire it selfe: as doth plainly appeare by their vsuall practice. For there must not be a coniecture of these things by my words only, but especially by that which they do. For they doe not so equally frame their battell, that they doe assault the Enemy altogether, making as it were but one front: but part make a stand, and part charge the Enemie, that if at any time the Palanx doe presse them, that come to assault them and bee repelled; the force of their order is dissolued. For whether they pursue those that retire, or fly from those that doo assault them, these doe disioyne themselues

749b

themſelues from part of their Army; by which meanes there is a gap opened to their Enemies, ſtanding and attending their opportunity: ſo that now they neede not anie more to charge them in the front, where the force of the phalanx conſiſteth; but to aſſault where the breach is made, both behinde, and vpon the ſides. But if at any time the Romane Army may keepe his due proprietie, and diſpoſition, the phalanx by the diſaduantage of the place, being not able to do the like: doth it not then manifeſtly demonſtrate the difference to be great betweene the goodneſſe of their diſpoſition, and the diſpoſition of the phalanx?

To this may be added the neceſſities impoſed vpō an Army: which is, to march through places of all natures, to encamp themſelues, to poſſeſſe places of aduantage, to beſiege, & to be beſieged; and alſo contrary to expectation ſometimes to come in view of the Enemie. For, all theſe occaſions neceſſarily accōpany an Army; and oftentimes are the eſpeciall cauſes of victory, to which the Macedonian phalanx is no way fit, or conuenient: foraſmuch, as neither in their generall order, nor in their particular diſpoſition, without a conuenient place, they are able to effect any thing of moment: but the Roman Army is apt for al theſe purpoſes. For, euerie ſouldiour amongſt them, being once armed and ready to fight, refuſeth no place, time nor occaſion; keeping alwaies the ſame order, whether he fight togither with the whole body of the Army, or particularly by himſelfe, man, to man.

And hence it happeneth, that as the commodity of their diſpoſition is aduantageous: ſo the end doth anſwere the expectation.

Theſe things I thought to ſpeak of at large, becauſe manie of the Grecians are of an opinion, that the Macedonians are not to be ouercome. And againe, many wondered, how the Macedonian phalanx ſhould be put to the worſe by the Roman Army, conſidering the nature of their weapons.

Thus farre goeth Polybius, in comparing the weapons and imbattailing of the Romans, with the vſe of Arms amongſt the Macedonians: wherein we ſee the Pike truly and exactly ordered, according as the wiſe Grecians could beſt proportion it with that forme of battell, which might giue moſt aduantage to the vſe thereof: ſo that if our ſquadrons of Pikes iumpe not with the perfect manner of a phalanx, (as wee ſee they doe not) they fall ſo much ſhort of that ſtrength, which the wiſedome of the Grecians and the experience of other nations, imputed vnto it. But ſuppoſe we could allowe it that diſpoſition, in the courſe of our warres, which the nature of the weapon doth require; yet foraſmuch as by the authority of Polybius, the ſayd manner of imbattailing is tyed to ſuch dangerous circumſtances of one time, one place, and one kind of fight: I hold it not ſo profitable a weapon, as the practice of our times doth ſeem to make it, eſpecially in woddy countries, ſuch as Ireland is; where the vſe is cut off by ſuch inconueniences, as are noted to hinder the managing thereof. And doubtleſs, if our commanders did but conſider of the incongruity of the Pike and Ireland, they would not proportion ſo great a number of them in euery companie, as there is; for, commonly half the companie are Pikes, which is as much to ſaie in the practice of our wars, that halfe the Army hath neither

offenſiue

offenſiue nor defenſiue weapons, but onely againſt a troupe of horſe. For, they ſildome or neuer come to the puſh of pike, with the foote companies, where they may charge and offend the enemie: and for defence, if the enemie thinke it not ſafe to buckle with them at hand, but maketh more aduantage, to play vpon them afarre off with ſhotte; it affordeth ſmall ſafety to ſhake a long pike at them, and ſtand faire in the meane time, to entertaine a volley of ſhot, with the body of their battailion. As I make no queſtion, but the pike in ſome ſeruices is profitable, as behind a rampier, or at a breach; ſo I aſſure my ſelf, there are weapons, if they were put to triall, that would counteruaile the pike, euen in thoſe ſeruices, wherein it is thought moſt profitable.

Concerning the Target, we ſee it take the hand, in the iudgement of Polybius, of all other weapons whatſoeuer, as well in regard of the diuers and ſundry ſorts of imbattailing, as the qualitie of the place whereſoeuer: for, their vſe was as effectuall in ſmall bodies and centuries, as in groſſe troupes and great companies; in thinne and ſpacious imbattelling, as in thick thronged Teſtudines.

Neither could the nature of the place make thē vnſeruiceable; for, whether it were plaine or couert, leuell or vnequall, narrow or large, if there were anie commodity to fight, the target was as neceſſarie to defend, as the ſword to offend: beſides the conueniencie, which accompanieth the target in any neceſſitie impoſed vpon an Armie, whether it be to march through places of all natures, to make a faſt march, or a ſpeedy retraite, to incamp themſelues, to poſſeſſe places of aduantage, to beſiege and to be beſieged, as Polybius ſaith, with many other occaſions which neceſſarily accompanie an Armie. The vſe of this weapon hath been to much neglected in theſe later ages, but may be happilie renued againe in our Nation, if the induſtry of ſuch as haue laboured to preſent it vnto theſe times, in the beſt faſhion, ſhall find any fauour in the opinion of our Commaunders. Concerning which Target, I muſt needes ſay this much, that the light target will prooue the target of ſeruice, whenſoeuer they ſhall happen to be put in execution: for, thoſe which are made proofe, are ſo heauie and vnwieldie (although it be ſomewhat qualified with ſuch helps as are annexed to the vſe thereof) that they ouercharge a man, with an vnſupportable burthen, and hinder his agilitie and execution in fight, with a waight diſproportionable to his ſtrength. For, our offenſiue weapons, as namely, the Hargebuſiers, and Muſketires, are ſtronger in the offenſiue part, then any armes of defence, which may be made manageable & fit for ſeruice. Neither did the Romans regard the prooſe of their target further, then was thought fit for the readie vſe of them in time of battaile, as it appeareth in manie places, both in the Ciuill vvars, and in theſe Commentaries: for, a Romaine Pile hath oftentimes darted through the Target, and the bodie of the man that bare it, and faſtened thē both to the ground: which is more then a Musket can well do; for the bullet commonly reſteth in the bodie. And although it may be ſaid, that this was not common, but rather the effect of an extraordinary arme; yet it ſerueth to proue, that their targets were not proofe to their offenſiue weapons, whē they were well deliuered, & with good direction. For, I make no doubt, but in their

71910

battailes there were oftentimes some hinderances, which would not suffer so violent an effect, as this which I speake off: for, in a volley of shotte, wee must not thinke, that all the bullets flie with the same force, & fall with the like hurt; but as Armour of good proofe, will hardly hold out some of them; so slender Armes, and of no proofe, will make good resistance against others. And, to conclude, in a battell or incounter at hand, a man shall meet with more occasions, suting the nature and commoditie of this light Target, then such as wil aduantage the heauie Target of proofe, or counteruaile the surplus of waight, which it carieth with it.

Some men will vrge, that there is vse of this Target of proofe, in some places and in some seruices: which I deny not to those, that desire to be secured from the extreamitie of peril. But this falleth out in some places, & in some particular seruices; and hindereth not, but that the vniuersall benefit of this weapon consisteth in the multitude of light Targetiers, who are to manage the most important occasions of a warre.

This much I am further to note, concerning the sword of the Targetires, that according to the practice of the Romaines, it must alwaies hang on the right side; for, carying the Target vpon the left arme, it cannot bee that the sword should hang on the left side, but with great trouble and annoiance. And if any man say, that if it hang on the right side, it must be very short; otherwise, it will neuer be readily drawne out: I say, that the sword of the Targetiers, in regard of the vse of that weapon, ought to be of a very short scantling, when as the Targetier is to commaund the point of his sword within the compasse of his Target, as such as looke into the true vse of this weapon, will easily discouer. But let this suffice, concerning the vse of the Pike and the Target.

CHAP. XI.

The Battell continueth, and in the end *Cæsar ouercommeth.*

Cæsar. *AT the presence of their Generall, the souldiers conceiued some better hopes; and gathering strength and courage againe, when as euery man bestirred himselfe in the sight of the Emperor, the brunt of the enemy was a little staied. Cæsar, perceiuing likewise the seuenth legion, vvhich stood next vnto him, to be sore ouerlaid by the enemy, commanded the Tribunes by little and little, to ioyne the two legions together, and so by ioyning back to back, to make two contrary fronts; & being thus secured one by another from feare of beeing circumuented, they began to make resistance with greater courage. In the mean time, the two legions that were in the rereward to guard the cariages, hearing of the battell, doubled their pase, and vvere descried by the enemy vpon the toppe of the hill. And Titus Labienus, hauing won the Campe of the Neruij, and beholding from the higher ground*

ground what was done on the other side of the riuer, sent the tenth legion to help their fellowes: who, vnderstanding by the horsemen and Lackies that fledde, in what case the matter stood, and in what danger the Campe, the legions, and the Generall was, made all the haste they possibly could. At whose comming, there happened such an alteration and change of things, that euen such as were sunke downe, through extreame griefe of their wounds, or leaned vpon their Targets, beganne againe to fight afresh; and the Pages and the boies, perceiuing the enemy amazed, ranne vpon them vnarmed, not fearing their weapons.

The horsemen also, striuing with extraordinary valour, to wipe away the dishonour of their former flight, thrust themselues in all places before the legionary souldiers. Howbeit, the Enemy in the vtmost perill of their liues, shewed such manhood, that as fast as the formost of thē were ouerthrowne, the next in place bestrid their carcasses, and fought vpon their bodies: and these beeing likewise ouerthrowne, and their bodies heaped one vpon another, they that remained, possest themselues of that Mount of dead carcasses, as a place of aduantage, and from thence threw their weapons, and intercepting the piles, returned them againe to the Romans.

By which it may be gathered, that there was great reason to deeme them men of haughtie courage, that durst passe ouer so broad a Riuer, climbe vp such high rocks, & aduenture to fight in a place of such inequalitie. The battell being thus ended, and the Nation and name of the Neruij beeing well neere swallowed vp with destruction, the elder sort, with the women and children, that before the battell, were conuaied into Ilands and Bogs; when they heard thereof, sent Embassadours to Caesar, and yielded themselues to his mercy; and in laying open the misery of their State, affirmed, that of six hundred Senatours, they had now left but three; and of sixtie thousand fighting men, there was scarce fiue hundred that were able to beare Armes. Caesar, that his clemencie might appeare to a distressed people, preserued them with great care, granting vnto them the free possession of their townes and country, & straightly commanding their borderers, not to offer them any wrong or iniurie at all.

OBSERVATION.

AND thus endeth the relation of that great and dangerous battel, which Ramus complaineth of as a confused narration: much differing from the direct & methodicall file, of his other Commentaries. But if that rule hold good, which learned Rhetoricians haue obserued in their Oratory; that An vnperfect thing, ought not to be told in a perfect maner: then by Ramus leaue, if any such confusion do appeare, it both sauoureth of eloquence, & well suteth the turbulent cariage of the action, wherein order and skill gaue place to Fortune, & prouidence was swallowed vp with peraduenture. For, that which Hirtius saith of the ouerthrow hee gaue to Pharnaces, may as well be said of this; that he got the victorie, *plurimū adiuuante deorum benignitate, qui cū omnibus belli casibus interfunt, tum praecipuè ijs quibus nihil ratione potuit administrari.* *Lib. de Militia. In. Ca.*

For, ſo it fell out in this battell, and the danger proceeded from the ſame cauſe, that brought him to that puſh in the battell with Pharnaces: for, he well vnderſtood that the Neruij attended his comming on the other ſide the riuer Sabis: Neither was hee ignorant how to fortifie his Campe in the face of an enemie, without feare or danger, as we haue ſeene in his warre with Ariouiſtus; when he marched to the place where hee purpoſed to incampe himſelfe with three battels, and cauſed two of them to ſtand ready in Armes to receiue any charge, which the Enemy ſhould offer to giue, that the third battell in the meane time might fortifie the Campe. Which courſe would eaſily haue fruſtrated this ſtratagem of the Neruij, and made the hazard leſſe dangerous: but hee little expected any ſuch reſolution, ſo contrarie to the rules of Militarie diſcipline, that an enemie ſhould not ſtick to paſſe ouer ſo broad a riuer, to clime vp ſuch ſteep and high Rocks, to aduenture battell in a place ſo diſaduantageous, and to hazard their fortune vpon ſuch inequalities. And therefore, he little miſtruſted any ſuch vnlikely attempt, wherein the enemy had plotted his own ouerthrow, if the legions had beene ready to receiue them.

Which may teach a Generall, that which Cæſar had not yet learned, that a Leader cannot be too ſecure in his moſt aſſured courſes, nor too carefull in his beſt aduiſed directions; conſidering that the greateſt meanes may eaſily be preuented, and the ſafeſt courſe weakened with an vnreſpected circumſtance: ſo powrefull are weake occurrences in the maine courſe of the waightieſt actions; and ſo infinite are the waies, whereby either wiſedome or fortune may work. Neither did this warne him, to prouide for that which an enemy might doe, how vnlikelie ſoeuer it might ſeeme vnto him: as appeareth by that accident in the battell with Pharnaces. Which practice, of attempting a thing againſt reaſon and the arte of warre, hath found good ſucceſſe in our moderne warres, as appeareth by the French hiſtories: notwithſtanding, it is to be handled ſparingly, as no way fauouring of circumſpect and good direction, foraſmuch as *Temeritas non ſemper felix*, as Fabius the great anſwered Scipio.

The chiefeſt helps which the Romaines found, were firſt the aduantage of the place; whereof I ſpake in the Heluetian warre. Secondlie, the experience, which the ſouldiours had got in the former battailes, which much directed them in this turbulent aſſault; wherin they caried themſelues, as men acquainted with ſuch caſualties: laſtly, the valour and vndanted iudgement of the Generall, which ouerſwaied the perill of the battaile, and brought it to ſo fortunate an end. Wherein we may obſerue, that as in a temperate courſe, when the iſſue of the battaile reſted vpon his directions, hee wholly intended warineſſe and circumſpection: ſo in the hazard and perill of good hap, hee confronted extreamitie of danger with extreamitie of valour, and ouer-topt furie, vvith a higher reſolution.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

The Aduatici betake themſelues to a ſtrong hold, *and are taken by Cæſar.*

THE Aduatici before mentioned, comming with all their power to aide the Neruij, and vnderſtanding by the way, of their ouerthrowe, returned home againe; and forſaking all the reſt of their Townes, and Caſtles, conuaied themſelues and their wealth into one ſtrong and well fortified towne, which was compaſſed about with mighty rocks and ſteepe downefals, ſauing in one place of two hundred foote in breadth; vvhere there was an entry by a gentle and eaſie aſcent: which paſſage they had fortified, vvith a double wall of a large altitude, and had placed mighty great ſtones & ſharp beames vpon the walles, ready for an aſſault. This people deſcended from the Cimbri and Teutoni; who, in their iourney into Italie, had left ſuch cariages on this ſide of the Rhene, as they could not conuenientlie take along with them, in the cuſtodie of theſe forces: who, after the death of their fellowes, beeing many yeeres diſquieted by their neighbours, ſometimes inuading other States, and ſometimes defending themſelues, at length procured a peace, and choſe this place to ſettle themſelues in.*

At the firſt comming of the Romaine Armie, they ſallied out of the towne, & made many light skirmiſhes with them: but after that Cæſar had drawn a rampier about the towne, of twelue foote in height, fifteene miles in compaſſe, & had fortified it with Caſtles very thick about the towne, they kept themſelues vvithin the wall. And, as they beheld the Vines framed, the Mount raiſed, & a towre in building afarre off, at firſt they beganne to laugh at it; and with ſcoffing ſpeeches from the wall, began to aske, with what hands, & with what ſtrength, eſpecially by men of that ſtature (for the Romaines were but little men in reſpect of the Galles) a towre of that huge maſsie waight ſhold be brought vnto the walles? But, when they ſaw it remooued, and approching neere vnto the towne (as men aſtoniſhed at the ſtrange and vnaccuſtomed ſight therof) they ſent Embaſſadors to Cæſar, to intreat a peace, with this meſſage: They beleiued that the Romaines did not make war, without the ſpeciall aſsiſtance of the Gods, that could vvith ſuch facility tranſport engines of that height, and bring thē to incounter at hand, againſt the ſtrongeſt part of their towne: and therefore, they ſubmitted both themſelues, & all that they had, to Cæſars mercy; deſiring one thing of his meer clemencie, that hee vvould not take away their Armes; foraſmuch as all their neighbours were enemies vnto them, and enuied at their valour; neither vvere they able to defend themſelues, if they ſhould deliuer vp their Armour: ſo that they had rather ſuffer any inconuenience by the people of Rome, then to be butcherly murthered by them, vvhom in former time they had held ſubiect to their commaund.

* Either Doway or Boſleduke, in Brabant.

To this, Cæsar answered; that he would saue the Cittie rather of his owne custome, then for any desert of theirs, so that they yielded before the Ram touched the wall: but no condition of remedy should be accepted, without present deliuerie of their Armes; for, he would doe by them as he had done by the Neruij, and giue commaundement to their neighbours, that they should offer no wrong to such, as had commended their safety to the people of Rome. This answere being returned to the Citty, they seemed contented to doe whatsoeuer he commaunded them: and thereupon, casting a great part of their Armour ouer the wall, into the ditch, insomuch as they fild it almost to the toppe of the rampier; and yet (as afterward was knowne) concealing the third part, they set open the gates, & for that day caried themselues peaceably. Towards night, Cæsar commaunded the gates to be shut, and the souldiours to be drawne out of the towne. But the Adnatici, hauing consulted together before (forasmuch as they belieued, that vpon their submission, the Romaines would either set no watch at all, or at the least, keepe it verie careleslie) partly vvith such Armour as they had retained, and partly vvith targets, made of barke, or wrought of wicker, which vpon the suddaine they had couered ouer with Leather, about the third watch, where the ascent to our fortifications was easiest, they issued suddainely out of the towne with all their power: but signification thereof being giuen by fires, as Cæsar had commaunded, the Romaines hasted speedily to that place. The Enemy fought verie desperatly, as men in the last hope of their welfare, incountring the Romaines in a place of disaduantage: at length, with the slaughter of foure thousand, the rest were driuen backe into the towne. The next day, vvhen Cæsar came to breake open the gates, and found no man at defence, he sent in the souldiers, and sold all the people and spoile of the towne: the number of persons in the towne, amounted to fiftie three thousand bondslaues.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Circumuallatio.

IN the surprise, attempted by the Belgæ vpon Bibract, I set down the manner, which both the Galles and the Romaines vsed in their suddaine surprising of a towne: whereof if they failed (the place importing any aduantage in the course of war) they then prepared for the siege, in that manner, as Cæsar hath described in this place. They inuironed the towne about with a ditch and a rampier, and fortified the said rampier, with many Castles and Fortresses, erected in a conuenient distance one from another; and so they kept the towne from any forraine succour or relieue: & withall, secured themselues from sallies, or other stratagems, which the townsmen might practice against them. And this manner of siege was called *circumuallatio*; the particular description whereof, I referre vnto the historie of Alesia, *In the seuẽth Cõmentarie.* where I will handle it, according to the particulars there set downe by Cæsar.

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THe Ram, which Cæsar heere mentioneth, was of greatest note amongst all the Romaine Engines, and held that place which the Canon hath in our warres. Vitruuius doth attribute the inuention thereof to the Carthaginians, who at the taking of Cadiz, wanting a fit instrument to raze and ouerthrowe a Castle, they tooke a long beame or timber tree, and bearing it vpon their armes and shoulders, with the one end thereof, they first brake downe the vppermost ranke of stones: and so descending by degrees, they ouerthrew the whole towre. The Romaines had two sorts of Rams, the one was rude and plaine; the other, artificiall & compound: the first, is that which the Carthaginians vsed at Cadiz, and is purtraited in the column of Traian at Rome.

Aries, or the Ramme.

Calez.

Aries simplex.

The compound Ramme is thus described by Iosephus; A Ramme, saith he, is a mightie great beame, like vnto the mast of a ship, and is strengthened at one end, with a head of iron, fashioned like vnto a Ramme, and thereof it tooke the name. This Ram is hanged by the middest with roapes vnto another beame, which lieth crosse a couple of pillars: and hanging thus equally balanced, it is by force of men thrust forward, and recoiled backward; and so beateth vpon the wall with his iron head: neither is there any towre so strong, or wall so broade, that is able to stand before it.

Aries composita.

The length of this Ram was of a large scantling; for, Plutarch affirmeth, that Anthonie in the Parthian war, had a Ramme fourescore foote long. And Vitruuius saith, that the length of a Ramme was vsually one hundred and sixe, and sometimes one hundred and twentie; and this length gaue great strength and force to the engine. It was managed at one time with a whole Centurie or order of souldiers: and their forces being spent, they were seconded with another Centurie; and so the ramme plaied continually vpon the wall, without intermission. Iosephus saith, that Titus, at the siege of Ierusalem, had a ramme for euery legion: it was oftentimes couered with a Vine, that the men that managed it might bee in more safetie. It appeareth by this place, that if a towne had continued out vntill the ramme had touched the wall, they could not presume of any acceptation of rendry; forasmuch as by their obstinacie, they had brought in perrill the liues of their enemies, and were subdued by force of Armes, which affordeth such mercie as the Victor pleaseth.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THe Aduatici, as it seemeth, were not ignorant of the small securitie which one State can giue vnto another, that commendeth their safetie to be protected by it: for, as Architas the Pythagorian saith, A bodie, a familie, and an Armie, are then well gouerned, vvhen they containe within themselues the causes of their saferie; So wee must not looke for anie securitie in a State, when their safetie dependeth vpon a forraine protection.

749.b

protection. For, the old saying is, that *Neque murus, neque amicus quisquam teget, quem propria arma non texere.* Although in this case the matter was wel qualified, by the maiestie of the Romaine Empire, and the late victories in the continent of Gallia; whereof the Hedui with their associates, were very gainefull witnesses: but amongst kingdoms, that are better suted with equalitie of strength and authoritie, there is small hope of safetie to be looked for, vnlesse the happy gouernment of both doe mutually depend vpon the safetie of either Nation. For, that which Polybius obserued in Antigonus, king of Macedonia, taketh place for the most part amongst all Princes; that Kings by nature esteeme no man, either as a friend or an enemie, but as the calculation of profit shall find them answerable to their proiects. And contrariwise, it cutteth off many occasions of practices and attempts, when it is knowne that a State is of it selfe able and ready to resist the dessignes of forraine enemies, according to that of Manlius; *Ostendite modo bellum, pacem habebitis: videant vos paratos ad vim, ius ipsi remittent.*

THE FOVRTH OBSERVATION.

To giue notice of an Alarū by fire.

THe manner of signifying any motion or attempt by fire, was of great vse in the night season, where the fortification was of so large an extension: for, fire in the night doth appeare far greater then indeede it is; forasmuch as that part of the aire, which is next vnto the fire, as it is illuminated with the light thereof, in a reasonable distance, cannot be discerned from the fire it selfe, and so it seemeth much greater then it is in substance. And contrariwise, in the day time it sheweth lesse then it is; for, the cleare brightnesse of the aire, doth much obscure that light, which proceedeth from a more grosse and materiall body: and therefore their custome was to vse fire in the night, and smoake in the day, suting the transparent middle with a contrarie qualitie; that so it might more manifestly appeare to the beholder.

THE FIFT OBSERVATION.

Lib. 25.

The punishmēts vvhich the Romans laid vpon a conquered Nation.

ANd albeit after the victorie, the Romains inflicted diuers degrees of punishment, according to the malice which they found in an enemie; yet as Flauius Lucanus saith in Liuie, there was no Nation more exorable, nor readier to shew mercie, then the Romains were. The punishments which we find them to haue vsed towards a conquered Nation were these; either they punished them by death, or sold them for bondslaues, *sub corona*, or dismissed them *sub iugum*; or merced them, in taking away their territories; or made them tributarie States.

Of the first we find a manifest example, in the third of these Commentaries; where Cæsar hauing ouerthrowne the Veneti by sea, in as much as they had retained his Embassadours by force, contrarie to the law of Nations, hee put all the Senate to the sword, and sold the rest *sub corona.*

Festus

Feſtus ſaith, that an enemie was ſaid to be ſold *ſub corona*, inaſmuch as the captiues ſtood crowned in the Market-place, where they were ſette out to ſale: as Cato ſaith, in his booke *De re militari*, *vt populus ſua opera potius ob rem bene geſtam coronatus, ſupplicatum eat; quàm re malè geſta coronatus væneat.* And Gellius affirmeth the ſame thing, but addeth alſo another reaſon, foraſmuch as the ſouldiers that kept them while they were in ſelling, incircled them round about, to keep them together; and this round-about-ſtanding, was called *corona.* Feſtus ſaith, that oftentimes they vſed a ſpeare; and therefore they were ſaid to be ſold *ſub haſta:* foraſmuch as amongſt the Greeks, by the ſpeare or pike, was ſignified the power of Armes, and maieſtie of Empires.

When they diſmiſſed them *ſub iugum*, their order was to erect three trees like a paire of gallowes, vnder which they cauſed all the captiues to paſſe, as a ſigne of bondage: for, they had ſo conquered them by force of Armes, that they laid vpon their neck the yoake of thraldome.

Liuie ſaith, that Quintius the Dictator, diſmiſſed the *Aequos ſub iugum*; & this *iugum* was made of three ſpeares, whereof two were ſtuck vpright in the ground, and the third was tied ouerthwart them. The ſouldiers that paſſed *ſub iugum*, were vngirt, and their weapons taken from them, as Feſtus ſaith.

Sometimes againe, they tooke away their lands and territories, and either ſold it for mony, & brought it into the Treaſurie, or diuided the land amongſt the Romaine people, or let it out to farme rent: of all which, Liuie hath many pregnant examples.

CHAP. XIII.

Craſſus taketh-in all the maritimate Citties that *lie to the Ocean: the legions are caried into* their vvintering Campes.

THE ſame time Pub. Craſſus, whom he had ſent with one legion to the maritimate Citties that lay to the Ocean, aduertiſed him, that all thoſe States had yielded themſelues to the people of Rome. The warres beeing thus ended, and all Gallia being ſettled in peace, there went ſuch a fame of this vvarre among other barbarous people, that from Nations beyond the Rhene, there came Embaſſadours to Caſar, offering both hoſtages and obedience to whatſoeuer he commaunded them. But Caſar willed them to repaire vnto him againe in the beginning of the next Sommer, foraſmuch as he then haſted into Lumbardie, after hee had placed his legions in their wintering Campes. For theſe things, vpon the ſight of Caſars Letters, a generall ſupplication was proclaimed in Rome for fifteene daies together: which honour before that time had happened to no man. And thus endeth the ſecond Commentarie.

Caſar.

Of this ſupplicatiō I will ſpeake in the latter end of the 4. booke.

OBSER-

74916

OBSERVATIONS VPON THE THIRD BOOKE OF CAESAR HIS COMMENTARIES.

THE ARGVMENT.

THis Commentarie beginneth with an Accident, which happened in the latter ende of the former Sommer; wherein the Belgæ had ſo leane a harueſt: and then it proceedeth to the warre betweene Cæſar and the Veneti; Craſſus and the Aquitani; Titurius Sabinus and the Curioſolitæ; and Titus Labienus, with the Treuiri.

CHAP. I.

Sergius Galba, beeing ſent to cleere the paſſage of *the Alpes, was beſieged by the Seduni* and Veragri.

Cæſar.

CAESAR, taking his iourney into Italie, ſent Sergius Galba vvith the twelfth legion, and part of the horſemen vnto the Nantuates, Veragri & Seduni: whoſe territories are extended from the riuer Rhone, and the lake Lemanus, vnto the tops of the higheſt Alpes. The end of this voyage was chiefelie to cleere the Alpes of thieues & robbers, that liued by the ſpoile of Paſſengers, that trauailed betweene Italie and Gallia. Galba, hauing order if he found it expedient, to winter in thoſe parts, after ſome fortunate incounters, and the taking of ſome Caſtles and holds, he concluded a peate, and reſolued to place two cohorts of his legion amongſt the Nantuates; and himſelfe to winter with the other cohorts, in a towne of the Veragri, named Octodurus. This towne beeing ſited in a narrow valley, and incircled about with mighty high hils, was diuided by a riuer into two parts, whereof he gaue one part to the Galles, and the other he choſe for his wintering Campe, and fortified it about with a ditch & a rampier. After he had ſpent many daies of wintering, and giuen order, that corne ſhould be brought thither for prouiſion; he had intelligence vpon a ſudden, that the Galles in the night time, had all left that part of the towne that was allotted vnto them; and that the hills which hung ouer the valley, vvherein the towne ſtood, were poſſeſt with great multitudes of the Seduni, and Veragri. The reaſons of this ſuddaine commotion, vvere chiefely the paucitie of the Romaine forces,

forces, not making a cõpleat legion; for asmuch as two cohorts wintered amongst the Nantuates: besides many particulars, that were wanting vpon necessary occasions. And to make them more contemptible in regard of themselues, the place affoorded such aduantage, that they were perswaded by reason of the steepe declinitie of the hill, that the Romaines would not indure the brunt of the first assault: besides this, it grieued them exceedingly to haue their children taken from them, vnder the title of hostages; and the Alpes, vvhich Nature had exempted from habitation, and placed as bounds betweene two large kingdomes, to be seised vpon by the Romaine legions, and vnited to their Prouince.

Vpon these aduertisements, Galba, not hauing as yet finished the fortification of his Campe, nor made prouision of Corne and forrage for the winter season, in that he little feared any motion of warre, being secured of their amitie, and obedience, both by hostages and rendry: hee presently called a Councell of warre, to determine what course was best to be taken. In which Councell, the mindes of many were so amazed, with the terrour of so vnexpected a danger, when they beheld the hills pestered with armed souldiers, the passages taken and intercepted by the Enemy, & no hope left of any succour or reliefe, that they could thinke of no other way for their safetie, then leauing behind them their baggage & impediments, to sallie out of their Campe, and so to saue themselues by the same way they came thither: notwithstanding, the greater part concluded, to referre that resolution to the last push; and in the meane time, to attend the fortune of the euent, and defend the Campe.

OBSERVATION.

WHich aduise, although at this time sorted to small effect; yet it better suted the valour of the Romaines, and sauoured more of tempered magnanimitie, then that former hazard, which argued the weakenesse of their minds, by their ouer-hastie and too forward resolution. For, as it imported greater danger, and discouered a more desperate spirit, to breake through the thickest troopes of their enemies, and so by strong hand to saue themselues by the helpe of some other fortune; so it manifested a greater apprehension of terrour, and a stronger impression of feare, which can afford nothing but desperate remedies: for, desperate and inconsiderate rashnes, riseth sooner of feare, then of any other passion of the mind. But such as beheld the danger with a lesse troubled eye, and qualified the terrour of death with the life of their spirit, reseruing extreamitie of helpe to extreamity of perill, and in the meane time attended what chances of aduantage might happen vnto them, vpon any enterprise the enemy should attempt; they I say, so gaue greater scope to Fortune, & inlarged the bounds of changing accidents.

CHAP.

7191b

CHAP. II.

The enemy ſetteth vpon the wintering Camp: *Galba ouerthroweth them.*

Cæſar.

THE Councell beeing diſmiſſed, they had ſcarce time to put in execution ſuch things, as were agreed vpon for their defence: but the enemy, at a watch-word giuen, aſſaulted the Campe on all ſides, with ſtones and darts, & other caſting weapons. The Romans, at firſt, when their ſtrength vvas freſh, valiantly reſiſted the brunt of the charge; neither did they ſpend in vaine any weapon which they caſt frō the rampier; but what part ſoeuer of their Camp ſeemed to be in greateſt danger, & want of help, thither they came with ſuccour and reliefe; but heerein they were ouer-matched: for, the enemy being ſpent and wearied with fight, whenſoeuer any of them gaue place and forſooke the battell, there were alwaies freſh combattants to ſupply it. But the Romans, by reaſon of their ſmall number, had no ſuch helpe: for, their extreamitie in that point was ſuch, that no man was permitted neither for wearineſſe nor wounds, to forſake his ſtation, or abandon his charge. And, hauing thus fought continually the ſpace of ſix houres, when both ſtrength and weapons wanted, the enemy perſiſting with greater furie to fill the ditch, and breake downe the rampire, and their hopes relying vpon the laſt expectation, P. Sex. Baculus, the Primipile of that legion, whom we ſaid to bee ſo ſore wounded in the Neruian battell, and Caius Voluſenus, Tribune of the ſouldiers, a man of ſingular courage and wiſedome, ran ſpeedily to Galba and told him, that the onely way of ſafety was to breake out vpon the enemy, and to try the laſt refuge in that extreamitie. Whereupon, they called the Centurions, and by them admoniſhed the ſouldiers to ſurceaſe awhile from fighting, and onely to receiue ſuch weapons as were caſt into the Campe; and ſo to reſt thēſelues a little & recouer their ſtrength: and then at a watch-word, to ſallie out of their Campe, and lay their ſafetie vpon their vertue. Which the ſouldiers executed with ſuch alacritie and courage of ſpirit, that breaking out at all the gates of the Camp, they gaue no leiſure to the enemy to conſider what was done, nor to ſatisfie his iudgement touching ſo vnexpected a noueltie. And thus Fortune beeing ſuddenly changed, they ſlew more then the third part of thirtie thouſand, and put the reſt to flight, not ſuffering them to ſtay vpon the hils neere about them.

OBSERVATION.

The force of noueltie, turning the fortune of a battell.

WHich ſtrange alteration, liuely deſcribeth the force of noueltie, & the effectuall power of vnexpected aduentures: for, in the firſt courſe of their proceeding, vvherein the Romaines defended the Campe, & the Galles charged it by aſſault, the victory held conſtant with the Galles, & threatned death & mortality to the Romans.

mans. Neither had they any meanes to recouer hope of better ſucceſſe, but by trying another way; which ſo much the more amazed the Gals, in that they had vehemently apprehended an opinion of victory, by a ſet fight continuing the ſpace of 6. houres, without any likelihood of contrariety, or alteration. Which practice, of fruſtrating a deſſigne intended, by an indirect and contrary anſwer, ſerued the Romans oftentimes to great aduantage; as beſides this preſent example, in this Commentary we ſhal afterward read, how Titurius Sabinus defeated the Vnellos, with the ſame ſtraragem; and ouerthrew them by eruption & ſallying out, when they expected nothing but a defenſiue reſiſtance from the rampier. From whence a Commander may learn, to auoid two contrarie inconueniencies, according as the qualitie of the war ſhall offer occaſion: firſt (if other things be anſwerable, which a iudicious eye wil eaſily diſcouer) that a ſally made out at diuers ports of a hold, wil much mitigate the heat of a charge, and controle the fury of an Enemy. And on the other ſide, he that beſiegeth any place, what aduantage ſoeuer he hath of the defendant, may much better aſſure himſelf of good fortune, if he appoint certain troups in readineſs to receiue the charge of any eruption, that the reſt that are buſily imployed in the aſſault may prouide to anſwere it, without diſorder or confuſion. Which order, if the Galls had taken, they had not in likelihood ſo often been deceiued.

CHAP. III.

Galba returneth into the Prouince: the Vnelli giue occaſion of a newe warre.

*THE Enemy being thus defeated, Galba was vnwilling to trie fortune any further: and the rather for that he wanted both corn & forrage: and therfore hauing burned the towne, the next day he returned towards the Prouince, and without let or reſiſtance brought the legion ſafe into the Nantuates; and from thence to the * Allobrogæ, and there be wintered.* Cæſar. *Sauoians.

*After theſe things were diſpatched: Cæſar ſuppoſing for many reaſons, that al Gallia was now in peace, and that there was no further feare of any new war, the Belgæ being ouerthrowen, the Germans thruſt out, and the Seduni amongſt the Alps ſubdued & vanquiſhed; in the beginning of the winter, as he went into Illyricum, hauing a great deſire to ſee thoſe nations: there grewe a ſudden tumult and diſſenſion in Gallia vpon this occaſion. Pub. Craſſus wintering with the ſeauenth legion in Aniou neare vnto the Ocean, and finding ſcarcity of corn in thoſe parts; he ſent out the Prefects of the horſemen, and Tribunes, into the next cities to demaund corn, and other prouiſions for his legion: of whom Titus Terraſidius was ſent vnto the * Venelli, Marcus Trebius to the * Curioſilitæ, Q. Velanius, & Titus Silius to the * Veneti. Theſe Veneti were of greateſt authoritie amongſt all the maritimate nations in that coaſt, by reaſon of their great ſtore of ſhip-*

* *Le Perche*
* *Cornoaille, in Bretaine.*
* *Vannes.*

749b

ping, with which they did trafficke in Britanie, and exceeded all their neighbour States in skil and experience of sea-faring matters; hauing the most part of such, as vsed those seas, tributaries to their State: These Veneti first aduentured to retaine Sillius & Velanius, hoping therby to recouer their hostages which they had giuen to Crassus. The finitimate Cities induced by their authority & exãple, for the same reason, laide hold vpon Trebius & Terasidius; and sending speedy ambassages one vnto another, coniured by their princes and chiefest magistrates, to approue their fact by common consent, and to attend all the same euent of fortune; soliciting also other cities and States, rather to maintaine that libertie, which they had receiued of their Ancestors, then to indure the seruile bondage of a stranger.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

The weakne of our iudgement in regard of the knowledge of future times.

THe circumstance in this history, which noteth the sudden breaking out of warres, when the course of things made promise of peace: sheweth first, what small assurance our reason hath of her discourse in calculating the natiuitie of *After-chances*; which so seldome answer the iudgement we giue vpon their beginnings, that when we speak of happinesse, we find nothing but miserie: and contrariwise, it goeth often well with that part, which our Art hath condemned to ill fortune. And therfore I do not maruell, if when almost all nations are at ods, and in our best conceits, threaten destructiõ one to another, there happen a sudden motion of peace: or if peace be in speech, soothing the world with pleasing tranquillitie, & through the vncertaintie of our weake probabilities, promise much rest after many troubles; there follow greater wars in the end, then the former time can truly speak of. Which being wel vnderstood, may humble the spirits of our hauty politicians, that think to comprehend the conclusions of future times, vnder the premisses of their weake proiects, and predestinate succeeding ages, according to the course of the present motion: when an accident so little thought of, shall break the maine streame of our iudgement, and falsifie the Oracles which our vnderstanding hath vttered. And it may learne them withall, how much it importeth a wise commander, to preuent an euill that may crosse his dessigne, (how vnlikely soeuer it be to happen) by handling it in such maner, as though it were necessarily to confront the same. For then a thing is well done, when it hath in it selfe both the causes of his being; and the direct meanes to resist the repugnancie of a contrary nature: and so hap what will, it hath great possiblity to continue the same.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THis practice of the Veneti may instruct a circumspect Prince in cases of this nature, to haue a more watchfull ey ouer that Prouince or city, which shall be found most potent and mighty amongst the rest, then

of

of any other inferiour State of the ſame nature and condition: for, as example of it ſelfe is of great authoritie, making improbabilities ſeem full of reaſon, eſpecially when the intention ſhall ſympathize with our will; ſo when it ſhall happen to be ſtrengthened with powerfull meanes, and graced with the Act of ſuperiour perſonages: it muſt needs be very effectual to ſtir vp mens minds, to approue that with a ſtrong affection, which their own ſingle iudgement did no way allow of. And therfore equality bringeth this aduantage to a Prince, which differencie cannot affoord, that albeit example doe ſet on foote any rebellious motion, yet no ſupereminencie ſhall authoriſe the ſame.

The Authority of exãple

CHAP. IIII.

Cæſar hauing aduertiſement of theſe new troubles; *haſteth into Gallia, and prepareth* for the WARRE.

ALL the maritimate States being by this meanes drawn into the ſame conſpiracy, they ſent a cõmon ambaſſage vnto Craſſus; that if he would haue his men againe, he muſt deliuer vp the hoſtages, which he had taken from them. Whereof Cæſar being certified by Craſſus, in as much as hee was then a great way diſtant from from his Army, he commanded Gallies and ſhips of warre to be built vpon the riuer Loier, which runneth into the Ocean; and that Gallie-men, Mariners, and Shipmaſters ſhould be muſtered in the Prouince: which being ſpeedily diſpatched, aſſoone as the time of the yeare would permit him, he came into Gallia. The Veneti and the reſt of the confederacie, vnderſtanding of Cæſars arriuall, and conſidering how hainous a fact they had committed, in detaining the Ambaſſadours & caſting them into yrons, whoſe name is held ſacred & inuiolable amongſt all nations: prepared accordingly to anſwere ſo eminent a danger, & eſpecially ſuch neceſſaries, as pertained to ſhipping & ſea-fights.*

Cæſar.

* *Ligeris.*

THE OBSERVATION.

FRom hence I may take occaſion, briefly to touch the reuerent opinion, which all nations, how barbarous ſoeuer, haue generally conceiued of the qualitie & condition of Ambaſſadours: and what the grounds are of this vniuerſall receiued cuſtome, which in all ages, and times hath held Authenticall. And firſt we are to vnderſtand, that all mankinde (as indued with the ſame nature and properties) are ſo linked together in the ſtrict alliance of humane ſocietie; that, albeit their turbulent and diſagreeing paſſi ons (which in themſelues are vnnaturall, as proceeding from corruption

The grounds of that reuerent opinion which is holde of Embaſſadors.

ruption and defect) driue them into extream discord, & disunion of spirit, and breake the bonds of ciuil conuersation, which otherwise we do naturally affect: yet without a necessary entercourse and trafficke of societie, we are not able to keepe on foote the very discorde it selfe, in tearmes of reason and orderly proceeding, but all parts will be blended with disordered confusion & go to wrack, for want of these mutuall offices performed by messengers: so streight are the bonds of Nature, and so powerfull are the laws which she enacteth. And therfore if it were for no other end, which might sort to the benefit of either partie, (as there are many good vses thereof) yet to holde vp the quarrell and keepe it frō falling, making war, according to the grounds of reason, the entercourse of messengers is not to be interrupted, nor their persons to be touched with hateful violence: but that which the common reason of nations hath made a lawe, ought as religiously to be obserued, as an Oracle of our owne beliefe. Secondly, for as much as the end of warre is, or at the least should be, peace: which by treatie of mutuall messengers is principally to be confirmed, to the end that no people may seem so barbarous, as to maintaine a warre; which onely intendeth bloud, and proposeth as the chiefest obiect, the death and mortalitie of mankind, no way respecting peace and ciuill government: such as refuse the entercourse of messengers, as the means of amity and concord, are iustly condemned in the iudgement of all nations, as vnworthy of humane societie. Last of al, it is an iniury of great dishonour, and deserueth the reward of extream infamy, to reuenge the master his quarrell vpon a seruant, and punish Ambassadors for the faults of their State: considering that their chiefest duty consisteth in the faithfull relation of such mandates, as they haue receiued: which may as well tend to the aduancement and honour of that Citie, to which they are sent; as to the dishonour and ruine of the same, whereof the messengers take no notice. And therfore whether we desire war or peace; the free libertie, and holy order of Ambassadors, is reuerently to be respected and defended from brutish and vnnaturall violence.

CHAP. V.

The proceedings of either partie, in the enterance of this Warre.

Cæsar. *THe Veneti conceiued great hope of their enterprise, by reason of the strength of their situation: for as much as all the passages by land were broken and cut off, with arms and creekes of the sea; and on the other side nauigation and entrance by sea was so troublesome and dangerous, in that the Romans were altogether vnacquainted with the chanelles and shelues of the coast. Neither did they thinke that the Roman Armie could long continue there without corne, which was not to bee had in those quarters. And if*

*if it happened, that the course of things were carried contrarie to this probable expectation; yet they themselues were strong in shipping; whereas the Romans had none at all: Neither had they knowledge of the flats and shallows, Ports and Ilands of that coast, where they were to fight. And to conclude, they should find the vse of Nauigation in that narrow sea, to be farre different from that, which they were accustomed vnto, in the vast and open Ocean. In this resolution, they fortified their townes, stored them with prouision, & brought all their shipping to Vannes; against whom, Cæsar (as it was reported) would begin to make war, taking the Osismi, Lexouij, Nannetes, Ambinariti, Morini, Menapij, Diablintres, as consorts and partakers in this quarrell. Notwithstanding these difficulties, many motiues stirred vp Cæsar to vndertake this war: as namely, the violent detaining of the Roman knights: their rebellion, after they had yeelded themselues by rendry, and giuen hostages of their loialtie: the conspiracie of so many Cities, which being now neglected, might afterward incite other nations and States to the like insolency. And therefore vnderstanding, that almost all the Galles were inclining to nouelty & alteration, and of their own nature, were quick & ready to vndertake a war; and further, considering that all men by nature desired liberty, and hated the seruile condition of bondage: hee preuented all further insurrections of the other States, with the presence of the Roman forces: and sent Titus Labienus with the Caualrie, vnto the * Treuiri, that bordered vpon the Rhene: to him he gaue in charge, to visit the men of Rhemes & the rest of the Belgæ, to keep them in obedience: and to hinder such forces, as might peraduenture be transported ouer the riuer by the Germains, to further this rebellious humor of the Galles. He commanded likewise Pub Crassus, with 12. legionarie cohorts and a great part of the horse to go into Aquitane, least there might come any aide from those nations. He sent also Q Titurius Sabinus with three legions vnto the Lexouij, Curiosolitæ, Vnelli, to disappoint any practice which rebellious minds might intend. And making D. Brutus chiefe Admirall of the nauie, he gaue him in charge, to make towards Vannes, with what speede he could: and hee himself marched thitherward with the rest of the foot forces.*

Lendriguer. Lysieux. Nantes. Aurenche. Leondoul. Cities in little Britaine.

* Triers.

THE OBSERVATION.

IN the first booke, I obserued the authority which the Roman Leaders had to vndertake a war, without further acquainting the Senat with the consequence thereof: in this place, let vs obserue the care and circumspection, which the Generalls had, not to vndertake a troublesome and dangerous warre vpon a humor, or any other slender motion: but diligently waighing the circumstances thereof, and measuring the perill & hazard of the warre, with the good and consequence of the effect; informed their iudgements of the importance of that action; and so tried whether the benefit would answer their labor. And thus we find the reasons particularly deliuered, that moued Cæsar first to vndertake the Heluetian warre: and then the causes, which drew him on to the quarrell with Ariouistus: then followeth the

74916

neceſſity of that warre with the Belgæ; and now the motiues which induced him to this with the maritimate Citties of Bretaine: and ſo conſequently of his paſſage into Germany, or what other enterpriſe he attempted: which he laieth downe as the grounds and occaſions of thoſe wars, & could not be auoided but with the loſſe and diſhonour of the Roman Empire.

Further, let vs obſerue the meanes he vſed to preuent the inclination of the Galles, & to keep them in ſubiection and peaceable obedience, by ſending his men into diuers quarters of that Continent; & ſo ſettling the wauering diſpoſition of the further skirts, with the weight of his Army, and the preſence of his legionary ſoldiers, which hee ſent ready to ſtifle all motions of rebellion in the beginning, that they might not breake out to the preiudice and diminution of the Roman Empire, and the good ſucceſſe of his proceedings: beſides the aduantage, which he gained in the opinion of the Enemy; whom he ſo little feared cõcerning the vpſhot of that quarrel, that he had diſperſed the greateſt part of his Army vpon other ſeruices, the reſt being ſufficient to end that war.

CHAP. VI.

The manner of their ſhipping, and their Sea-fight.

Cæſar.

THe ſite of almoſt all theſe Cities was ſuch, that being built in points and promontories, they could not at full ſea, which happened alwaies twiſe in 12. houres, be approched by foot-forces, nor yet with ſhipping neither; for, againe in an ebbe, the veſſells were laid on the ground, and ſo left as a prey to the Enemy. And if the Romans went about to ſhut out the ſea with mounts which they raiſed equall to the walls of the towne, and were at the point of entering & taking it: yet the townſemen hauing ſuch ſtore of ſhipping, would eaſily conuey both themſelues & their cariages, into the next towns, and there helpe themſelues with the like aduantage of place. And thus they deluded Cæſar the greateſt part of the ſommer: for the Roman fleet by reaſon of continuall windes and foule weather, durſt not aduenture to put out of the riuer Loier into ſo vaſt a ſea, wherein the hauens and roades were fewe, and farre diſtant one from another, & the tides great. The ſhipping of the Galles was thus built and rigged: the keele was ſomewhat flatter then the Romans ſhipping, the better to beare the ebbes, and ſhallowes of that coaſt: the fore-deck was altogether erect and perpendicular: the poupe was made to beare the hugeneſſe of the billowes, and the force of the tempeſt. And in a word, they were altogether built for ſtrength: for, the ribbes and ſeats were made of beames of a foot ſquare, faſtned with yron pinnes of an inch thicke: in ſteade of cables, they vſed chaines of yron; and raw hides and skins for ſailes, either for want of linnen or ignorant

of

of the vse therof, or because sailes of linnen would hardly serue to carrie ships of that burthen.

The meeting and conflict of the Roman nauy, with this kind of ships was such, that they only excelled them in celerity and speedy nimblenes with force of oars: but in all other things, either concerning the nature of the place, or the daungers of the foule weather, were far inferiour vnto them: for the strength of them was such that they could neither hurt them with their beak-heads, nor cast a weapon to any purpose into them, by reason of their altitude, and high built bulkes. And if anie gust chanced in the meane time to rise, that forced them to commit themselues to the mercy of the weather, their shipping would better beare the rage of the sea; and with greater safety shelter it selfe amongst flats and shallowes, without feare of rockes or any such hazard: of all which chaunces the Roman nauy stood continually in danger.

OBSERVATION.

The causes of the ebbing & flowing of the Sea.

AND here, let it not seem impertinent to the argument which we handle, considering the generall vse which we Insulairs haue of nauigation, briefly to set down the most eminent causes of the flowing and ebbing of the sea, as farre forth as shall seem necessary to the knowledge of a souldier: which, albeit may fall shott of the true reasons of this great secret; yet for as much as they stand for true principles of regularitie, and wel approued rules in our Art of nauigation, let vs take them for no lesse then they effect, and giue them that credit in our imagination, which tract of time hath gained to those forged circles in the heauens: that albeit their chiefest essence consisteth in conceit and supposall; yet for as much as they serue to direct our knowledge to a certainty, in that variety and seeming inconstancy of motion, we esteem of them as they effect, and not as they are.

Considering then the globe of the world, as it maketh a right spheare (for in that position, the Naturalists chiefly vnderstand celestiall influence to haue operation in this liquid element of the water) it is diuided by the Horizon and Meridian into foure quarters: the first quarter is that, betweene the east horizon and the noone meridian, which they call a flowing quarter: the second frō the noon meridian, to the west horizon; which they make an ebbing quarter: the third, from the west horizon to the midnight meridian; which they likewise call a flowing quarter: and again, from the midnight meridian to the east horizon, the second ebbing quarter: And so they make two flowing quarters, and two ebbing quarters of the whole circuit of heauen. The instruments of these sensible qualities, and contrary effectes, are the sunne and the moone, as they are caried through these distinct parts of the heauen. And although experience hath noted the moon to be of greatest power in wattrie motions; yet wee may not omit to acknowledge the force, which the sunne yeeldeth in this miracle of nature.

First therefore we are to vnderstand, that when the moon or the sunne begin

749.b

to appeare aboue the right horizon,& enter into that part of the heauen which I tearmed the first flowing quarter, that then the sea beginneth to swell: and as they mount vp to their meridian altitude; so it increaseth vntill it come to a high flood. And again,as those lights passing the meridian,decline to the west, and run the circuit of the ebbing quarter: so the water decreaseth & returneth again from whence it came. Again,as they set vnder the west horizon, & enter into the second flowing quarter; so the sea beginneth again to flowe, and still encreaseth vntil they come to the point of the night meridian: and then again, it refloweth,according as the sun & moon are carried in the other ebbing quarter from the night meridian, to the west horizon.

Spring-tides. And hence it happeneth that in coniunction or new of the moon,when the sun & the moon are caried both together in the same flowing, & ebbing quarters; that then the tides and ebs are very great: and likewise in opposition or ful of the moon,when these lights are carried in opposite quarters,which we haue described to bee of the same nature, either ebbing or flowing; that then in like manner the tides are great: forasmuch as both these Planets, through the symbolising quarters wherein they are carried,do ioyn their forces to make perfect this work of Nature in the ebbing and flowing of the Sea. And contrariwise, in a quadrate aspect (as the Astronomers call it) or quarter age of the moone, when as the moon is carried in a flowing quarter; and at the same instant, the sun doth happen to be in an ebbing or decreasing quarter, as the course of Nature dooth necessarily require: then are the tides lessened, as daily experience doth witnesse.

And for as much as both the right horizon and the meridian also, diuide euerie diurnall circle, which either the sun or the moon maketh in their reuolutions, into equal parts; it followeth that euery tide is continually measured with the quantity of 6. houres: and therfore that which Cæsar here saith,must needs be true,that in the space of 12.houres,there are alwaies 2.high tides. And least any man should imagine, that euery inland City,standing vpon an ebbing and flowing riuer, may take the computation of the tide according to this rule: let him vnderstand,that this which I haue deliuered, is to be conceiued principally of the sea it self; and secondarily of such ports and hauens, as stand either neer or vpon the sea: but where a riuer shall run many miles from the sea,and make many winding Meanders, before it come to the place of calculation; it must needs lose much of this time before mentioned. And thus much I thought cõuenient to insert in these discourses touching the ebbing & flowing of the sea, as not impertinent to martiall knowledge.

The manner of their shipping. Concerning the shipping of the Romans, whereof posteritie hath only receiued the bare names, and some fewe circumstances touching the manner of their Equipage, the Critickes of these times haue laboured to set forth a fleet, answerable to that, which the tearms and title mentioned in history seeme to report: but yet the gaine of their voyage doth not answere their charge. For, many men rest vnsatisfied,first touching the names themselues,wherof we find these kindes.

Names

Names { *Longas.* *Onerarias.* *Actuarias.* *Triremes.* *Quadriremes.* *Quinqueremes.*

The first we may vnderstand to be Gallies or ships of seruice: the second, ships of burthen: the third, ships that were driuen forward with force of oares, and the rest sounding according to their Names; for, I dare not intitle them with a more particular description. Now whether these Names *Longas* and *Actuarias*, were a seuerall sort of shipping by themselues; or the generall Names of the *Quadriremes*, *Triremes*, and *Quinqueremes*, for as much as euerie kinde of these might be called both *Longas* and *Actuarias*, as it yet remaineth in controuersie: so it is not much materiall to that which wee seeke after. But that which most troubleth our sea Critickes, is, in what sense they may vnderstand these vocabularies, *Triremes*, *Quadriremes*, & *Quinqueremes*, whether they were so tearmed in regard of the number of rowers, or water-men that haled continually at an oare, as the custome of the Gallies is at this daie; or otherwise, because a *Trireme* had three orders of oares on either side, a *Quadrireme* foure, and a *Quinquereme* fiue: whereof they tooke their distinction of Names.

Such as hold, that a *Trireme* had on each side three rankes of oares, and so consequently, of a *Quadrireme* and *Quinquereme*; alleage this place of Liuie, to make good their opinion. In the warres between Rome and Carthage, Lælius meeting with Asdrubal in the straights of Gibraltar, each of them had a *Quinquereme*, & seauen or eight *Triremes* a piece: the current in that place was so great that it gaue no place to Art, but carried the vessells according to the fall of the Billow: in which vncertainty, the *Triremes* of the Carthaginean closed with the *Quinquereme* of Lælius: which either because shee was *pondere tenacior*, as Liuie saith; or otherwise, for that *pluribus remorum ordinibus scindentibus vertices facilius regeretur*; in regarde of the pluralitie of bankes of oares, which resisted the billowe and steamed the current, she sunke two of the *Triremes*, and so got the victorie. From hence they proue, that a *Quinquereme* had *plures remorum ordines*, then a *Trireme* had; and therfore it took the name from the pluralitie of bankes of oares, and not from the number of men that rowed at an oare. *Lib.* 27

But the contrarie opinion doth interpret *Ordo remorum*, to bee a couple of oares one answering another, on each side of the vessell, which wee call a paire of oares: So that a *Quinquereme* being far greater and longer then a *Trireme*, had more paires of oares then a *Trireme* had, & those oares were handled with fiue men at one oare, according to the vse of our Gallies at this daie.

But to leaue this, and come to their manner of sea-fights, wee must vnderstand that the Romans, wanting the vse of Artillerie and managing their ships of warre with force of oares, failed not to make vse of their Art, in their conflicts and incounters by sea: for, all their shippes of seruice, which we tearme men *The manner of sea-fights.*

men of warre, carried a ſtrong beake-head of yron, which they called *roſtrum*, with which they ranne one againſt another, with as great violence and furie, as their oares could carrie them. And herein Art gaue great aduantage; for, he that coulde beſt skill to turne his ſhip, with greateſt celerity, and ſo fruſtrate an offer; or with ſpeedy & ſtrong agitation follow an aduantage: commonly got the victory.

Lib. 2. de bello ciuili.

In the battell which D. Brutus had with the Maſſilians, we reade that two Triremes charging the Admirall wherein Brutus was, one at the one ſide, and the other at the other; Brutus and his Mariners ſo cunningly handled the matter, that when they ſhould come to the hurt, they ſpeedily in a trice of time, wound themſelues from betweene them, and the two Triremes met with ſuch a carriere one againſt another, that one brake her beake-head, and the other ſplit with the blowe.

For this skil & fortune withall, Euphranor the Rhodian was of great fame in Cæſars time; although his end found too true the ſaying of the Hiſtorian, that Whom Fortune honoureth with many good haps, ſhe oftentimes reſerueth to a harder deſtiny; as other ſea-men beſides Euphranor, can truly witneſſe.

This firſt brunt being ended: when they came to grapple and boording one of another, then the art & practices of their land ſeruices came in vſe: for, they erected turrets vpon their decks, and from them they fought with engines and caſting-weapons, as ſlings, arrowes, and piles; and when they entered, they fought with ſword and target. Neither did the legionary ſouldier find any difference when he came to the point, betweene their fight at ſea and that at land: ſauing that they could not be martialled in troups and bands, in regard whereof the ſea ſeruice was counted more baſe, and diſhonourable; and the rather, in as much as it decided the controuerſie, by ſlings and caſting-weapons: which kinde of fight was of leſſe honour, then buckling at handy-blowes.

CHAP. VII.

The Battell continueth: and Cæſar ouercommeth.

Cæſar.

THE maner of their fights being this, as I haue deſcribed, neither Brutus, nor any Tribune or Centurion in his nauy, knew what to do or what courſe of fight to take: for, the ſhipping of the Galles was ſo ſtrong, that the beake-head of their Quinqueremes could performe no ſeruice vpon them: & although they ſhoulde raiſe turrets according to their vſe, yet theſe would not equall in height the poupe of the Enemies ſhipping; ſo that therein alſo the Galles had aduantage: neither had they any meanes, whereby they might foile ſo great a nauie, which amounted to the number of 230. ſhips of war. One thing

thing there was amongſt their prouiſions which ſtood them in great ſtead: for, the Romans had prouided great ſharp hooks or ſickles, which they put vpon great & lõg poles: theſe they faſtned to the tackling which held the main yard to the maſt; and then haling away their ſhip, with force of Oares, they cut the ſaid tackling, & the main yard fell down. Wherby the Galles, whoſe only hope conſiſted in ſayling and yare turning of their ſhips, loſt at one inſtant, both their ſailes & the vſe of their ſhipping: And then the controuerſie fel within the compaſs of valour, wherin the Romans exceeded the Galls; and the rather, inaſmuch as they fought in the ſight of Cæſar and the whole Army, no valiant act could bee ſmothered in ſecret; for, all the hilles and clifts, which affoorded neere proſpect into the ſea, were couered with the Roman Armie.

Their maine yardes being cut downe, and the Romans indeuouring with great fury to boord them, failed not to take many of their ſhips: which the Galls perceiuing, & finding no remedy nor hope of reſiſtance, began al to fly, & turning their ſhips to a forewind, were vpon a ſudden ſo becalmed, that they were able to make no way at all. Which fell out ſo fitly for the Romans, that of ſo great a nauy, very few through the helpe of the euening eſcaped to land, after they had fought the ſpace of 8. houres: with which battell, ended the war with the Veneti, & the reſt of the maritimate nations. For, al ſort of people both young & old, in whom there was either courage, counſell, or dignity, were preſent at this battell, and all their ſhipping was taken & loſt; ſo that ſuch as remained, knew not whither to go, nor how to defend their towns any longer: and therfore yeelded themſelues to Cæſar; in whom he vſed the greater ſeuerity, that he might therby teach al other barbarous people, not to violate the lawe of nations: for, he ſlew all the Senat with the ſword, and ſolde the people for bondſlaues.

THE OBSERVATION.

IN this battell I chiefly obſerue the good fortune, which vſually attendeth vpon induſtry: for amongſt other prouiſions, which the diligence of the Romans had furniſhed out to the vſe of this war, they had made ready theſe hookes, not for this intent wherin they were imploied; but at all occaſions and chances, that might happen, as ſeruiceable complements rather then principal inſtruments: & yet it ſo fel out, that they proued the only means, to ouerthrow the Galles. Which proueth true the ſaying of Cæſar, that induſtrie commaundeth fortune and buyeth good ſucceſſe, with extraordinary labour: for induſtrie in action is as importunitie in ſpeech, which forceth an aſſent beyond the ſtrength of reaſon; and ſtriueth through continuall purſuit, to make good the motiues, by often inculcations; and at length findeth that diſpoſition, which will eaſily admit whatſoeuer is required: In like manner, diligence and labourſome induſtrie, by circumſpect and heedfull carriage, ſeldome faile either by hap or cunning, to make good that part wherein the maine point of the matter dependeth. For, euery action is intangled with many infinite adherents, which are ſo intereſſed in the matter, that it ſucceedeth arcording as it is cartied

The force of induſtrie.

7491b

carried answerable to their natures. Of these adherents, some of them are by wisdome foreseen; and directed to that course which may fortunate the action: the rest being vnknown, continue without either direction or preuention, & are all vnder the regiment of fortune; for as much as they are beyond the compasse of our wisest reach, and in the waie either to assist or disaduantage: Of these, industrie hath greatest authority; in as much as she armeth her selfe for all chances, whereby she is sayd to command fortune.

CHAP. VIII.

*Sabinus ouerthroweth the * Vnelli, with the* manner thereof.

* La. Perche

Cæsar.

WHile these things happened in the state of Vannes, L. Titurius Sabinus entreth with his forces into the confines of the Vnelli, ouer whom Viridouix was made chiefe Commander, hauing drawne the Aulerci and the* Eburonices with a great number of vagabondes and theeues into the same conspiracie: Sabinus incāping himselfe in a conuenient place, kept his souldiers within the rampier. But, Viridouix, being lodged within lesse then two miles of Sabinus his camp, brought out his forces daily, and putting them in battell gaue him opportunitie to fight if he would: which Sabinus refused in such sort, that he began not onely to be suspected by the Enemy of cowardice, but to be tāted with the reprocheful speeches of his own soldiers; which opinion of feare being once settled in the minds of the Enemie, he vsed all meanes to increase it, and carried it so well, that the Enemie durst approche the very rampier of the camp. The colour that he pretended was, that he thought it not the part of a Legate, in the absence of the General, to fight with an Enemy of that strength, but vpon some good opportunitie, or in a place of aduantage. In this generall persuasion of feare, Sabinus chose out a subtile witted Gall, whom he perswaded with great rewards, and further promises, to flie to the Enemie, and there to carrie himself, according to the instructions, which he should giue him. This Gal, comming as a reuolter to the Enemy, laid open vnto thē the feare of the Romans; the extremity that Cæsar was driuē into by the Veneti; & that the night before, Sabinus was about to withdraw his forces secretly out of his camp, & to make all the haste he could to relieue Cæsar. Vpon which aduertisemēt, they al cried out with one consent, that this opportunity was not to be omitted; but setting apart al other deuises, to go & assault the Roman campe. Many circumstances perswaded the Gals to this resolutiō; as first the lingring & doubt which Sabinus had made, whē he was offred battel: secondly, the intelligēce which this fugitiue had brought: thirdly, the want of victuals wherin they had bin negligent & vnaduisedly careless: fourthly, the hope they cōceiued of the war of Vannes; and lastly, for that men willingly beliue that which they would haue com to pass. The force of these motiues was so strong, that they would not suffer Viri-*

* Rhone.
* Eureux.

douix

douix, nor the reſt of the Captaines, to diſmiſſe the Councell, vntill they had permitted them to take Armes, and goe to the Romaine Camp. Which being granted, they gathered rubbiſh and fagots to fill vp the ditch; & with cheerful harts, as though the victorie were already gotten, they marched to the place where Sabinus was incamped; which was the top of a hill, riſing gently from a leuell, the quantity of one thouſand paſes. Hither the Galles haſted with all expedition: & to the intent the Romaines might not haue ſo much time, as to put on their Armour, the Galles for haſte ranne themſelues out of breath.

Sabinus, incouraging his ſouldiers, gaue the ſigne of battell; and ſallying out at two ſeuerall gates of his Campe, it fell out that through the oportunity of the place, the wearineſſe and vnexperience of the Enemy, the valour of the Romane ſouldier, and their exerciſe in former battels, that the Galles could not indure the brunt of the firſt incounter, but preſently tooke themſelues to flight, of whom, very few eſcaped. And ſo it happened, that at one time, Sabinus had newes of the ouerthrow at Sea, and Cæſar of Sabinus victory by Land. Vpon theſe victories, all the Citties and States yielded themſelues to Titurius: for, as the Galles are prompt to vndertake a warre; ſo are they weake in ſuffering, and impatient of the conſequents and calamities thereof.

OBSERVATION.

The vſe which the Romans made of a counterfet feare.

Lib. 5.

THis practice of a counterfeit feare, was often put in vſe by the Romane Leaders, as well to diſappoint the expectation of an enemie, as to draw them into an inconuenience, and ſo to defeate them of their greateſt helps in time of battell. Cæſar, comming to ſuccour the Campe of Cicero, made ſuch vſe of this Art, that he put to rout a great Armie of the Galles, with a handfull of men: which I will referre vnto the place, where it is particularly ſet downe by Cæſar.

The chiefeſt thing in this place, which brought them to their ouerthrow, was diſappointment: for, it is a thing hardly to be digeſted in buſineſſes of ſmal conſequence, to be fruſtrated of a ſettled expectation, when the mind ſhal diſpoſe herſelfe to one onely intent, and in the vp-ſhot meet with a counterbuffe to croſſe her purpoſes, and ſo defeat her of that hope which the ſtrength of her reaſon hath entertained: how much more then in things of ſuch importance, when we ſhall proceed in a courſe of victorie, and humour our conceits with that wee wiſh and would haue to happen; and in the end, meet either with bondage or death, muſt our beſt wits bee appalled? hauing neither reſpite nor meanes, to thinke how the euill may be beſt preuented. Which the wiſe Romans well vnderſtood, & counted it no dishonour to be reproched with ſhamefull cowardice, by ſuch as knew not the ſecrets of wiſedome; while they in the meane time foreſawe their good fortunes, ſhrowded vnder the cloak of a pretended diſtruſt.

Let theſe examples inſtruct a Leader, ſo to take the opportunitie of any ſuch fortune, that in the execution, he omit not the chiefeſt points of order and diſcipline, as well for the better effecting of the deſſigne, as for his own ſafety and

749b

the ſecuritie of his Armie. For, order is as the ſinewes and ſtrength of martiall diſcipline, vniting the particular members into the firme compoſition of a well proportioned bodie: and ſo it maketh it more powerfull then any number of diſunited parts, how able or infinite ſoeuer.

I might heere alleadge infinite examples to confirme this truth: but let the battell of Drux ſerue for all; wherein the Proteſtants, ouercharging the Catholick Armie, followed the retrait ſo hard, that they quickly became Maiſters of the field: and then neglecting martiall diſcipline, fell in confuſedly with the broken multitude, to make the victorie more glorious by ſlaughter and mortalitie. The Duke of Guiſe, all this while, bouged not a foot; but in vnexampled patience, kept his regiment cloſe together, and would not ſuffer them to reſcue their Generall that was taken, vntill the regiment of the Prince of Condie was likewiſe diſperſed and broken: and then perceiuing no difference of order, betweene the victor Proteſtant, and the vanquiſhed Catholick, hee diſſolued that terrible cloud that had hung ſo long in ſuſpence; and ſo changed the fortune of the day, that he tooke the chiefeſt of their Princes priſoners, with little or no loſſe of his owne men: ſo powerfull is order in the deeds of Armes, and of ſuch conſequence in obtaining victorie. And thus wee haue firſt ſeene the inconueniences, which a counterfet feare well diſſembled, may caſt vpon a credulous and vnaduiſed enemie, when pretence and appearance hath brought them into an errour, which their owne credulitie doth afterward auouch: and ſecondly, what ſtrength and ſafetie conſiſteth in order; and how powerfull it is to throw downe, and to ſet vp.

CHAP. IX.

The proceedings of Craſſus in Aquitanie.

Cæſar.

*AT the ſame inſtant of time, it happened alſo, that Pub. Craſſus comming into Aquitania (which both in regard of the large extenſion of the Country, as alſo for the multitude of the inhabitants, was named the third part of Gallia) and conſidering that he was to make war in thoſe parts, where L. Valerius Preconius the Legate was ſlaine, and the Army ouerthrowne: and where Lucius Manlius was faine to flie, vvith the loſſe of his cariages; he thought that his affaires required no meane diligence: and therefore, hauing made prouiſion of Corne, & muſtered many Auxiliarie forces, and ſent for many valiant and prudent men from Tolouſe and Narbone, hee carried his Armie into the confines of the *Sontiates; vvhich vvas no ſooner knovvne, but they leuied great forces both of horſe and foote, and vvith their horſe, charged vpon the Romaines in their march: vvhich beeing eaſilie repelled, as they followed the retrait, the infanterie of the Galles, ſhevved it ſelfe in a Valley as it lay in Ambuſh. Theſe, ſetting vpon the Romaines, renewed the battaile, and there the fight continued hot a long time; the Sonti-*

*Euocati.

Sontiates beeing animated with the former victories, ſaw all the hope of Aquitanie relie vpon their vertue: and the Romans on the other ſide, deſired to ſhew what they were able to doe of themſelues, vvithout their grand Captaine, and vnder the conduction of a young ſouldier. At length, the enemy, ouerwaged with proweſſe, and wearied with wounds, betooke themſelues to flight; of whom the Romans ſlew a great number: and then marched directlie to the towne of the Sontiates, and laid ſiege vnto it: the ſiege grew hot on both ſides, the Romans approached the walles, with vines, turrets and mounts. The townesmen defended themſelues, ſometime by ſallying out, ſomtimes by vndermining the mounts and fortifications, wherein the Aquitani are very skilfull. But, when they perceiued the induſtrie of the Romans to exceed all that they were able to do, they intreated Craſſus to accept their rendry: which beeing granted, and all the Army intending the deliuery of their Armes, Adcantuanus their chiefe Magiſtrate, fledde out in the meane time at another port of the Cittie, with ſixe hundred deuoted companions, whom they called Soldurij: but as they attempted to eſcape, the ſouldiers that kept that part of the fortification, as they ſignified his euaſion by a clamour and ſhout, the reſt betooke themſelues to Armes, & ſo repelled him againe into the towne; where he deſired to be taken in the number of the ſubmiſſiue multitude. Craſſus, hauing taken hoſtages of them, went into the confines of the Vocontij.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THeſe skilfull and experienced men, which Craſſus ſent for out of all the Cities in Aquitaine, were thoſe, whom the Romans called *Euocati*: ſuch as were free from warfare, & exempted by their lawes from giuing their names in muſters, either by reaſon of their yeeres, or the magiſtracie which they had borne, or for ſome other cauſes, which gaue them that priuiledge: & in that regard, were ſent for by Letters, intreating their aſſiſtance in the cariage of that war, as men well acquainted with the nature of ſuch buſineſſes. Their places were nothing inferiour to the Centurions, for aduiſe and direction, although they had no part in commaund or authoritie. *Euocati.*

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

IN this fight, we may further obſerue, their maner of defence againſt Mounts, and Caualieros; which we find chiefly to be Mines. Ioſephus, in the Iewiſh warre, ſaith, that The Romaines hauing raiſed an exceeding high mount, the Iewes vndermined the ſame with ſuch Art, that as they digged vnderneath, they ſupported the Mount with huge props & planks, that it might not ſhrinke: and watching a time of greateſt aduantage, they ſet all the timber-work, which vnderpropped the mount, on fire,

749.b

which taking fire, with the help of Brimstone and Pitch, the Mount fell vpon a suddaine, to the great terrour and amazement of the Romans.

Lib.7. de bello Gall.

At the siege of *Auaricum*, we find how the Galles by vndermining, did take the earth from the Mount, as fast as it was caried vnto it by the Romans; and so kept it from rising, and made it vneffectuall. But if it were for the most part made of wood, or other combustible matter, they sought then by all meanes to burne it; as it happened at the siege of Massilia: and oftentimes, when both burning & vndermining failed, they confronted it, with another Mount within the walles, to disappoint the disaduantage by equall contesting of it; and so made it vnprofitable.

Concerning Mines, this much may I say, without preiudice to that Art, that the chiefest points to be respected are these: First, the true distance to a dessigned place; which is best got by instrument, and helpe of Geometrie, where other marks of certaintie are wanting. Secondly, the direction of the Mine, that we may not erre in our course which the Compasse affordeth. Thirdly, the strengthening of the Mine with timber-work, if need require. Lastly, the countermining and crosse-meeting. All which parts haue very many circumstances, & require a larger discourse, then may be thought pertinent for this place.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THe strange contract betweene these Soldurij, and their Chiefetaine, may well deserue a place amongst these obseruations, especiallie, considering the obligatorie cõditions, which either party stood bound to obserue: for, the Captaine was to make his Soldurij partakers of all his happines in this life; in regard whereof, they were to take part of whatsoeuer ill chance or disaster should happen to befal him. If death, which is the last end of all sensuall miserie, took hold of their head, these deuoted, were tied voluntarily to follow him the selfe same way: neither in any memorie was there euer man found, that refused to die, if he to whom he was deuoted, chanced to be slaine. Which bloudy league of amitie, as it was repugnant to the course of Nature, multiplying particular destinie to a generall calamitie: so was it dangerous in a well ordered State, if the Ring-leader were either ambitious, or sought to practice any thing contrarie to good gouernment: for, he himselfe would presume much vpon the assistance of his Soldurij; and they, on the other side, must needs wish well to his attempts, that were so interessed in his life and death.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

The *Galles* raiſe new forces againſt *Craſſus*.

Caeſar.

THe barbarous Galles were much troubled, that a towne of that ſtrength ſhould ſo ſoone be taken; and therfore they ſent Embaſſadours into all quarters, coniured one with another, confirmed their couenants with mutuall hoſtages, and leuied what power they were able to make: ſending for aide out of Spaine, and from other States that bordered vpon Aquitaine. At the comming of theſe forces, they began to make vvarre, vvith a great power, and with many ſouldiers of great fame: for, they appointed ſuch Leaders as had ſeene the experience of Sertorius his warres, and were great in the opinion of men, for their skill and knowledge in the Arte Militarie. Theſe, according to the cuſtome of the people of Rome, beganne to take places of aduantage, to fortifie their Campe, and to intercept the Romaines from free paſſage of conuoies, and neceſſarie intercourſes. Which when Craſſus perceiued, & conſidering withall, that his owne forces were ſo few, that he could not well diſmember them vpon any ſeruice or aduantage, and that the enemy went out at his pleaſure, kept the paſſages, and left notwithſtanding, a ſufficient guariſon in his Campe; by which meanes, their corne and prouiſion would in time grow ſcarce, and the enemie waxed euery day ſtronger: he thought it his beſt courſe not to linger any longer, but preſently to giue them battell.

The matter beeing referred to a Councell of warre, when he vnderſtood that all men were of the ſame opinion, he appointed the next day to giue them battell; & in the dawning, putting his men in a double battaile, & placing the Auxiliarie forces in the middeſt, he attended to ſee what the enemy would doe. The Galles, although they were perſwaded, that they might aduenture battell, both in regard of their multitude and ancient proweſſe of warre, as alſo in reſpect of the paucitie of the Romans; yet they thought it better to block vp the paſſages, and ſo cut off all cariages, and conuoies of corne; and ſo the victory would follow without bloodſhed: and if the Romans for want of Corne, ſhould offer to make a retreit, they would then ſet vpon them as they marched, wearied with trauell, & heauilie laden with their burthens. This reſolution beeing approoued by the whole Councell of the Galles, when the Romaines imbattailed their forces, they kept their men within their Campe.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Sertorius.

THis Sertorius had followed the faction of Marius and Cinna, and when Sylla had ouerthrowne both the elder & yonger Marius, hee fled into Spaine, and there maintained the quarrell on foote againſt Pompey and Metellus, and ouerthrew them in many battels: but in

the end was trecherously slaine by Perpanna at a banket. He was a man of great spirit, and of admirable dispatch; & vnder him were these Captaines brought vp, which Cæsar commendeth for their skill in Armes.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

Two meanes to atchieue victorie and to ouermaister their enemies.

IN histories, propounding to our consideration the deedes and moniments of former ages, we may obserue two especial means, which the great Commaunders of the world haue entertained to atchieue victorie, and ouermaister their enemies: the first, by cunning and wise cariage of a matter, before it come to triall by blowes: the second by forceable meanes and waging of battaile; the one proceeding from wisedome and the better faculties of the soule; and the other depending vpon the strength and abilitie of the bodie.

Concerning the first, it hath euer beene held more honourable, as better suting the worth of the spirit, and the diuine essence of our nature, so to direct the course of an action, that the aduerse part may be weakened by wit, and preuented in the projects of their better fortunes, by anticipation of meanes and occasions, and so through aduantages taken from their owne proceedings, to be driuen to that exigent, which may determine of the controuersie before they come to blowes, and conclude the matter by tearmes of Arte, taken from the directions of good prouidence. For, to speake a truth, the action of battell, as it is the last part in that faculty; so it is the worst in regard of Christian dutie, and better fitteth the progeny of Lamech his second wife (which the Diuines doe note to be borne to the ruine and destruction of mankind) then the children of grace; whose ioy consisteth in peace and loue.

Tubalcaine by war, and Naamah by the flood.

Cæsar, in the first of the Ciuill warres, respected the same thing, but from other grounds: for, hauing shutte vp Afranius and Petreius in a place of disaduantage, and might haue cut them off without further trouble; yet, forasmuch as he foresaw the victorie comming towards him without blow or wound, he thus answered his Captaines that were earnest vpon the enemie; *Cur etiam secundo prælio aliquos ex suis amitteret? cur vulnerari pateretur optimè de se meritos milites? cur denique fortunã periclitaretur?* And this course did these Galles take, which vnder Sertorius had learned the Romaine Art, and the Romaine industrie: and were now become so expert, that they had almost beaten the Romaines at their owne weapon.

This first meanes is principally to be imbraced, as the safest way in these vncertaine and casuall euents: for, that which resteth vpon corporall strength, & maketh execution the meanes to a conclusion, is very terrible euen to the better partie, full of hazard and of little certaintie. For, it were a miracle of Fortune neuer heard of yet, so to carrie a battaile vpon what aduantage or meanes whatsoeuer, that the victor Armie should buy so great a fortune without bloodshed or losse of men; and erect a Trophee to Honour, at the sole cost of the Enemy, without losse or expense of his owne treasure.

And

And for the vncertaintie in a battaile, who knoweth not what infinite chances and changes may happen in euerie ſmall moment of time, to turne the fortune of the day to this or that partie, and make both ſides vnconſtant in their affections, by preſenting them interchangeably with hope and feare, ioy & ſorrow? and therefore Cæſar thought it not beſt to tempt the weywardneſſe of Fortune, when by other meanes he might obtaine his deſires.

This, I ſay, is chiefely to be imbraced, if our means will affoord vs that happineſſe: but howſoeuer, I hold it wiſedome ſo to entertaine this courſe of victorie, that wee omitte not the chiefeſt helps of furtherance, when it commeth to blowes, but to thinke of this conqueſt by Arte and wit, as neceſſarie, if our meanes will ſerue vs to compaſſe it; and of the other, as neceſſarie whether we will or no: for, the hiſtorie maketh it plaine, that when Brutus found himſelfe deſtitute of meanes, to vndertake that courſe of victorie, which proceedeth from prouidence and diſcreet cariage; hee then betooke himſelfe neceſſarilie to the later, and by the helpe of battell, ſought to free himſelfe from thoſe diſaduantages, into which the Galles had brought him.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

Not to forgoe an aduantage

OBſerue further, out of this place, that what courſe ſoeuer bee taken, a diſcreet Leader will not eaſilie for-goe an aduantage without great aſſurance of a better fortune: nor change the certaintie of a benefit, vpon probabilities of other hopes, vntill it haue paid him the intereſt of his expectation, and wrought that effect which it promiſed to performe. For, ſo hee might forgoe his fortune, by preſuming too much vpon the fauour of future chances, which are often ſeene to croſſe our purpoſes, rather then to further the way which is taken.

THE FOVRTH OBSERVATION.

FVrther, I obſerue, this double battel to be anſwerable to the paucity of the Roman forces: for, their vſuall manner was, to make a triple battell, that the firſt might haue a ſecond, and a third helpe: but where their number would not affoord that commoditie, they then made two battels, that there might be the ſuccour of a ſecond ſupply. But they neuer fought with one ſingle battell, for ought that may bee gathered by their hiſtories.

THE

74918

THE FIFT OBSERVATION.

The place where ſuſpected forces are beſt beſtowed in battell.

THE laſt thing which I obſerue, is the place, where Craſſus beſtowed the Auxiliarie forces, in the diſpoſition of his troupes to battaile; which is heere ſaid to bee, in *mediam Aciem:* for, as their Armies were diuided into three battels; ſo euery battell was diuided into three parts; the two cornets, and the battell, wherein theſe Auxiliarie forces were in this ſeruice beſtowed: of theſe he afterward ſaith, that Inaſmuch as he durſt not put any confidence in them, hee commaunded them to ſerue the Romans in time of battell, with ſtones and weapons; and to cary earth and turfe to the Mount. The reaſon why ſuſpected troupes are placed in the battell, rather thē in either of the cornets, is, for that the battaile hath not ſuch ſcope to fling out, or take aduantage of place to doe miſchiefe, as the cornets haue: for, whereſoeuer there haue been ſet battels fought, the ſtrength of their Armie conſiſted alwaies in the cornets, as the two principall inſtruments of the battell: and as long as theſe ſtood ſound, the victorie went alwaies certain on that part; for, the cornets kept the enemy, both from incompaſſing about the body of their Armie, and had the aduantage alſo of charging vpon the open ſide of their aduerſarie.

At the battell of Cannas, Hanniball put the weakeſt of his forces in the battell, and aduancing them towards the enemy, left the two cornets behind: ſo that, when the enemy came to charge vpon the battell, they eaſily beate them backe, and as they followed, the retrait fell in between the two cornets, wherein the ſtrength of the Armie conſiſted; & being by them incompaſſed on each ſide, were defeated and ouerthrowne. And thus we ſee the aduantage which a Generall hath, when his two cornets ſtand firme, although the battell ſhrink in the incounter. Hanniball, in the battell hee had with Scipio in Africk, placed the Strangers in the front, and in the rereward; according peraduenture as hee found their number, and the vſe of their Armes: which are circumſtances to be conſidered in this caſe, and depend rather vpon the iudgement of a Generall, then of any preſcription that can be giuen in this matter.

CHAP. XI.

Craſſus taketh the Camp of the Galles: and *with their ouerthrow endeth that* VVarre.

Cæſar.

CRASSVS, vnderſtanding their drift, and finding his men willing to ſet vpon their Campe, incouraged his ſouldiers; & to the contentment of all men, vvent directly to the place where they were lodged: & as ſome began to fil vp the ditch, and others with caſting weapons to beate the Galles from the rampier, he commaunded the Auxiliarie forces, of vvhom he

hee had no great assurance, to bring stones and vveapons to the souldiers that fought, and to carie earth & turfe to the Mount; that so they might make a shew of fighting. And on the other side, as the enemy beganne valiantly to make resistance, and to cast their weapon from the higher ground, to the great hurt of the Romaine souldier; the horsemen in the meane time, riding about the Campe of the Galles, brought word to Crassus, that the rampier at the Decumane port, vvas not fortified with such diligence, as they found it in other places, but would admit an easie entrance. Crassus dealt earnestly with the Commaunders of the horse, to incourage their men with great promises and rewards; and instructed them what he would haue done: they, according to their instructions, took foure cohorts that were left in the Campe, and carying them a further way about, that they might not be discouered by the enemie, while all mens eyes and minds were intent vpon the fight, they speedily came to the place of the fortifications, which the horsemen had found to be weake; vvhich beeing easilie broken downe, they had entered the Campe before the Enemy could well tell what was done. And then a great clamour and shout beeing heard about that place, the Romaine legions renuing their force, as it falleth out alwaies in hope of victorie, beganne to charge them afresh with great furie. The Galles, beeing circumuented on each side, and despairing of their safetie, casting themselues ouer the rampier, sought by flight to escape the danger. But forasmuch as the Country was open & champaine, the horsemen pursued them with that execution, that of fiftie thousand, there scarce remained the fourth part.

OBSERVATION.

Lib. 3. Auertimē to secundo.

FRom this place Brancatio taketh occasion to dispute, how an Enemy that is strongly incamped, & for some aduantage will not remoue, may be dislodged, whether he will or no. A point of great consequence, in matter of warre; and therefore deserueth due consideration. Concerning which, he laieth this downe for a maxime, that All forts and strong holds are taken by the foot; & that camps and lodgings are taken by the head. By which is meant, that hee who purposeth to winne a fortresse well manned and prouided, must first get the foot, and take hold of the ditch, and then seise himselfe vpon the rampier, and so get the place: for, he saith, that mounts and eminent eleuations, are of little vse against fortresses or sconses, vnlesse they ouer-top them: which may be easily preuented, by raising the parapet of the fortresse in front, and the curtaine in flanke, according as the enemy shall cary his mounts aloft; and so they shall neuer come to ouer-toppe the holds. But all Camps and lodgings are taken by the head: that is, by mounts and eleuations, which by the aduantage of their height, commaund the champaine: for, hee holdeth it impossible, to raise a mount within the Campe in so short a time, to conteste that, which the enemie shall make without.

This foundation being laid, he proceedeth to discouer a way, how to raise a mount, maugre the enemy, which shall dislodge them by force of Artillerie, or murther

Lib. de bello Gallico.

murther them all within their trenches. And this he taketh from Cæsar, at the siege of Gergobia. The substance of the matter consisteth in a double ditch, running like vnto the line which the Geometricians call *Helicall*. By this double ditch, he maketh his approach to any place of most aduantage, where hee may, in a night, raise a mount high enough for the ordinance to play vpon any quarter of the Campe. The censure of this practice, I referre to our iudicious souldiers, which may, if it please them, take a better view of the particularities of this stratagem in Brancatio himselfe. This much I dare affirme, in the behalfe of these works, that they were of high esteeme amongst the Romans, whō daily experience and exigents of hazard had taught to find out the readiest meanes, both for securitie and victorie. And if our souldiers could be brought to taste the commoditie of these works, either by perswasion or impulsion, it were the best part of their warlike practices: but our men had rather flie vpon desperate aduentures, and seeke victorie in the iawes of death, then to cleare all hazard, with paines and diligence.

CHAP. XII.

Cæsar vndertaketh the warre with the *Menapij and Morini.*

Cæsar.
** Terouine.*
** Cleue and Gueldres.*

*AT the same time also, although the Sommer was almost at an end, yet forasmuch as all Gallia was in peace, and the * Morini onely, with the * Menapij stood out in Armes, and had neuer either sent Embassadour, or otherwise treated of Peace: Cæsar, thinking that warre might quickly be ended, ledde his Armie into their Country. At his comming, hee found them to carie the warres farre otherwise, then the rest of the Galles had done: for, vnderstanding that the greatest Nations of Gallia, vvhich had waged battell with the Romans, were beaten and ouerthrowne: and hauing vvhole continents of woods and bogs in their territories, they conuaied both themselues and their goods into those quarters. Cæsar, comming to the beginning of the woods, began to fortifie his Campe, not discouering any enemy neere about him: but as his men were dispersed in their charges, they suddenly sallied out of the woods, and assaulted the Romans; but beeing speedily driuen in againe, with the losse of manie of them, as the Romans followed them farre into the woods, had some few of their men slaine.*

The time that remained, Cæsar resolued to spend in cutting down the woods: and, least the souldiers might be taken vnawares, while they were busied in that worke, he caused them to place all the trees which they cut downe, on either side of the Armie, that they might serue for a defence, against sudden assaults. A great quantitie of ground was thus rid within a few daies, so that their goods & cattell was taken by the Romans: but they themselues were fledde into thicker woods.

vvoods. At which time there happened ſuch a continuall raine, as forced them to leaue off the worke; and the ſouldiers could no longer indure to lie in Tents of skinnes: and therefore Cæſar, after hee had waſted and ſpoiled their Country, burned their townes, and their houſes; hee caried back his Armie, and placed them in ſuch Citties to winter in, as were ſubdued by the late warres.

OBSERVATION.

THe Iriſh rebels, hauing the like commoditie of woods and bogges, do entertaine the like courſe of war, as the Morini did with Cæſar. The meanes which he vſed to diſappoint them of that practice, was to cut downe the woods; which if it be thought monſtrous in this age, or ridiculous to our men of war; let them conſider that the Romaine diſcipline, wrought greater effects of valour, then can be made credible by the vſe of theſe times. For, beſides their exquiſite diſcipline, which of it ſelfe vvas able to frame patterns of vnexampled magnanimitie, their induſtrie was admirable in the execution thereof, and caried it with ſuch vnceſſant trauell, that the ſouldiers thought it great happineſſe when they came to wage battell with the Enemy; and could haue meanes to quit their continuall trauell, with the hazard of their liues.

Neither let it ſeeme ſtrange, that the Romaines vndertooke to cut down the woods: but rather let vs admire their facilitie in ſo difficult a taske; for, as the hiſtorie witneſſeth; *magno ſpacio paucis diebus confecto, incredibili celeritate*: a great quantitie of ground, was rid in a few daies, with incredible ſpeed. And after the woods were cut downe, they tooke more paines in placing it on each ſide of the legions, to hinder any ſuddaine aſſault, then they did in cutting it downe: which deſerueth as great admiration as the former part. There is another place in the ſixt booke of theſe Commentaries, which expreſſeth more particularly the nature of ſuch warres, and may ſerue to acquaint vs with that which Cæſar did in theſe difficulties.

The Eburones, or the men of Liege, had the like commoditie of woods & bogges, and made vſe of them in the warre they had with Cæſar. The matter ſaith hee, required great diligence, not ſo much in regard of the perill of the whole Armie (for there could no danger come from an enemy that was frighted and diſperſed) as the ſafetie of euerie particular ſouldier, which in part did pertaine to the welfare of the whole Armie. For, the deſire of a bootie, caried many of the ſouldiers farre from the bodie of the Armie: and the woods being full of vnknowne and ſecret paſſages, would not ſuffer them to goe either thicke together, or cloſe imbattailed. If he deſired to haue the warre ended, and the race of thoſe wicked men to be rooted out, hee muſt of force make manie ſmall companies, & diuide his men into many bodies: but if he would haue the Maniples to keepe at their Enſignes, as the diſcipline and cuſtome of the Romaine Armie required; then the place was a ſhelter and defence to the Emie. Neither did they want courage to lay Ambuſhments, and to circumuent

ſuch

749b

ſuch as they found alone, straggling from their companies. In theſe difficulties, there was as much done as diligence could doe; prouiding rather to be wanting in the offenſiue part (although all mens mindes were ſette on fire with reuenge) then to hurt the enemie with the loſſe of the Romaine ſouldier. Cæſar ſent meſſengers to the bordering States, to come out and ſack the Eburones, & they ſhould haue all the prey for their labour: that the life of the Galles, rather then his legionarie ſouldiers, might be hazarded in thoſe woods; as alſo, that with ſo great a multitude, both the race & name of that people might be quite extinguiſhed.

There are many particularities in this relation, which concerne the true motion of the Iriſh warres, which may be better obſerued by ſuch as knowe thoſe warres by experience, then by my ſelfe, that vnderſtand them onely by relation: and therfore to preuent ſuch exceptions, as my rule ſhall make of the parallell in theſe two caſes, I will leaue it to bee done by themſelues. And thus endeth the third Commentarie.

THE

THE FOVRTH COMMENTARIE.

THE ARGVMENT.

THe Visipetes, and Tenchtheri are driuen to seeke new seates in Gallia; they driue the Menapij out of their territories: but in the end are ouerthrowen by Cæsar. That warre being ended, he made a bridge vpon the Rhene, and carried his Army ouer into Germany. He taketh reuenge vpon the Sicambri; and giueth libertie to the Vbij: returneth into Gallia, and carrieth his Armie ouer into Britanie, with the occurrences of that warre.

CHAP. I.

The *Vsipetes, and *Tenchtheri bring great multitudes of peoples, ouer the Rhene into Gallia: the nature of the Sueui.

* Those of Zutphen.
* Of Hassia.

THE winter following, Pompeie and Crassus being Consuls, the Visipetes and Tenchtheri, two Germaine nations, passed ouer the Rhene, with great multitudes of people; not far from the place, where it falleth into the sea. The reason of their flitting, was the ill intreatie, which for many yeares together they had receiued of the Sueui, the greatest and warlikest nation amongst the Germaines. For, these Sueui had one hundred Cantons or shires, which yearely furnished their warres, with 1000. men apiece; and kept as manie at home to maintain both themselues, and their Armies abroad: and these the yeare following were in Armes; and the other staied at home, and performed the like dutie; and so by this means, they all continued their experience both of tillage, and matter of war. They liued chiefly vpon cattel & milk, & vsed much hunting: which was the cause (what through the quality of their diet, their continual exercise, and libertie of life, being neuer tyed to anie discipline, nor vrged to any thing against their disposition) that they were strong & of a large stature, vsing skins and hides for their cloathing, which couered but part of their bodie, the rest being naked. Their horsemen oftentimes, in time of batell, forsooke their horse, and fought on foot; being taught to stand

Cæsar.

749b

ſtill in one place, that when they would they might returne vnto them. Neither was there any thing more baſe, or diſhoneſt in the courſe of their life, then to vſe furniture for horſes: and would aduenture to charge vpon great troups of horſe, that vſed Equipage, with a few of their owne quality. They admitted no wine to be brought in vnto them, leaſt it might effeminate their warlike inclination, or make them vnapt for labour. The greateſt honour in their opinion, was to haue their bordering Territories lie waſte & deſolate: for, ſo it would be thought, that manie States togither, would not reſiſt their conquering valour: and it was reported, that the country lay waſte from them one waie 600. miles togither.

THE OBSERVATION.

BY this practice of the Sueui, it appeareth, how little a naked reſolution of valour auaileth, when it wanteth the ornaments of moral carriage and ciuil diſcretion, to make vſe of that greatneſſe which prowels hath obtained: for, notwithſtanding that they were a nation both warlike, and of good abilitie, they were ſo vainly carried on with a cõceit of manhood, that it ſorted to no other end, then to maintaine barbariſme at home, and deſolation abroad; where as true valor is alwaies ſubordinate to the preſeruation of Common-weales, and is as the defenſiue Armes of ciuill ſocietie. Which I haue the rather noted, in as much as it reſembleth an humor that aboundeth in this age, eſpecially in the particular hauiour of our young Gallants, whoſe naked valour reuealing it ſelfe only in the lie and in the ſtabbe, for want of other aſſiſtant vertues to temper the heat of ſo brittle a metall, leadeth them into ſuch inconueniences and diſordered actions, that it changeth the nature thereof, into giddie headed raſhneſſe; and in lieu of vertues guerdon, is repaied with irriſion.

CHAP. II.

The motiues, inducing the Vſipetes to come ouer the Rhene into GALLIA.

Cæſar. *NExt vnto theſe Sueui, inhabited the Vbij, a very ample and potent State: and through their entercourſe & traffick with marchants, ſomewhat more ciuill then the reſt of the Germans. With theſe, the Sueui had often waged battell: and albeit they could not expel them out of their coũtry, for aſmuch as their State was very great and populous; yet by continuall incurſions they brought them vnder, and much weakened their eſtate. In the ſame caſe were the Vſipetes and Tenchtheri: for, hauing made head againſt the Sueui*

J

*Sueui for many yeares together, they were conſtrained in the end to forſake their poſſeſſions; and wandering the ſpace of three yeares through the Continent of Germany, at laſt they arriued where the * Menapij inhabited the bankes, on both ſides the riuer Rhene: but being terrified with the arriuall of ſuch a multitude, they forſooke all their dwellings beyond the riuer, and planted themſelues on this ſide of the water, to hinder the Germans from further paſſage.*

* Geldres & Cleeue.

The Vſipetes with their aſſociates, hauing tried all meanes, and not finding themſelues able to paſſe ouer by force, for want of boats; nor by ſtealth, by reaſon of the diligent watch of the Menapij, fained a retrait to their old habitation: & after three daies iourney, their horſemen in one night ſpeedily returned againe, and ſlewe the Menapij, both vnguarded and vnprouided. For they vpon the departure of the Germans, feared not to returne ouer the riuer into their townes & houſes. Theſe being ſlain, and their ſhipping taken, they got ouer the riuer, before the reſt of the Menapij had any notice of their comming: by which meanes they eaſily diſpoſſeſſed them of their dwelling places, and liued that winter vpon the prouiſion they found there.

Cæſar vnderſtanding of theſe things, and fearing the weakneſſe of the Galles, in as much as they are ſudden & quick in their reſolutions, and withall deſirous of noueltie: he durſt no waie truſt their vnconſtancie; for, it was their practice and cuſtome to ſtay trauellers and paſſengers, and inquire of them what they either heard or knewe, concerning any thing that had happened; and the common people would flocke about Merchants in faires and markets, and learne of them whence they came, and what newes they brought from thence: and by theſe rumors and heareſayes they directed the main courſe of their actions; wherof they could not but repent themſelues, being grounded vpon ſuch weake intelligence, as was vſually coined to pleaſe the multitude. Which cuſtom being known, Cæſar to preuent a greater war, haſted to his Army ſooner then he was wont to doe.

OBSERVATION.

SVch as haue ſpent their time in the contemplation of Nature, & haue made diligent ſearch of the temperature & quality of climates and nations, haue all with one conſent made choler the Regent of the French complexion; diſtinguiſhing the people, with ſuch attributes, as the ſaide humor vſually breedeth. Neither haue theſe conditions, which Cæſar ſo long agoe obſerued in the ancient Galles, any diſreſemblance from that which the learned of this age haue deliuered, cõcerning the nature of the ſaid inhabitants: but that irreſolute conſtitution, which breeds ſuch noueltries and contrarieties of actions, continueth the ſame vnto theſe times, in the inhabitants of that country, notwithſtanding the alteration of cuſtomes, and people, or what elſe ſo long a time hath changed; which argueth the vnreſiſtable power of celeſtiall influence, eſtabliſhing an vniformity of nature, according as the ſite of the place lieth capable of their powerfull aſpect.

The cauſe of the diuerſitie in the temperature of nations, which are differen-

749b

ced by North and South, is not without apparant cauſe, attributed to their propinquitie, or diſtance from the courſe of the ſun, which diſtinguiſheth by heat and cold the Northren & Southerne climates of the earth; and ſeparateth the inhabitants thereof, by the dominion of their actiue qualities. But the reaſon why two Nations which are both in the ſame climate, and vnder the ſame parallel, receiuing the vertue of the celeſtiall bodies, by the ſame downfall and rebound of their beames, being differenced only by Eaſt and Weſt; are ſo much diſunited in nature, and ſo vnlike in diſpoſition, is not ſo apparant: whether it be as ſome haue imagined, foraſmuch as the all-incloſing ſpheare; which remaineth quiet and immoueable aboue the circuit of the firſt motor, hath his parts diuerſly diſtinguiſhed with variety of properties; which by continuall reference and mutuall aſpect, are imprinted in the correſpondent quarters of the earth; and ſo keepe a perpetuall reſidency of one and the ſame qualitie, in one and the ſame place; and make alſo the variety of faſhions in ſuch partes, as otherwiſe are equall fauorites of the heauens maieſtie, by receiuing an equall meaſure of light, heat and vertue; or whether the ſaide quarters of the earth are in themſelues diuerſly noted, with ſeuerall qualities, which appropriate the ſelfe ſame influence to their particular nature, and ſo alter it into many faſhions: or whether there be ſom other vnknown cauſe: I will leaue euery man to ſatisfie himſelf with that which ſeemeth moſt probable vnto him, and proceed to the diſcouerie of this cholerick paſſion. Wherin I will indeuour to ſhew, how impatiencie, ſodaine reſolution, and deſire of noueltie, are naturall adiuncts of this humor. And if Cæſar made vſe of this Philoſophy in the managing of that warre; let it not be thought impertinent to the knowledge of a Generall, to enter into the conſideration of this learning. Wherein firſt, I muſt laie for a maxime, that which long experience hath made authenticall, that the motions of the minde are either quicke or ſlow, according as the complexion is tempered, either with heat or cold: for, as the flegmaticall humor, is of a moiſt, colde and heauie nature, begetting weake and groſſe ſpirits, and benumming the inſtruments with a liueleſs diſabilitie; ſo is the motion of the internall faculties, proceeding likewiſe after a ſlow manner, according to the quality of the inſtruments, wherby it moueth: and therfore men of this wateriſh conſtitution, are no way apt to receiue an impreſſion, nor to entertaine any ſenſible apprehenſion, vnleſſe it be beaten into them, with often and ſtrong repetitions; and then alſo they proceede as ſlowly in diſcourſing of the conſequence, and linger in the choiſe of their reſolutions. On the contrary part, this *flaua bilis*, being of a hot piercing nature, and reſembling the actiue vertue of the fire, doth ſo purifie the inſtruments of ſenſe, and quicken the ſpirits with the viuacity of motion, that they take the firſt impreſſion as perfectly, as if it had been oftentimes preſented vnto them, with many ſtrong circumſtances. And thence it happeneth, that inaſmuch as the *Species* is ſo readily receiued, & poſſeſſeth the apprehending faculte, with ſuch facility of entrance, that it moueth the other powers of the ſoule, with as great efficacie at the firſt conception, as if it had beene brought in with troupes of probabilities, and ſtrengthened with manifeſt arguments of vndoubted truth: It followeth therefore (by reaſon of the ſubtile and

fit

fit diſpoſition of the inſtruments, which proceedeth frō heate the chiefeſt qualitie in choler) that the obiect is at the firſt moment, ſo ſtrongly ſettled, in the firſt receiuing faculties, that the other powers of the minde, with as great ſpeed manifeſt their offices, concerning the apprehenſion; and deliuer a ſentence anſwerable to the ſtrength of the firſt conception: which maketh them ſo impatient of delay, and ſo ſodainly to alter their former reſolutions, not ſuffering the diſcourſiue power to examine the ſubſtance thereof, by conference of circumſtances; nor to giue iudgement according to the courſe of our intellectuall court. It behoueth therfore euery man, in that vnſteady diſpoſition, eſpecially in matter of moment, to be ſuſpicious of his own credulity, & not to giue place to reſolution, before his iudgement be informed, by diſcourſe of the ſtrength or weakneſſe of the conceiued opinion.

But to leaue theſe ſpeculatiue meditations, to Philoſophers of learned conceit: for as much as the right vſe of paſſions is either true wiſdom, or commeth neereſt to the ſame; I will only touch in a word what degree of choler beſt befitteth a ſoldier; or how it auaileth, or diſaduantageth in matter of warre. And firſt it cannot be denyed, that there is almoſt no paſſion, that doth more eclipſe the light of reaſon, or ſooner corrupteth the ſinceritie of a good iudgement, then this of anger, which we now ſpeak of: Neither is there any motion that more pleaſeth it ſelfe in his owne actions, or followeth them with greater heat in the execution. And if the trueth chance to ſhew it ſelfe, and conuince a falſe pretended cauſe, as the authour of that paſſion, it oftentimes redoubleth the rage euen againſt truth and innocency. Piſo condemned a ſouldier for returning from forraging, without his companion, being perſwaded that he had ſlain him: but at the inſtant of the execution, the other that was miſſing, returned & with great ioy of the whole Army, they were carried to the Generall, thinking to haue much gratified him, with the manifeſtation of the truth: but he through ſhame and deſpight, being yet in the torture of his wrath, redoubled his anger, and by a ſubtilty which his paſſion furniſhed him withall, he made three culpable for that hee found one innocent; the firſt, becauſe the ſentence of death was paſt againſt him, and was not to bee recalled without the breach of lawe: the ſecond, for that he was the cauſe of the death of his companion: and thirdly, the executioner, for not obeying his commandement.

Concerning matter of warre, as it conſiſteth of differenced parts; ſo hath choler diuers effectes. In caſe of diſcourſe and conſultation, when as the powers of the minde ought to bee cleere of all violent affections, it greatly darkeneth the vnderſtanding, and troubleth the ſinceritie of a good iudgement, as Cæſar noted in his ſpeech to the Senate concerning Cateline: and therefore a Commander, muſt by al meâns indeuor to auoid, euen the leaſt motions of ſo hurtfull a paſſion; and ſeaſon his affections, with that grauity and conſtancy of ſpirit, that no turbulent diſpoſition may, either hinder his vnderſtanding, or with-holde his will from following that courſe, which reaſon appointeth, as the beſt means to a fortunate ſucceſſe: alwaies remembring that all his actions are preſented vpon a ſtage, and paſſe the cenſure of many curious beholders, which applaud graue & patient motions, as the greateſt proof of true wiſdom; *Saluſt.*

749b

& disallow of passionate, and headstrong affection, as derogating from the sincere cariage of an action, how iust soeuer otherwise it seemeth.

Concerning execution and furie of battaile, I take anger to be a necessarie instrument to set valour on foot, and to ouerwage the difficulties of terror, with a furious resolution: for, considering that the noblest actions of the mind, stand in need of the impulsions of passions, I take anger to be the fittest meanes, to aduance the valiant carriage of a battaile: for, as feare is treacherous and vnsafe, so anger is confident and of an vnquencheable heat. And therfore a Cōmaunder ought by all meanes, to suggest matter of anger against an Enemie, that his men may beholde them with a wrathfull regarde, and thirst after the daie of battell, to satisfie their fury with the bloud of their aduersaries. If any vrge, that it hath been heertofore obserued of the Galles, that in the beginning of a battell they were more then men, and in the later end they were lesse then women; and therefore a cholerick disposition is not so fit for seruice, as we seem to make it: I answer, that There is a difference between a disposition to choler, such as was obserued in the Galles, and the passion of anger, wel kindled in the minde: for, the first is subiect to alteration and contrarietie of actions; but the other is furious, inuincible, neuer satisfied but with reuenge. And so that of Aristotle is prooued true, that anger serueth oftentimes as a weapon to vertue; whereunto some answere very pleasantly, saying, it is a weapon of a strange nature: for, we do manage other weapons, and this doth manage vs; our hand guideth not it, but it guideth our hand; it possesseth vs, and not we it, as it happened in the raigne of Tyberius, amongst the mutinous legions at *Vetera*: & therefore a Commander ought to take great heed, whom hee maketh the obiect of that anger, which kindleth in his Army. For, as it is a passion of terrible execution, and therefore needeth to be wisely directed; so is it dangerous in regarde of obedience, which was the only thing which Cæsar required in his soldiers.

Tacit. 1. Annal.

But to leaue this hasty matter, and fall neerer that which we seek after: I may not omit the Prognostication, which Cæsar made of the consequence of this accident, by the naturall disposition of the people; the euent whereof proued the truth of his predictions; which sheweth what aduantage a learned General that hath bin somwhat instructed in the schoole of Nature, hath gained of him, whom only experience hath taught the actiue rudiments of the war, and thinketh of no further lesson in that art, then that which the office of a Seriant, or Lanceprizado containeth.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Cæsar commeth to his Armie, marcheth towards *the Germaines, and by the waie treateth of* conditions of Peace.

CAESAR being come to his Army, found that to haue happened which he before suspected: for, some of the States of Gallia had sent messengers vnto the Germains, to leaue the bāks of Rhene, and to Come further into the continent, where they should find ready, whatsoeuer they desired. Whereupon the Germains began to make further incursions, and to waste the land as far as the confines of the * Eburones. The Princes of the Galles being called together, Cæsar thought it best to dissemble what he had discouered, concerning their reuolt; and confirming their minds with an approbation of their loialty, he commanded certaine troupes of horse to be leuied, and resolued to make warre vpon the Germains; and hauing made prouision of corne, hee directed his march towards them. From whō as he was on the way, within a few daies iourney of their Camp, he receiued this message: The Germains as they were not willing to make warre vpon the Romans, so they would not refuse to make triall of their manhood, if they were iustly prouoked; for, their ancient custome was to answere an Enemy by force, and not by treaty: yet this much they would confesse, that they came thither very vnwillingly, being driuen by violence out of their possessions. If the Roman people would accept of their friendship, & either giue them teritories to inhabite, or suffer them to keep that which they had got by the lawe of Armes, they might proue profitable friends vnto them. They onely yeelded to the Sueui, to whom the gods in feats of Arms were inferior; any other Nation they would easily conquer. Cæsar. * Liege.

To this Cæsar answered what he thought fit; but the purport of his speech was, that he could not make any league with them, if they continued in Gallia: neither was it probable, that they that could not keepe their owne, would get possessions out of other mens hands: Gallia had no vacant place to entertain so great a multitude: but if they would they might find a welcome, amongst the * Vbij, whose agents were at that instant in his Camp, complaining of the iniurie of the Sueui, and desiring aide against them; this much he himself would intreat of the Vbij. The messengers went backe with these Mandates, promising within three daies to returne againe to Cæsar: in the meane time, they desired him, not to bring his Army anie neerer their quarters; which request Cæsar denyed. For, vnderstanding that a fewe dayes before, a great part of their Caualrie were passed ouer the Mosa, he suspected that this delay imported nothing more then the return of their horsemen. * Colonia Agrippina.

When Cæsar was come within twelue miles of their Camp, their Ambassadors

returned; and meeting him on the way, entreated him earneſtly to march no further towards them: but being denied of their ſuit, they beſought him to ſend to thoſe troups of horſe, which marched before the Army, that they ſhould not fight nor make any hoſtile incounter; and that he would giue them leaue to ſend meſſengers to the Vbij: of whoſe entertainment they would willingly accept, if the Princes and Senate would ſweare faith and ſafe continuance vnto their people: Neither would they require more then 3. daies, to negotiate this buſineſſe. Cæſar conceiued this intreaty to import nothing elſe, then the returne of their horſemen that were abſent in pillage, whom they expected within three dayes; notwithſtanding he promiſed them to march but foure miles further that day, to a conuenient watring place: in the meane time he ſent to the Commanders of the horſe that were before, not to prouoke the Enemy to fight; and if they were ſet vpon, to ſuſtaine the charge, vntill he came neerer with the Armie.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

FIrſt, wee may obſerue his diſſembling of the practice of the Galles with the Germans; and the incouragement which hee gaue them in a faithfull and loyall affection to the people of Rome, when hee himſelfe knew they had ſtarted from that duty, which both their honour and a good reſpect of their friends required: for, he well vnderſtood, that his preſence did take away all ſcruple of any further motion in that kind; and therfore to haue obiected vnto them their errors, had not bin to heale, but to diſcouer their wound: only he took the waie to cut off their hopes of any practiſes, which they might attempt againſt the Romaine people; and held them in the mean time in the apparance of faithfull friends, that they might not be diſcouraged, by the detection of their reuolt.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

SEcondly, vpon this reſolution that there was no league to be made with the Germans, if they continued on this ſide the Rhene; wee may obſerue how he entertained a treaty of peace, with ſuch conſents & denials, as might manifeſt his readineſſe to further what he made ſhew of, & not weaken the meanes of his beſt aduantage. For as hee was content they ſhould take a quiet farewel of Gallia, & plant themſelues in the poſſeſſions of the Vbij; ſo was he loath to yeeld to any condition, which might diſaduantage his forcible conſtraint or weaken his command, if perſwaſion failed: for, he well knew, that powerfull means to effect that which he required, would further the courſe of a peaceable concluſion, and carry more authority in a parlee, then any other motiue, how reaſonable ſoeuer.

Vincitur haud gratis

Moreouer wee may obſerue, how carefull hee was not to impoſe vpon the Germanes a neceſſitie of fighting; but opened a paſſage (by propounding vn-

to

to them the association of the Vbij) by which they might auoyd the hazard of battell. Which thing was alwayes obserued by Commaunders of auncient times, who diligently searching into the nature of things, found that neyther of those noble instruments, whereby man worketh such wonders (I meane the hand and the tongue) had euer brought so many excellent workes to that type of perfection, vnless they had been forced thereunto by necessity: and therefore we are wisely to handle the course of our actions, least while we stand too strict vpon a violent guarde, we giue occasion to the Enemy, by the waie of *Antiperistasis*, to redouble his strength; and so furnish him with that powerfull engine, which Vetius Mescius calleth *vltimum* and *maximum telum*, the last and greatest weapon; the force whereof shall better appeare by these examples.

iugulo qui prouocat hostem.

Some fewe of the Samnites, contrarie to the articles of peace between them and the Romans, hauing made incursions into the territories of the Roman cõfederats; the Senate of that State sent to Rome, to excuse the fact, and to make offer of satisfaction: But beeing reiected, Claudius Pontius Generall of their forces, in an excellent Oration which he made, shewed how the Romans would not harken to peace, but chose rather to be reuenged by war: and therfore necessity constrained them to put on Arms: *Iustum est bellum* (saith he) *quibus necessarium, & pia arma quibus, nisi in Armis, spes est.*

Liu. lib. 9

Caius Manlius, conducting the Roman legions against the Veij, part of the Veian Army had entred the Roman Campe; which Manlius perceiuing, hee hasted with a band of men to keep the breach, and to shut in the Veij: which they no sooner perceiued, but they fought with that rage and fury, that they slew Manlius; and had ouerthrown the whole Camp, had not a Tribune opened them a passage, by which they fled away.

Liu. lib. 7

In like manner Camillus, the wisest of the Romaine Captaines, being entered into the Cittie of the Veij, that hee might take it with greater facilitie and disarme the Enemie of that terrible weapon of necessitie, hee caused it to bee proclaimed, that no Veian should bee hurt, that was found vnarmed. Wherupon euery man cast away his weapon, and so the towne was taken without bloudshed.

Let a souldier therefore take such holde of occasions, and opportunities that are offered vnto him, that in time of battell hee may seem to cast necessitie vpon his own cause, and retaine it in his paie: considering how the power therof altereth the works of Nature, and changeth their effects into contrary operations: being neuer subiect to anie ordinance or lawe; and yet making that lawfull which proceedeth from it.

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.

The Germans, contrary to their owne requeſt *made to Cæſar, ſet vpon the Romaine horſe-* men, and ouerthrewe them.

Cæſar.

NOtwithſtanding the Germans requeſt, concerning the truce, aſſoon as they ſaw the Roman horſemen, which were in number 5000. (wher as the Germans had not aboue 800. horſe) they charged vpon the Romans, not expecting any hoſtile incounter, inaſmuch as their ambaſſadours were newly departed from Cæſar, and had obtained that daie of truce: but being ſet vpon, they made what reſiſtance they could. The Germans, according to their vſuall cuſtome, forſooke their horſe, and fighting on foote, did eaſily put the Romans to flight; who neuer looked backe, vntill they came into the ſight of the legions: in that battell were ſlain 74. Roman horſemen. After this battell, Cæſar thought it not ſafe, either to hearken to any conditions, or to receiue any meſſage from them, that by fraud and deceit had ſought for peace, & meant nothing but war: And to attend any longer vntill their horſemen returned, was but to giue them that aduantage againſt him, eſpecially conſidering the weakeneſſe of the Galles, amongſt whom the Germans by this battell had gayned great reputation; and therfore he durſt not giue them ſpace to thinke vpon it.

OBSERVATION.

THis cunning of the Germans offereth occaſion to ſpeak ſomwhat, concerning that maine controuerſie of policie, which is, whether the actions of Princes and great Commanders, are alwaies to be attended with integrity, & faithful accompliſhment therof. Wherin I will only ſet down ſuch arguments and gronnds of reaſon, which vertue and morall honeſtie on the one part, (for we will make it no queſtion to a Chriſtian mind) & the daily practice of States men on the other ſide, alleage to make good their contrarie aſſertions.

The great Politicians of the world, that commend vertue in a ſhew, and not in *eſſe* and being, & ſtudy to maintaine their ſtates onely with humane reaſon, not regarding the authority of diuine ordinance, ſet this down as a *maxime* in their Art; That he, that is to negotiate a matter, and meaneth to bring it to an end ſorting to his contentment, muſt in all reſpects bee like qualified, both in iudgement and diſpoſition, as the party is, with whom he dealeth: otherwiſe he cannot be ſufficiently prepared, to hold himſelf ſtrong in the matter, which he vndertaketh. For, a wraſtler that commeth with meere ſtrength to incounter an other that hath both ſtrength and cunning, may beſhrewe his ſtrength that brought him thither, to be caſt by skill, and be laught at, as an vnworthie Cham-

Champion for ſerious ſports: in like manner, in this vniuerſall confuſion of infidelity, wherin ſubtilty flyeth at ſo high a pitch, he that thinketh with ſimplicity of ſpirit to wind through the labyrinths of falſhood, and auoid the ſnares of deceit, ſhall find himſelf too weak for ſo difficult a task, and beſhrew his honeſty, if he regard his commodity. For, it is the courſe that euery man taketh, which muſt bring vs to the place, to which euery man goeth: and he that oppoſeth himſelf againſt the current of the world, may ſtand alone in his owne conceit, and neuer attain that which the world ſeeketh after. Foraſmuch therefore, as craft & deceit are ſo generall, it behoueth a man of publicke negotiations, to carry a mind apt & diſpoſed to theſe qualities. This was ſignified by that, which ancient writers report of Achilles, who was ſent to Chiron the Cẽtaure, half a man and half a beaſt, to be inſtructed in the rudiments of Princely carriage; that of the brutiſh part, hee might learne to ſtrengthen himſelfe, with force and courage; and of the humane ſhape, ſo to manage reaſon, that it might bee a fit inſtrument to anſwer or preuent, whatſoeuer mans wit might forge to ouerthrow it. Neither ought a priuate man to wõder at the ſtrangeneſs of theſe poſitions; conſidering that the gouernment of kingdoms, & Empires is caried with another bias, then that which concerneth particular affaires in a wel ordered State: wherin truth-breakers and faithleſs diſſemblers are worthily condemned, inaſmuch as they neceſſarily enforce the ruine therof. But theſe that ſit at the helm of gouernment, and are to ſhape the courſe of a State, according to the variation of times and fortunes, deriue their concluſions from other principles, wherof inferior ſubiects are no morre capable, then men are able to vnderſtand the works of the Gods: and therefore they are called *arcana imperij*, to be reuerenced rather, then lookt into.

To conclude, the affaires of particular perſons are of ſo ſhort extenſion, and incircled in ſo ſmall a compaſſe, that a meane capacity may eaſily apprehend the aduantages or inconueniences, which may enſue vpon the contract: and therefore it is requiſit they ſhould ſtand to the aduenture, and their iudgement is worthily taxed with the loſs: but the buſineſſes of the Common-weale are, both ſubiect to ſo many caſualties of fortune, and rely vpon ſuch vnexpected accidents, that it is impoſſible for any ſpirit, how prouident ſoeuer, to foreſee the iſſue in that variety of chances. Beſides that, euery particular ſubiect is much intereſſed in the fortune of the euent, and may iuſtly chalenge an alteration of the intended courſe, rather then ſuffer ſhipwrack through the error of their Pilot: And ſo the ſafetie of the State doth balance out the loſs of credit in the Gouernour.

On the other ſide, ſuch as zealouſly affect true honour, affirme virtue to bee the ſame both in Prince & people; neither doth condition of ſtate, or calling, or the qualitie of publicke or priuate buſineſſes, alter the nature and eſſence of goodnes: for, to depriue the toung of truth and fidelity were to break the bond of ciuill ſociety, which is the baſis and ground-plot of all States and Common-weales. They doe not denie but that a wiſe Prince may ſo carrie a treatie, that he may ſeeme to affect that moſt which he leaſt intendeth; or anſwere doubtfully concerning the propoſitions; and that hee may vſe with great honour the prac-

749b
Edmondes. Str C.

practices and ſtratagems of warre, when the fortune of both parties conſiſteth vpon their owne induſtrie: but to breake any couenants agreed vpon, may wel get a kingdome, but neuer honourable reputation.

And thus they contend concerning the means, wherby a State is continued in happy gouernment: whereof this much I dare ſay by the warrant of this Hiſtory, that he who falſifieth his word vpon aduantage, howſoeuer he regardeth his honour, had need to pay them home in regard of his owne ſafetie: for, if they once recouer the loſs, and get any aduantage againſt thoſe truth-breakers, they will finde as little fauour, as the Germans did with Cæſar.

CHAP. V.

Cæſar marched directly to the Campe of the *Germans, and cut them all in peeces, and* ſo ended that warre.

Cæſar.

Vpon theſe conſiderations, Cæſar manifeſting his reſolution to the Legates, and Queſtor, there happened a very fortunate accident. For, the next daie, very early in the morning, moſt of the Princes and chiefeſt of the Germans came vnto Cæſar into his Camp, to excuſe their fraudulent practice; and withall to continue their petition of truce. Wherof Cæſar was exceeding glad, and cauſed them to be kept in hold; and at the ſame inſtant brought his Army out of the Camp, commanding his horſemen to follow the legions, becauſe they had bin daunted with ſo late an ouerthrow: And making a triple battel, marched ſpeedily eight miles, and ſo came vpon the Germans, before they had notice what had hapned; & being terrified with our ſuddain arriual, & the departure of their own leaders, knew not whether it were their beſt courſe, to bring forth their forces, or defend their Cãp, or otherwiſe to ſeek their ſafety by flight. Which tumult & feare was no ſooner perceiued by the Romã ſoldier, but calling to mind their perfidious treacherie, they brake into the Camp, and were at firſt a little reſiſted; in the meane time, the women and children fled euery one away: vvhich Cæſar perceiuing, ſent his horſemen to purſue them. The Germans, hearing the clamour and ſchrickings behind their backs, & ſeeing their friends purſued and ſlaine, did caſt away their weapons, and fledde out of the Campe: and comming to the confluence of the Maſe and the Rhene, ſuch as had eſcaped, caſt thẽſelues into the riuer; where, what through feare & wearineſs, and the force of the water, they were all drowned. In this conflict, the Romans loſt not a man. The number of the enemie was 430000, with women and children. To them whõ he had retained in his Campe, he gaue leaue to depart; but they, fearing the crueltie of the Galles, deſired that they might continue with the Romans: which Cæſar agreed vnto.

OBSERVATION.

THis relation affordeth little matter of warre, but onely a ſeuere reuenge of hatefull trecherie: notwithſtanding, I will hence take occaſion, to diſcouer the offices of the Queſtor and the Legates; and ſhew what place they had in the Armie. And firſt, concerning the Queſtor, we are to vnderſtand, that he was elected by the common voice of the people, in the ſame Court, which was called to create the Generall. His office was, to take charge of the publique treaſure, whether it came out of their *Aerarium*, for the pay of the Armie; or otherwiſe was taken from the enemy.

Of him the ſouldiers receiued their ſtipend, both in corne and money: and what other bootie was taken frō the enemy, he either kept them, or ſold them, for the vſe of the Common-weale.

The Legates were not choſen by the people, but appointed by the Senate, as Aſsiſtants and Coadiutors to the Emperour, for the publique ſeruice, & vvere altogether directed by the Generall, in whoſe abſence they had the abſolute commaund: and their number was for the moſt part vncertaine; but proportioned according to the number of legions in the Armie.

CHAP. VI.

Cæſar maketh a bridge vpon the Rhene, and *carieth his Armie ouer into* Germanie.

THE Germane warre beeing thus ended: Cæſar thought it neceſſarie, to tranſport his Armie ouer the Rhene into the Continent of Germanie, for many cauſes: whereof this was not the leaſt, that ſeeing the Germans were ſo eaſily perſwaded, to bring their Colonies, & their vagrant multitudes into Gallia, he thought it good to make known vnto them, that the Romaine people could at their pleaſure, carie their forces ouer the Rhene into Germanie. Moreouer, thoſe troupes of horſe, vvhich were abſent at the late ouerthrowe of the Germanes, vvere fledde into the confines of the Sicambri; to vvhom, vvhen Cæſar ſent Meſſengers to demaund them to be ſent vnto him, they aunſwered, that the Romaine Empire vvas limited by the Rhene: & if the Germaines vvere interdicted Gallia, vvhy ſhould Cæſar challenge anie authoritie in their quarters? Laſtlie, the Vbij, vvho amongſt all the reſt of the Germaines, had onelie accepted of Cæſars friendſhippe, and giuen pledges of their fidelitie, had made earneſt ſute vnto him, to ſend them aide againſt the Sueui; or at the leaſt, to tranſport his Army ouer the Rhene: for, the name and opinion of the Roman Army was ſo great, & of ſuch fame, what with Ariouiſtus ouerthrow, &

749b Edmondes. Sir C.

this laſt ſeruice, that it ſounded honorable amongſt the furtheſt Nations of Germany. For theſe reaſons, Cæſar reſolued to paſſe the Rhene: but to carie his Armie ouer by boate, was neither ſafe, nor for the maieſtie of the people of Rome. And, albeit it ſeemed a matter of great difficultie, by reaſon of the breadth, ſwiftneſſe, and depth of the riuer, to make a bridge: yet hee reſolued to try what he could doe; otherwiſe, hee determined not to paſſe ouer at all: and ſo hee built a bridge after this manner.

At two foote diſtance, he placed two trees of a foot and halfe ſquare, ſharpned at the lower end, and cut anſwerable to the depth of the riuer: theſe hee let downe into the water with engines, and droue them in with commaunders, not perpendicularly, after the faſhion of a pile, but gable-wiſe, and bending with the courſe of the water: oppoſite vnto theſe, he placed two other trees, ioyned together after the ſame faſhion, being fortie foote diſtant from the former, by the dimenſion between their lower parts in the bottome of the water, and reclining againſt the courſe of the riuer. Theſe two paire of couples thus placed, hee ioyned together with a beame of two foote ſquare, equall to the diſtance betweene the ſaid couples, and faſtened them at each end, on either ſide of the couples, vvith braces and pinnes: whereby the ſtrength of the worke, and nature of the frame was ſuch, that the greater the violence of the ſtreame was, and the faſter it fell vpon the timber work, the ſtronger the bridge vvas vnited in the couplings and ioynts. In like manner, he proceeded with couples, and beames, vntill the work was brought vnto the other ſide of the riuer: and then hee laid ſtraight plankes from beame to beame, and couered them with hurdles; and ſo hee made a floore to the bridge. Moreouer, on the lower ſide of the bridge, he droue down ſupporters, which being faſtened to the timber worke, did ſtrengthen the bridge againſt the force of the water; and on the vpper ſide of the bridge, at a reaſonable diſtance, he placed piles to hinder the force of trees or boates, or what elſe the enemie might caſt downe to trouble the worke: within tenne daies, that the timber beganne to be cut downe and caried, the worke was ended, and the Army tranſported. Cæſar, leauing a ſtrong guariſon at either end of the bridge, went into the confines of the Sicambri.

OBSERVATION.

IT ſhall not be amiſſe, to enter a little into the conſideration of this bridge; as wel in regard of the ingenious Architecture thereof, as alſo that we may ſomewhat imitate Cæſar: whom wee may obſerue to inſiſt with as great plenty of wit and eloquence, in preſenting vnto vs the ſubtiltie of his inuention, in ſuch manner of handy works, as vpon any other part of his actions; as this particular deſcription of the bridge, may ſufficiently witneſs: beſides, the fortifications at Aleſia, & the intrenchments in Britany, for the ſafety of his ſhipping, with many other works, which he might well record, as the greateſt deſſignes of an heroick ſpirit, and the wonderfull effects of magnanimous induſtrie, that ſucceeding ages might not boaſt either of Arte or proweſſe, which his vertue had not expreſſed; or otherwiſe might wonder

wonder at that worth, which they themſelues could not attaine vnto. And to that purpoſe, he entertained Vitruuius, the Father of Architecture, and as worthily to be imitated in that facultie, as his Maiſter Cæſar is in feates of Armes. By whoſe example, a great Commaunder may learne, how much it importeth the eternitie of his fame, to beautifie his greateſt deſſignes with Art, and to eſteeme of ſuch as are able to intreat the Mathematicall Muſes, to ſhew theſelues vnder the ſhape of a ſenſible forme; which albeit, through the rudeneſſe of the matter, fall farre ſhort of the truth of their intellectuall nature, yet their beautie expreſſeth ſuch a maieſtie of Arte, that no time will ſuffer the memorie thereof to periſh.

The workmanſhip of this bridge conſiſted chiefely in the oblique ſituation of the double poſtes, whereof the firſt order bending with the ſtreame, and the lower ranke againſt the ſtreame, when they came to bee coupled together with ouerthwart beames, which were faſtened in the couplings with braces, which he nameth *Fibulas*; the more violent the ſtreame fell vpon the work, the faſter the ioynts of the building were vnited, as may better appeare by a modell of that making, then can be expreſſed by any circumſtance of words.

I might hence take occaſion to ſpeake of the diuerſitie of bridges, and of the practices which antiquitie hath deuiſed, to tranſport Armies ouer Riuers: but inaſmuch as it is a common ſubiect for all that vndertake this Militarie task, & hath been handled by Lipſius, vpon the occaſion of this bridge; I will refer the Reader to that place; and onely note the ſingular diſpoſition of this action, inaſmuch as Cæſar made the meanes correſpondent to that end which hee intended. For, conſidering that the chiefeſt end of his paſſage was, to let the Germans vnderſtand, that the power of the Romaine Empire, was not bounded with the Rhene; and that a riuer could not ſo ſeparate their territories, but that they were able to ioyne both the Continents together, and make a common roade way, where it ſeemed moſt vnpaſſable: hee thought it beſt to paſſe ouer his Armie by a bridge, that ſo the Germaines might knowe the power of his forces, and alſo conceit their Territories, as vnited vnto Gallia; or to be vnited at the pleaſure of the Romans, with a firme Iſthmus and plaine paſſage by foote, which in times paſt had alwaies been ſeparated by a mightie riuer. Neither would a tranſportation by boat haue wrought that effect, foraſmuch as the daily vſe thereof was ſo familiar to the Germaines, that it nothing altered their imagination, of an vnacceſſible paſſage: but when they ſaw ſo ſtrange a thing attempted, & ſo ſuddainely performed, they would eaſily vnderſtand, that they were not ſo farre off, but that they might bee ouertaken: and ſo direct their demeanour accordingly. *Lib. de Machi.*

Let this ſuffice therefore to proue, that a paſſage ouer a riuer by a bridge, is more honourable, ſafe, and of greater terror to the enemy, then any other way that can be deuiſed; eſpecially, if the riuer carrie any depth, ſuch as the Rhene is: otherwiſe, if it haue either ſhallowes or foordes, whereby men may wade ouer, without any great incombrance, it were but loſt labour to ſtand about a bridge; but rather to thinke of it, as of a place incombred with ſuch hindrances, as men often meet with a march.

749b Edmondes. Sir C.

CHAP. VII.

Cæsar taketh reuenge vpon the Sicambri: giueth *libertie to the Vbij; and returneth a-* gaine into Gallia.

Cæsar.

THE Sicambri, vnderstanding that Cæsar vvas making a bridge ouer the Rhene, prepared themselues to flie; and at the perswasion of the Vsipetes, forsooke their country, and conuaied themselues and their possessions into woods and solitarie Deserts. Cæsar, continuing a few daies in their quarters, hauing set on fire their villages and houses, and burned vp their Corne and prouision; he came to the Vbij, promising them aide against the Sueui: by whom, he vnderstood, that as soone as the Sueui had intelligence, that hee went about to make a bridge, calling a Councell, according to their manner, they sent vnto all quarters of their State, that they should forsake their townes, and carie their wiues and children, and all that they had, into the woods: and that all that were able to beare Armes, should make head in one place, which they appointed to be the midst of their Country; & there they attended the comming of the Romans, & were resolued in that place to giue thē battell. Which when Cæsar vnderstood, hauing ended all those things, in regard vvhereof he came into Germanie, vvhich was chiefely to terrifie the Germans, to be reuenged vpon the Sicambri, to set the Vbij at libertie; hauing spent in all eighteene daies beyond the Rhene, as well in regard of his own honor, as the good of the Common-vveale: hee returned into Gallia, and brake vp the bridge.

CHAP. VIII.

Cæsar thinketh of a voiage into Britanie: hee en- *quireth of Merchants, concerning the na-* ture of that people.

Cæsar.

ALthough the Sommer was almost spent, & that in those parts the winter hastened on apace, inasmuch as all Gallia inclineth to the North; notwithstanding, hee resolued to goe ouer into Britanie: forasmuch as hee vnderstood, that in all the former warres of Gallia, the Enemy had receiued most of their supplie from thence. And, although the time of the yeere vvould not suffer him to finish that warre; yet hee thought it would bee to good purpose, if he went onely to view the Iland, to vnderstand the qualitie of the inhabitants,

inhabitants, and to know their Coaſt, their Ports, & their landing places; wher-of the Galles were altogether ignorant: for, ſildome any man but Marchants did trauell vnto them. Neither was there any thing diſcouered but the Sea-coaſt, & thoſe Regions vvhich were oppoſite vnto Gallia. And therefore, calling Marchants together from all quarters, he neither could vnderſtand of what quantity the Iland was, what Nations, or of vvhat power they vvere that inhabited it; vvhat vſe or experience of warre they had; what lawes or cuſtomes they vſed; nor what Hauens they had to receiue a Nauie of great ſhipping.

OBSERVATION.

AS the Germans had oftentimes ſtirred vp motions of rebellion amongſt the Galles, by ſending their ſuperfluous multitudes into their kingdome; ſo the Britaines had vpheld moſt of their warres, by furniſhing them with ſuch ſupplies, as from time to time they ſtood in need of. So that if Cæſar, or the Romane people, would reſt ſecure of their quiet and peaceable gouernment in Gallia, as they had chaſtiſed the inſolencie of the Germans, and ſent them backe againe, with greater loſſe then gaine; ſo was it neceſſary to make the Britaines knowe, that their aſſiſtance in the warre of Gallia, would draw more buſineſſes vpon them, then they were well able to manage. For, as I haue noted in my former diſcourſes, the cauſes of an vnpeaceable gouernment, are as well externall and forraine, as internall, and bred in the bodie; which neede the helpe of a Phyſician, to continue the body in a perfect ſtate of health, and require as great a diligence to qualifie their malicious operations, as any internall ſickneſſe whatſoeuer.

In the ſecond Commentarie, I briefely touched the commoditie of good diſcouerie: but becauſe it is a matter of great conſequence, in the fortunate cariage of a warre, I will once againe by this example of Cæſar, remember a Generall not to be negligent in this dutie. Suetonius, in the life of our Cæſar reporteth, that he neuer vndertooke any expedition, but he firſt receiued true intelligence of the particular ſite and nature of the Country, as alſo of the manners and qualitie of the people: and that he would not vndertake the voiage into Britanie, vntill hee had made perfect diſcouerie by himſelfe, of the magnitude and ſituation of the Iland. Which Suetonius might vnderſtand by this firſt voyage, which Cæſar would needs vndertake in the later end of a Sommer, although it were as he himſelfe ſaith, but to diſcouer.

It is recorded by ancient Writers, that thoſe demi-gods that gouerned the world in their time, gaue great honour to the exerciſe of hunting, as the perfect image of warre in the reſemblance of all parts; and namely, in the diſcouerie and knowledge of a Country: without which, all enterpriſes, either of ſport in hunting, or earneſt in warres, were friuolous and of no effect. And therefore Xenophon in the life of Cyrus, ſheweth, that his expedition againſt the King of Armenia, was nothing but a repetition of ſuch ſports, as hee had vſed in hunting. Howſoeuer, if the infinite examples regiſtred in hiſtorie, how by the

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

dexterity of ſome Leaders it hath gained great victories, and through the negligence of others, irrecouerable ouerthrowes, are not ſufficient motiues to perſwade them to this duty: let their owne experience in matters of ſmall moment, manifeſt the weakneſs of their proceedings, whē they are ignorant of the chiefeſt circumſtances of the matter they haue in hand. But let this ſuffice in the ſecond place, to proue the neceſſity of good diſcouerie; and let vs learn of Cæſar, what is principally to bee inquired after in the diſcouery of an vnknowen country; as firſt, the quantity of the land: ſecondly, what Nations inhabite it: thirdly, their vſe of warre: fourthly, their ciuill gouernment: and laſtly, what Hauens they had to receiue a Nauie of great ſhipping. All which circumſtances, are ſuch principall Arteries in the bodie of a State, that the diſcouery of any one of theſe demands, would haue giuen great light, concerning the motion of the whole body.

CHAP. IX.

Cæſar ſendeth C. Voluſenus, to diſcouer the coaſt *of Britanie; and prepareth himſelfe for* that voiage.

Cæſar. Teroanne, or Monſtrell.

CAESAR ſent out Caius Voluſenus, with a Galley, to diſcouer what he could concerning theſe things; and to returne againe vnto him very ſpeedily: hee himſelfe marched in the meane time, with all his forces, vnto the Morini; for aſmuch as from thence, lay the ſhorteſt cut into Britanie. Thither hee commaunded that ſhippes ſhould be brought from all the maritimate Cities of that quarter, and namely that fleet, which hee had built the yeere before for the warre at Vannes. In the meane time, his reſolution beeing knowne, and caried into Britanie by Merchants and others, many priuate States of that Iland ſent Embaſſadours vnto him, promiſing him hoſtages of their loyaltie, and ſignifying their readineſſe to ſubmit themſelues to the Romaine Empire. To theſe he made liberall promiſes, exhorting them to continue in that obedience; and ſo ſent them backe againe. And with them he ſent Comius, whom he had made King of Arras, whoſe wiſedome & vertue he held in good account, and knew it to be of great authoritie in thoſe Regions. To him hee gaue in charge to goe to as many of the States as hee could, and perſwade them to accept of the friendſhippe of the Romaine Empire, and that Cæſar himſelfe would preſentlie follow after.

Voluſenus, hauing taken what view of the Country he could (for, he durſt not goe on ſhore to commit himſelfe to the barbariſme of the enemy) after fiue daies returned to Cæſar: and while hee ſtaied in thoſe places, for the furniſhing of his fleet, the Morini ſent Meſſengers vnto him, excuſing their former faultes, and manifeſting their readineſſe to obey his mandates.

Cæſar,

Cæsar, not willing to leaue any enemie behind him, or to neglect his voyage into Britanie, for such small matters; hee willingly accepted of their submission, hauing first receiued many hostages of them, and hauing made readie eighty ships of burthen, which he thought sufficient to transport two legions, he diuided the Galleies to the Questor, the Legates, and the Commaunders of the horse. There were also eighteene ships of burthen more, which lay wind-bound at a Port eight miles off, and them he appointed for the horsemen. The rest of the Army, he committed to Q. Titurius Sabinus, and L. Arunculeius Cotta, commaunding them to goe to the confines of Menapij: and appointed P. Sulp. Rufus, a Legate, to keep the Port, with a sufficient guarizon.

CHAP. X.

Cæsar saileth into Britanie, and landeth his men.

THese things beeing thus dispatched; hauing a good wind, in the third watch, he put out to Sea, commaunding his horsmen to imbarke themselues at the further Port; which was but slowely performed: He himselfe arriued vpon the coast about the fourth houre of the day, where hee found all the Clifts possessed with the forces of the enemy. The nature of the place was such, that the hills lay so steep ouer the sea, that a weapon might easily be cast, from the higher ground vpon the lower shore: and therefore he thought it no fit landing place; notwithstanding, hee cast anchor vntill the rest of the Nauie were come vp vnto him. Cæsar.

In the meane time, calling a Councell of the Legates and Tribunes, hee declared vnto them what aduertisements he had receiued by Volusenus, and told them what he would haue done; and withall, admonished them, that the course of Militarie affaires, and especially Sea matters, that had so suddaine & vnconstant a motion, required all things to be done at a beck, and in due time. The Councell beeing dismissed, hauing both wind and tide with him, hee waighed anchor, and sailed eight miles from that place, vnto a plaine and open shore.

The Britaines, perceiuing the Romans determination, sent their horse & chariots before, and the rest of their forces followed after, to the place vvhere the Romaines intended to land. Cæsar found it exceeding difficult to land his men, for these respects: the shippes were so great, that they could not be brought neere vnto the shore; the souldiers in strange & vnknowne places, hauing their hands laden with great and heauie weapons, were at one instant to goe out of the ship, to withstand the force of the billow, and to fight with the enemy; vvhere-as the Britaines either standing vpon the shore, or making short sallies into the vvater, did boldly cast their weapons in knowne and frequented places, and managed their horses, as accustomed to such seruices.

The

749lb Edmondes, Sir C.

The Romans beeing terrified with theſe things, and altogether vnskilfull of this kind of fight, did vſe the ſame courage as they were wont to doe in land-ſeruices. Which whē Cæſar perceiued, he cauſed the Galleies, that were both ſtrange to the Britaines, and readier for vſe, to be remoued from the ſhippes of burthen, and to be rowed vp and downe, and laid againſt the open ſide of the enemy; that from thence, with ſlings, engines and arrowes, the Enemy might bee beaten vp from the water ſide; which ſtood the Romans in good ſtead: for, the Britains, being troubled with the ſtrangeneſſe of the Galleies, the motion of their Oares, and the vnuſuall kind of engines; were ſomewhat diſmaied, and beganne to retire backe, and giue way to the Romans. But the ſouldiers ſtill lingering, and eſpecially for feare of the depth of the ſea, the Eagle-bearer of the tenth legion, deſiring the Gods, that it might fall out happily to the legion: If you will, ſaith hee, forſake your Eagle, O yee ſouldiers, and betray it to the enemy; for mine owne part, I will doe my dutie, both to the Common-weale, and to my Imperator. And hauing ſpoken this with a loud voice, he caſt himſelfe into the Sea, and caried the Eagle toward the Enemy. The Romaines, exhorting one another, not to ſuffer ſuch a dishonour to be committed, they all leaped out of the ſhippe: which when others that were neere at hand perceiued, they followed them with as great alacritie, and preſſed towards the enemie to incounter with them.

The fight on both parts was very eager: the Romans (not being able to keepe any order of battell, nor to get any firme footing, nor to follow their Enſignes, forasmuch as euery man kept with thoſe Enſignes which he firſt met withall) vvere wonderfully troubled. But the Enemy, acquainted with the flats and ſhallowes, as they beheld them from the ſhore to come ſingle out of their ſhippes, putting ſpurres to their horſe, would ſet vpon them incombred and vnprepared, & many of them would ouer-lay a few: others, would get the aduantage of the open ſide, and caſt their weapons amongſt the thickeſt troupes of them. Which when Cæſar perceiued, he cauſed the ſhipboates and ſmaller veſſels to be manned with ſouldiers: and where he ſaw need of help, hee ſent them to reſcue ſuch as were ouercharged.

As ſoone as the Romaines got footing on the firme land, they made head togegether, and charged the enemy, and ſo put them to flight; but they were not able to follow them, nor take the Iland at that time, for want of horſemen, which thing was onely wanting to Cæſars fortune.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

VPon this circumſtance of landing, I may iuſtly take occaſion to handle that controuerſie, which hath beene often debated by our Engliſh Captaines, which is, whether it be better in queſtion of an inuaſion, & in the abſence of our ſhipping, to oppoſe an enemy at his landing vpon our Coaſt; or quietly to ſuffer him to ſette his men on ſhore, and retire our forces into ſome in-land place, & there attend to giue him battell? It ſeemeth that ſuch as firſt ſet this queſtion on foot, and were of an opinion,

on, that we ought not by any means to encounter an enemy at his landing; for, ſo we might much endanger our ſelues and our Country; did ground themſelues vpon the authority of Monſieur de Langey, not obſeruing the difference between an Iland and a Continent. For, where he ſetteth downe that poſition, he plainly aimeth at ſuch Princes, as border one vpon another in the ſame Cõtinent: but where their territories are disioyned by ſo great a bar as the Ocean, and haue not ſuch meanes to ſurpriſe one another, it were meere folly to hold good that rule, as ſhall better appeare by the ſequell of this diſcourſe. Wherein I will firſt lay downe the reaſons, that may be vrged to proue it vnſafe to oppoſe an enemy at his landing, not as beeing vrged by that party (for, I neuer heard any probable motiue from them, which might induce any ſuch opinion) but ſet downe by ſuch as haue looked into the controuerſies, both with experience, and good iudgement.

And firſt, it may be obiected, that it is a hard matter to reſiſt an enemy at his landing, as well in regard of the vncertaintie of place, as of time: for, beeing ignorant in what place hee will attempt a landing, wee muſt either defend all places of acceſſe, or our intentions will proue meere friuolous; & to performe that, it is requiſite that our defenſiue forces be ſufficient, according to the particular qualitie of euery place ſubiect to danger: which, conſidering the large extenſion of our maritimate parts, and the many landing places on our Coaſt, will require a greater number of men, then this Iland can afford. And although it could furniſh ſuch a competent number, as might ſeeme in ſome ſort ſufficient; yet the vncertaintie of the time of the enemies arriuall, would require that they ſhould be lodged, either vpon, or neere the places of danger, many daies at leaſt, if not many weekes, before the inſtant of their attempt, which would exhauſt a greater maſſe of Treaſure, then could bee well affoorded by the State.

Secondly, it may bee obiected, that all our landing places are of ſuch diſaduantage for the defendants, that it were no ſafetie at all to make head againſt him at the landing: for, inaſmuch as ſuch places are open & plaine, they yield no commoditie to ſhelter the defendants from the furie of the artillerie, wherwith the Enemy will plentifully furniſh their long boates and landing veſſailes; which beating vpon the beach (for, moſt of our landing places are of that qualitie) will ſo ſcatter them, that no man ſhall be able to indure the inconuenience thereof.

The third obiection, may ariſe from the diſparitie both of numbers, and condition of the forces of either partie: for the firſt, it muſt needs bee granted, that the defendants, beeing to guard ſo many places at once, cannot furniſh ſuch numbers to euery particular place for defence, as the aſſailants may for offence.

Concerning the qualitie of the forces, it is without queſtion, that a great & potent Prince (for, ſuch a one it muſt be, that vndertaketh to inuade the territories of ſo abſolute and well obeied a Princeſſe as her Maieſtie is) would draw out the floure of his ſoulderie whereſoeuer; beſides, the gallant troupes of voluntaries, which doe commonlie attend ſuch ſeruices. Now, theſe being thus qualified,

749b Edmondes, Sir C.

qualified, and drawne into one head, and being to make as it were but one bodie: how can it be reasonably imagined (the time and place of their attempt beeing vncertaine) that the defendants should equall them with forces of like vertue and experience?

These are the reasons, which may be drawne from the disaduantage, which they haue that goe about to oppose an enemy at his landing: the rest that haue beene vrged, by such as maintaine this opinion, are either impertinent to the question, or taken altogether from false grounds. But before I proceed to the aunswere of these reasons, I will lay this downe for a principle: That it is impossible for any forraine Prince, how puissant soeuer, to make such a preparation as shal be fitting, to inuade a State so populous, and respective of their Soueraigne (notwithstanding the pretences deuised to dissemble the same) but it must of necessitie be discouered, before it can be made able to put any thing in execution: which I might enlarge by particularizing the infinite equipage, which is required for so great a fleet. But I will rest my selfe in the example of the yeere 88, which proueth the discouery of the pretended inuasion, before it could come to execution.

Answere to the first obiection.

Concerning therefore the first obiection: it cannot indeed be denied, but the place of the enemies landing will be doubtfull, and therefore our care must generally extend it selfe to all places of accesse: but that our defensiue forces are not sufficient in a competent manner to guard all such places, according as the necessitie of them shall require, that is the point in question.

To proue that our forces are sufficient: we must necessarily enter into particularities, wherin I will take Kent for a president, as not altogether vnacquainted with the state thereof; which, if I deceiue not my selfe, is a shore of as large extension vpon the maritimate parts, as any other within this kingdom. For the breadth thereof enlarging it selfe from the point of Nesse by Lyd, which is the vttermost skirt vpon the coast of Sussex, vnto Margate, vpon the coast of Essex; is by computation about twentie foure miles: but notwithstanding this large circuit, who knoweth not, that the sixt part thereof is not subiect to the landing of such an enemy as wee speake of: partly, in regard of the hugenesse of the cliffes, which doe inclose a great part of that skirt; & partly in regard that much of that quantitie, which may be landed vpon, hath such eminent and difficult places neere adioyning, as an Armie that should put it selfe there on shore, should find it selfe, beeing opposed but by a small force, so straitened, as they would not easily find a way out, without apparant ruine of their whole forces.

Further, it cannot be denied, but that generally along the coast of Kent, there are so many rocks, shelues, flats, and other impediments, that a Nauie of great shippes can haue no commoditie to anchor neere the shore: and for the most part, the coast lieth so open to the weather, that the least gale of wind will put them from their Anchor: all which particularities duly considered, it will appeare that this large skirt of Kent, will afford a far lesser part fit for the landing of an Armv, then was thought of at the first. And were it that so publique a treatise as this is, would admit with good discretion such an exact relation, as falleth within my knowledge cõcerning this point, I would vndertake to make

it

it ſo euident, by the particular deſcription, both of the number, quantitie, and qualitie of the places themſelues, as no man of an indifferent iudgement, wold imagine our forces to be inſufficient, to afford euery of them ſuch a ſafe & ſure guard, as ſhal be thought requiſite for the ſame. But foraſmuch as it is vnfitting to giue ſuch particular ſatisfaction in this publique diſcourſe, giue mee leaue, ſubmitting my ſelfe alwaies to better iudgements, to giue a generall taſte of that meanes as would ſecure all places, with a competent number of men.

Hauing ſhewed you before, the circuit of the maritimate parts of Kent, I would obſerue this order: firſt, to make a triple diuiſion of all ſuch forces, as ſhal be appointed for this ſeruice; as for example, I will ſuppoſe the number to bee twelue thouſand, of which I would lodge three thouſand about the point of Neſſe, and three thouſand about Margate, and ſixe thouſand about Foulkſton, which I take to be as it were the center: for, my greateſt care ſhould bee ſo to diſpoſe of them, as they might not only ſuccour one another in the ſame ſhire: but as euery ſhire bordereth one vpon another; ſo they ſhould mutually giue helpe one vnto another, as occaſion ſhould be offered: as if the enemy ſhould attempt a landing about Neſſe, not onely the ſixe thouſand lodged as before, ſhould march to their ſuccours, but ſuch alſo of the Suſſex forces as were neer vnto that part; & ſo likewiſe of the reſt. By which you may ſee, how great a force wold in few houres be aſſembled, for the renforcing of any of theſe out-skirts; and the rather, foraſmuch as the one halfe of the whole forces, are thus lodged in the center of the Shire, which is neerer to all parts thē any other place whatſoeuer. There would alſo in the quartering of them, an eſpeciall care be had to the places of danger, as might be anſwerable to the importance thereof: for, my meaning is not to lodge them cloſe together, but to ſtretch them out along the coaſt, by regiments and companies, as the Country might afford beſt opportunitie to entertaine them.

Now, concerning the later part of this obiection, which vrgeth the vncertaintie of time, when the enemy ſhall make his approches: I hold it moſt requiſite, that our defenſiue forces ſhould be drawne into a head, before the enemie ſhould be diſcouered neer our coaſt, ready to put himſelfe on ſhore: for, it were a groſſe abſurditie to imagine, that companies could vpon ſuch a ſuddaine bee aſſembled, without confuſion; and make ſo long a march, with ſuch expedition, as the neceſſitie of the occaſion would requite. Now, for that husbanding reſpect of her Maieſties coffers, which is vrged to ſuch extreamitie, as it would be vnſupportable for this State to beare: as I doubt not but good intelligence would much qualifie that ſuppoſed immoderate expence; ſo I aſſure my ſelfe, that men of ſound iudgement, will deeme it much out of ſeaſon to diſpute about vnneceſſary thrift, when the whole kingdome is brought in queſtion of beeing made ſubiect to a ſtranger:

Vt iugulent homines ſurgunt de nocte latrones:
Non expergiſceris, vt te ipſum ſerues?

The enemy (peraduenture) hath kept 30000 men in pay 2 months before, to make hauocke of our Country, and to bring vs into perpetuall thraldome; ſhall

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

ſhall we thinke it much to maintaine ſufficient forces vpon our Coaſt, to aſſure our ſelues that no ſuch enemy ſhall enter into our Country? The extreamitie of this charge, would be qualified by our good eſpial, which would proportion our attendance, with the neceſſitie which is impoſed vpon vs, to be carefull in buſineſſes of this nature. Let this ſuffice therefore to proue, that our forces are ſufficient to keepe the Sea-coaſt; and that the vncertaintie of time, when the enemy will make his attempts, ought not to hinder vs from performing that dutie, which the care and reſpect of our Prince and Country, impoſeth vpon euery good ſubiect; which is the ſubſtance of the firſt reaſon, which I ſet down in the beginning of this diſcourſe.

The anſwere to the ſecond reaſon.

Now, concerning the ſecond reaſon, which vrgeth the diſaduantage of the place, in regard of the furie of the Enemies artillery. True it is, that ſuch places as yeeld the Enemy commoditie of landing, are for the moſt part plaine and open, and afford naturally no couert at all. What then? ſhall a ſouldier take euery place as he findeth it, and vſe no Arte to qualifie the diſaduantages thereof? Or ſhall a man forgoe the benefit of a place of aduantage, rather then hee will relieue with induſtry, the diſcommoditie of ſome particular circumſtance? I make no queſtion, but an ingenious Commaunder, being in ſeaſonable time lodged with conuenient forces vpon any of thoſe places, yea, vpon the beach it ſelfe, which is vnapt to make defenſible, as any place whatſoeuer, would vſe ſuch induſtrie, as might giue ſufficient ſecuritie to his forces, & ouer-weigh the Enemie with aduantage of place; eſpecially, conſidering that this age hath affoorded ſuch plentifull examples of admirable inuentions in that behalfe. But this cannot be done, if our forces do not make head before the inſtant of the Enemies attempt, that our Commaunders may haue ſome time to make readie ſtore of Gabions, hand-baskets, with ſuch moueable matter as ſhal be thought fit for that ſeruice.

Neither let this trouble any man: for, I dare auouch it, that if our forces are not drawne into a head before the Enemie bee diſcouered vpon the Coaſt, although wee neuer meane to oppoſe their landing, but attend them in ſome inland place, to giue them battaile; our Commaunders will be farre to ſeeke of manie important circumſtances, which are requiſite in a matter of that conſequence. And therefore, let vs haue but a reaſonable time to bethinke our ſelues of theſe neceſſaries, and wee will eaſilie ouercome all theſe difficulties, and vſe the benefite of the firme land to repell an Enemie, weakened with the Sea, toſſed with the billow, troubled with his weapons, with many other hinderances and diſcouragements, which are preſented vnto him both from the Land and the Sea. Hee that ſaw the landing of our forces in the Iland of Fiall, in the yeere 97, can ſome-what iudge of the difficultie of that matter: for, what with the working of the Sea, the ſteepneſſe of the Cliffes, the troubleſomneſſe of their Armes, the ſouldiers were ſo incombred, that had not the Enemy been more then a coward, he might well with two hundred men, haue kept vs from entering any part of that Iland.

The anſwere to the 3 reaſō

Concerning the third Obiection, this briefely ſhall bee ſufficient, that vvee are not ſo much to regard, that our forces doe equall them in number, as

as to see that they bee sufficient for the nature of the place, to make it good against the Enemies landing: for, wee know that in places of aduantage and difficult accesse, a small number is able to oppose a great; and wee doubt not, but all circumstances duely considered, wee shall proportionably equall the Enemie, both in number and qualitie of their forces: alwaies presupposed, that our State shall neuer bee destitute of sufficient forces trayned, and exercised in a competent manner, to defende their Contrey from forraine Enemies. For, the neglect thereof were to drawe on such as of themselues are but too forwarde to make a prey of vs; and to make vs vnapt, not onelie to oppose an Enemies landing, but to defende our selues from beeing ouerrunne, as other Nations liuing in securitie, without due regarde thereof, haue beene.

And this much concerning the answere to those three reasons, which seeme to prooue that an Enemie is not to be resisted at his landing. Now if wee doe but looke a little into the discommodities, which follow vpon the landing of an Enemy, we shall easily discouer the dangerousnesse of this opinion: as first, we giue him leave to liue vpon the spoile of our Countrey; which cannot bee preuented by any wasting, spoiling, or retiring of our prouisions, in so plentifull a Country as this is, especially considering that we haue no strong townes at all to repose our selues vpon. Whereof we need no further testimonie, then is deliuered vnto vs out of the seuenth booke of these Commentaries, in that warre, which Cæsar had with Vercingetorix.

Secondly obedience, which at other times is willingly giuen to Princes, is greatly weakned at such times; wherby all necessary means to maintain a war is hardly drawn frō the subiect. Thirdly, opportunity is giuen to malecontents & ill disposed persons, either to make head themselues, or to flie to the Enemy Fourthly, the madnesse to aduenture a kingdome vpon one stroke, hauing it in our disposition to do otherwise, with many other disaduantages, which the opportunity of any such occasion would discouer.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

Of the name Imperator.

THE word Imperator, which the Eagle-bearer attributeth to Cæsar, was the greatest title that could be giuen to a Romane Leader: and as Zonaras in his second Tome saith, was neuer giuen but vpon some great exploit, and after a iust victory obtained; and then in the place where the battaile was fought, and the Enemy ouerthrowne, the Generall was saluted by the name of Imperator, with the triumphant shout of the whole Armie; by which acclamation, the souldiers gaue testimonie of his worth; and made it equiualent with the most furtunate Commanders.

This Ceremonie was of great antiquitie in the Roman Empire, as appeareth by manie Histories, and namely by Tacitus, where hee sayth, that Tyberius gaue that honour to Blesus, that hee should bee saluted Imperator by 3. *Annal.*

749b Edmondes, Sir C.

the legions; which hee ſheweth to bee an ancient dignitie belonging to great Captaines, after they had foiled the Enemy, with an eminent ouerthrow. For, euerie victorie was not ſufficient, whereby they might chalenge ſo great an honour, but there was required (as it ſeemeth) a certaine number of the Enemies to be ſlaine. Appian in his ſecond book ſayth, that in olde time the name of Imperator was neuer taken, but vpon great and admirable exploites: but in his time 10000. of the Enemie being ſlaine in one battell, was a ſufficient ground of that honour. Cicero ſayth, that 2000. ſlaine in the place, eſpecially of Thracians, Spaniards or Galles, did worthily merit the name of Imperator. Howſoeuer; it ſeemeth by the ſame Author, that there was a certaine number of the Enemy required to be ſlaine, where he ſayth, *Se iuſta victoria Imperatorem appellatum.*

Phil. 14.

Lib. 2. *epiſt.* 9

CHAP. XI.

The Britaines make peace with Cæſar, but breake it againe vpon the loſſe of the Roman ſhipping.

Cæſar.

THe Britaines being ouerthrowne in this battaile; aſſoone as they had recouered their ſafety by flight, they preſẽtly diſpatched meſſengers to Cæſar to intreat for peace, promiſing hoſtages & obedience, in whatſoeuer he commanded. And with theſe Ambaſſadors returned Comius of Arras, whom Cæſar had ſent before into Britany. Cæſar complained, that whereas they ſent vnto him into Gallia to deſire peace, notwithſtanding at his comming they made war againſt him, without any cauſe or reaſon at all; but excuſing it by their ignorance, hee commanded hoſtages to be deliuered vnto him: which they preſently performed in part; and the reſt being to be fet further off, ſhould likewiſe bee rendered within a ſhort time; in the meane while, they commaunded their people to returne to their poſſeſsions, and their Rulers and Princes came out of all quarters to commend themſelues and their States to Cæſar. The peace being thus concluded; foure daies after that Cæſar came into Britanie, the 18. *ſhips which were appointed for the horſemen, put out to ſea with a gentle wind: and approaching ſo neere the coaſt of Britanie, that they were within viewe of the Roman Camp; there aroſe ſuch a ſodaine tempeſt, that none of them were able to holde their courſe, but ſome of them returned to the port from whence they came; otherſome were caſt vpon the lower part of the Iland, which lieth to the Weſt-ward; and there caſting anchor tooke in ſuch ſeas, that they were forced to commit themſelues againe to the ſea, and direct their courſe to the coaſt of Gallia. The ſame night it happened, that the moone being in the full, the tides were very high in thoſe ſeas; whereof the Romans beeing altogether ignorant, both the Gallies which were drawne vp vpon the ſhoare were filled with the tide, and the ſhippes of burthen that lay at anchour, were ſhaken with the tem-*

tempeſt: neither was there any help to be giuen vnto them: ſo that many of them were rent, and ſplit in peeces; and the reſt loſt both their anchors, gables and other tackling, and by that meanes became altogether vnſeruiceable. Wherat the whole Army was exceedingly troubled; for there was no other ſhipping to recarry them backe againe: Neither had they any neceſſaries to new furniſh the olde: and euery man knew that they muſt needs winter in Gallia; foraſmuch as there was no prouiſion of corn in thoſe places where they were. Which thing being knowen to the Princes of Britanie, that were aſſembled to conferre of ſuch things as Cæſar had commanded them to perform; when they vnderſtood that the Romans wanted both their horſemen, ſhipping and prouiſion of corn, and coniecturing of the paucity of their forces, by the ſmall circuit of their Campe; and that which was more important then all the reſt, that Cæſar had tranſported his ſouldiers without ſuch neceſſary cariages, as they vſed to take with them: they thought it their beſt courſe to rebell, and to keepe the Romans from corne and conuoyes of prouiſion, and ſo prolong the matter, vntill winter came on. For, they thought that if theſe were once ouerthrown and cut off from turning into Gallia, neuer any man would afterward aduenture to bring an Army into Britanie: therfore they conſpired againe the ſecond time, and conuaied themſelues by ſtealth out of the Camp, and got their men priuily out of the fields, to make head in ſome conuenient place againſt the Romans.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

COncerning the ebbing and flowing of the ſea, and the cauſes therof; it hath already been handled in the ſecond book: to which I wil adde this much, as may ſerue to ſhew, how the Romans became ſo ignorant of the ſpring tides, which happen in the full and newe of the Moone. It is obſerued by experience, that the motion of this waterie element is altogether directed by the courſe of the moon; wherin ſhe exerciſeth her regency, according as ſhee findeth the matter qualified for her influence. And foraſmuch as al mediterranean ſeas, & ſuch gulfs as are incloſed in ſinues and boſomes of the earth, are both abbridged of the liberty of their courſe, and through the ſmallneſs of their quantity, are not ſo capable of celeſtiall power, as the Ocean it ſelfe: it conſequently followeth, that the Tuskane ſeas, wherwith the Romans were chiefly acquainted, were not ſo anſwerable in effect to the operation of the moon, as the main ſea, whoſe bounds are ranged in a more ſpacious circuit; and through the plentious aboundance of his parts, better anſwereth the vertue of the Moon. The Ocean therfore being thus obedient to the courſe of the celeſtial bodies, taking hir courſe of flowing frō the North, falleth with ſuch a current between the Orcades, and the maine of Noruegia; that ſhe filleth our channell between England and France, with great ſwelling tides; & maketh her motion more eminent in theſe quarters, then in any other parts of the world. And hence it happeneth, that our riuer of Thames, lying with her mouth ſo ready to receiue the tyde as it commeth, and hauing withall a plaine

Edmondes, Sir C. 749b

leuelled belly, and a very ſmal freſh current, taketh the tide as far into the land, as any other known riuer of Europe. And for this cauſe the Romans were ignorant of the ſpring tides in the full of the moon.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

SVch as either by their own experience, or otherwiſe by obſeruation of that which hiſtory recordeth, are acquainted with the gouernment of Common weales, are not ignorant with what difficultie a nation, that either hath long liued in libertie, or bin gouernd by Cõmanders of their owne chooſing, is made ſubiect to the yoak of bondage, or reduced vnder the obedience of a ſtranger. For, as we are apt by a naturall inclination to ciuill ſociety; ſo by the ſame nature wee deſire a free diſpoſition of our ſelues and poſſeſſions; as the chiefeſt end of the ſaide ſocietie: and therefore in the gouernment of a ſubdued State, what loſſe or diſaduantage happeneth to the Victor, or how indirectly ſoeuer it concerneth the bond of their thraldom, the captiue people behold it as a part of their aduerſaries ouerthrow; and conceiue thereupon ſuch ſpirits as anſwere the greatneſs of their hope, and ſort with the ſtrength of their will, which alwaies maketh that ſeem eaſie to be effected which it deſireth And this was the reaſon that the Britains altered their reſolution of peace, vpon the loſſe which the Romans had receiued in their ſhipping.

CHAP. XII.

Cæſar new trimmeth his late ſhaken nauie: the Britaines ſet vpon the Romans as they haruеſted; but were put off by CÆSAR.

Cæſar.

CAeſar although hee had not diſcouered their determination, yet coniecturing of the euent by the loſſe of his ſhipping, and by their delay of giuing vp hoſtages; hee prouided againſt all chaunces: for, hee brought corne daily out of the fieldes into his Campe; and tooke the hulls of ſuch ſhippes as were moſt diſmembred, and with the timber and braſſe therof he mended the reſt that were beaten with the tempeſt, cauſing other neceſſaries to bee brought out of Gallia. Which being handled with the great induſtry and trauell of the Souldiers, he loſt onely twelue ſhips, and made the other able to abide the Sea.

While theſe things were in action, the ſeuenth legion being ſent out by courſe, to fetch in corne, and little ſuſpecting any motion of warre; as part of the ſouldiers continued in the field, and the reſt went and came between them & the Campe; the

the ſtation that watched before the gate of the Camp, gaue aduertiſement to Cæſar, that the ſame way which the legion went, there appeared a greater duſt then was vſually ſeen. Cæſar ſuſpecting that which indeed was true, that the Britains were entred into ſom new reſolution, he tooke thoſe two cohorts which were in ſtation before the port, commanding other two to take their place, and the reſt to arm themſelues, and preſently to follow him, and went that way, where the duſt was deſcried. And when he had marched ſome diſtance from the Camp, he ſaw his men ouercharged with the Enemy, & ſcarce able to ſuſtaine the aſſault, the legion thronged together on a heap, & weapons caſt from al parts amongſt them. For, when they had harneſted all other quarters, ther remained one piece of torn, whither the Enemie ſuſpected the Romans would at laſt come; and in the night time conuaied themſelues ſecretly into the woods, where they continued vntill the Romans were come into the field: and as they ſawe them diſarmed, diſperſed and occupied in reaping; they ſuddenly ſet vpon them, and ſlaying ſome fewe of them, rowted the reſt and incompaſſed them about with their horſemen, and Chariots. Their manner of fight with Chariots, was firſt to ride vp and down & caſt their weapons, as they ſawe aduantage; and with the terror of their horſes and rattling of their wheeles, to diſorder the companies; and when they had wound themſelues between any troups of horſe, they forſook their Chariots and fought on foot: in the mean time, the guiders of their chariots would driue a little aſide, & ſo place themſelues, that if their maſters needed any helpe, they might haue an eaſie paſſage vnto them. And thus they performed, in al their fights, both the nimble motion of horſemen, and the firme ſtability of footmen; and were ſo ready with daily practice, that they could ſtaie in the decliuity of a ſteep hill, and turne ſhort or moderate their going, as it ſeemed beſt vnto them; and run along the beam of the coach and reſt vpon the yoak, or harneſſe of their horſes, and return as ſpeedily again at their pleaſure. The Romans being thus troubled, Cæſar came to reſcue them in very good time: for, at his comming, the Enemy ſtood ſtill; and the ſoldiers gathered their ſpirits vnto them, and began to renew their courage that was almoſt ſpent. Cæſar taking it an vnfit time, either to prouoke the Enemy, or to giue him battel; he continued a while in the ſame place: and then returned with the legions into the Camp. While theſe things were a-doing, and the Romans thus buſied, the Britains that were in the field, conuaied themſelues al away.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

BY this we plainly find, that there were vſually two cohorts (which according to the rate of 120. in a maniple, amounted to the number of 720. men) which kept the daie watch before the gate of the Camp, & were alwaies in readineſs vpon any ſeruice. The commoditie whereof appeareth by this accident: for, conſidering that the aduertiſemēt required haſte and ſpeedy recourſe; it greatly furthered their reſcue, to haue ſo many men ready to march forwarde at the firſt motion, that they might giue what helpe they could, vntill the reſt of their fellowes came in.

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THeir manner of fight with Chariots, is very particularly deſcribed by Cæſar, and needeth not to be ſtood vpon any longer: only I obſerue that neither in Gallia, nor any other country of Europ, the vſe of Chariots is euer mentioned: but they haue euer beene attributed, as a peculiar fight, vnto the Eaſterne Countries, as ſutable to the plain and leuell ſituation of the place, whereof we finde often mention in the ſcripture: which may ſerue for an argument to Geffrey of Monmouth, to proue the Britaines deſcent from Troy in Aſia, where we likewiſe finde mention of ſuch Chariots.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THirdly, wee may obſerue the diſcreet and moderate temper of his valour, and the meanes hee vſed to make his ſouldiers confident in his directions: for, notwithſtanding the Britaines had exceedingly vrged him, to make hazard of a preſent reuenge; yet finding it an vnfit time, (inaſmuch as his men had beene ſomewhat troubled, with the furie of the Britains) he thought it beſt to expect ſome other opportunitie. And againe, to auoid the inconueniences of a fearefull retrait, hee continued a while in the ſame place, to imbolden his men with the ſight of the Enemie. And this manner of proceeding wrought a full perſwaſion in his ſoldiers, that his actions were directed with knowledge, and with a carefull reſpect of their ſafetie: which gaue his men reſolution when they were carried vpon ſeruice; being aſſured that what ſeruice ſoeuer they were imploied vpon, was moſt diligently to be performed, as a matter much importing the fortunate iſſue of that warre: wheras if they had perceiued, that headſtrong fury (which carrieth men on with a deſire of victorie, and neuer looketh into the meanes whereby it may bee obtained) had directed the courſe of their proceedings, they might with reaſon haue drawn back from ſuch imployments, and valued their ſafety aboue the iſſue of ſuch an enterpriſe. And hence ariſeth that confident opinion, which the ſoldiers haue of a good Generall; which is a matter of great importance in the courſe of warre.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

The Britaines make head, with their forces; and *are beaten by Cæsar: his returne into* GALLIA.

Caesar.

AFter this; for manie dayes together, there followed such tempests and foule weather, that both the Romans were constrained to keepe their Campe, and the Britaines were kept from attempting any thing against them: But in the meane time, they sent messengers into all quarters, publishing the smal number of the Roman forces, & amplifying the greatnesse of the booty, & the easie means offered vnto them of perpetuall liberty, if they could take the Roman Campe. Shortly, vpon this, hauing gathered a great companie, both of horse and foot; they came to the place where the Romans were incamped. Cæsar (although he foresawe the euent by that which before had hapned, that if the Enemie were beaten back, he would auoid the danger by flight) yet hauing som 30. horse, which Comius of Arras had carried with him, at his comming into Britany; he imbattailed his legions before his Camp; & so gaue them battel. The Enemy not being able to beare the assault of the Roman soldiers, turned their backs & fled: the Romans followed them, as far as they could by running on foote; and after a great slaughter, with the burning of their towns farre and neere, they returned to their Camp. The same day the Britains sent messengers to Cæsar, to intreat for peace; whom he commanded to double their number of hostages, which he commanded to be carried into Gallia. And forasmuch as the Aequinoctium was at hand; he thought it not safe to put himselfe to the winter sea, with such weake shipping: and therefore hauing got a conuenient time, he hoised saile a little after midnight, and brought all his ships safe vnto the Continent. Two of these ships of burthen, not beeing able to reach the same hauen, put in somewhat lower into the land: the souldiers that were in them being about 300. being set on shore, and marching towardes their Camp; the Morini, with whom Cæsar at his going into Britany had made peace, in hope of a booty, first with a fewe of their men stood about them, commanding them vpon paine of death to laie downe their weapons: & as the Romans by casting themselues into an Orbe, began to make defence, at the noise and clamour amongst them, there were suddenly gathered together about 6000. of the Enemy. Which thing being knowen, Cæsar sent out all the horsemen to relieue them: in the meane time the Romans sustained the force of the Enemie, and fought valiantly the space of foure houres; and receiuing themselues some few wounds, they slew many of the Enemy. After the Roman horsemen came in sight, the Enemie cast awaie their weapons and fled, and a great number of them fell by the horsemen.

749 b
Edmondes, Sir C.

OBSERVATION.

OF al the figures which the *Tactici* haue choſen to make vſe of in military affairs; the circle hath euer been taken for the fitteſt, to be applied in the defenſiue part, as incloſing with an equall circuit on all parts whatſoeuer is contained within the circumference of that Area: and therefore Geometrie tearmeth a circumference a ſimple line, foraſmuch as if you alter the ſite of the parts, and tranſport one arch into the place of another; the figure notwithſtanding will remaine the ſame, becauſe of the equal bending of the line, throughout the whole circumference. Which propertie, as it proueth an vniformity of ſtrength in the whole circuit, ſo that it cannot be ſaid that this is the beginning, or this is the end; this is front, or this is flank: So doth that, which Euclide doth demonſtrate in the 3. of his Elements, concerning the ſmal affinity between a right line, and a circle (which being drawen to touch the circumference, doth touch it but in a point only) ſhew the greatneſs of this ſtrength in regarde of any other line, by which it may be broken. Which, howſoeuer they ſeem, as ſpeculatiue qualities, conceiued rather by intellectuall diſcourſe, then manifeſted to ſenſible apprehenſion; yet foraſmuch as experience hath proued the ſtrength of this figure, in a defenſiue part, aboue any other manner of imbattailing; let vs not neglect the knowledge of theſe naturall properties, which diſcouer the cauſes of this effect: neither let vs neglect this part of militarie knowledge, being ſo ſtrong a means to maintain valour, & the ſinew of al our abilitie: for, order correſpondent to circumſtances is the whole ſtrength and power of an Army. Neither ought there any action in a well ordered diſcipline, to be irregular, or voide of order: and therefore the Romans did neither eat nor ſleep, without the direction of the Conſull, or chief Commander; otherwiſe their valour might rather haue been tearmed fury then vertue: but when their courage was ranged with order, and diſpoſed according to the occurrences of the time; it neuer failed as long as the ſaide order continued perfect.

It appeareth therefore, how important it is for a Commander to look into the diuerſity of orders for imbattailing, and to waigh the nature therof; that he may with knowledge apply them to the quality of any occaſion. The Romans tearmed this figure, *Orbis*; which ſignifieth a round body both with a concaue, and a conuex ſurface: in reſemblance whereof, I vnderſtand this Orbe of men imbattailed to be ſo named; which might peraduenture conſiſt of fiue, or more, or fewer ranks, incloſing one another after the nature of ſo many circles, deſcribed about one Center: ſo that either the middeſt thereof remained voide, or otherwiſe contained ſuch cariages, and impediments, as they had with them in their march. This form of imbattailing was neuer vſed, but in great extreamitie: for, as it was the ſafeſt of all others; ſo it gaue ſuſpicion to the ſoldiers of exceeding danger: which abated much of their heat in battel, as will hereafter appeare by the teſtimony of Cæſar himſelf, in the fift Commentarie, vpon the occaſion which happened vnto Sabinus and Cotta.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

THe next daie, Cæſar ſent Titus Labienus a Legate, with thoſe legions which he had brought out of Britany, againſt the reuolted Morini; who hauing no place of refuge becauſe their bogs & fennes were dried vp, where they had ſheltred themſelues the yeare before; they al fel vnder the power of his mercy. Q. Iturius, & A. Cotta the Legats, who had led the legiõs againſt the Menapij, after they had waſted their fields, cut vp their corn, burned their houſes (for, the Menapij were all hid in thicke woods) they returned to Cæſar: theſe things being thus ended, Cæſar placed the wintering Camps of al his legions amõgſt the Belgæ; to which place two only of all the Cities in Britany, ſent hoſtages vnto him: the reſt neglecting it. Theſe wars being thus ended: vpon the relatiõ of Cæſars letters, the ſenat decreed a ſupplicatiõ for the ſpace of 20. daies. Cæſar.

OBSERVATION.

IN the end of the ſecond Commentary, we read of a ſupplication granted by the Senat, for 15. daies; which was neuer granted to anie man before that time, ſince the firſt building of the Citie: but foraſmuch as in this fourth yeare of the wars in Gallia, it was augmented from 15. vnto 20. daies, I thought it fit to refer the handling therof, vnto this place. We are therfore to vnderſtand, that whenſoeuer a Roman Generall had carried himſelf well in the wars, by gaining a victory, or enlarging the boundes of their Empire: that then the Senate did decree a ſupplication to the gods, in the name of that Captain. And this dignity was much ſought after: not onely becauſe it was a matter of great honour, that in their names the Temples of their gods ſhould be opened, and their victories acknowledged, with the concourſe & gratulation of the Roman people; but alſo becauſe a ſupplication was commonly the forerunner of a triumph, which was the greateſt honor in the Roman gouernment. And therfore Cato nameth it the prerogatiue of a triumph. And Liuie in his 26. book ſaith, that it was long diſputed on in the Senate, how they could deny one that was there preſent to triumph, whoſe abſence they had honoured, with ſupplication, & thankſgiuing to the gods, for things happily effected. The manner of the Ceremonie was; that after the Magiſtrate had publikely proclaimed it with this form or ſtile, *quòd bene & feliciter rempublicam adminiſtraſſet*; the Roman people cloathed in white garments & crowned with garlands, went to all the Temples of the gods, and there offered ſacrifices, to gratulate the victory in the name of the General. In which time they were forbidden all other buſineſſes, but that which pertained to this ſolemnity. It ſeemeth that this time of ſupplicatiõ, was at firſt included within one or 2. daies at the moſt. as appeareth by Liuie in his third book, where he ſaith, that the victorie gained by two ſeuerall battells, was ſpitefully ſhut vp by the Senat in one daies ſupplication; the people of their own accord keeping the next day holy, & celebrating it with greater deuotion then the former. *Li. 15. fam. Cicero.*

Vpon

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

Vpon the victory which Camillus had againſt the Veij, there were granted foure daies of ſupplication; to which there was afterward a daie added, which was the vſuall time of ſupplication vnto the time that Pompei ended the warre, which they called Mithridaticum; when the vſual time of fiue daies was doubled, and made 10. and in the ſecond of theſe Commentaries, made 15. and now brought to 20. daies. Which ſetteth forth the incitements and rewards of wel doing, which the Romans propounded both at home and abroad, to ſuch as indeuoured to inlarge their Empire, or manage a charge, to the benefit of their Common-wealths. And thus endeth the fourth Commentarie.

THE

THE FIFT COMMENTARY OF THE WARRE, WHICH CÆSAR MADE IN GALLIA.

THE ARGVMENT.

Cæsar caused a great nauy to be built in Gallia: he caried 5. legions into Britany, where he made war with the Britains, on both sides the riuer Thames: at his returne into Gallia, most of the Galles reuolted; and first the Eburones, vnder the conduction of Ambiorix, set vpon the Camp of Q. Titurius the Legate, whom they circumuented by subtilty; and then besieged the Camp of Cicero: but were put by, and their Army ouerthrowen by Cæsar.

CHAP. I.

Cæsar returneth into Gallia: findeth there great *store of shipping made by the souldiers, and commaundeth* them to be brought to the hauen Iccius.

VCius Domitius, and Appius Claudius, being Consuls; Cæsar at his going into Italy, gaue order to the Legats to builde as many ships that winter, as possibly they could; commanding them to be built of a lower pitch then those which are vsed in the mediterranean sea, for the speedier lading & vnlading of them, and because the tides in these seas were very great: and forasmuch as he was to transport great store of horse, he commanded them to be made flatter in the bottome then such as were vsuall in other places, and all of them to be made for the vse of Oares, to which purpose their lowe building serued very conueniently. Other necessaries and furniture for rigging, he gaue order to haue it brought out of Spain. Cæsar after the assembly of the States in Lombardy, and that he set free Illiricum from the incursions of the Pirusta, he returned into Gallia; where he found 600. ships built, by the extraordinarie industry of the soldiers, notwithstanding the penurie and want of all necessary matter, with 28 Gallies ready furnished, which in a few daies might be lanched: hauing commended the soldiers and ouerseers of the work, he commanded them to be brought to the port called Iccius, from whence he knew the passage into Britany, was not aboue thirty mile ouer. Cæsar.

THE

749lb
Edmondes, Sir C.

THE OBSERVATION.

THis Iccius Portus, Floide thinketh to bee Caleis; others take it to bee Saint Omer: partly in regarde of the ſituation of the place, which being in it ſelfe very lowe, hath notwithſtanding very high banks, which incompaſſe the towne about; and in times paſt was a very large hauen. To this may be added the diſtance from this towne, to the next Continent of the Iland of Britany; which Strabo maketh to containe 320. ſtadia, which agreetht o the French computation of 13. leages. Cæſar maketh it thirty mile: this is the hauen, which Pliny calleth *Britannicum portum Morinorum.*

CHAP. II.

Cæſar ſaileth into Britanie: landeth his forces, and ſeeketh the Enemie.

Cæſar.

CAeſar hauing prepared all things in readineſſe, he left Labienus in the Continent with three legions, & 2000. horſe, both to keep the hauen & make prouiſion of corne; and alſo to obſerue the motion of the Galles: and with 5. legions & the like number of horſe, as he left in the Continent, about ſun-ſetting he put out to ſea, with a ſoft ſouth wind, which continued vntill midnight; and then ceaſing he was carried with the tide vntill the morning; when, he perceiued that the Iland laie on his left hand: and again, as the tide chãged, he laboured by rowing to reach that part of the Iland, where hee had found good landing the yeare before: wherin the ſoldiers deſerued great cõmendation; for, by ſtrength & force of Oares, they made their great ſhips of burthen to keepe waie with the Galleies. About high noon, they arriued in Britany, with all their ſhips: neither was there any Enemy ſeene in that place: but as afterward Cæſar vnderſtood by the Captiues, the Britains were there with a great power; but being terrified with the infinit number of ſhipping, which they diſcouered from the ſhore (for there were in al aboue 800) they forſook the ſhore, & hid themſelues in the vpland country. Cæſar hauing landed his men, and choſen a conuenient place to incamp, aſſoon as he vnderſtood by the captiues where the enemy laie, in the 3. watch of the night, he marched towards them; leauing ten cohorts & 300. horſe for a guariſon to his ſhipping: which he the leſſe feared, becauſe it lay at anchour in a ſoft & open ſhore: he marched that night about 12. mile before he found the Enemy. The Britains ſending out their horſe, and chariots to a riuer that ran betweene them & the Romans, and hauing the aduantage of the vpper ground; began to hinder the Romans and to giue them battell: but being beaten backe with our horſemen, they conuaied thẽſelues into a wood. The place was ſtrongly fortified both by Art and Nature, and made for a defence (as it ſeemeth) in their ciuill warres:

wars: for, all the entrances were ſhut vp with great trees, laid ouerthwart the paſſages. And the Britaines ſhewed themſelues out of the wood but heere and there, not ſuffering the Romans to enter the fortification: but the ſouldiers of the 7 legion, with a Teſtudo which they made, and a mount which they raiſed, tooke the place, and draue them all out of the woods, without any loſſe at all; ſauing ſome fewe wounds which they receiued. But Cæſar forbade his men to follow after them, with any long purſute, becauſe he was both ignorant of the place, and a great part of that day being ſpent, he would imploy the reſt thereof in the fortification of his Campe.

OBSERVATION.

CAeſar, hauing taken what aſſurance of peace hee could with the Galles, both by carrying the chiefeſt of their Princes with him, and by leauing three legions in the Continent, to keep the vulgar people in obedience; he imbarked all his men at one place, that they might be all partakers of the ſame caſualties, and take the benefit of the ſame aduentures: which beeing neglected the yeere before, drew him into many inconueniences for want of horſe, which being imbarked at another Hauen, met with other chances, & ſaw other fortunes; & neuer came to him into Britanie. The place of landing in this ſecond voyage, was the ſame where he landed the yeer before: & by the circumſtances of this hiſtory, may agree with that which tradition hath deliuered of Deale in Kent, where it is ſaid that Cæſar landed. In the firſt yeere we find, that he neuer remooued his Campe from the ſea ſhore, where he firſt ſeated himſelfe; although his men went out to bring in Corne, as far as they might wel returne again at night: but now he entered further into the Iland, and within twelue miles march came vnto a riuer, which muſt needs be that of Canterbury, which falleth into the Sea at Sandwich.

In that he ſaith that the guarizon of his ſhipping conſiſted of tenne cohorts, which I haue ſaid to be a legion: we muſt vnderſtand, that Cæſar left not an entire legion in that guarizon; but he tooke tenne cohorts out of his whole forces, peraduenture two out of euery legion, and appointed them to take the charge of his ſhipping.

CHAP. III.

Cæſar returneth to his Nauies, to take order for *ſuch loſſes as had happened by tempeſt* the night before.

THE next day, earlie in the morning, hee deuided his forces into three companies, and ſent them out to purſue the enemie: but before they had marched any farre diſtance, and came to haue the rereward of the Enemie in viewe; there came newes from Q. Atrius, vvith Cæſar.

Q. whom

749b
Edmondes, Sir C.

whom he left the ten cohorts, & the charge of the ſhipping, that the night before, there was ſuch a tempeſt at ſea, that the whole Nauie was either ſore beaten, or caſt on ſhore; and that neither anchor nor gable could hold them, nor yet the Sailers indure the force of the weather: and that there vvas great loſſe in the ſhipping, by running againſt one another, in the violence of the tempeſt.

Vpon theſe newes; Cæſar cauſed the legions to be called backe againe, and to ceaſe for that time, from following the enemie any further. Hee himſelfe returned to the Nauy, where he found forty ſhips loſt, and the reſt, not to be repaired, but with great induſtry and paines: firſt, therefore, he choſe Ship-wrightes and Carpenters out of the legions, and cauſed others to be ſent for out of Gallia, and wrote to Labienus to make ready what ſhipping he could. And although it ſeemed a matter of great difficulty & much labour, yet hee thought it beſt, to hale vp all the ſhips on ſhore, and to incloſe them vvithin the fortification of his Campe. In this buſineſſe he ſpent ten daies, without intermiſsion either of night or day, vntill he had drawne vp the ſhippes, and ſtrongly fortified the Campe; leauing the ſame guarriſon which was there before, to defend it.

THE OBSERVATION.

WHerein we may behold the true image of vndanted valour, and the horrible induſtry (as Tully tearmeth it) which hee vſed to preuent Fortune of her ſtroke in his buſineſs, and comprehend caſualties and future cõtingents, within the compaſſe of order, & the bounds of his owne power, beeing able in tenne daies ſpace, to ſet almoſt eight hundred ſhippes from the hazard of wind and weather; & to make his Campe the Roade for his Nauie, that ſo hee might reſt ſecure of a meanes to returne at his pleaſure.

CHAP. IIII.

The *Britaines* make Caſsiuellaunus Generall in *this warre: the Iland, and the manners of the* people deſcribed.

Cæſar.

CAESAR, returning to the place from whence he came, found far greater forces of the Britaines there aſſembled, then he left when he went to the Nauie: and that by publique conſent of the Britaines, the whole gouernment of that warre vvas giuen to Caſsiuellaunus, whoſe kingdome lay diuided from the maritimate States, with the riuer Thames, beginning at the ſea, & extending it ſelfe foureſcore mile into the Iland. This Caſsiuellaunus, made continuall warre vvith his neighbour States: but vpon the comming of the Romaines, they all forgot their home-bred quarrels, and caſt the whole gouernment vpon his ſhoulders, as the fitteſt to direct that warre.

The

The inner part of Britanie is inhabited, by ſuch as memorie recordeth to bee borne in the Iland, and the maritimate coaſt by ſuch as came out of Belgia, either to make incurſions or inuaſions; and after the war was ended, they continued in the poſſeſsions they had gained, and were called by the name of the Citties from whence they came. The Country is very populous, and well inhabited with houſes, much like vnto them in Gallia. They haue great ſtore of cattell, & vſe braſſe for money, or iron rings, weighed at a certaine rate. In the Mediterranean parts, there is found great quantity of Tyn, and in the maritimate parts, iron: their braſſe was brought in by other Nations. They haue all ſorts of trees that they haue in Gallia, excepting the Fig and the Beech. Their religion will not ſuffer them to eate either Hare, Hen, or Gooſe; notwithſtanding, they haue of all ſorts, as well for noueltie as varietie. The Country is more temperate, and not ſo cold as Gallia: the Iland lyeth triangle-wiſe, whereof one ſide confronteth Gallia, of which ſide that angle, wherin Kent is, pointeth to the Eaſt, and the other angle to the South: this ſide containeth about 500 mile. Another ſide lieth toward Spaine, and the Weſt, that way where Ireland lieth, being an Iland halfe a big as England, and as farre diſtant from it as Gallia. In the midway betweene England and Ireland, lieth an Iland called Mona, beſides many other ſmaller Ilands; of vvhich ſome write, that in Winter-time, for thirtie daies together, they haue continuall night: whereof we learned nothing by inquirie; onely we found by certain meaſures of water, that the nights in England were ſhorter thē in the Continent: the length of this ſide, according to the opinion of the inhabitants, containeth ſeauen hundred mile. The third ſide lieth to the North & the open ſea, ſauing that this angle doth ſomewhat point towards Germanie: this ſide is thought to containe eight hundred miles; and ſo the whole Iland containeth in circuit 2000 miles. Of all the inhabitants, they of Kent are moſt curteous and ciuill; all their Countrey bordering vpon the ſea, & little differing from the faſhion of Gallia. Moſt of the in-land people ſowe no Corne, but liue with milke and fleſh, clothed with skinnes, & hauing their faces painted with a blew colour, to the end they may ſeeme more terrible in fight: they haue the haire of their head long, hauing all other parts of their body ſhauen, ſauing their vpper lip. Their wiues are common to tenne or twelue, eſpecially, brethren with brethren, and parents with children; but the children that are borne, are put vnto them, vnto whom the mother was firſt giuen in mariage.

OBSERVATION.

IN the deſcriptions of the ancient Britains, we may firſt obſerue their pedegree, according to the Haraldry of that time: wherein we muſt vnderſtand, that in thoſe ages, the Nations of the world thought it no ſmall honour, to deriue their deſcent from a certaine beginning, and to make either ſome of their Gods, or ſome man of famous memorie, the Father of that progenie, and founder of their State; that ſo they might promiſe a fortunate continuance to their gouernment, beeing firſt laid and eſtabliſhed by ſo powerfull a meanes. But if this failed, they then bragged of antiquitie, and caſt all their glory vpon the fertility of their ſoile, being ſo ſtrong and fruit-

749b

full, that it yeelded of it ſelfe ſuch a people, as they were: and ſo wee read how the Athenians, foraſmuch as they were ignorant frō whence they came, ware an Oaken leafe, in token that they were bred of the earth where they dwelled. And heereupon alſo grew the controuerſie betweene the Egyptians and the Scythians, concerning antiquitie: wherin the Egyptians ſeemed to haue great aduantage, becauſe of the fertilitie and heat of their country; whereas the Scythians inhabited a cold climate, vnfruitfull, and an enemy to generation. Of this ſort were the Britaines, that inhabited the mediterranean part of the Iland: who, not knowing from whence they came, nor who firſt brought them thither, ſatisfied themſelues with that common receiued opinion, that they were borne and bred of the earth. The ſea-coaſt was poſſeſt by ſuch as came out of the Continent, and retained the names of the Citties from whence they came, as a memoriall of their progenitors.

The forme of the Iland is very well deſcribed, and meaſured out, according to the ſcale of our moderne Geographers. For, concerning the difference of longitude betweene the Eaſterne angle of Kent, & the furtheſt point of Cornewall, they make it eight degrees; which in a manner iumpeth with Cæſars dimenſuration: the other ſides are ſomewhat longer: and therefore Tacitus, in the life of Aricola, compareth it to a Carpenters Axe, making that ſide which bordereth vpon France to reſemble the edge, and the other two ſides to incline by little and little, one towards another; and ſo make the Iland narrower at the top, according to the forme of that inſtrument. Hee ſetteth downe the whole compaſſe of the Iland, according to the manner of the ancient Geographers; who by the quantitie of the circuit, did vſually iudge of the content: not conſidering that the *Area* of euery figure dependeth as well of the quantitie of the angle, as the length of the ſide.

Concerning the temperature of Britanie, in regard of the cold Winters in France, we muſt vnderſtand that Britanie hath euer been found of a more temperate conſtitution, in regard of ſharp and cold winters, then any other countrie lying vnder the ſame parallell: whether the cauſe thereof may be imputed to the continuall motion of the ſea about the Iland, which begetteth heate, as ſome haue imagined; or to the ſite therof, in regard of other Continents from whence the wind alwaies riſeth, and carieth with it the nature of the Country by which it paſſeth: and ſo the Iland hauing no other Continent lying North to it, from whence the wind may riſe, but all for the moſt part vpon the South, hath no ſuch cold windes to diſtemper it, as other parts of Germanie, which are vnder the ſame parallell: but the Southerne wind, which is ſo frequent in Britanie, tempereth the ayre with a mild diſpoſition, and ſo keepeth it warme; or whether it be ſome other vnknowne cauſe, our Philoſophers reſt vnſatisfied. But as touching Gallia, it may be ſaid, that foraſmuch as it beareth more to the South then this Iland doth, the aire thereof (by reaſon of the continuall heat) is of a farre purer diſpoſition; and ſo pierceth more then this groſſer aire of Britanie, and carieth the cold further into the pores; and ſo ſeemeth ſharper, and of a farre colder diſpoſition.

This Iland, which Cæſar nameth *Mona*, is known at this time by the name of

Man,

Man, and lieth between Cumberland and Ireland. Ptolemy calleth it *Monæda*. Tacitus calleth Angleſey by the name of *Mona*, peraduenture from the nomination of the Britaines, who called it *Tyr mon*, the land of Mon.

Concerning thoſe places, where the night continueth in the midſt of winter for 30 daies together, they muſt be ſited *6.* degrees beyond the circle Articke, and haue a day in ſummer of like continuance, according to the rules of Aſtronomy. In that he found the nights in Britanie ſhorter then in the Continent, we muſt vnderſtand it to be onely in ſummer: for, the more oblique the horizon is, the more vneuen are the portions of the diurnall circles which it cutteth; and the neerer it commeth to a right horizon, the neerer it commeth to an equality of day and night: and hence it happeneth, that in ſummer time, the nights in France, are longer then heere in England; and in winter, ſhorter. The like we muſt vnderſtand of all Southerne and Northerne Countries.

To conclude, I may not omit the ciuilitie of the Kentiſh men, and their curteous diſpoſition, aboue the reſt of the Britains, which muſt be imputed to that ordinary courſe which brought ciuility vnto all other Nations: of whom ſuch as were firſt ſeated in their poſſeſsions, and entertained ſocietie, were the firſt that brought in ciuill conuerſation, and by little and little were purified, and ſo attained to the perfection of ciuill gouernment. So we find, that firſt Aſſyrians and Babilonians (as neereſt to the Mountaines of Armenia where the Ark reſted, and people firſt inhabited) reduced their States into Common-weales of Monarchies of exquiſite gouernment, floriſhing with all manner of learning and knowledge; when as yet other Countries lay either waſte, or ouerwhelmed with Barbariſme. From thence it flowed into Egypt; out of Egypt into Greece; out of Greece into Italie; out of Italie into Gallia; and from thence into England: where our Kentiſhmen firſt entertained it, as bordering vpon Fraunce; and frequented with Marchants of thoſe Countries.

CHAP. V.

Diuers skirmiſhes between the Romans and the Britaines.

THE Caualrie of the enemy and their chariots, gaue a ſharpe conflict to the Romaine horſemen, in their march: but ſo, that the Romaines got the better euery way, driuing them with great ſlaughter to the woods and hills, and looſing alſo ſome of their owne men, beeing too venturous in the purſuit. The Britaines, after ſome intermiſſion of time, vvhen the Romaines little thought of them, and vvere buſied in fortifying their Campe, came ſuddainely out of the woods, and charged vpon thoſe that kept ſtation before the Campe. Cæſar ſent out two the chiefeſt cohorts of two legions, to ſecond their fellowes. Theſe tvvo cohorts, ſtanding vvith a ſmall alley betweene them, the other that vvere firſt charged, beeing terrified Cæſar.

749b

vvith that ſtrange kind of fight, boldly brake through the thickeſt of the enemie, and ſo retired in ſafetie to their fellowes. That day, Quintus Laberius Durus, a Tribune of the ſouldiers, was ſlaine. The Britaines were repelled with moe cohorts, which Cæſar ſent to ſecond the former. And, foraſmuch as the fight happened in the view of all the Campe, it was plainly perceiued, that the legionarie ſouldiers, beeing neither able for the weight of their Armour, to follow the enemie as he retired, nor yet daring to goe farre from his Enſigne: was not a fitte aduerſarie to conteſt this kind of enemy: and that the horſemen likewiſe fought with no leſſe danger, inaſmuch as the enemy would retire backe of purpoſe, and when they had drawne them a little from the legions, they would then light from their Chariots, and incounter them, with that aduantage which is betweene a footman and a horſeman. Furthermore, they neuer fought thicke and cloſe together, but thin, and in great diſtances, hauing ſtations of men to ſuccour one another, to receiue the wearie, and to ſend out freſh ſupplies.

OBSERVATION.

VPon this occaſion of their heauie Armour, I will deſcribe a legionarie ſouldiour in his compleat furniture, that we may better iudge of their manner of warfare, and vnderſtand wherein their greateſt ſtrength conſiſted. And firſt we are to learne, that their legionarie ſouldiers were called *Milites grauis armaturæ*, ſouldiers wearing heauy Armour, to diſtinguiſh them from the Velites, the Archers, Slingers, and other light armed men. Their offenſiue Armes were a couple of Piles, or as ſome will, but one Pile, and a Spaniſh ſword, ſhort and ſtrong, to ſtrike rather with the point then with the edge. Their defenſiue Armes were, a helmet, a corſlet, and boots of braſſe, with a large Target; which in ſome ſort was offenſiue, in regard of that *vmbonem* which ſtuck out in the midſt thereof. The Pile is deſcribed at large in the firſt booke, and the Target in the ſecond. The ſword, as Polybius witneſſeth, was ſhort, two edged, very ſharpe, and of a ſtrong point: and therfore Liuie, in his 22 booke, ſaith, that The Galles vſed very long ſwords without points; but the Romaines had ſhort ſwords, readier for vſe: theſe they called Spaniſh ſwords, becauſe they borrowed that faſhion from the Spaniard. The old Romaines were ſo girt with their ſwords, as appeareth by Polybius, & their monuments in Marble, that from their left ſhoulder it hung vpon their right thigh, contrary to the vſe of theſe times; which, as I haue noted before, was in regard of their target, which they caried on their left arme: this ſword, was hung with a belt of leather, beſet with ſtuds, as Varro noteth, and theſe were their offenſiue weapons.

Lib. 4.

Their Helmet was of braſſe, adorned with three Oſtrich feathers, of a cubite in length; by which, the ſouldiour appeared of a larger ſtature, and more terrible to the Enemy, as Polybius ſaith in his ſixt booke. Their breaſt plate vvas either of Braſſe or Iron, ioynted together after the manner of ſcales, or plaited with little rings of Iron: their bootes were made of barres of braſſe, from the foote

Plin. lib. 10.

foote vp to the knee. And thus were the legionary ſouldiers armed, to ſtand firme, rather then to vſe any nimble motion, and to combine themſelues into a body of that ſtrength, which might not eaſily recoile, at the oppoſition of any confrontment: for, agilitie ſtandeth indifferent to helpe either a retreit or a purſuit: and nimble-footed ſouldiers, are as ready to flie back, as to march forward; but a waightie bodie, keepeth a more regular motion, and is not hindered with a common counterbuffe: ſo that whenſoeuer they came to firme buckeling, and felt the enemy ſtand ſtiffe before them, ſuch was their practice, and exerciſe in continuall works, that they neuer fainted vnder any ſuch taske, but the victorie went alwaies cleere on their ſide. But, if the enemy gaue way to their violence, and came not in but for aduantage, and then as ſpeedily retired, before the counterbuffe were well diſcharged, then did their nimbleneſſe much help their weakneſſe, and fruſtrate the greateſt part of the Romaine diſcipline. This is alſo proued, in the ouerthrowe of Sabinus and Cotta, where Ambiorix finding the inconuenience of buckling at handy blowes, commanded his men to fight afar off; and if they were aſſaulted, to giue backe, and to come on againe as they ſaw occaſion: which ſo wearied out the Romaines that they all fell vnder the execution of the Galles. Let this ſuffice therefore to ſhew, how vnapt the Romaines were to flie vpon any occaſion, when their Armour was ſuch, that it kept them from all ſtarting motions, and made them ſutable to the ſtaied and well aſſured rules of their diſcipline, which were as certaine principles in the execution of a ſtanding battaile; and therefore, not ſo fit either for a purſute, or a flight.

Concerning the vnequall combat betweene a horſeman and a footeman, it may be thought ſtrange, that a footman ſhould haue ſuch an aduantage againſt a horſeman, beeing ouermatched, at leaſt with a Sextuple proportion both of ſtrength and agilitie: but we muſt vnderſtand, that as the horſe is much ſwifter in a long cariere; ſo in ſpeedie and nimble turning at hand, wherein the ſubſtance of the combate conſiſteth, the footman farre exceedeth the horſman in aduantage; hauing a larger marke to hit by the Horſe, then the other hath. Beſides, the horſeman ingageth both his valour, & his fortune in the good ſpeed of his horſe, his wounds and his death, do conſequently pull the rider after, his feare or furie maketh his maiſter either deſperate or ſlowe of performance, and what defect ſoeuer ariſeth from the horſe, muſt be anſwered out of the honour of the rider. And ſurely, it ſeemeth reaſonable, that what thing ſoeuer draweth vs into the ſocietie of ſo great a hazard, ſhould as much as is poſſible, be contained in the compaſſe of our owne power.

The ſword which we manage with our owne hand, affoordeth greater aſſurance then the Harquebuſe, wherein there are many parts belonging to the action, as the powder, the ſtone, the ſpring, and ſuch like; whereof, if the leaſt faile of his part, we likewiſe faile of our fortune: but, how probable ſoeuer this ſeemeth, this is certaine, that in the courſe of the Romaine warres, the horſe were euer defeated by the foote, as is manifeſtly prooued in the firſt of theſe bookes.

CHAP.

749b

CHAP. VII.

Cæsar giueth the *Britaines* two *seuerall ouerthrowes.*

Cæsar.

THE next day, the Enemy made a ſtand vpon the hils afar off from the Campe, and ſhewed themſelues not ſo often; neither were they ſo buſie with our horſemen, as they were the day before: but about noone, whē Cæſar ſent out three legions, and all his Caualrie to get forrage, vnder the conduction of Caius Trebonius a Legate, they made a ſuddaine aſſault vpon the forragers, and fell in cloſe vvith the Enſignes and the legions. The Romaines charged very fiercely vpon them, & beate them backe: neither did they make an end of following them, vntill the horſmen truſting to the ſuccour of the legions which were behind them, put them all to flight, with the ſlaughter of a great number of them; neither did they giue them reſpite either to make head, to make a ſtand, or to forſake their chariots.

After this ouerthrow, all their Auxiliarie forces departed from them; neither did they afterward contend with the Romaines with any great power. Cæſar, vnderſtanding their determination, caried his Armie to the riuer Thames, and ſo to the confines of Caſsiuellaunus, which riuer was paſſable by foote but in one place onely, and that very hardly. At his comming, he found a great power of the Enemy to be imbattailed on the other ſide, and the banke fortified vvith many ſharpe ſtakes, and many other alſo were planted couertly vnder the water. Theſe things being diſcouered to the Romaines by the Captiues and fugitiues, Cæſar, putting his horſe before, cauſed the legions to follow ſuddainelie after: who notwithſtanding they had but their heads cleere aboue the water, went with that violence, that the enemie was not able to endure the charge, but left the banke, and betooke themſelues to flight.

OBSERVATION.

THis attempt of Cæſar, ſeemeth ſo ſtrange to Brancatio, that he runneth into ſtrange concluſions, concerning this matter: as firſt, that he that imitateth Cæſar, may doubt of his good fortunes: for, his proceeding in this point, was not directed by any order of war; and that a great Commaunder, hath nothing common with other Leaders: but eſpecially, he crieth out at the baſeneſſe of the Britaints, that would ſuffer themſelues ſo cowardly to be beaten. But if we looke into the circumſtances of the action, we ſhal find both Art and good direction therein: for, beeing aſſured by the fugitiues, that the riuer was paſſable in that place, and in that place onelie; he knew that he muſt either aduenture ouer there, or leaue Caſſiuellaunus for another Summer, which was a very ſtrong inducement to vrge him to that

that enterprise. The difficultie whereof, was much relieued by good direction, which consisted of two points: First, by sending ouer the horsemen in the front of the legions, who might better indure the charge of the enemie, then the footmen could, that were vp to the neck in water; and withall, to shelter the footmen from the furie of the Enemie.

Secondly, he sent them ouer with such speed, that they were on the other side of the water before the enemie could tell what they attempted: for, if hee had lingered in the seruice, and giuen the enemy leaue to find the aduantage which he had by experience, his men had neuer beene able to haue indured the hazard of so dangerous a seruice. It is hard to coniecture at the place where this seruice was performed; for, since the building of London bridge, manie foordes haue beene scoured with the current, and fall of the water, which before that time, caried not such a depth as now they doe.

CHAP. VII.

The conclusion of the *Brittish* warre: Cæsar *returneth into Gallia.*

Cassiuellaunus, hauing no courage to contend any longer, dismissed his greatest forces; and retaining onely foure thousand chariots, obserued their iourneyes, keeping the vvood Countries, and driuing men and cattell out of the fields into the woods, for feare of the Romans: & as their horse straied out either for forrage or bootie, he sent his chariots out of the woods by vnknowne waies, and put their horsemen to great perill: in regard whereof, the horsemen durst neuer aduenture further then the legions, neither was there any more spoile done in the Country, then that which the legionarie souldiers did of themselues. Cæsar.

In the meane time, the Trinobants, being almost the greatest State of all those Countries (from whom Mandubratius had fledde to Cæsar into Gallia, for that his father Imanuentius holding the kingdome, was slaine by Cassiuellaunus) sent Embassadours to Cæsar, to offer their submission, and to intreat that Mandubratius might be defended from the oppression of Cassiuellaunus, and sent vnto them to take the kingdome. Cæsar, hauing receiued from them fortie pledges, & Corne for his Armie, sent Mandubratius vnto them. The Trinobantes, beeing thus kept from the violence of the souldiers, the Cenimagni, Seguntiaci, Anacalites, Bibrocassi, yeelded themselues to Cæsar. By these he vnderstood, that Cassiuellaunus his towne was not farre off, fortified with woods and bogs, and well stored with men and cattell. The Britaines call a towne, a thicke wood, inclosed about with a ditch and a rampier, made for a place of retrait, when they stood in feare of incursions from the borderers. Thither marched Cæsar with his Army, and found it well fortified, both by Arte and Nature: and as hee assaulted it in two

749b

two ſeuerall places, the enemy vnable to keepe it, caſt himſelfe out of the towne by a backe way: and ſo he tooke it. Where he found great ſtore of cattell, and ſlew many of the Britaines.

While theſe things were a-dooing, Caſsiuellaunus ſent meſſengers into Kent, wherein there were foure ſeuerall Kings, Cingetorix, Caruilius, Taximagulus, & Segonax: them he commanded with all the power they could make, to ſette vpon the Campe where the Nauie was kept. The Kings comming to the place, vvere ouerthrowne by a ſally which the Romaines made out vpon them, many of them beeing ſlaine, and Cingetorix taken priſoner. This battell concurring with the former loſſes, and eſpetially moued therevnto with the reuolt of the forenamed Citties, Caſsiuellaunus intreated peace of Cæſar, by Comius of Arras. Cæſar, being determined to winter in the Continent, for feare of ſuddaine commotions in Gallia, and that the Summer was now farre ſpent, and might eaſilie bee lingered out, he commaunded pledges to be brought vnto him, and ſet down what yeerely tribute the Britaines ſhould pay to the Romans. The hoſtages beeing taken, hee carried backe his Armie to the ſea, imbarked his men, and arriued ſafe with all his ſhippes vpon the coaſt of Gallia.

OBSERVATION.

AND thus ended the warre in Britanie, which affordeth little matter of diſcourſe, being indeed but a ſcambling warre, as well in regard of the Britaines themſelues; who after they had felt the ſtrength of the Romane legions, would neuer aduenture to buckle with them in any ſtanding battell, as alſo in regard that there were no ſuch townes in Britanie, as are recorded to haue beene in Gallia, which might haue giuen great honour to the war, if there had been any ſuch to haue been beſieged, and taken-in by Cæſar.

And although Tacitus ſaith, that Britanie was rather viewed then ſubdued by Cæſar, beeing deſirous to draw that honour to his father in law Agricola; yet we find heere, that the Trinobantes, which were more then either the skirt, or the hart of Britanie (for, our Hiſtorians doe vnderſtand them to haue inhabited that part, which lieth as farre as Yorkſhire & Lancaſhire) were brought vnder the Romaine Empire by Cæſar: who was the firſt that euer laid tribute vpon Britanie, in the behalfe of the people of Rome; or caſt vpon them the heauie name of a ſubdued people.

TO THE WORTHY KNIGHT, SIR ROBERT DRVRIE.

(*.*)

SIR, my purpoſe was to haue concluded theſe diſcourſes, with the end of the Brittiſh warre; reſeruing the later part of this fift booke, for an entrance vnto ſuch obſeruations, as may be gathered from the ſixt & ſeauenth Commentaries, which I intend to make a ſecond part of this worke: but your deſire to ſee the errours of Sabinus and Cotta diſcouered, and the famous fight of Q. Cicero in his wintering Campe, hath brought them foorth ſomewhat before their time, annexing that to the firſt part, which was meant for the later. If my labour ſhall be found too weake to deſerue well of Militarie deſignes; yet I thinke it very well imploy'd, in that it pleaſeth you to giue it the reading, and ſo reſt

Readie to doe you ſeruice,

C. EDMVNDS.

CHAP.

749.b

CHAP. VIII.

Cæsar disposeth his legions into their wintering Campes.

Cæsar.
* Either Cãbray, Amiens or S. Quintin.

AFter he had put his ships in harbour, & held a Councell of the Galles at * Samarobrina; forasmuch as that yeere, by reason of the drought, there was some scarcitie of Corne in Gallia; he was constrained to guarizon his Armie, and to disperse them into more Citties then hee had done the yeeres before. And first, he gaue one legion to Caius Fabius, to be ledde among the Morini; another to Q. Cicero, to bee caried to the Neruÿ: another to L. Roscius, to be conducted to the Essui; a fourth he commaunded to vvinter amongst the men of Rheimes, in the marches of the Treuiri vnder T. Labienus; three he placed in Belgia, with whom he sent Marcus Crassus, his Questor, L. Munatius Planus, and C. Trebonius, Legates; he sent one legion, that which hee had last inrolled, beyond the riuer Po in Italie, with fiue cohorts, vnto the Eburones: the greatest part of whose Country, lieth between the Maze & the Rhene; with them he sent Q. Titurius Sabinus, and Lucius Arunculeius Cotta. By distributing his legions in this maner, he thought to remedie the scarcitie of corne; and yet the guarizons of all these legions, excepting that which Roscius caried into a quiet and peaceable part, were contained within the space of one hundred mile: and vntill his legions were settled, and their wintering Campes fortified, he determined to abide in Gallia.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IHaue heard it oftentimes contradicted by some, that vnderstand not the weight of a multitude, when it was said, that an Armie keeping head continually in one part of a kingdome, was more burthensome to the common-wealth, in regard of the expence of victuals, then when it was dispersed into particular citties and families, before the time of the muster and inrolement: for (say they) in the generall account of the publique weale, it differeth nothing, whether a multitude of 30000 men be maintained with necessarie prouisions in one intire body together, or dispersed particularly throughout euery part of the Country: forasmuch as euerie man hath but a competent quantitie allotted vnto him, which he cannot want in what sort or condition of life soeuer he be ranged; neither doth the charge of a multitude grow in regard they are vnited together, but in regard they amount to such a multitude whersoeuer. But such as looke into the difference with iudgement, shall finde a maruellous inequalitie, both in regard of the portion of victuals which is spent, and the meanes whereby it is prouided: for, first, we must vnderstand,

ſtand, that an Army lying continually in one place, falleth ſo heauie vpon that part, that it quickly conſumeth both the fatte and the fleſh (as they ſay) & leaueth nothing vnſpent, which that part can afford them; and without further ſupply of prouiſions, woulde in a ſmall time come to vtter deſtruction. This want then muſt be relieued by taking from the plentie of other bordering quarters, to furniſh the wants of ſo great a multitude: wherein there cannot be obſerued that proportion of moderate taking, to vittaile the Armie with a ſufficient competencie, but the partiall reſpect which the purueiers, and vittailers wil haue to their priuat commodity, will quickly make an inconuenience either in the country, from whence it is taken; or in the Armie, for which it is prouided; according as the error may beſt aduantage their particular, what diſcipline ſoeuer be eſtabliſhed in that behalfe: Whereas on the contrary part, when euerie particular man of that multitude ſhal be billetted in a ſeuerall family, throghout all parts of the kingdom, the charge wil be ſo inſenſible, in regard of the expēce of the laid families, that the countrie wil neuer feele any inconuenience. And if euery houſholder that had receiued into his houſe one of the ſaid Army, ſhould giue a true account of that which riſeth aboue his ordinary expence; by the addition of one man, it would fall far ſhort of that treaſure, which is neceſſarily required, to maintaine the ſaide number of men vnited together into one bodie.

Neither doth the difference conſiſt in the quantity of vittailes, which euery man hath for his portion, whether they be diſperſed or vnited; but in the manner of prouiſion, and the means which is vſed to maintaine them: wherin euery maſter or ſteward of a family, endeuoureth to make his prouiſion at the beſt hand, & ſo to husband it, that it may ſerue for competencie, and not for ſuperfluitie; and by that meāns, the generall plenty of the country is maintained, & the common-wealth floriſheth by well directed moderation. But in the victualling of an Army, there is no ſuch reſpect had, which may any way aduantage the publike good; for, there the gaine of the purueier riſeth by expence and ſuperfluous waſting, rather then by thrift and ſauing frugality: and ſo the common-wealth is weakened by the il husbanding of that great portion of vittaile, which is allowed for ſo great a multitude. And if they ſhould haue ſuch varietie of viands in an Armie, as they haue when they are in ſeuerall families, it were vnpoſſible it ſhould continue any tyme together. And therefore the Romanes, notwithſtanding the exactneſs of their diſcipline, could afford their Armies no other prouiſion but corne, and larde, as wel in regard of the commodity which that kinde of diet affoorded them in the courſe of their warres, as alſo for the good of that country, wherein they were reſident. And if it ſo fel out, that the extremity of the ſeaſon, or any other cauſe, had brought a dearth into the land, there was no readier way to help that inconuenience, then by diſperſing their Armies into diuers quarters; which Cæſar diſpoſed with that care, that they might be as neere together as they could.

749.b.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

CONcerning the choice of their ſouldiers and their maner of inrolement, I had rather referre the Reader to Polybius, then enter into the particular diſcourſe of that action; which was carried with ſuch grauitie and religious ceremonies, as might beſt ſerue to poſſeſſe their minds of the waight and conſequence of that buſineſſe: but foraſmuch as the largeneſſe of their Empire, and the neceſſitie of their occaſions would not admit, that the enrolement ſhould ſtill be made at Rome amongſt the citizens, as it appeareth by this legion which was inrolled beyond the riuer Po; it conſequently followeth, that ſuch Ceremonies, which were annexed to the place, were altogether omitted: and therefore I cannot ſpeake of that which the old Romanes did in that part of their diſcipline, as a thing continued vnto Cæſars time. But he that deſireth to ſee the maner of their choiſe, with ſuch cõplements as might adde both a reuerent reſpect, and a Maieſtie to the work; let him read Polybius of that argument.

CHAP. IX.

Ambiorix attempteth to ſurpriſe the Campe of *Sabinus and Cotta*; *and failing, practiſeth* to take them by guile.

Cæſar. *IFteene daies after the legions were ſettled in their wintering Camps, there began a ſudden tumult and rebellion by the meanes of Ambiorix, and Catiuuculus, who hauing receiued Sabinus and Cotta into their confines, & brought them in corne to the place, where they lay; at the inducemẽt of Inducioma rus of Triers, they ſtird vp their people to rebellion: & ſuddenly ſurpriſing thoſe that were gon abroad to get wood, came with a great power to aſſault the Camp. But when our men had tooke Arms, and were got vp vpon the rampier, and had ouermatched them in a skirmiſh of horſe, which made a ſally out of the Camp vpon the Galles; Ambiorix deſpairing of good ſucceſs, withdrew his men from the aſſault; & then after their maner, they cried vnto vs, that ſome of our company ſhould come & ſpeak with thẽ: for, they had ſomwhat to diſcouer touching the publike ſtate, wherby they hoped al controuerſies might be ended. Wherupon Caius Carpineius a Roman horſeman, and one of Titurius his familiar friends, and one Iunius a Spaniard, who*

diuers

diuers times before had beene ſent by Caſar to Ambiorix; were ſent out to treat with them. Ambiorix firſt acknowledged himſelfe much indebted to Caſar; for, manie curteſies, in that by his meanes he was freed from a penſion which he paied to the Aduatici; and for that both his own ſon, and his brothers ſonne, whom the Aduatici had helde in priſon vnder the name of hoſtages, were by Caſar releaſed and ſent home againe. And touching the aſſault of the Camp, he had done nothing of himſelfe, but by the impulſion of the State; among whom ſuch was his cõdition, that the people had as great authority ouer him, as he himſelf had in regard of the people: who were likewiſe inforced to this warre, becauſe they could not withſtand the ſudden inſurrection of the Galles, whereof his ſmall meanes might bee a ſufficient argumeent. For, his experience was not ſo little, to thinke himſelf able with ſo ſmal a power to ouerthrow the people of Rome; but it was a general appointment throughout al Gallia, vpon this day to aſſault al Cæſars garrizons, to the end that one legion might not giue reliefe vnto another: Galles could not eaſilie denie the requeſt of Galles, eſpecially when it concerned their publicke libertie. Now hauing ſatisfied that duetie which he owed to his conntrey, hee had reſpect to Caſar and his benefites; in regard wherof, he admoniſhed them, and praied Titurius for the hoſpitality that had been between them, that hee would looke to the ſafetie of himſelfe, and his ſoldiers. There were a great number of Germanes that had alreadie paſſed the Rhene, and would be heere within 2. dayes: and therfore let them aduiſe themſelues, whether they thought it good before the next borderers perceiued it, to depart with their ſouldiers out of their wintering places, either to Cicero or Labienus, of whom the one was not paſt fifty mile off; and the other, a little further: for his owne part, he promiſed them this much, and confirmed it by oath, that they ſhould haue ſafe paſſage through his territories; for, ſo hee ſhould both doe a pleaſaure to his countrey, in diſburdening it of garrizons, and ſhew himſelfe thankfull to Cæſar for his benefits. This ſpeech being ended, Ambiorix departed, and Carpineius and Iunius made report thereof to the Legates.

OBSERVATION.

LEander his counſell, to vſe the foxes skinne where the Lions faileth, doth ſhewe, that the diſcourſe of our reaſon is ſooner corrupted with errour, then the powers of our bodie are ouercome with force. For, oftentimes the mind is ſo diſquieted, with the extreamitie of perturbation, that neither the apprehenſion can take ſound inſtructions, nor the iudgement determine of that which is moſt for our good: but according as any paſſion ſhall happen to raigne in our diſpoſition; ſo are wee caried headlong to the ruine of our fortune, without ſenſe of errour, or miſtruſt of wel-ſucceeding; where as the body continueth firme in his owne ſtrength, and is ſubiect onely to a greater waight of power, by which it may bee ſubdued and ouerthrowen. It behoueth vs therefore to take good heede, that our ſureſt holde bee not vnfaſtned by the ſubtiltie of the Foxe, when it

749b

hath continued firme againſt the force of the lion: and that the treacherie of the ſpirit doe not diſaduantage thoſe meanes, which either our owne power or opportunitie, hath gained in our actions. Wherein a Commander cannot haue a better rule for his direction, then to beware, that violence of paſſion do not hinder the courſe of ſound deliberation: and withall, to bee iealous of whatſoeuer an Enemie ſhall, eyther by ſpeech or action, ſeeme to thruſt vpon him, how colourable ſoeuer the reaſons may be, which are alleadged to induce him thereunto. For firſt, if the minde be not confirmed by the vertue of her better faculties, to reſiſt the motion of fruitleſſe apprehenſions, it may eaſily be ſeduced (eyther by feare or vaine imagination, diffident conceptions or ouer-eaſie credulitie, with manie other ſuch diſturbing powers) from that waie, which a good diſcretion, and an vnderſtanding free from paſſion, would haue taken.

Firſt therfore I holde it neceſſarie, to haue the conſiſtorie of our iudgement well ſettled, with a firme reſolution, and with the preſence of the mind, before we enter into deliberation of ſuch things, as are made happy vnto vs by good direction. And then this, amongſt other circumſtances, will giue ſome help to a good concluſion; when we conſider how improbable it is, that an Enemie, whoſe chiefeſt care is to weaken his aduerſarie, and bring him to ruine, ſhould aduiſe him of anie thing that may concern his good; vnleſſe the profit, which he himſelfe ſhall thereby gather, do farre exceed that which the contrarie part may expect.

I grant that in Ciuill wars, where there are many friends on either partie, & haue the aduerſe cauſe as deare vnto them as their owne; there are oftentimes manie aduertiſements giuen, which proceed from a true and ſincere affection, & may aduantage the partie whom it concerneth, as wel in preuenting any danger, as in the furtherance of their cauſe: and therefore are not altogether to be neglected, but to be waighed by circumſtances, & accordingly to be reſpected; whereof we haue manie pregnant examples in the ciuill warres of France, and particularly in *Monſieur La Nou* his diſcourſes: but where there are two Armies, different in nation, language and humour, contending for that which peculiarly belongeth vnto one of them; where care to keep that which is deareſt vnto them, poſſeſſeth the one, and hope of gaine ſtirreth vp the other; there is commonly ſuch an vniuerſall hatred between them, that they are to looke for ſmall aduantage by aduertiſements from the Enemie: which if the Romans had well conſidered, this ſubtile Gall had not diſpoſſeſt them of their ſtrength, nor brought them to ruine.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

The Romans call a councell vpon this aduertiſement, and reſolue to depart, and ioine themſelues to ſome other of the Legions.

THe Romans being troubled at the ſodainneſſe of the matter, albeit thoſe things were ſpokē by an Enemy, yet they thought thē no way to be neglected; but eſpecially it moued them, for that it was incredible that the Eburones, being baſe and of no reputation, durſt of themſelues make war againſt the people of Rome: and therefore they propounded the matter in a councell; wherein there grew a great controuerſie among them: L. Arunculeius & moſt of the Tribunes, and Centurions of the firſt orders, thought it not good to conclude of any thing raſhly, nor to depart out of their wintering Camps, without expreſſe commandment from Cæſar; foraſmuch as they were able to reſiſt neuer ſo great a power, yea euen of the Germans, hauing their garizons wel fortified: an argument wherof was, that they had valiantly withſtood the firſt aſſault of the Enemy, & giuen them many wounds. Neither wanted they any victuals, & before that prouiſion which they had was ſpent, there would come ſuccor from other guarizons & from Cæſar. And to conclude, what was more diſhonorable or ſauoured of greater inconſtancie, then to conſult of their waightieſt affairs, by the aduertiſement of an Enemy? Titurius vrged vehemently to the contrarie, that it then would be too late for them to ſeeke a remedie, when a greater power of the Enemy, accompanied with the Germans, were aſſembled againſt them; or when anie blowe were giuen to any of the next wintering Campes: he tooke Cæſar to be gone into Italy; for, otherwiſe the Eburones, would not haue come ſo proudly to the Campe. Let them not reſpect the authour, but the thing it ſelfe; the Rhene was not farre off, and hee knewe well that the ouerthrowe of Ariouiſtus, and their former victories, were greeuous to the Germanes. The Galles were vexed with the contumelies they had receiued, being brought in ſubiection to the Roman Empire, and hauing loſt their former reputation in deeds of Arms. And to conclude, who would imagine that Ambiorix ſhould enterpriſe ſuch a matter, without any ground, or certainty thereof? but howſoeuer things ſtood, his counſel was ſure, and could bring no harm: for, if there were no worſe thing intended, they ſhould but goe ſafelie to the next guarizons; or otherwiſe, if the Galles conſpired with the Germans, their onely ſafetie conſiſted in celeritie. As for the counſell of Cotta, and ſuch as were of the contrary opinion, what expectation could be had thereof? wherein if there were not preſent danger, yet aſſuredly famine was to be feared by long ſiege. The diſputation being thus continued on either part, and Cotta with the Centurions of the firſt orders, earneſtly repugning it; Doe as pleaſe you, ſince you will needes haue it ſo, ſayth Sabinus; and that he ſpake with a loud voice, that a great part of the ſouldiers might well heare him: for, I am not hee that moſt feareth death among you; let Cæſar.

let theſe be wiſe: and if any miſchance happen vnto them, they ſhall aske account therof at thy hands, inaſmuch as if thou wouldeſt let them, they might ioine thẽſelues within 2. dayes to the next guarizons, & with them ſuſtaine what chance ſoeuer their common deſtinie ſhould allot them; and not periſh with famine and ſword, like a people caſt off and abandoned from their fellowes. After theſe words, they began to riſe out of the Councel; but holde was laide vpon them both; entreaty was made that they would not obſtinately bring all vnto a deſperate hazard; the matter was all one whether they went or ſtaied, ſo that they all agreed vpon one thing; whereas in diſagreeing, there was no likelihood of well doing: the diſputation was prolonged vntill midnight; at length Cotta yeelded, and the ſentence of Sabinus tooke place. And thereupon it was proclaimed, that they ſhould ſet forth by the break of day: the reſt of the night was ſpent in watching: euery ſouldier ſought out what he had to carry with him, and what hee ſhould be conſtrained to leaue behind him of ſuch neceſſaries, as he had prepared for winter: all things were diſpoſed in ſuch ſort, to make the ſouldiers belieue, that they could not ſtay without danger.

OBSERVATION.

BY the reſolution in this diſputation, it appeareth how little a graue and wiſe deliberation auaileth, when it is impugned with the violence of paſſion, according to the truth of my former obſeruation; for, the matter was well reaſoned by Cotta, and his poſitions were grounded vpon things certaine, and wel knowen to the whole Councel: and yet the feare of Sabinus was ſuch, that it carried the concluſion by ſuch ſuppoſed aſſertions as the qualitie of his paſſion had ratified for true principles; being grounded altogether vpon that which the Enemie had ſuggeſted, and not vpon any certaine knowledge of the truth: neither is it often ſeene, when a Councell diſputeth vpon matters of ſuch conſequence, that their deliberations are altogether cleere from ſuch troubleſome motions, but that it will ſomwhat incline to the partialitie of a ſtrong affection; ſo powerfull is paſſion in the gouernment of the ſoule, and ſo intereſſed in the other faculties. And this is one cauſe of the vncertainty of mans iudgement, from whence all contrarie and different opinions do ariſe. Neither is this ſo ſtrange a matter, that a councell of warre ſhould ſo much varie in caſe of deliberation, when-as manie eſpeciall points of militarie diſcipline remaine yet vndecided; hauing the authoritie of the great Commaunders of all ages, to ratifie the trueth on either part; whereof I could alleage many examples. But concerning the iſſue and euent of our deliberations, what can be more truly ſaid then that of the Poet?

Et malè conſultis pretium eſt prudentia fallax,
Nec fortuna probat cauſas, ſequiturque merentes;
Sed vaga per cunctos nullo diſcrimine fertur:
Scilicet eſt aliud quod nos cogatque regatque
Maius, & in proprias ducat mortalia leges.

Not-

Notwithſtanding, foraſmuch as our wiſdom is not ſo ſubiect to fortune, but that it may comprehend within it ſelf, the good direction of moſt of the occurrences, which fall within the courſe of our buſineſſe; or if we muſt needes miſcarrie, yet it ſomwhat helpeth our ill fortune to thinke, that we went vpon beſt probabilities; it ſhall not be amiſſe to ſet downe ſom rules for the better directing of a mature conſultation. Wherein we are to vnderſtand, that as all our knowledge ariſeth from ſome of our ſenſes, and our ſenſes comprehend only particularities, which being caried vnto the apprehenſion, are diſpoſed into formes and degrees, according as they either concur or diſagree in their ſeuerall properties: from whence there ariſe intellectuall notions, and rules of Art; wherein the ſcience of the ſaid particulars conſiſteth: ſo he that intendeth to debate a matter, with ſound deliberation, muſt deſcend from confuſed conceptions & a knowledge in general, to the exact diſtinction of particular parts, which are the occurrences to be directed, and the materiall ſubſtance of euery action: he therfore that can giue beſt direction, either by experience, or iudicious diſcourſe, cõcerning ſuch particularities as are incident to the matter propounded, can beſt aduiſe which is the ſafeſt way to auoid the oppoſition of cõtradicting natures. But to make this ſomwhat plainer, I wil alleage 2, exampls: the one moderne in caſe of conſultation; the other ancient, and may ſeeme not ſo pertinent to this matter, in regard it is a meere Apologie: yet foraſmuch as it freely cenſureth the quality of particular circumſtances, it may giue great light to that which we ſeek after.

The moderne example is taken out of Guicherdin, from the warres which *Lewis* the French King had with the Pope and the Venetians, concerning the State of Ferrara & the Duchie of Millan: wherein there aroſe a controuerſie among the French Captaines, whether it were better to go directly to ſeeke the Enemy, who albeit were lodged in a ſtrong & ſecure place, yet there was hope, that with the vertue of Armes and importunity of artillerie, they might be diſlodged, and driuen to a retreit: or otherwiſe, to take the waie either of Modina or Bolognia, that ſo the Enemy for feare of loſing either of thoſe townes, might quit their holde, and by that meanes Ferrara ſhould be freede from the warre. Monſieur Chaumont the Generall of the French, inclined to the former aduiſe: But Triunlce, a man of great authoritie and experience, hauing beene an executioner in 18. battailes, reaſoned thus in particulars to the contrary. We debate (ſaith he) to go ſeek the Enemy to fight with him; and I haue alwaies heard great Captaines holde this as a firme principle; Not to attempt the fortune of a battell, vnleſſe there be either an offer of an eſpeciall aduantage, or otherwiſe, compulſion by neceſsitie. The rules of warre giue it to the Enemy that is the inuader, and hath vndertaken the conqueſt of Ferrara, To ſeeke to aſſaile and charge vs; but to vs, to whom it is ſufficient to defende our ſelues, it cannot bee but impertinent to vndertake an action, contrary to all direction and diſcipline of war. I am of opinion, which is confirmed by euident reaſon, that there is no poſſibilitie to execute that deuiſe, but to our harmes & diſaduantage: for, we cannot go to their Camp but by the ſide of a hil, a ſtreight and narrow way, where all our forces cannot bee imployed; and yet they with *Lib. 9.*

749a

ſmall numbers wil make reſiſtance, hauing the opportunitie of the place fauourable to their vertues: we muſt march by the riſing of a hill, one horſe after another; neither haue we any other way to draw our Artillery, our baggage, our carts and bridges, but by the ſtreight of the hill: and who doubteth not but in a way ſo narrow and combrous, euery artillerie, euery cart, or euery wheel that ſhall breake, will not ſtay the Army a whole houre at the leaſt? By which impediments euery contrary accident may put vs to diſorder. The Enemy is lodged in couert, prouided of victualls and forrage; and we muſt incampe all bare and naked, not carying with vs that which ſhould ſerue for our neceſſarie nouriture; but expect the things to come after, which in reaſon ought to goe with vs. To attempt new enterpriſes, whereof the victory is leſſe certaine then the perill, is contrary to the grauity and reputation of a Leader; and in actions of the war, thoſe enterpriſes are put to aduenture, that are done by will & not by reaſon. Many difficulties may compell vs to make our abode there, two or three dayes; yea, the ſnowes & rains ioined with the extreamity of the ſeaſon, may ſuffice to detain vs: how ſhall we then do for victuals & forrages? What ſhal we be able to do in the wars, wanting the things that ſhould giue vs ſtrēgth & ſuſtenance? what is he that cōſidereth not, how dangerous it is to go ſeek the Enemy in a ſtrong Camp, & to be driuen at one time to fight againſt them & againſt the diſcommodity of the place? If we compel them not to abandon their Campe, wee cannot but be inforced to retire; a matter of great difficultie in a countrey ſo wholly againſt vs, and where euery little diſfauour will turn to our great diſaduantage, &c.

And thus proceeded that graue diſcourſe, in the diſcouerie of the particular occurrences, incident to that enterpriſe; which being laied open to their confuſed iudgements, did manifeſtly point at the great diſaduantages, which were to be vndergone, by that attempt.

Annal. 6. The other example is of more antiquitie, taken out of Tacitus, and concerneth the arraignment of certaine Senatours, for the friendſhip that had paſt between Seianus and them. Amongſt whom M. Terentius thus anſwered for himſelfe; according as it hath of late been publiſhed by tranſlation:

It would bee peraduenture leſſe behooueſull for my eſtate to acknowledge, then to denie the crime I am charged with: but hap what happe may, I will confeſſe that I haue been Seianus friend, and that I deſired ſo to to be, and that after I had obtained his friendſhip I was glad of it. I had ſeen him ioint officer with my father, in the gouernment of the pretorian cohort: and not long after, in managing the Citie affaires, and matters of warre: his kinſmen and allies were aduanced to honour: as euerie man was inward with Seianus, ſo he was graced by Cæſar: and contrariwiſe, ſuch as were not in his fauour, liued in feare, and diſtreſſed with pouertie. Neither doe I alleadge any man for an example of this; all of vs who were not priuie to his laſt attempts, with the danger of my only eſtate I will defend: not Seianus the Vulſinienſis, but a part of the Claudian and Iulian family, which by alliance he had entred into; thy ſonne in law Cæſar, thy companion in the Conſulſhip, and him who took vpon him thy charge of adminiſtring the Common-wealth, wee did reuerence

and

SABINVS AND COTTA



7491b

and honour. It is not our part to iudge of him, whom thou doeſt exalt aboue the reſt, nor for what conſiderations: to thee the higheſt iudgement of things the gods haue giuen; and to vs the glory of obedience is left. Wee looke into thoſe things which wee ſee before our eyes, whom thou doeſt inrich, whome thou doeſt aduance to honours, who haue greateſt power of hurting or helping: which Seianus to haue had, no man will denie. The Princes hidden thoughts, or if he go about anie ſecret drift it is not lawfull to ſound, and dangerous; neither ſhalt thou in the ende reach vnto them. Thinke not onely, Lords of the Senate, of Seianus laſt daie; but of ſixteene yeares, in which we did likewiſe fawne vpon and court Satrius, and Pomponius; and to be known vnto his freed men and partners, was reckned for a high fauour. What then? ſhall this defence be generall, and not diſtinguiſhed, but a confuſion made of times paſt, and his later actions? No: but let it by iuſt bounides and tearms be diuided: let the treaſons againſt the Common-wealth, the intentions of murdering the Emperour bee puniſhed; but as for the friendſhips, dueties, pleaſures and good turnes, the ſame end ſhall diſcharge and quit thee, O Cæſar, and vs.

The conſtancie of this Oration preuailed ſo much, that his Accuſers were puniſhed with exile. And thus wee ſee how particularities decide the controuerſie, and make the waie plaine to good direction.

CHAP. XI.

The Romaines take their iourney towardes *the next legion; and are ſet vpon by* the GALLES.

AS ſoone as the day light appeared, they ſet foorth of their Camp (like men perſwaded that the counſell had been giuen them not by an Enemy, but by Ambiorix an eſpeciall friend) with a long tailed march, and as much baggage as they were able to carrie. The Galles vnderſtanding of their iourny, by their noiſe and watching in the night; ſecretly in the woodes ſome two miles off layed an Ambuſcado, in two ſeuerall places of aduantage, and there attended the comming of the Romans; and when the greateſt part of the troupes were entred into a valley, ſodainely they ſhewed themſelues on both ſides the vale, preſſing hard vpon the rereward, and hindering the formoſt from going vp the hill; and ſo began to charge vpon the Romans in a place of as great diſaduantage for them as could bee. Then at length Titurius, as one that had prouided for nothing before hand, began to tremble, ranne vp and downe, and diſpoſed his cohorts, but ſo feareful- Cæſar.

fearefully and after ſuch a faſhion, as if all things had gone againſt him, as it happeneth for the moſt part to ſuch, as are forced to conſult in the inſtant of execution.

OBSERVATION.

IT now plainly appeareth, by this negligent and ill ordered march, and the vnlooked for incounter which the Galles gaue them, that feare had ratified in the iudgement of Sabinus the ſmooth ſuggeſtiō of Ambiorix, with an approbation of a certaine truth; and layed that for a principle, which a diſcourſe free from paſſion would haue diſcerned to be but weake, and of no probabilitie: which ſo much the more amazed Titurius, by how much his apprehenſion had erred from the truth, and betraied good counſell to a courſe full of danger; which as Cæſar noteth, muſt needes fall vpon ſuch, as are then to ſeeke for direction when the buſineſſe requireth execution. I haue handled already the inconueniences of diſappointment: and therfore at this time will but bring it only into remembrance, that wee may take the greater care to preuent an accident of that nature: wherein, as the beſt remedie for an euill is to foreſee it, according to the ſaying, *Præuiſa pereunt mala*; ſo the greateſt miſchiefe in an euill, is when it commeth vnthought of, and beſides our expectation; for, then it falleth vpon vs with a ſupernaturall waight, and affrighteth the mind with a ſuperſtitious aſtoniſhment, as though the diuine powers had preuented our deſſignements, with an irremediable calamitie, and cut off our appointment with a contrarie decree: alalthough peraduenture the thing it ſelfe carrie no ſuch importance, but might be remedied, if we were but prepared with an opinion, that ſuch a thing might happen.

It were no ill counſell therefore, what reſolution ſoeuer bee taken, to make as full account of that which may fall out to croſſe our intentions, as that which is likely to happen from the direction of our chiefeſt proiects; and ſo we ſhall be ſure to haue a preſent minde in the middeſt of our occaſions, and feele no further danger, then that which the nature of the thing inforceth.

CHAP.

CAP. XII.

The Romans caſt themſelues into an Orbe; and are much diſcouraged.

BVt Cotta, who had before thought that theſe things might happen by the waie, and for that cauſe would not bee the authour of the iourny, was not wanting in any thing that comcerned their common ſafetie: for, both in calling vpon the ſouldiers and incouraging them, hee executed the plate of a Commaunder; and in fighting, the dutie of a ſoldier. And when they found, that by reaſon of the length of their troup, they were not able in their owne perſons to ſee all things done, and to giue direction in euery place; they cauſed it to be proclaimed, that they ſhould all forſake their baggage, and caſt themſelues into an Orb: which direction, although in ſuch a caſe be not to be reproued; yet it fell out illfauouredly: for, it both abated the courage of the Romans, and gaue the Enemy greater incouragement, inaſmuch as it ſeemed that that courſe was not taken, but vpon a great feare and in extreamity of perill. Moreouer, it hapned, as it could not otherwiſe chooſe, that the ſoldiers went from their Enſignes, to take from the cariages ſuch things as were moſt deare vnto them: and there was nothing heard amongſt them, but clamours and weepings. But the Barbarous Galles were not to learne how to carrie themſelues: for, their Commanders cauſed it to be proclaimed, that no man ſhould ſtir out of his place; for the preie was theirs, and all that the Romans had laide aparte, was reſerued for them: and therefore let them ſuppoſe that all things conſiſted in the victory. The Romans were equall to the Galles, both in number of men and valour; and albeit they were deſtitute of good Captaines, and of good fortune, yet they repoſed in their manhood all the hope of their ſafety: and as often as any cohort iſſued out, they failed not to make a great ſlaughter of the Enemy on that part. Caſar.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

HAue alreadie handled the nature of an Orbe, with ſuch properties as are incident to a circle; wherein I ſhewed the conueniencie of this figure, in regarde of ſafe and ſtrong imbattailing: I will now adde thus much concerning the vſe thereof, that as it is the beſt manner of imbattailing for a defenſiue ſtrength, and therfore neuer vſed but in extreamitie; ſo we muſt be very carefull, that the ſodaine betaking of our ſelues to ſuch a refuge, doe not more diſmaie the ſouldiers, then the aduantage of that imbattailing canne benefit them.

749b

them. For, vnleſſe a Leader be carefull to keepe his men in courage, that their hearts may bee free from deſpaire and amazement, what profit can there ariſe from any diſpoſition or body ſoeuer, when the particular members ſhall bee ſenſeleſſe of that duty, which belongeth vnto them? For, order is nothing but an aſſiſtance to courage, giuing means to manage our valour with aduantage. In the warre of Affricke wee reade, that Cæſars legions being incircled about with great multitudes of enemies, were forced to make an Orb; but he quickly turned it to a better vſe, by aduancing the two Cornets two contrary waies; and ſo diuided the Enemy into two parts; and then beate them backe, to their great diſaduantage.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

I Neede not ſtand vpon this order which the Galles heere took, concerning pillage, that no ſouldier ſhould forſake his ſtation, or diſrank himſelf in hope of ſpoile; which is a thing that from the very infancie of warres hath often changed the fortune of the day, and ſolde the honour of a publike victory, for priuate lucre and petty pilfering. Amongſt other examples, let that which Guichardine reporteth of the battell of Taro, *Lib.*20. ſuffice to warne a well directed Armie, as well by the good which Charles the eighth of that name, King of France, receiued at that time, as by the loſſe which the Italians felt by that diſorder, not to ſeek after pillage vntill the victory be obtained.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THe inſufficiency of theſe Commanders, whereof Cæſar now complaineth as the onely want, which theſe Romans had to cleere themſelues of this daunger; bringeth to our conſideration that which former times haue made a queſtiō: which is, whether it were the vertue of the Roman Leaders, or the valour of their ſouldiers, that inlarged their Empire to that greatneſſe, and made their people and Senate, Lords of the world? Polybius waighing the cauſes of a victory, which the Carthagineans gained of the Romans, by the counſell and good direction of one Zantippus a Grecian, hauing before that time receiued diuers ouerthrowes, during the time of thoſe warres in Affricke; concluded, that it was more in the worthineſſe of the Commanders, then in any extraordinarie vertue of the ſouldiers, that the Romans atchieued ſo many conqueſts. And beſides the preſent example of Zantippus, he confirmed his opinion with the proceedings of Hannibal; who from the beginning of the ſecond Punicke warre, ſtil gained of the Roman Empire, enlarging the territories of Carthage, and ſtreightening the iuriſdiction of mightie Rome, vntill it had got a Leader matchable to that ſubtle Carthagineān, and found a Scipio to confront their Hannibal. To this may be added that famous

famous battell betweene the olde Romans, and the laſt Latines; wherein both parties were equally ballanced, both in number and qualitie of their ſouldiers, hauing both the ſame Armes, the ſame vſe of their weapons, and the ſame diſcipline, as if it had been in a Ciuill warre. Neither could Fortune tell by the preſence of their Armies, where to beſtow her fauour, or where to ſhew her diſdaine; but that the worthineſſe of the Roman Leaders, brought the oddes in the triall, and made Rome great with the ruine of the Latines. Whereby it appeareth, how much it importeth the whole fortune of the Armie, to haue a Leader worthy of the place which he holdeth: foraſmuch as nothing doth make a greater difference of inequalitie betweene two equall Armies, then the wiſedome and experience of a graue Commaunder, or the diſabilitie of an vnskilfull Leader; which are ſo powerfull in their ſeuerall effects, that there is greater hope of a heard of Harts ledde by a Lion, then of ſo many Lions conducted by a Hare.

CHAP. XIII.

Ambiorix directeth the Galles how they might *beſt fight with aduantage, and fruſtrate* the weapons of the Romaine ſouldiers.

THE which thing when Ambiorix perceiued; he commanmanded his men to throwe their caſting weapons afar off, and keepe themſelues from comming neere at hand, and vvhere the Romans charged them, to giue way: & againe, as they ſaw them retire to their Enſignes, then to purſue them. Which commaundement was ſo diligently obſerued by the Galles, that as oft as any cohort ſallied out of the Orbe to giue an aſſault, the Enemie gaue backe as faſt as they could; and in the meane time there was no helpe, but that part muſt be left naked and open to the inconuenience of caſting weapons: and againe, as they retired to their place, they were circumuented, as well by them that had giuen place vnto them, as by ſuch as ſtood next about them. And if they went about to keep their ground, they could neither helpe themſelues by their manhood; nor ſtanding thicke together, auoide the darts that ſuch a multitude caſt vpon them: and yet notwithſtanding theſe inconueniences, beſides the wounds which they had receiued, they ſtood ſtill at their defence; & hauing ſo ſpent the greateſt part of the day (for they had fought eight houres together) they committed nothing diſhonourable, or vnworthie of themſelues. Caſar.

THE OBSERVATION.

I Haue ſpoken alreadie of the manner of the Roman fight, conſiſting altogether in good diſpoſition of imbattailing, and in firme ſtanding, and buckling at handy-blowes: as may appeare by this circumſtance, where Ambiorix forbiddeth his men to buckle with them, but to giue backe & follow on againe, as the lightneſſe of their Armes gaue them opportunitie. In like manner, in the firſt booke of the Ciuill wars, in the battell betweene Cæſar and Affranius, it appeareth, that Cæſar his ſouldiers were bound to keepe their array, not to leaue their Enſignes, nor without a waightie occaſion to forſake their ſtations appointed them: whereas the Affranians fought thin, and ſcattered heere and there; and if they were hard laid vnto, they thought it no diſhonour to retire and giue backe, as they had learned of the Portugals, and other Barbarous Nations.

CHAP. XIIII.

The Romans are ouerthrowne.

Cæſar.

THen T. Baluentius, who the yeere before had beene Primipile of that legion, a valiant man, and of great authoritie, had both his thighes darted through with a Iauelin; and Q. Lucanius, of the ſame order, valiantly fighting to ſuccour his ſonne, was ſlaine: and L. Cotta the Legate, as hee buſily incouraged all the Cohorts & Centuries, was wounded in the mouth with a ſling. Titurius mooued with theſe things, as he beheld Ambiorix afarre off incouraging his men, ſent C. Pompeius vnto him, to intreat him that he would ſpare him and his ſouldiers. Ambiorix anſwered, that if he were deſirous to treat, hee might: for, hee hoped to obtaine ſo much of the people, to ſaue the ſouldiers; but for himſelfe, he ſhould haue no harme at all: for the aſſurance whereof, he gaue him his faith. Titurius imparted the matter to Cotta, vvho abſolutely denied to goe to an armed enemie, and continued reſolute in that opinion. Titurius commanded ſuch Tribunes & Centurions that were preſent, to follow him; and when hee came neere to Ambiorix, beeing commaunded to caſt away his Armes, he obeyed, and willed thoſe that were with him, to doe the ſame. In the meane time, while they treated of the conditions, and Ambiorix began a ſolemne proteſtation of purpoſe, Titurius was by little & little incompaſſed about and ſlaine. Then, according to their cuſtome, they cried victory; and taking vp a houling, charged the Romaines with a freſh aſſault, and routed their troupes. There L. Cotta fighting valiantly, was ſlaine, with the moſt part of the ſouldiers with him. The remnant retired into their Campe, amongſt whom L. Petroſidius the Eagle-bearer, when hee ſawe himſelfe ouercharged with enemies, threw the Eagle within the Rampier, and fighting with

with a great courage, before the Campe, was ſlaine. The reſt, with much adoe indured the aſſault vntill night, and in the night, beeing in deſpaire of all ſuccour, ſlew themſelues euery man: a few, that eſcaped from the battell, came by vnknowne waies through the woods, to Labienus, and certified him how all thinges had fallen out.

OBSERVATION.

AND thus haue we heard of the greateſt loſſe, that euer fell at any one time vpon Cæſar his Armie, from the time that he was firſt Proconſull in Gallia, vnto the end of his Dictatorſhip. For in the two ouerthrowes at Dirrachium, he loſt not aboue 1000 men, and in that at Gergouia, not ſo many: but heere, fifteene cohorts were cut in peeces, which amounted to the number of 7000 men, or thereabout. Which maketh cowardice, and ill direction the more hatefull, in regard that the great victorie, which his valour obtained in Pharſalia, coſt him but the liues of two hundred men.

The reſolution of ſuch as returned to the Campe, witneſſeth the exceeding valour of the Roman ſouldier, if a valiant Leader had had the managing thereof; or if Cotta alone had been abſolute Commaunder, there had beene great hope of better fortune in the ſucceſſe. But heere it happened as it commonlie doth, that where there are many that are equall ſharers in the chiefe authoritie; the direction, for the moſt part followeth him that is more violent in opinion then the reſt: which beeing a propertie rather of paſſion then of iudicious diſcourſe, forceth a cõſent againſt the temperat oppoſition of a true diſcerning vnderſtanding; and ſo conſequently it falleth out, that one coward, hauing place and authoritie in the Councell, doth either infect or annihilate the ſound deliberations of the reſt of the Leaders: for, his timerouſneſſe flieth alwaies to extreamities, making him raſh in conſultation, peremptorie in opinion, & baſe in caſe of perill; all which are enemies to good direction, and the onely inſtruments of miſchieuing fortune.

CHAP. XV.

Ambiorix haſteth to beſiege *Cicero*, and ſtirreth vp the *Aduatici*, the *Neruij*, and ſo raiſeth a great power.

AMbiorix tooke ſuch ſpirits vnto him vpon this victory, that with his horſemen he went immediatly vnto the Aduatici, beeing the next borderers vpon his kingdome, vvithout intermiſsion of night, commaunding his footmen to follow him. The Aduatici beeing ſtirred vp to Commotion, the next day after hee came to

749b.

the Neruÿ, exhorting them not to let ſlippe this occaſion of taking to themſelues perpetuall libertie, and reuenging them of the Romaines for the wrong they had receiued. He told them that two Legates were alreadie ſlaine, and a great part of the Armie ouerthrowne: it was now no great matter, ſuddenly to ſurpriſe the legion that wintered with Cicero; to the performance whereof, hee offered himſelfe to be their aſsiſtant. Theſe remonſtrances eaſily perſwaded the Neruÿ, and therefore they diſpatched ſpeedy meſſengers to the Centrones, Grudÿ, & other people vnder their dominion, and raiſed very great forces; and vvith them they haſted to the Campe where Cicero wintered, before any inkling of the death of Titurius was brought vnto him.

OBSERVATION.

THe ambitious and working ſpirit of Ambiorix, that could attempt to raiſe the baſeneſſe of a ſmall and ignoble State, to ſo high a point of reſolution, that they durſt aduenture vpon the Romaine legions, beeing ſettled in the ſtrength of their Empire, by the memorie of ſo many victories in Gallia; wanted now no meanes to make an ouerture to a vniuerſall commotion, propounding libertie & reuenge to the Galles (two the ſweeteſt conditions that can happen to a ſubdued people) if they would but ſtretch out their hands to take it, and follow that courſe which his example had proued ſure and eaſie. Which may ſerue to ſhew, that hee that will attempt vpon doubtfull and vnſafe Principles, will take great aduantage from a probable entrance, and make a ſmall beginning a ſufficient meanes for his greateſt deſſignes.

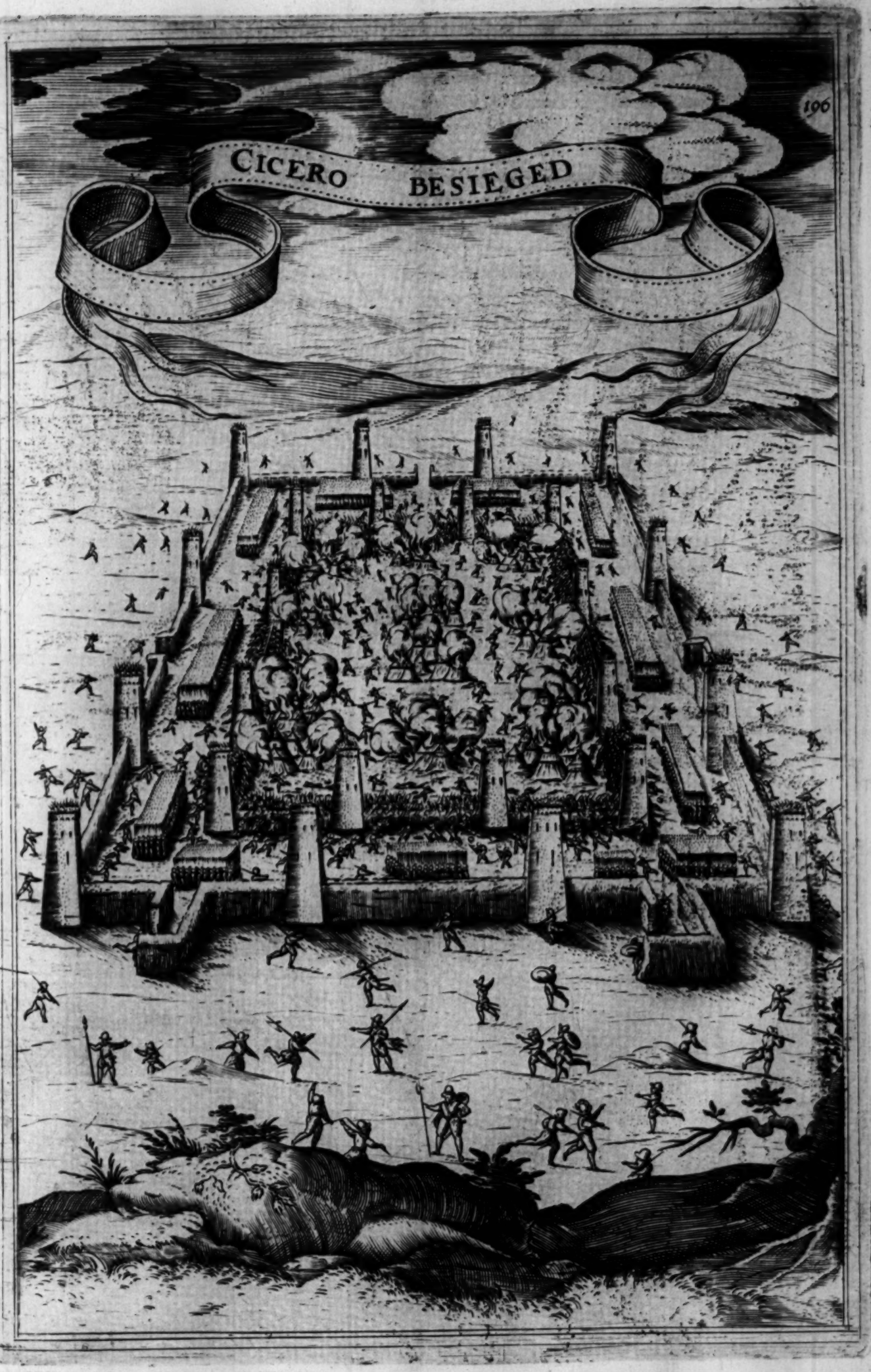
CHAP. XVI.

Cicero defendeth his Campe from the ſurpriſe *of the Neruïj, and preparath himſelfe* againſt a Siege.

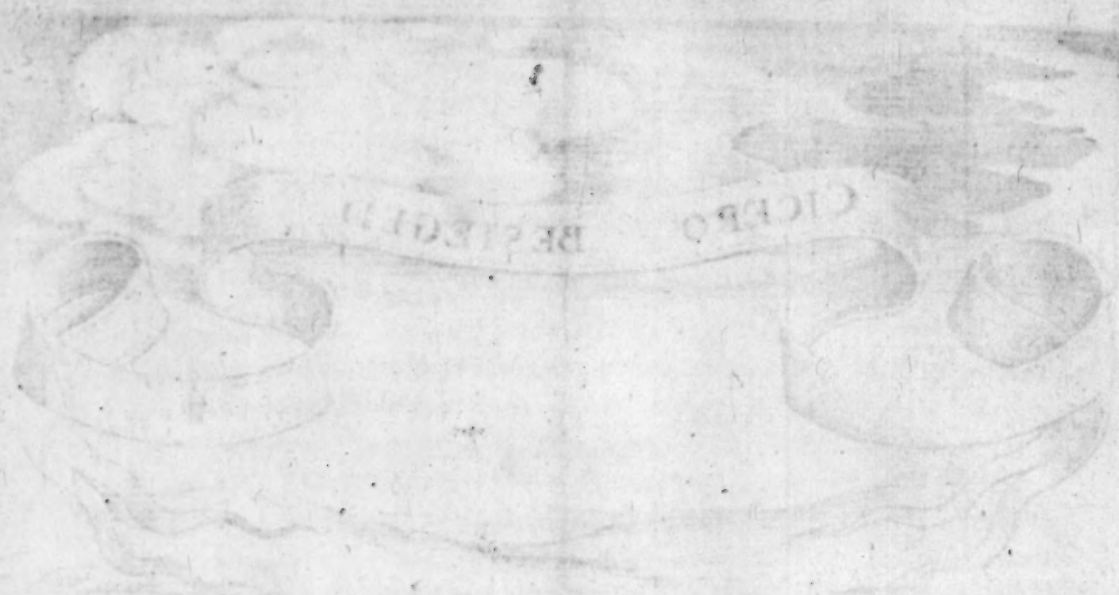
IT happened to Cicero alſo (as it could not otherwiſe chuſe) that many of the ſouldiers, that vvere gone into the woods for timber and munition, were cut off by the ſudden approach of the Enemies horſemen. Theſe being circumuented, the Eburones, Neruÿ, and Aduatici, with all their confederates and clients, began to aſſault the Campe. The Romans betooke them ſpeedily to their vveapons, and got vpon the rampier, with much adoe they held out that day: for, the Galles truſted much vpon celeritie; hoping, if they ſped vvell in that action, to be victors euer after.

Cicero

CICERO BESIEGED



749 b



Cicero dispatched Letters vvith all speede to Cæsar, promising great rewards to him that should carie them: but all the waies were so fore-laid, that the Messengers were taken. In one night there was built in the Campe one hundred and twenty towers, of such timber as was brought in for fortification; and whatsoeuer wanted of the rest of the worke, was perfected.

The enemy the next day, with a farre greater power assaulted the Campe, and filled vp the ditch: the Romans made the like defence, as they had done the day before; the like was continued diuers daies after. The Romaines made no intermission of their work at any part of the night, nor gaue any rest either to the sick or the wounded. Whatsoeuer was needfull for the next daies assault, was prouided in a readinesse the night before; a great number of stakes hardened in the fire were prepared, and many murall piles were made; the towers were floored in their stories; Pinacles and Parapets were set vp of hurdles: and Cicero himselfe beeing sickly, and of a weake constitution, tooke not so much leasure as to rest himselfe in the night time: so that the Souldiers of their owne accord, compeld him by intreatie, to spare himselfe.

OBSERVATION.

THis Q. Cicero, is said to be the brother of Marcus Cicero, the famous Oratour, & to him were the Letters sent which are found in his Epistles, directed *Quincto fratri.* In this action, his cariage deserued as great reputation, in the true censure of honour, as euer his brother did for his eloquence, *pro Rostris.* And if it had beene the others fortune to haue performed the like seruice, he would haue made it the greatest exploit that euer Roman had atchieued by Armes. Wherein particularlie may be commended, the diligence and industry which was vsed, in raising so many towers in so small a time; for prouiding the night before, such things as were necessarie for the next daies defence; for making so many stakes hardened in the end with fire, for the defence of the rampier; and for the store of these mutall piles, which resembled the forme of the ordinarie pile, but were farre greater and waightier, in regard they were to be cast from the rampier; which gaue them such aduantage, by reason of the height, that being cast by a strong and well practiced arme, they were very effectuall and of great terrour.

749b

CHAP. XVII.

The Neruij propound the ſame things to Cicero *which Ambiorix had done to Sabinus*; but are reiected.

Cæſar.

THen the Princes and chiefe Commaunders of the Neruij, which had any entrance of ſpeech, and cauſe of acquaintance with Cicero, ſignified their deſire to ſpeak with him: vvhich beeing granted, they propounded the ſame thinges they had vſed to deceiue Sabinus; all Gallia were in Armes; the Germans were come ouer the Rhene; Cæſar and the reſt were beſieged in their wintering Campes; Sabinus & his men were cut in peeces; notwithſtanding, they carried this mind to Cicero, that they refuſed nothing but their wintering among them; they might depart in ſafetie whither they would, without diſturbance or feare of danger. Cicero onely made this aunſwere: that It was not the cuſtome of the people of Rome, to take any article or condition from an armed Enemie; but, if they vvould lay their Armes aſide, let them vſe his furtherance in the matter, and ſend ſome to negotiat it with Cæſar; there was great hope, in regard of his iuſtice and equitie, that they ſhould not returne vnſatisfied.

THE OBSERVATION.

THe firſt attempt, which Ambiorix made vpon the Camp of Sabinus and Cotta, was but ſhort; but heere, what with the pride of the former victorie, and the great multitude of the aſſailants, they continued it longer, in hope to carrie it by aſſault: for, the firſt aſſault of a place, eſpecially, when it commeth by way of ſurpriſe, is of greater hope to the aſſailant, and of greater danger to the defendant, then ſuch as afterward are made in the ſequell of the warre: for, after the firſt brunt, the heat of the enemy is much abated, as wel through the nature of a hot deſire, which is moſt violent in the beginning, & afterward groweth cold & remiſſe, as alſo with the harmes and perill which they meet with in the incounter; and on the contrarie ſide, the defendants hauing withſtood the firſt furie, wherein there is moſt terrour and diſtruſt, grow more confident and better aſſured of their manhood, and in experience of their ſtrength, ſtand firme againſt any charge whatſoeuer.

CHAP. XVIII.

The Neruij beſiege Cicero, with a ditch and *a rampier, and worke meanes to ſet fire on* their Tents.

THe Neruij diſappointed of this hope, caried a ditch & a rampier round about the Camp; the rampier was 11 foote high, and the ditch 15 foote deepe; which they had learned of the Romaines, partly by beeing conuerſant among them certaine yeeres before, and partly by the priſoners and captiues which they had taken; but they had no iron tooles fit for that purpoſe, but were driuen to cut vp turfe with their ſwords, and gather earth with their hands, and carie it away with their Mantles and Gaberdines. Whereby may be gathered, what a multitude of men there were at the ſiege; for, in leſſe then three houres, they finiſhed the fortification of fifteene miles in circuit. The daies following, the enemy built towers to the height of the rampier, prepared great hookes and ſtrong penthouſes, or ſafeguards of boords and timber, according as the captiues had giuen them inſtruction. The ſeauenth day of the ſiege, beeing a verie windie day, they caſt hot bullets of clay out of ſlings, and burning darts vpon the cabines of the Romans, which after the manner of the Galles, vvere thatched with ſtrawe: theſe cabines were quickly ſette on fire, which by the violence of the wind was caried ouer all the Campe. The enemy preſsing forward with a great clamour, as though the victorie were alreadie gotten, began to bring their Turrets and Teſtudines to the rampier, and to ſcale it with ladders. But ſuch was the valour of the Roman ſouldiers, that albeit they were ſcorched on all ſides with fire, and ouer-charged with multitude of weapons, and ſaw all their wealth burned before their face; yet no man forſooke the rampier, or ſcarce looked backe at that which had happened, but they all fought valiantly, and vvith an exceeding courage. Caſar.

OBSERVATION.

THis one example may ſerue, to ſhew the excellencie of the Roman diſcipline, and the wiſedome of the firſt founders of that Art: for, they perceiuing that the fortune of warres conſiſted chiefelie in the maſtering of particular occurrences, trained their ſouldiers in that forme of diſcipline, as might ſtruggle with inconueniences, and ſtrong oppoſitions of condradicting accidents; and ſo ouerwage all difficulties and hinderances, with a conſtant perſeueration & a courage inuincible. For, the great attempting ſpirit of an ambitious Commander, that ſeeketh to ouertoppe the trophes of honor, with the memory of his exploits, will quickly periſh by his own direction, if the inſtruments of execution be weaker, then the means which lead

749b

leade him to his deſſignments. For, where the waight is greater then the ſtrength, the engine will ſooner breake, then lift it vp. Let a diſcreet Leader therefore ſo leuell his thoughts, that his reſolution may not exceed the abilitie of his particular meanes; but firſt let him be well aſſured what his ſouldiers can doe, before he reſolue what he will doe: or otherwiſe, let him ſo inable them by diſcipline and inſtructions, according to the example of the old Romans, that their worth may anſwere the height of his deſires, and follow his aſpiring mind, with a reſolution grounded vpon knowledge and valour; and ſo making their abilitie the ground of his deſſignes, he ſhall neuer faile of meanes to performe what he intendeth. The want of this conſideration, hath within theſe late yeeres, repaid our Commaunders in many parts of Chriſtendome, with loſſe and dishonour, when as they meaſuree the humour of their poore needie and vndiſciplined ſouldier, by the garbe of their ambitious thoughts, & ſo laid ſuch proiects of difficultie, as were verie vnſutable in the particularitie of occurrences, to that which their ſouldiers were fit to execute.

CHAP. XIX.

The æmulation betweene two Centurions, *Pulfio and Varenus, with their fortunes in* the incounter.

Cæſar.

THERE were in that legion two valiant men, Titus Pulfio, & L. Varenus, Centurions, comming on apace to the dignity of the firſt orders: theſe two were at continuall debate vvhich of them ſhould be preferred one before another, and euerie yeere contended for place of preferment, with much ſtrife & emulation. Pulfio, at a time that the fortification was very ſharply aſſaulted, called to Varenus, and asked him why he now ſtood doubtfull? or what other place hee did looke for to make triall of his manhood? This is the day, ſaith he, that ſhall decide our controuerſies. And when hee had ſpoken theſe words, he went out of the fortification; and where he ſaw the Enemie thickeſt, he fiercely ſet vpon them: then could not Varenus hold himſelfe within the rampier, but followed after in a reaſonable diſtance. Pulfio caſt his pile at the enemy, and ſtrooke one of the multitude through, that came running out againſt him. He being ſlaine, all caſt their weapons at him, giuing no reſpite or time of retrait. Pulfio had his target ſtrooke through, and the dart ſtuck faſt in his girdle. This chance turned aſide his ſcabberd, and hindered his right hand from pulling out his ſword; in which diſaduantage the enemy preſſed hard vpon him. Varenus came and reſcued him: immediatly the whole multitude, thinking Pulfio to bee ſlaine with the dart, turned to Varenus, who ſpeedily betooke him to his ſword, and came to handy-ſtroakes; and hauing ſlaine one, he put the reſt ſomewhat back. But as he followed ouerhaſtily vpon them, hee fell downe: him did Pulfio reſcue, beeing

beeing circumuented and in danger; and so both of them hauing slaine manie of the enemy, retired to their Campe in safetie, to their great honour. Thus Fortune caried as well the contention, as the incounter of them both, that being Enemies, they neuerthelesse gaue helpe to saue each others life, in such sort, as it was not to be iudged which of them deserued greatest honour.

OBSERVATION.

CAesar inserteth this accident of the two Centurions, as worthie to be related amongst the deeds of Armes contained in these Commentaries: wherin we are first to obserue the grounds of this quarrell, which was their cõtinuall strife for place of preferment, which they sought after, by shewing their valour in time of danger, and approouing their worth by the greatnesse of their desert; a contention worthy the Roman discipline, and may serue for a patterne of true honour full of courage, accomplished with vertue. For these *Simultates*, which desire of honour had cast between them, brought forth emulation, which is the spur of vertue, far from enmitie or hatefull contention: for, the difference between these two qualities, is, that enmitie hunteth after destruction, and onely reioiceth in that which bringeth to our aduersary vtter ruine, dishonor, or ill atchieuement: but emulation contendeth only by well deseruing, to gaine the aduantage of another mans fame, that vseth the same meanes to attaine to the like end; and is alwaies mixed with loue, in regard of the affinitie of their affections, and the sympathy of their desires, not seeking the ouerthrow of their Competitor, but succouring him in time of danger, and defending him from foule and vnfortunate calamitie, that he may still continue to shew the greatnesse of his worth, by the opposition of inferionr actions, which are as a lesser scantling of desert, to measure the estimation of the others honour.

A vertue rare and vnknowne in these daies, and would hardly find subiects to be resident in, if she should offer her help in the course of our affaires, or sue to be entertained by the crooked dispositions of our times: for, we can no sooner conceiue the thoughts that breed emulation, but it turneth presently to hatred, which is followed to the vttermost of our malice, & resteth better satisfied with the miserable end of our opposed partner, then with thousand of Trophes deseruedly erected to our honor. Which maketh me wonder, when I looke into the difference of these and those ages, whether it were the discipline of that time, which brought forth such honest effects of vertue, to their glory and our ignominie, hauing learned better rules then were known vnto them; or whether the world weakened with age, want strength in these times to bring-foorth her creatures in that perfection, as it did in those daies; or what other cause hath made our worst affections so violent, and our better faculties so remisse & negligent, that vertue hath no part in vs but words of praise, our whole practise beeing consecrated to actions of reproach. The iniuries, murthers, scandalous cariages of one towards another, which in these daies are so readilie offered and

749b

and ſo impatiently digeſted, will admit no ſatisfaction but priuate combate; which in the firſt Monarchies, was granted onely againſt ſtrangers, and forraine enemies, as the onely obiects of Armes and wrath, and capable of that iuſtice, which the priuate ſword ſhould execute: for, they well perceiued, that theſe ſingle battels, were as ſparkles of ciuill diſcord, and inteſtine warres; although not ſo apparant in the generall view of their State, yet as odious in particular, and as diſhonourable to good gouernment. And if there were a true record of ſuch, as haue been either ſlaine or wounded within theſe fortie yeres, either in this kingdome, or in France, or in Germanie, by this licentious and brutiſh cuſtome; I make no queſtion, but they would amount to a number capable of that feareſull ſtile, which is attributed to Ciuill warres.

Neither is there any law, how rigorous or hard ſoeuer, that can giue reliefe to this diſorder, but the reſtraint will draw on as great enormities, and as vntolerable in a good gouernment. Rotaris, King of the Lumbards, forbade his ſubiects this manner of combate: but ſhortly after, he was conſtrained to recall the Edict, for the auoiding of greater euils; although he proteſted the thing to be both inhumane and barbarous. The like Edict was publiſhed in France, by Philip the Faire; but was within two yeeres reuoked againe, at the inſtant requeſt of his ſubiects, in regard of the murthers and aſſaſinats committed in that kingdome.

The onely remedie that I find to take effect in this caſe, was that of late time, which the Prince of Melphe in Piemont, inuented to preuent this euill: for, perceiuing how ordinarie quarrels and bloodſhed were in his Campe, he aſſigned a place betweene two bridges, for the performance of the *Duellum*, vvith this charge; that hee that had the worſt, ſhould alwaies be ſlaine, and caſt from the bridge into the water: the danger ioyned with diſhonour (which by this Decree attended ſuch as vndertooke priuate combate) made the ſouldiers wiſer in their cariage, and put an end to their ſedition and ciuill diſcords. But that which is yet worſt of all, is, that cuſtome hath now made it ſo familiar, that euery trifle ſeemeth ſufficient to call the matter to a priuate combate: a croſſe looke calleth another mans honor in queſtion; but the word Lye, is of as great conſequence, as any ſtabbe or villanie whatſoeuer. Wherat we may wel wonder how it happeneth, that wee feele our ſelues ſo much exaſperated at the reproach of that vice, which wee ſo ordinarilie commit: for, in the cuſtome of theſe times, to caſt vpon vs the lye, is the greateſt iniurie that wordes can doe vnto vs; and yet there is nothing more frequent in our mouth. It may be a propertie in our nature, to ſtand chiefeſte in the defence of that corruption vnto which we are moſt ſubiect.

I ſpeake not this to qualifie the foulneſſe of this vice: for, I hold a Lyer to be a monſter in nature; one that contemneth GOD, and feareth man, as an ancient Father ſaith; but to ſhew the crookedneſſe of our diſpoſition, in diſdaining to acknowledge that faulte, which we ſo commonly commit. But I would faine learne, when honour firſt came to be meaſured with vvords: for, from the beginning it was not ſo. Cæſar was often called to his face theefe, and drunkard, without any further matter; and the libertie of inuectiues, which great

great perſonages vſed one againſt another, as it beganne, ſo it ended with words. And ſo I think our lie might too; for, I take him that returneth the lie, and ſo letteth it reſt, vntill further proofe, to haue as great aduantage in the reputation of honour, as the former, that firſt gaue the diſgrace.

CHAP. XX.

Cicero findeth meanes to aduertiſe Cæſar of this *Accident; who haſting, raiſeth the ſiege, and* putteth the Enemie to a great ſlaughter.

AS the ſiege grew daily hotter & ſharper, and ſpecially, for-that the greateſt part of the ſouldiours were laid vp vvith wounds, and the matter brought into a few mens hands that vvere able to make any defence; ſo they ſent out Letters and Meſſengers the more often to Cæſar: of vvhom, ſome vvere taken, and in the ſight of our ſouldiours, tortured to death. There was one within the place beſieged, of the Nation of the Neruïj, called Vertico, of honeſt parentage; vvho in the beginning of the ſiege had fledde to Cicero, and caried himſelfe faithfully in that ſeruice: this man did Cicero chuſe, perſwading him with hope of libertie, and other great rewards, to carie Letters to Cæſar; vvhich he tooke, & hauing tied them vp in his Dart, trauelled as a Gall amongſt the Galles, without any ſuſpicion, & ſo came to Cæſar: Of vvhom he vnderſtood, haw dangerouſly Cicero and the legion vvas beſet.

Cæſar, hauing receiued thoſe Letters about the eleuenth houre of the day, diſpatched preſently a Meſſenger to M. Craſſus, the Treaſurer, in the country of the Bellonaci, twentie fiue miles off; commaunding the legion to ſet out at midnight, and ſpeedily to come vnto him. Craſſus ſet out and came along with the Meſſenger. He ſent another Poſt to C. Fabius, the Legat, to bring that legion to the confines of the Atrebatïj, through vvhich he was to paſſe: And writ in like manner to Labienus; that if it ſtood with the conueniencie of the State, hee ſhould bring the legion to the territories of the Neruïj: for, the reſt of the Armie that vvere further off, he thought good not to expect. He drew foure hundred horſe or therabouts, from the neereſt vvintering Campes. And beeing aduertiſed about the third houre (by the fore-runners) of Craſſus comming, hee marched that day twentie miles.

Hee made Craſſus Gouernour of Samarobrine, & gaue him one legion for the defence thereof; in regard that the baggage of the vvhole Armie, the hoſtages of the Prouinces, the publique tranſactions and Letters, together vvith all the Corne vvhich hee had got for the prouiſion of the Winter, was left in that place. Fabius, according to his directions, without any delay, met him with the legion. Cambray.

749b

Labienus, vnderſtanding of the death of Fabrius, and the ſlaughter of the Cohorts: and knowing alſo that the vvhole forces of the Treuiri vvere marching towards him; he doubted, that if his ſetting forward out of his vvinter ſtation, ſhould ſeeme as a ſtealing away, he ſhould not be able to vndergoe the charge of the enemy, whō a late victory had made inſolent: and therefore informed Cæſar by his Letters, what danger it would be to draw the legion from their vvintering Camp; relating what had happened amongſt the Eburones, and how that all the forces of the Treuiri, both horſe and foote, lay but three miles diſtant from his Campe.

Cæſar, allowing of theſe reaſons, howſoeuer his hope of three legions was fallen vnto two; yet his whole truſt was in celeritie, as the onely meanes of all their ſafeties: and ſo by great iourneis, came into the confines of the Neruij; where he vnderſtood by the Captiues, how matters paſſed with Cicero, and what danger he was in. At what time he perſwaded a certaine horſman of the Galles, by great rewards offered vnto him, to carrie a Letter to Cicero; which hee ſent writ in Greeke Characters, leaſt his purpoſes ſhould be diſcouered, if the Letter had been intercepted: aduiſing, that if he could not come to his preſence, hee ſhould tie it to the ſtring of a Dart, and ſo caſt it into the fortifications. Hee aduertiſed them by his Letter, that he was on the way with the legions, and would be there inſtantly to raiſe the ſiege. The Gall, fearing ſome danger, followed the directions, and caſt it into the workes by a Dart; which fell by chance vpon a turret, and there ſtuck two daies before it was perceiued: the third day, a ſouldiour finding it, tooke it downe, & brought it to Cicero; vvho read it publiquely in the aſſembly of the ſouldiours, and put them all into exceeding great ioy. And at the ſame time, the ſmoake of their fires began a farre off to be diſcouered: which put them out of all doubt of the approach of the legions.

The Galles, beeing aduertiſed thereof by their Diſcouerers, left the ſiege and made towards Cæſar with all their power; vvhich conſiſted of threeſcore thouſand men or there-bouts. Cicero, finding himſelfe at libertie, ſought out the ſame Vertico before mentioned, to carry Letters to Cæſar: aduiſing him to bee vvarie and diligent in his paſſage; ſignifying by thoſe Letters, that the Enemie had left the ſiege, and turned all his forces towards him. Which Leters, beeing brought vnto Cæſar about midnight, he certified his Partie of the contents thereof, and prepared them by incouragement to fight. The next day, as ſoone as it began to be light, he remoued his Campe; and hauing marched about foure miles, he diſcouered the multitude of the enemy, beyond a great Valley and a Riuer. It was a matter of exceeding danger to giue battell to ſo great a number, in a place of diſaduantage: yet, foraſmuch as he knew that Cicero was freed of the ſiege, he thought he might the better forbeare to make ſuch haſte: and thereupon ſate downe, and in as indifferent a place as he could chuſe, fortified his Campe. Which beeing of it ſelfe very little, as not hauing ſcarce ſeauen thouſand men, & thoſe without any cariages: yet he leſſened it as much as hee could, by narrowing the vſuall ſtreetes thereof; to the end he might the better defend it, if happely the enemie might be drawne to ingage himſelfe ſeriouſly in any attempt vpon the ſame. In the meane time, hauing ſent out Diſcouerers into all parts, he informed himſelfe

ſelfe which way he might moſt conueniently paſſe ouer the valley.

The ſame day, after ſmall incounters of the Caualrie at the vvater, either partie contained themſelues within their fortifications: the Galles, as expecting greater forces, which were not yet come; and Cæſar, that by a counterfet feare, he might draw the Enemy to the place where he was lodged on this ſide the valley, and ſo ſtrike the battell before his Campe; and if he could not bring it ſo about, then vpon diſcouery of the waies, to paſſe the Valley and the Riuer vvith leſſe danger. As it began to be day light, the Caualrie of the enemy came neere vnto the Campe, and began to skirmiſh with our horſemen. Cæſar, of ſet purpoſe, cõmaunded the horſmen to fall back, and to betake themſelues into the Camp: and withall, to fortifie their Camp on all ſides with a higher rampier, to ſtoppe vp the Gates; and in doing of theſe things, to cary themſelues tumultuouſly, and vvith a fained ſhow of great feare. With which inducemẽts, the enemy was ſo drawn on, that he brought ouer all his forces, and imbattailed them in an vnequall and diſaduantageous place. Our men being drawne from the rampier (to make the matter more apparant) they were imboldened to come neerer, and to caſt vveapons from all parts into our works: ſending Herralds round about with Proclamation, That if any Gall or Roman would come ouer vnto thẽ before the third houre, he ſhould be taken into their ſafe protection; but, after that time, there vvas no hope of any ſuch reception. And they did ſo contemne our party, that wher as the Ports were ſhut vp for a ſhewe, with a ſingle rowe of turfes, to the end they might appeare to be made vp in ſuch manner that they could not be broken open; ſome of them began to breake downe the rampier with their handes, and others to fill vp the ditches.

Which Cæſar perceiuing, ſalied out at all the Ports at once; & ſending out the Caualrie, put the enemy ſo ſuddainly to flight, that not one of them reſiſted by way of fighting: inſomuch as he ſlew a great number of them, & put them all beſides their Armes. But becauſe he feared to follow them farre, in regard of the vvoods and bogs, that lay in their paſſage (beeing vnwilling to hazard himſelfe vpon the leaſt occaſion of danger) he returned with all his forces in ſafety; and the ſelfe-ſame day came to Cicero. Where he admired the towers, the mantelets and works, which were begun and prepared by the enemie: and drawing out the legions, hee found that the tenth man had not eſcaped without wounds. By all which circumſtances he vnderſtood, with what danger & valour the buſines had been caried. He cõmended Cicero & the legion, according to their merit; calleth out by name ſuch Centurions and Tribunes of the ſouldiours, as by teſtimonie of Cicero, were found to haue deſerued extraordinarily in that ſeruice; informed himſelfe by the Captiues, of the certainty of Sabinus and Cottas misfortune. The next day, hee ſpake publiquely to the ſouldiours, opened the particulars of that matter, and then ſeaſoned them with comfort and incouragement; ſhewing, that the loſſe which happened through the fault and temerity of a Legate, was to bee borne with better patience: and the rather, foraſmuch as by the aſſiſtance of the immortall Gods, and by their owne vertue, the loſſe was redeemed, in ſuch a faſhion, as neither the enemy did long ioy it, nor themſelues were long afflicted with griefe for the ſame.

749b

OBSERVATION.

THe paſſages in this Chapter, are of great varietie, and do giue occaſion of much diſcourſe: but that which is moſt remarkable, is, that to exceed in forces and troopes of men, may be a meanes to bring a parte to an ouerthrow: for, an extraordinarie power doth alwaies beget an opinion ſorting to their owne deſires, and can hardly thinke of anie other end, then that which ſuteth with ſecuritie and victorious ſucceſſe; vvhich beeing croſſed in any materiall circumſtance, & put beſides the courſe of their intendments, whereby they faile of what they expected, doth conſequentlie draw all, the other way; and changeth hope into mishap: as it fared here with the Galles, vpon Cæſars ſuddaine ſalying out of his Campe.

CHAP. XXI.

The commotions of the States of Gallia. Induciomarus, attempting great matters, was ſlaine, and the Countrey quieted.

IN the meane time, the report of Cæſars victory was caried to Labienus, with incredible ſpeed, through the Countrey of thoſe of Rheimes: inſomuch, as being fifty miles diſtant from that place where Cicero wintered, and that the ouerthrowe vvas giuen about three of the clock in the afternoone, there was a ſhout at the Campe gate before midnight; wherby the men of Rheimes congratulated Labienus for that victorie. The fame vvhereof beeing caried to the Treuiri; Induciomarus, that purpoſed the next day to beſiege Labienus, fled in the night time, and caried all his forces backe to the Treuiri. Cæſar remaunded Fabius, with the legion, into their vvinter ſtations: He himſelfe, with three legions, determined to winter about Samarobrine. And foraſmuch as there were ſuch commotions throughout all Gallia, himſelfe reſolued to abide with the Armie all the vvinter: for, vpon the newes of the ouerthrowe of Sabinus, almoſt all the States of Gallia, did enter into a conſultation of war; ſent Meſſengers and Embaſſadours into all parts, to make ouertures for future reſolutions, and to vnderſtand in what plate the war might beſt be ſet on foote; holding their Conuenticles by night, in ſecret and deſert places: in ſuch manner, as there paſſed not a day, during all that winter, vvhich brought not ſome newe care or doubt concerning Cæſar, leaſt he ſhould be aduertiſed of theſe meetings and conſpiracies, amongſt theſe occurrences.

Britannie. *He had intelligence frõ L. Roſcius the Legat, that great forces of thoſe States and Cities of the Galles, that are called Armoricæ, were aſſembled together, to fight againſt him; and were come within eight miles of his Campe: but vnderſtanding of Cæſars victorie, they fell backe, in ſuch a faſhion, as though they meant*

meant to flie away. But Cæſar, hauing called vnto him the Princes and chiefe men of euery State; terrifying ſome, as ſeeming to vnderſtand their complotments, and perſwading others, kept a great part of Gallia in obedience. Howbeit, the Senones (a ſtrong people, and of great authority amongſt the Galles) went about by a publique Decree to kill Cauarinus, whō Cæſar had ſet to be king ouer them (vvhoſe brother Moritaſgus, at Cæſars comming into Gallia, and whoſe anceſtors formerly, were poſſeſſed of that kingdom): which he perceiuing, fledde away, and was proſecuted to the very borders, and ſo driuen as vvell out of his priuate houſe, as of his kingdome. And hauing ſent Embaſſadours to Cæſar, to ſatisfie him herein; whereas hee cōmaunded the whole Senate to come vnto him, they refuſed to obay his warrant: ſo much it preuailed amongſt barbarous people, that there vvere ſome found that durſt auouch the vndertaking of a vvarre. Which made ſuch an alteration in the minds of all men, that beſides the Hedui, and the ſtate of Rheimes, whom Cæſar had in great fauour and reſpect (the one for their ancient and perpetuall fidelitie to the people of Rome, and the other, for their late ſeruices in the war of Gallia) there was almoſt no State free from ſuſpicion. Inſomuch, as I knowe not vvell, whether it may not be wondered at or no; as well for many other reaſons, as ſpecially for that they greatly grieued, that they, who excelled all other Nations in deeds of Armes, had now loſt their reputation ſo farre, as they were forced to beare the yoke of the people of Rome.

*The Treuiri and Induciomarus, loſt no time of all that Winter, but ſent Commiſſioners beyond the Rheine, ſoliciting the Citties, and promiſing monies with confident aſſurance, that the greateſt part of our Armie was already cut off; and that which was left, was but a ſmall remainder of the ſame: and yet for all that, no people of the Germaines could be perſwaded to paſſe the Rheine. For, hauing twice made triall to their coſt, in the warre of Arioviſtus, & in the paſſage of the * Teuchtheri, they vvould tempt Fortune no further.* Franckefort.

Induciomarus, caſt downe from his hope, did notwithſtanding traine and gather forces, got horſes from the bordering States, and with great rewards, drew vnto him baniſht and condemned men, from all parts of Gallia; and did thereby get ſuch an opinion throughout all that Continent, that Embaſſadours came flocking vnto him from all quarters, and ſought his fauour both in publique and priuate. When he vnderſtood that men made to him of their owne accord, and that on the other ſide, the Senones and Carnutes were inſtigated with a remembrance of their offences; and on the other ſide, the Neruij and Aduataci, made prouiſion of war againſt the Romaines, and that hee ſhould not want voluntarie forces, if he did but once goe out of his confines; hee gaue order to call a Councell of Armes: which, according to the manner of the Galles, was alwaies the beginning of a war; beeing ſuch, as conſtrained all the men that were of yeeres, by the common law of the Land, to aſſemble together in Armes: and hee that came laſt, was in the ſight of all the reſt, put to death with exquiſite torture. In that Councell, he tooke order to proclaime Cingetorix the chiefe of the other faction, and his ſonne in law (who, as we haue before declared, had followed Cæſar, and not left him in any of thoſe ſeruices) a Traytor to the State, and that his goods ſhould be confiſcated.

749.b

That beeing done, he publiſhed in the Councell, that he was ſent for by the Senones and the Carnutes, and many other States of Gallia: vvhether he meant to go, through the territories of the inhabitants of Rhemes; & that he would harry and waſte their country. But firſt, his purpoſe was to take the Camp of Labienus, and accordingly gaue order what he would haue done. Labienus, being in a Camp exceedingly fortified, as well by Nature as by Art, did not feare any danger that might happen to himſelfe, or the legion; but rather ſtudied not to let paſſe any occaſion, to carry the matter handſomly, and to purpoſe. And therefore, being aduertiſed by Cingetorix and his allies, what ſpeech Induciomarus had deliuered in the Councell, he ſent Meſſengers to call the confining citties, and commaunded horſemen to be ſent vnto him by a certaine day.

In the meane time, Induciomarus rid vp and downe almoſt euery day, vvith all his caualrie vnder his campe; ſometimes to view the ſite thereof, otherwhile to parlee, or elſe to terrifie the ſouldier: & his horſmen, for the moſt part, would caſt their weapons within the rampier. Labienus kept all his men within the fortifications, and did what he could to make the enemy belieue that hee was ſore afraid. And, as Induciomarus came daily with greater contempt to the camp, one night, hauing taken in the caualry of the bordering citties, which he had formerly ſent for, he kept all his party (by good guarding) vvithin his campe, with ſuch diligence, that their reception could not poſsibly be bruted abroad, or caried to the Treuiri. In the meane time, Induciomarus, according to his wonted cuſtome, approched neere the campe, and there ſpent a great part of the day: the horſmen caſt their weapons, and with words of high reproach, called out our men to fight; vvithout any word giuen in aunſwere by them. And a little before the euening, as they diſperſed themſelues and departed; vpon a ſuddaine, Labienus let out all the caualry at two Ports, commanding them, that after the Enemy was put to flight (which he ſaw would neceſſarily happen) that euery one ſhould make after Induciomarus: and that no man ſhould ſo much as wound any other Enemie, before they ſaw him ſlaine; Being very vnwilling, to giue him time to eſcape, while the ſouldiours were ingaged with the reſt: and propounding great rewards to thē that ſlew him. Fortune made good that direction: for, as all made after one; Induciomarus was ſurpriſed in the foord of a Riuer, & ſlaine; & his head vvas brought backe into the campe: the horſemen returning, ſlew as many of the reſt as they could take. This thing beeing knowne, all the forces of the Eburones and Neruij, which were met together, departed home: and after that time, Cæſar had Gallia better ſettled in quietneſſe.

Liege.

OBSERVATION.

AS the misfortune which befell Sabinus and Cotta, put all Gallia into troubles and commotions; ſo the head of Induciomarus, reduced all into peace: According as it is ſaid of the Spaniard; that In ſome caſes, one man is worth a thouſand.

And thus endeth the fift Commentarie.

FINIS.

7491b

THE FIRST BOOKE OF Cæsars Commentaries of the *Ciuill Warres.*

THE ARGVMENT.

THis Commentarie containeth the Motions and Contentions at Rome, concerning Cæsars giuing vp his gouernment: The rent in the State, vpon the disagreement of the Senate: How either side bestirred themselues, to seize vpon the Provinces. Pompey got the East, and Cæsar the West part of the Empire; and defeated Afranius and Petreius in Spaine.

CHAP. I.

The Senates affection on Cæsars behalfe.

LETTERS beeing deliuered by Fabius, to the Consuls from C. Cæsar, it was hardly obtained by the extreame importunitie of the Tribunes, to get them read in the Senate: but to consult thereof, or to bring the Contents in question, would not be graunted. The Consuls propounded businesses concerning the state of the Cittie. L. Lentulus, Consull, protested his assistance should not be wanting, neither to the Senate nor to the Common-weale, if they would speake their mindes freely and boldly: but if they respected Cæsar, and had an eye to his fauour (as in former times they vsually had) he would then take a course for him selfe, and not regard the authoritie of the Senate; neither wanted hee meanes of entrance into Cæsars friendship and good acceptance. To the same effect spake Scipio, that Pompey was resolued to be ayding to the Common-weale, if the Senate would stand to him: but if they temporized, and dealt coldly, in vaine hereafter should they seeke ayde from him, albeit they instantly desired it. This speech of Scipios, seemed to come from

749.a

Pompeis owne mouth, he himſelfe being abſent, and the Senate at that time kept within the Cittie. Some others ſpake more temperately; as firſt, M. Marcellus, who thought it not conuenient, that the Senate ſhould bring theſe things in queſtion, vntill they had made a levie of ſouldiers throughout all Italie, and inroled an Army; by whoſe protection, they might ſafely & freely determine what they thought fit: As alſo M. Calidius, who thought it requiſite, that Pompey ſhould goe to his Prouinces and Gouernments, to remoue all occaſions of taking Armes: For, Cæſar hauing two legions newly taken from him, feared that Pompey kept them neere about the cittie to his preiudice. And likewiſe M. Rufus, varying ſome few words, declared himſelfe of Calidius opinion. All theſe were bitterly reproued by L: Lentulus the Conſull; who vtterly denied to publiſh what Calidius had ſentenced. Marcellus, feared with theſe menaces, retracted his opinion. And ſo, what with the clamor of the Conſull, the terrour of the preſent Armie, and the threatning vſed by Pompeys faction, moſt of the Senators were compelled againſt their will, to allow that which Scipio thought fit: which was, that by a certaine day, Cæſar ſhould diſſolue and diſmiſſe his Armie; which if he did refuſe to doe, that then he openly ſhewed himſelfe an Enemie to the Cõmonweale. M: Antonius, and L: Caſsius, Tribunes of the people, did oppoſe this decree. Their oppoſition was inſtantly ſpoken vnto; and many ſharpe & hard cenſures were giuen vpon the ſame: for, according as any one ſpake moſt bitterlie, and cruelly, ſo they were moſt highly commended by Cæſars Enemies.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

AS the former Commentaries doe carie in their front the enſignes of honour, diſplaying the militarie valour of the Romaine people, in the Continent of Gallia, and other Kingdomes of warlike Nations: ſo are theſe Relations branded in the forhead with a note of Infamie, and titled with the direfull name of Ciuill warre; An odious and decried cauſe, ill befitting the integritie of that State, or the excellencie of the Actors, which are chiefe in this Tragedy; who neglecting all that might either enlarge the Empire, or repaire Romes honour for the loſſe of Craſſus, choſe rather to imbrew their ambitious ſwords in the blood of their owne Countrey: Eagle againſt Eagle, and Pile againſt Pile, in a warre which could chalenge no Triumph. If it be now demaunded as formerlie it was,

Quis furor ô Ciues? quæ tanta licentia ferri?

Was it Pompeis Ambition, or Cæſars high Thoughts, that bereft the State of libertie, with the loſſe of ſo many Romaines? It were beſides the ſcope of theſe diſcourſes, to lay an imputation vpon either of thoſe Worthies; the one beeing chiefe Aſsiſtant to the Empire, when ſhe put off her Conſularie Government, and the other ſitting ſole at the helme, directing a courſe to fetch in many Cæſars. Onely this I may truely ſay with Tacitus; That Ciuil wars were neuer ſet on foote by iuſtifiable courſes. Yet for the Readers better direction, and for opening the truth of this ſtorie (which is more to be regarded then

Pares Aquilas, et pila minantia pilis.
Bella geri placuit nullos habitura triumphos.
Luc. lib. 1.

Arma ciuilia neque parari, neque haberi, per bonas Artes poſſunt.
Tac. 1. Annal.

then either Socrates or Platos friendſhip) it ſhall not be impertinent to fetch the cauſes of this warre a little higher in a word then theſe Commentaries doe afford them.

The hiſtories of that age do all intimate, that whē Rome had ennobled Pompey with her ſeruice, & ſtiled him by imployments with the title of Greatneſs, as a ſatisfaction for the iniuries done vnto his father; he (forgetting the rights of a State, which chalengeth the renowne of other mens labours, and ſuffereth no ſubiect to be Copartner therein, further then by approbation of ſeruice & obedience) aſſumed to himſelfe the honour due to the Common-weale, and became proude of that which was none of his: in which conceit, the ambition of his ſpirit kept no meaſure, but over-valued his merits ſo far, that he thought himſelfe rather a Soueraigne then a ſeruant; ſo eaſily are men bewitched when the fauour of a State hath once made them abſolute, and put it ſelfe vnder the awe of priuate commaund. In this height of greatneſſe & authoritie, he made way for Cæſar, his father in law; hauing a ſpirit as ſubiect to ambition, and as capable of publique dignities, as any one amongſt all the Patrician Families: And vpon the ending of his firſt Conſulſhip, in the yeere of Rome 695, obtained the gouernment of Gallia Tranſalpina, and likewiſe of that other Gallia which they called Ciſalpina, containing the Countries that lie betweene the Alpes and the little Riuer Rubico, together with Slauonia, and foure legions of ſouldiers for the tearme of fiue yeares. At the expiration wherof, his charge was continued, by the like fauour and mediation of Pompey, and the aſsiſtance of Craſſus, for fiue yeares longer, with a redoubling of his forces. But after that Craſſus was ſlaine in the Parthian warre, and that Iulia, Cæſars daughter, whō Pompey had maried, was deceaſed (wherby Cæſar ſtood ſingle, without any tie of alliance, or other counterpoiſe of a third partie, to hold them ballanced at the ſame weight as they ſtood while Craſſus liued) Pompey, iealous of thoſe victories and paſſages of Armes which Cæſar had atchiued by his valour, and impatient of any partner in point of Lordſhip; found meanes firſt to draw two legions from him, vnder colour of the Parthian warre; and afterwards, got a Decree of Senate, to ſend him a ſucceſſor before his time was expired: and withall, to returne as a priuate perſon to Rome, to render an account of his Actions during his imployment. Which Cæſar taking as an aſſurance of his downefall, gaue huge ſummes of money to gaine Paulus Aemilius, one of the Conſuls, and C: Curio, a Tribune of the people, to reſiſt this Decree. Howbeit, the ſucceeding Conſuls beeing both his enemies, and hauing no hope of repealing the ſame, hee intreated in the end, that hee might hold onely Gallia Ciſalpina, and Illiricum with two legions, vntill hee ſhould obtaine the Conſulſhip; which was the effect of theſe Letters deliuered by Fabius. And beeing denied by Pompeys faction, in theſe partiall and tumultuous aſſemblies of the Senate, cauſed him to forfeit his loyaltie to the State, verifying the olde ſaying; That oftentimes an iniurie maketh way to a greater fortune.

Amicus Socrates, amicus Plato: Magis amica veritas. Ariſtot. 1. Ethi.

Pomp. Mag.

Conſtantine was ſo iealous thereof, that he publiſhed an Edict, that the honour of all victories ſhold be attributed to him, although they were atchiued 100. leagues off.

Fonte cadit modico, paruiſque impellitur vndis puniceus Rabicon, et Gallica certus limes, ab Auſonijs diſterminat arua colonis. Lucan. li. 1.

Facta tribus dominis communis Roma.

Pompeius, Cæſar, et Craſſus.

-Nã ſola futuri Craſſus erat belli Medius mora.

Nulla ſancta ſocietas, nec fides Regni. Ennius.

Nec quemquã, iam ſerre poteſt, Cæſarne priorẽ, Pompeiúſue parem. Lucan. l. 1.

Ardua res hæc eſt, opibus non tradere mores. Martial.

Sæpe maiori fortunæ locum fecit iniuria. Seneca: Epiſt. 91.

749b

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

The Tribunes of the people.

COncerning the oppoſition of the Tribunes, it is to bee vnderſtood, that the people eaten vp with vſurie, and other grieuous exactions, forſooke both the Cittie and the Campe, when the State had war with the Doſci and the Equi; and taking themſelues to a Mountaine neere vnto Rome, would not returne from thence, vntill the Senate had giuen order for their grieuances. In which tranſaction it was agreed, that there ſhould be Magiſtrates choſen out of the body of the people, to counterpoiſe the power of the Senate, and to reſtraine the boundleſſe authoritie of the Conſulls: which office, was reconed in the number of their holieſt things; neuer to be violated either in word or deed, but the offender ſhould redeeme it with the loſſe of his life. Their whole power conſiſted in letting & hindering. As, when either the Senate, or any one Senatour, went about a matter, which might be preiudiciall to the people in generall, or to any one of the cõmunaltie in particular; Then did the Tribunes interpoſe their authority, to fruſtrate and auert the ſame: which was auaileable, albeit the matter was gainſaid but by one Tribune onely. By which intervention, they kept the Senate in awfull moderation, and were alwaies profitable to the State, but when they happened vpon factious and turbulent perſons; howbeit, their power was bounded with the walls of Rome, and extended no further then the gates of the Cittie. Their doores were neuer ſhut, but ſtood open night and day, for a refuge to ſuch as ſhould flie to them for ſuccour: neither was it lawfull for them to bee abſent from Rome a whole day together. The robes of their Magiſtracie were of Purple; as Cicero intimateth in his oration *Pro Cluentio.* This Tribunitian power, began about the yeere of Rome 260; was ſuppreſt by Sylla; reſtored by Pompey; and vtterly taken away by the Emperour Conſtantine.

What kind of Common-wealth was this of Rome.

Libertatis originem inde magis, quia annuũ cõſulare Imperium factum eſt, quã quod diminutiũ quicquam ſit ex regia poteſtate, numeres. Liv. lib. 2.

His legibus diſſolutum eſt Imperiũ conſulare. &c. Liv. lib. 4.

Lictor.

Viator.

If it be demaunded what kind of Common-wealth this Romaine gouernment was; it is to be vnderſtood, that vpon the expulſion of their Kings, the ſoueraintie reſted in their Conſulls. For, as Liuie ſaith, there was nothing diminiſhed of kingly gouernment, ſaue onely for the better eſtabliſhing of libertie, that the Conſular dignitie was made Annuall. But that held not long, for Publicola imparted this ſouerainty to the Communaltie; making it lawfull to appeale from the Conſuls to the people. Whereby the Conſular ſouerainty was diſſolued, and the people tooke occaſion to oppoſe themſelues againſt the Fathers. Hence grew the reciprocall inuectiues between the Senate and the Tribunes; and when the Conſull ſent a Seriant to the Tribune, the Tribune would ſend a Purſeuaunt to the Conſull. And ſo the Cõmon-wealth halted betweene an Ariſtocratie and a Democratie, vntill at length the voagg of the Communaltie, drew it to a perfit Democratie, and made their Acts of Senate of no value, vnleſſe they were ratified by the people: Howbeit, the Senate, affoording alwaies many famous and eminent Men, ſuch as hauing inlarged the boundes of their Empire, and kept on foote their auncient valour,

and

and were the flower of that people, which Cyneas called a towne of kinges, were consequentlie so engaged in the businesses of the State, that matters were for the most part, carried as they stoode affected; as appeareth by this passage of Cæsar.

Cyneas interrogatus à Pyrrho qualis Roma esset? Respondit, Regũ vrbem sibi videri. Iusti. l. 8.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THirdly, we may obserue, that violence and partialitie, are the bane of all consultations: especiallie, when the common good is shadowed vvith priuate respects. And albeit, the grauitie of the Romaine Senate, farre exceeded all that can be spoken of other Councells of State, rectifying the inordinate affections of any Catiline that would lift vp his head higher then his fellowes: yet heere it suffered equitie and indifferencie to bee suppressed with faction, giuing way to violence, which gouerneth all thinges vntowardlie; and with cordes of priuate hate, oftentimes draweth the Common-wealth into vtter desolation. For preuention whereof, the Athenians swore their Senatours, to make the common good the chiefest scope of all their counsels: Implying thereby that priuate respects are alwaies offensiue to publique ends; and the State euer suffereth, when fauour preuaileth against the common profit.

Faction in a Councell, is an enemy to the publicke good.

Nam malè cũcta ministrat impetus, et stimulat non raro, priuati odij pertinacia in publicum exitium. Tac. 1. hist.

Tully, going about to direct a Councellor in this behalfe, onely wisheth a man to deliuer sincerely what hee thinketh of any matter, although hee happen to stand alone in his owne conceit: for, the issue of a businesse, dooth not so much concerne a Councellor, as to speake truely his opinion thereof. And to that end, the custome of the Romane Senate was, that the youngest & such as came last in place, should declare themselues first; that they might not bee forestalled in their opinions, nor put besides that they would haue spoken; together with the equalitie which it made of their voyces: for, thinges first spoken, doe alwaies sticke fastest in our apprehensions. And for that cause, Theodorus (a Greeke Tragedian) would neuer shew himselfe on the stage after any other Actor; as holding the first passages to affect most the Spectators. Notwithstanding which custome, it is reported, that Cæsar, in fauour of Pompey, after their new made alliance, would take his voice first, thereby to anticipate the opinion of others that should follow.

Athenienſis Senator iurabat ſe præcipuè populo conſulturũ. Demoſt. cõt. Near. 1. Philippic.

Ariſt. 7. polit. 17.

Sueto. in vita Iulij Cæſarũ.

The Emperours (as it seemeth) tooke what place they pleased; for, Tyberius in Marcellus cause said, that he would sentence openly, and vpon oath, that other men might doe the like. Whereunto Cn: Piso replied; What place wilt thou take to declare thy selfe, Cæsar? for, if thou speake first, I knowe how to follow; if last, I am affeard I shall dissent from thy opinion. But that which is most blameable in matter of councell, is, when they come to the Senate house as to a prize of flatterie. VVherein L: Piso is deseruedly commended, for that hee neuer willinglie shewed himselfe of a seruile opinion; but when necessitie forced him, hee tempered it with wisedome. Neither is it

Tacit. 1. Annal.

Tacit. 6. Annal.

749b

Plutarch. the leaſt miſchiet, that the condition of ſoueraintie is ſuch as will hardly indure reproofe; but muſt be diſguiſed, as Appolonius corrected Lyons, by beating dogges before them.

CHAP. II.

The Senate proceede againſt Cæſar, *with all eagerneſſe.*

THE Senate, riſing a little before night, were all ſent for to Pompey. He commended them for what they had done, and confirmed them for after reſolutions, reprehended ſuch as ſhewed themſelues indifferent, and ſtirred them vp to more forwardneſſe. Many which were of Pompeis former Armies were ſent for, vpon hope of reward & aduauncement. Many of the two legions which lately came from Cæſar, were commaunded to attend; inſomuch, as the Cittie ſwarmed with ſouldiers. Againſt the election of new Magiſtrates: C. Curio called out the Tribunes of the people: All the Conſuls friends, the kinſfolks & allies of Pompey, and ſuch others as had any former enmity with Cæſar, were cõpelled into the Senate. By the preſence & opiniõ of theſe Men, the weakeſt were terrified, the doubtfull confirmed, & the moſt part were cut off from giuing abſolute and free voyces. L: Piſo the Cenſor, and L: Roſcius the Prætor, offered themſelues to goe to Cæſar, to aduiſe him of theſe things; requiring but ſixe daies ſpace to returne an aunſwere. Others thought it fit, that Embaſſadors ſhould be ſent to Cæſar, to giue him notice of the pleaſure of the Senate. To all theſe was oppoſed what the Conſull, Scipio, and Cato thought fit. Cato was incited through former enmitie, and ſpecially, by the repulſe of the Prætorſhip. Lentulus, out of a conſideration of his great debts, hoping to commaund an Armie, to gouerne Prouinces, and to receiue the liberall acknowledgements of Kings, whom he ſhould thereby procure, to be ſtiled with the Title of friends to the people of Rome; inſomuch, as he would not ſtick to boaſt in priuate, that hee was like to proue a ſecond Sylla, on whom, the ſoueraine commaund of the Empire would be conferred. Scipio was drawen on by the ſame hope, of hauing the gouernment of a Prouince, or the commaund of an Armie; which by reaſon of his alliance he thought to ſhare with Pompey (beeing otherwiſe affeard to be called into iuſtice) as alſo through flattery and oſtentation, both of himſelfe, and other great friends, which were able to ſway much, as well in the courſe of iuſtice, as in the Common-wealth.

Pompeius vt primũ rempub. aggreſſus eſt, non quemquã animo parẽ tulit. Velleius Paterc.

Pompey, in his particular, was much prouoked by Cæſars enemies, and ſpecially, for that hee could indure no man to be his equall. Hee was alienated altogether from Cæſars friendſhippe, and had reconciled himſelfe to their common Enemies; the greateſt part of whom, were by his meanes gained to Cæſar,

in

in the time of their alliance: as also by the dishonour which he had gotten by taking those two legions from their iourney towards Asia and Syria, and vsing thē for the aduauncement of his owne particular: which things moued him to draw the matter to Armes. For these respects, all things were caried impetuouslie and confusedly; neither was there leasure giuen to Cæsars friends to aduertise him thereof; nor yet to the Tribunes, to avoide the danger which was falling vpon them, or to vse their right of opposition which L: Sylla left vnto them: but within seauen daies after they were entred into their office, they were forced to shift for their safetie; notwithstanding that the most turbulent and seditious Tribunes of former times, were neuer put to looke into their affaires, or to giue account of their actions before the eight Month. In the end, they tooke themselues to that extreame and last Act of Senate, which was neuer thought vpon, but whē the cittie was vpon the point of burning, or in the most desperate estate of the Common-weale. That the Consuls, Prators, Tribunes of the people, and such as had beene Consuls, and were resiant neere about the cittie, should endeuour that the Common-weale might not be indangered. This Act was made the seauenth of the Ides of Ianuary: so that the fiue first daies, in which the Senate might sit, after that Lentulus was entred into the Consulship (excepting onelie two dayes for the generall assembly of the people) most heauie & cruell Decrees were made, against the authority of Cæsar, and against the Tribunes of the people, famous and worthy men; who there-vpon fledde presently out of the cittie. Cæsar beeing then at Rauenna, attended an aunswere to his easie and modest demaunds, if by any reasonable course matters might be drawne to a peaceable end.

Ne quid respub. detrimenti capiat. Consecuti sunt dies Commitiales, per quos senatus haberi non poterat. Cic. L. fratri.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IT is the condition of humane nature, to make good that which once it hath auouched, although the matter be of small consequence in particular, & tendeth rather to infamie then to profit; neither will it easilie be reclaimed by motiues of reason, but is rather incited thereby *(per Antiperistasin)* to persist in wilfulnesse, then to harken to that which is more conuenient; especially, when either iealousie or reuenge doe implie an aduantage: for, then partialitie keepeth no measure; but to iustifie an errour, runnes headlong into all extremities, and flieth to the last refuge of desperate and deplored cases, to make disordered passions seeme good discretion. Which euidently appeareth by Pompeis faction, in resoluing of that desperate Act of Senate, which was neuer thought of but in most eminent danger. For, as in foule weather at sea, when a shippe rideth in a dangerous road, and through the violence of the tempest, is vpon the point of shipwrack, the Mariners are wont to cast out a sheete Anker as their last refuge: so had Rome anciently recourse to this Decree, at such times as the Common-wealth was in eminent and extreame calamitie; whether it were by enemies abroad, or by serpents in their bosome at home. Liuie speaking of the warre of

Vt gratia oneri, sic vltio in quæstu habetur. Tac.

Suprema lex Salus reipub.

749b

Lib. 3. of the Equi, ſaith; The Senators were ſo affrighted, that following the forme of the Decree which was alwaies reſerued for caſes of extreamitie, they ordained, that *Poſthumius* (one of the Conſuls) ſhould take care that the Common-wealth might not be endangered. The like was vſed in ciuill and inteſtine ſeditions: as, when Manlius Capitolinus aſpired to a Tyranny: and as likewiſe in the tumults of the Gracchij, the conſpiracie of Catiline, & other times of like danger. For, albeit the Conſuls had all ſouereaine authoritie, as well in warre as in peace; yet neuertheleſſe, there were certaine reſerued caſes wherein they had no power, without expreſſe order from the Senate, and aſſent from the people: as, to leuie an Armie to make war, to take money out of the Treaſury; whereas vpon ſuch a Decree, they were inabled to diſpoſe of all buſineſſes of State, without further mouing of the Senate or people: which Tully noteth in his Orations againſt Anthonie. I thinke it fit (ſaith hee) that the whole ſtate of the Common-weale be left vnto the Conſuls, and that they be ſuffered to defend the ſame; and to take care that the Common-weale be not indangered.

Plutar: in the life of Cicero.

5. *Philipp. Conſulibus totã rempub. cõmendandam cenſeo, ijsque permittẽdum vt rempub. defendant, prouideántque ne quid detrimenti reſpub: accipiat.*

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

Fabius. I May not omit (for the better vnderſtanding of this noble Hiſtorie) to ſay ſomewhat of the Perſons here mentioned: and firſt of Fabius, as deſcended of the nobleſt and moſt auncient Family of the Patrician Order; beeing able of themſelues to maintaine warre a long time againſt the Veij, a ſtrong & warlike towne, vntil at length they were al vnfortunately ſlaine by an ambuſhment: which Ouid mentioneth, where he ſaith;

2. *De Faſtis.*

Hæc fuit illa dies, in qua Veientibus arvis,
Trecentum Fabij ter cecidere duo.

Onely there remained of that houſe, a child then kept at Rome: which in tract of time, multiplied into ſixe great Families, all which had their turne in the higheſt charges and dignities of the Common-weale; amongſt whom, hee that ſupplanted Hanniball by temporizing, & therby got the ſurname of Maximus, was moſt famous, as Ennius witneſſeth;

Fab: Max.

Vnus homo nobis cunctando reſtituit rem:
Non ponebat enim rumores ante ſalutem.
Ergo póſtque magiſque viri nunc gloria claret.

But C: Fabius, here mentioned, neuer attained to any place of Magiſtracie, other then ſuch commaunds as he held in the warres vnder Cæſar.

Lentulus. Lentulus the Conſull was of the houſe of the Cornelians, from whom are ſaid to come xvi. Conſuls. He was from the beginning a mortall enemy to Cæſar, and ſo continued to his death, which fell vnto him in Egipt, by commaundement of King Ptolomey, after Pompey was ſlaine.

Scipio. Scipio was father in law to Pompey, after the death of Iulia, Cæſars daughter; and by that meanes, obtained the gouernment of Aſia. In the beginning of

of the Ciuil war, he brought good ſuccors to aſsiſt his ſon in law, as it ſolows in the third Cõmentary: & vpon the ouerthrowe at Pharſalia he fled into Affrick, where he renewed the war, & becam chief Commander of the remaining party againſt Cæſar; but being in the end defeated, he made towards Spaine: and fearing by the way leaſt he ſhould fall into his enemies hands, he ſlew himſelfe.

Marcellus.

Marcellus was of the ancient Family of the Claudians, which came originally of the Sabines; on his behalfe there is an Oration extant of Tullies, intituled, *Pro Marcello*. He was afterwards ſlaine by one Chilo.

M. Anto.

M. Antonius is famous in all the Romaine hiſtories, for attaining in a ſmall time to ſo great a height in that gouernment; for, in all the warres of Gallia, he was but a Treaſurer vnder Cæſar, which was the leaſt of all publique places of charge: In the beginning of the ciuill wars, hee was made Tribune of the people; and within leſſe then eight yeeres after, came to bee fellow partner with Octauius Cæſar in the gouernment of the Empire. And if Cleopatras beautie had not blinded him, he might haue eaſily through the fauour of the ſouldiers ſupplanted his Competitor, and ſeized vpon the Monarchie.

Caſsius.

The name of Caſsius was ominous for trouble to the ſtate of Rome, & their ends were as vnfortunate. This L: Caſsius, for his part, after the great troubles he had ſtirred vp in Spaine, was drowned in the mouth of the Riuer Eber.

Piſo.

Piſo was made Cenſor in the Conſulſhip of L: Paulus and Claudius Marcellus, hauing himſelfe been Conſull eight yeeres before, in the yere of Rome 695, ſucceeding Cæſar, and Bibulus; and was the man againſt whom Tullie penned that Oration which is extant *in Piſonem*. Touching the office of Cenſor, it is to be vnderſtood, that about the yeere of Rome 310, the Conſuls beeing diſtracted with multiplicitie of forraine buſineſſe, omitted the Cenſure or aſſeſment of the Cittie for ſome yeeres together: whereupon it was afterwards thought fit, that there ſhould be a peculiar officer appointed for that ſeruice, and to be called Cenſor; foraſmuch as euery man was to be taxed, rankt and valued, according to his opinion & cenſure. The firſt part of their office conſiſted in an account or valuation of the number, age, order, dignity, & poſſeſſion of the Romane citizens: for it was very material for the State to know the number of their people, to the end they might be informed of their owne ſtrength, and ſo ſhape their courſe accordingly, either in vndertaking warres, tranſplanting Colonies, or in making prouiſion of victualls in time of peace. It was alſo as requiſite to know euery mans age, whereby they grew capable of honour & offices, according to that of Ouid;

To know the number of Cittizens.

Their age.

De Faſt.

finitaque certis
Legibus eſt ætas, vnde petatur honos.

Halicarnaſſeus. lib. 4. Gotofred ad L. ætatem 3. §. De Cenſ.

M: Antonius commaunded, that the names of the Romaine children ſhould be brought into the Treaſurie within 30 daies after they were borne; according to which cuſtome, Francis the French king publiſhed an Edict, *Anno* 1539, that euery pariſh ſhould keepe a Regiſter of burials and chriſtenings: which ſince that time is vſed in England.

Their calling.

Maiorũ primus quiſquis fuit ille tuorum, aut Paſtor fuit, aut illud quod dicere noli.

The diſtinction of conditions and ſtates, ranging euery man in his proper order, is as neceſſary in the Common-weale, and as woorthy of the Cenſors

74916

Their ability.

notice as any thing beſides. Neither may the aſſeſment of mens abilities bee omitted: which was ordained that euery man might beare a part in the ſeruice of the State. In which reſpect, Seruius Tullus is commended, for rating men according to their wealth; whereas before that time euery man paid alike: for, men are taken to bee intereſſed in the Common-weale according to their meanes. The laſt and baſeſt ſort of Cittizens, were named *Capite cenſi*, and were ſet in the Subſidie at 375 peeces of money. Such as were not aſſeſſed, had no voice in the Common-weale.

Florus l.1.ca.6.

Gell. lib. 16. cap. 10. circ.

Poli. lib. 6.

The ſecond and chiefeſt part of this office, was in reforming maners, as the ground-plot and foundation of euery Common-wealth; to which end they had power to inquire into euery mans life. If any one had plaid the ill husband, and neglected his Farme, or left his Vine vntrimmed, the Cenſors tooke notice of it. If a Romaine knight kept his horſe leane, it was a matter for them to looke into. They depoſed, or brought in, new Senators. They reviewed all degrees and conditions of men: advaunced this man from a meane Tribe to a more honourable, and pulled another downe. They had the care of buildings, repairing of high waies, with other publique works; and were reputed of the beſt rank of Magiſtrates in Rome. L. Roſcius had formerly bin one of Cæſars Legates in Gallia: as appeareth in the fift Commentary, *Tertiam in Eſſuos. L. Roſcio.* The Prætor was Iudge in cauſes of controuerſie, & differences between partie and party; and was as the Caddy amongſt the Turkes.

L. Roſcius.

CHAP. III.

The Senate prepareth for warre.

Pompey hauing a charge of an Armie, could not enter into the Cittie prohibited by diuers lawes.

THE next day after, the Senate aſſembled out of the Cittie: where Pompey (according to ſuch inſtructions as he had formerly giuen to Scipio) extolled their conſtancy & magnanimity; acquainted them with his forces, conſiſting of ten legions in Armes; and further aſſured them, he knew of a certaine; that Cæſars ſouldiers were alienated from him, and would not be drawne either to defend or follow him. And vpon the aſſurance of theſe remonſtrances, other motions were entertained: As firſt, that a leuie ſhold be made throughout all Italy. That Fauſtus Sulla ſhould foorth-with be ſent as Propretor into Mauritania. That mony ſhold he deliuered out of the Treaſurie to Pompey. That king Iuba might haue the title of friend & confederate to the people of Rome; which Marcellus contradicting, ſtopt the paſſage thereof for that time. Philippus, Tribune of the people, countermaunded Fauſtus commiſsion: other matters were paſſed by Act. The two Conſular, and the other Prætorian Prouinces, vvere giuen to priuate men that had no office of Magiſtracie. Syria fell to Scipio, and Gallia to L: Domitius. Phillippus and Marcellus, were purpoſely omitted, and no lottes caſt for their imployment. Into the other Prouinces vvere ſent Prætors, vvithout any conſent or approbation of the

Fauſt. Sulla.

Rex Iuba, ſocius et amicus.

Gallia & Syria were two conſularie Prouinces.

Quorum nemo ſtultior eſt quã L: Domitius. Cic. ad Atticũ.

the people, as formerly had beene accuſtomed: and hauing performed their ordinary vowes, they put on their Military garments, and ſo tooke their iourney. The Conſuls (which before that time was neuer ſeene) went out of the Cittie, & had their Seriants priuatly within the Cittie, and in the Capitoll, againſt all order and ancient cuſtome. A leuie was made ouer all Italie: Armes and furniture was commaunded: Money was required from Municipall townes, and taken out of Temples and religious places. All diuine and humane Rights were confounded.

Paludati exeũt.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THe neglect of Ceremonies and formes in matter of State, is the ruine and aboliſhment of a Common-weale. For, if it hold generallie true which Philoſophers ſay; That the forme giueth being to whatſoeuer ſubſiſteth, and that euery thing hath his name from his faſhion and making: then it muſt neceſſarily follow, that the life and perfection of a State, dependeth wholly of the forme; which cannot be neglected but with hazard of confuſion. For, complements and ſolemnities, are neither *Nimia* nor *Minima* (as ſome haue imagined) either ſuperfluities, which may bee ſpared, or trifles of ſmall conſequence. But, as the fleſh couereth the hollow deformitie of the bones, and beautifieth the body with naturall graces: ſo are ceremonies, which ancient cuſtome hath made reuerent, the perfection and life of any Common-weale; and doe couer the nakedneſſe of publique actions, which otherwiſe wold not be diſtinguiſhed from priuate buſineſſes. And therfore the neglect of ſuch ceremonies, as were vſually obſerued to ennoble their actions, was as iniurious to the ſafety of the Empire, and as euident a demonſtration of faction and diſloyaltie; as the allotment of Prouinces to priuate perſons, or whatſoeuer elſe they broached, contrarie to the fundamentall rights of the publique Weale.

The vſe of Ceremonies. *Forma dat nomẽ et eſſe. Ariſt.*

Nimia nec Minima.

Ciuitatis legibus conſeruatis, ſalua quoque populi dominatio. Aeskin. in Cteſiphont.

Concerning which, it is to be vnderſtood, that no man was capable of thoſe gouernments, but ſuch as had borne the chiefeſt offices and places of charge. For, their manner was, that cõmonly vpon the expiration of their offices, the Conſuls and Prætors did either caſt lots for the Prouinces, which they called *Sortiri prouincias*, or did otherwiſe agree amongſt thẽſelues how they ſhould be diſpoſed: and that they tearmed, *Comparare Prouincias*. Liuie toucheth both the one & the other; *Principio inſequentis anni cùm Conſules noui de Prouincijs retuliſſent, primoquoq; tempore, aut cõparare inter eos Italiam et Macedoniam, aut ſortiri placuit.* Howbeit, ſometimes the people (whoſe aſſent was alwaies neceſſary) interpoſed their authoriie, & diſpoſed the ſame as they thought expedient. But ſuch as had neuer borne office of charge in the State, were no way capable of thoſe dignities, nor thought fit to commaund abroad, hauing neuer ſhewed their ſufficiencie at home.

The maner of diſpoſing of the Prouinces and gouernments.

Sortiri Prouincias, comparare Prouincias. Lib. 43.

For the maner of their ſetting forward out of Rome, after they were aſsigned to imployments, it appeareth by infinite examples of hiſtories, that they firſt went into the Capitoll, & there made publick ſacrifices & ſolemn vowes, either

The maner of their ſetting forward to their gouernments.

749.b

to build a Temple, or to doe ſome other worke woorthy good fortune, if their deſignes were happily atchiued; which they called *Vota nuncupari.* And hee that had made ſuch a vow, ſtood *voti reus* vntill his buſines ſorted to an iſſue: and after he had attained his deſire, he was *voti damnatus*, vntill he had aquitted himſelfe of his promiſe.

Vota nuncupari.
Voti reus.
Macrob. li. 3. cap. 2.

Touching their habite expreſſed in this phraſe, *Paludati exeunt*, it appeareth, as well by auncient Sculptures, as Medallies, that *Paludamentum*, was a cloake vſed and worne by men of warre, whether they commaunded in chiefe, or as Lieutenants and Centurions; and was tied with a knot vpon their left ſhoulder. Feſtus calleth all militarie garments, *Paludamenta.* And Varro giuing a reaſon of that name, ſaith; *Paluda à Paludamentis, ſunt hæc inſignia et ornamenta Militaria: Ideo ad bellum, cùm exit Imperator, ac Lictores mutant veſtem, et ſigna incinuerunt, Paludatus dicitur proficiſci: quæ propterea quod conſpiciuntur, qui ea habent, et Palam fiunt, Paludamenta dicta.* The colour of this cloake, was either purple or white. And therefore it was held a preſage of ill fortune, when at Carres, a Cittie in Meſopotamia, one gaue Craſſus a black cloake in ſteed of a white, as hee went to loſe the battaile to the Parthians.

Lib. 6. de lingua Lat.

Valerius, li. 1. cap. 6.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THe Romaines, not contented with the ſpacious circuit of the ſunne, bounding their Empire with the Eaſt and the Weſt, but for want of Regions and Countreys, ſearching the vaſtnes and depth of the ſea; did ſildome acknowledge any other ſoueraintie, or leaue a partie worthy their amitie, in any remote angle of the then knowne world. But if any Prince had been ſo fortunate, as to gaine the fauour and eſtimation of a friend or a confederate to the State, it was vpon ſpeciall and deſerued reſpects, or at the inſtance of their Generalls abroad, enforcing the woorthines of ſuch Potentates, and the aduantage they might bring to the ſeruice of the Empire. Which appeareth by that of Liuie, concerning Vermina, king Syphax ſonne; that no man was at any time acknowledged either a king or a friend by the Senate and people of Rome, vnleſſe firſt he had right well deſerued of the Common-weale.

Rex Iuba ſocius & amicus.
Raptores orbis, poſtquã cunctis vaſtantibus defuere Terræ, & Mare ſcrutãtur quos nec oriens nec occidens ſatiauerit. Tacit.
Neminem eſſe Regem ſolitum & amicũ á Senatu Populoq; Rom: appellari: niſi qui optimè de Rep. bene meritus eſſet. lib. 1. decad. 4.
Sequenti die &c. lib. 10. dec. 3.

The manner of this acknowledgement, is likewiſe particularly expreſſed by Liuie, in another place ſpeaking of Scipio. The day following (ſaith hee) to put king Maſsiniſſa out of his griefe and melancholie, hee aſcended vp to his Tribunall, and hauing called an aſſembly of the ſouldiers, preſented him before them; where he firſt honoured him with the appellation of king, accompanied with many faire praiſes: and then gaue him a crowne of gold, a cuppe of gold, a chaire of State, a ſcepter of Iuorie, and a long robe of Purple. To which agreeth that of Cæſar: That Ariouiſtus was by the Senate ſtiled by the name of King and Friend, and preſented with great and rich gifts; which happened but to few, and was onely giuen by the Romaines to men of great deſert. Howbeit,

Lib. 1. de bell: Gallico.

beit, such as had gouernments and imployments abroad, did oftentimes make profit of giuing this honour: whereof Cæsar taxeth Lentulus in the former chapter. And in this sense was king Iuba brought in question, to bee called by the Senate, a Friend and Associate to the State of Rome. *Et Spe Apellandorum Regum.*

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

TOuching the franchises and liberties of the townes of Italy, and others in the dominions of the Romaine Empire, called *Municipia*; it is to be noted, that according to Gellius, those were called *Municipes*, that beeing gouerned by their owne lawes, and their owne Magistrates, were neuertheless indowed with the freedome of Rome. And therefore Adrianus maruailed, that the Italicenses and Vticenses, did rather desire to bee Coloni, and so tied to the obedience of forraine & strange lawes, then to liue in a Municipall state, vnder their owne Rights and Customes; and as Festus addeth, with the vse of their peculiar rites for matter of religion, such as they anciently vsed, before they were priuiledged with the immunities of Rome. *Municipes.* *Lib. 6. cap. 13.* *Lib. 11.*

For the better vnderstanding whereof, we are to obserue, that there were degrees and differences of Municipall townes; for some had voices with the Romane people, in all their elections and suffragies: and some others had none at all. For, Gellius in the same place, saith, that the Cerites obtained the freedom of the Cittie, for preseruing the holy things of Rome, in the time of the warre with the Galles, but without voice in elections. And thence grew the name of *Cerites Tabulæ*, wherein the Censors inroled such, as were by them for some iust cause depriued of their voices. And the Tusculani, beeing at first receiued into the liberties of the Cittie, according to the admission of the Cerites, were afterward, by the free grace of the people, made capable of giuing voyces. *Cum suffragio* / *Municipium* / *Sine suffragio.* *Cerites Tabulæ.* *Liuie lib. 6.*

The meanes of obtaining this freedome, was first and specially by Birth: wherin it was required (as may be gathered by Appius Oration) that both the Parents, as well the mother as the father, should be free themselues. Howbeit, Vlpian writeth, that the sonne may challenge the freedome of the State, wherin his father liued and was free. So that the father being of Campania, & the mother of Puteolis, he iudgeth the sonne to belong to Campania: According to that of Canuleius; That the children inherite the condition of the father, as the head of the Family, and the better rule to direct in this behalfe. Neuertheless, Adrianus made an Act of Senate in fauour of Issue; That if the wife were a cittizen of Rome, and the husband a Latine, the children should be Romaine Cittizens. And the Emperour Iustinian, caused it likewise to be decreed, that the mother beeing a free woman, and the father a bond-man, the son should be free. Such as were thus borne free, were called *Ciues originarij*. *Liuie lib. 3.* *Liuie lib. 3.* *Ciues originarij.*

The second meanes of obtaining this freedome, was by Manumission, or setting bond-men at libertie: for in Rome, all men freed from bondage were taken for Cittizens; and yet rankt in the last and meanest order of the people.

749.b

The third meanes, was by gift, or coaptation; and ſo Romulus at firſt inlarged and augmented Rome; Theſeus, Athens; Alexander Magnus, Alexandria, ſited at the out-lets of Nilus; and Richard the firſt, London; by taking all ſuch ſtrangers into the freedome of the Cittie, as had inhabited there for tenne yeeres together. The Emperours were profuſe in giuing this honour. Cicero floutes Cæſar, for taking whole nations into the freedome of the Citty; and Anthony gaue it to all that liued in the Romaine Empire. Wherevpon, as Vlpian witneſſeth, Rome was called *Communis Patria*. Popular ſtates were more ſparing in this kind; as may be deemed by the aunſwere of one of the Corinthian Embaſſadours, to Alexander. Wee neuer gaue the freedome of our Cittie (ſaith he) to any man but to thy ſelfe and Hercules. And vntill Herodotus time, the Lacedemonians had neuer admitted any, but onely Tiſamenus and his brother.

Polido: Virg.

1 Philip.

Seneca 1. de benef. cap. 13. Herod. lib. 9.

The priuiledges of this freedome were great; for, the Cittizens of Rome were held to be *Maieſtate plenos*. Is the beſt man of Gallia (ſaith Tully) to be compared with the meaneſt Cittizen of Rome? And hence came that law, requiring, that the life of a Cittizen ſhould not bee brought in queſtion, but by the generall aſſembly of the people. Verres hauing condemned one Coſanus, a Romaine Cittizen in Sicilia, Tully vrgeth it as a matter vnſufferable: *Facinus eſt (inquit) vinciri Ciuem Romanum, ſcelus verberari, prope parricidium necari, quid dicam in crucem agi?* vvith many the like examples: beſides the poſsibilitie they were in, if their ſufficiencie were anſwerable accordinglie, to become great in the State; and conſequently, Commaunders of the Empire.

An quiſquam ampliſſimus Galliæ, cum infimo Ciue Romano comparãdus eſt? Cicero pro M. Font.

De capite Ciuis niſi per maximũ comitiatũ oloſque quos cenſores in partibus populi locaſſint, ne ferunto. Cic. 3. de legib.

CHAP. IIII.

Cæſar taſteth the affection of the Souldiers.

Cæſar vnderſtanding of theſe things, called the ſouldiers together, and acquainted them with all the iniuries which his Enemies from time to time had done vnto him; complaining that Pompey was by their practice and meanes alienated frõ him, and drawne through enuy of his good fortune, to partialize againſt him; notwithſtanding that he had alwaies affected his honour, and endeuoured the aduauncement of his renowne and dignitie: Lamenting likewiſe the preſident which this time had brought into the State; that the Tribunes authoritie ſhould be oppoſed and ſuppreſſed by Armes, which former ages had by force of Armes reeſtabliſhed. For, Sylla hauing ſtript the Tribuneſhip, naked of all rights and prerogatiues, yet left it the freedome of oppoſition: But Pompey, who would ſeeme to reſtore it to the dignity frõ which it was fallen, did take away that power which was onely left vnto it. The Senate neuer reſolued of that Act, That the Magiſtrates ſhould take a courſe for the ſafetie of the Common-weale, whereby the people were neceſſarily ſummoned to Armes;

Bellorũ ergo ſocij qui mille pericula mortis, mecum, ait experti, decimo iam vincitis anno. &c. Lucan lib. 1.

Armes; but in times of pernicious lawes, vpon the violence of the Tribunes, or the mutinie and seceſsion of the people, vvhen the Temples & high places of the Cittie were taken and held against the State: which diſloyalties of former ages, were expiated and purged by the fortune and diaſter of the Saturnines and the Gracchi. But at this preſent, there was no ſuch matter attempted, ſo much as in thought: no law publiſhed; no practice with the people; no tumult; no departure out of the Cittie. And therefore adhorted them; that foraſmuch as vnder his leading and commaund, for nine yeres together they had moſt happily caried the gouernment, fought many proſperous and victorious battels, ſettled all Gallia and Germanie in peace; they would now in the end, take his honor into their protection, and defend it againſt the malice of his aduerſaries. The ſouldiers of the xiij. legion which were preſent (for them onely had hee called out in the beginning of the troubles, and the other legions were not as yet come) cried out inſtantly, That they were readie to vndertake his defence againſt ſuch wrongs, and to keepe the Tribunes of the people from iniurie.

Whereof *Agraria* the chiefeſt.

Plutarch ſaith he had the 11. 500. foote 300. horſe that ſide the Alpes: which amounteth to the iuſt number of a legion.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

AS Publique-weales and Societies are chiefely ſupported and maintained by iuſtice: ſo likewiſe, ſuch as liue in the ciuill communitie of the ſame, and inioy the benefit of a well qualified gouernment, doe take themſelues intereſſed in the maintenaunce of iuſtice, and cannot indure the tyrannie of wrongs; vnleſſe happely (as euery man is partiall in his owne cauſe) they be the authors thereof themſelues. The firſt dutie of iuſtice, which is, *Ne cui quis noceat*, did Cæſar make the theame of his Oration to the ſouldiers; aggrauating his particular iniuries, by opening and enforcing the malice of his Aduerſaries: and making the State a partie in his ſufferings, through the oppreſsion and defacing of the Tribuneſhip; which in times of libertie, and iuſt proceeding, was ſacred and inviolable.

Cic: 1. officio.

Nihil iuſtius quã propulſare iniuriam. Xenophon Cyrop. lib. 1.

Iuſtitiæ primum munus eſt ne cui quis noceat. Cic. lib. 1. de officijs.

Theſe remonſtrances were apprehended by the ſouldiers, as matters ſpecially cõcerning their dutie; holding thẽſelues, either bound to redreſſe them, or otherwiſe to be guiltie of betraying their parents, coũtry, cõpanions & friends. Some report, that one Lælius, a Primipile of Cæſars Armie, making aunſwere to this ſpeech, gaue aſſurance of the ſouldiers good affection; which the reſt approued with a generall acclamation. Howbeit, the argument lay couched in a Sophiſme, pretending Cæſars right, but concluding the ruine of the State.

Qui non defendit nec obſiſtit ſi poteſt iniuriæ, tam eſt in vitio, quã ſi parentes, aut amicos, aut patriam, aut ſocios deſerat. Cic. lib. 1. offi.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

SEcondly, we may obſerue, that as diſcord and diſſenſion, renting aſunder the bonds of ciuill communitie, are the bane of floriſhing and opulent Citties, and make the greateſt Empires examples of Mortalitie: ſo by the ſame rule of diſcourſe, it is alſo true, that the mutuall

Opulentis ciuitatibus venenũ ſeditio, magna imperia mortalia reddidit. Liv: lib. 2.

749b

mutuall reſpects of well qualified friendſhip, are as expedient, both for the faſtening of the ioynts of a publique State, & for keeping the particular parts in due temper and proportion, as either treaſure, or Armies, or any other thing required thereunto. Hence it is that Cicero ſaith, that wee haue as much vſe of friendſhip, as of fire and water: and that he that ſhould goe about to take it from among men, did indeauour (as it were) to take the ſunne out of the heauen; which by heate, light, and influence, giueth life vnto the world. And as men are eminent in place and authoritie, and haue vſe of many wheeles for the motion of their ſeuerall occaſions; ſo haue they the more neede of amitie and correſpondencie, to ſecond the multiplicitie of their deſires, and to put on their buſineſſes to their wiſhed ends.

Non Exercitus neque Theſauri præſidia regni ſunt, verum amici. Saluſt. in bello Iugurth. Lib. de amicitia.

Vt quiſq; maximè opibus principatu, et poteſtate excellit, ita amicis maximè indiget. Ariſt. Etlnc. 8.

CHAP. V.

Cæſar taketh Arminium, receiueth and aunſwereth meſſages from Pompey.

Rimini.

L. Cæſar.

Cæſar hauing ſounded the minds of the ſouldiers, went directly with that legion to Arminium: and there met with the Tribunes of the people that were fled vnto him, ſent for the reſt of their legions from their wintering Campes, and gaue order they ſhould follow him. Thither came young L: Cæſar, whoſe father was a Legate in Cæſars Campe. And after ſome ſpeech of the occaſion of his comming, acquainted Cæſar, that Pompey had giuen him a meſſage in charge to be deliuered vnto him: which was, that he deſired to cleare himſelf to Cæſar, leaſt he might peradventure take thoſe things to be done in ſcorne of him, which were commaunded onely for the ſeruice of the State; the good whereof he alwaies preferred before any priuate reſpect: and that Cæſar likewiſe was tied in honour to lay aſide his indignation and affection for the Common-wealths ſake: and not to be ſo tranſported with anger and diſdaine of his Adverſaries, as he ſeemed to be; leaſt in hoping to bee auenged of them, he ſhould hurt the publique weale of his Country. Hee added ſomewhat more of the ſame ſubiect, together with excuſes on Pompeys behalfe. Almoſt the ſelfe ſame diſcourſe, and of the ſelfe ſame things, Roſcius the Prætor dealt with Cæſar, and ſaid that hee had receiued them in charge from Pompey: which although they ſeemed no way to ſatisfie or remooue the iniuries and wrongs complained of; yet hauing got fit men, by whom that which he wiſhed might bee imparted to Pompey, he praied thē both, for that they had brought vnto him what Pompey required, they would not thinke it much to returne his deſires to Pompey; if happily with ſo little labour they might accord ſo great differences, and free all Italy from feare and danger. That he had euer held the dignitie of the Common-weale in high regard, and dearer then his owne life. He greeued much, that

that a benefit giuen him by the people of Rome, should be spightfully wrested frõ him by his aduersaries; that six months of his gouernment were to be cut off, & so he to be called home to the Cittie: notwithstanding the people had commaunded at the last creation of Magistrates, that there should regard be had of him, although absent. Neuertheless, for the Comwon-wealths sake hee could be content to vndergoe the losse of that honour. And hauing writ to the Senate that all men might quit their Armies, he was so far from gaining the same, that contrariwise a levie was thereupon made throughout all Italy; and the two legions which were drawne from him, vnder a pretence of the Parthian warre, were still retained about the Cittie, which was likewise in Armes. And to what tended all this, but his destruction? And yet notwithstanding, hee was content to condiscend to all things, and to indure all inconveniences, for the cause of the Publique weale. Let Pompey goe to his gouernment and Prouinces; let both the Armies be discharged; let all men in Italy lay downe their Armes; let the Citty be freed of feare; the assemblies of the people left to their auncient libertie; and the whole gouernment of the State remitted to the Senate and people of Rome. For the better accomplishment whereof, vnder well aduised and secure conditions, let an oath be taken for due keeping of the same: or otherwise, let Pompey approache neerer vnto him; or suffer Cæsar to come neerer to him, that these controuersies might happely receiue an end by conference.

Roscius, hauing this message, went to Capua, accompanied with L. Cæsar; where finding the Consuls and Pompey, he deliuered vnto them Cæsars propositions. They hauing consulted of the matter, made an aũnswere in writing, and returned it by them to Cæsar, wherof this was the effect; That he should returne into Gallia, quit Arminiũ, & dismisse his Army: which if he did, Pompey would then goe into Spaine; In the meane time, vntill assurance were giuen that Cæsar wold perform as much as he promised, the Consuls & Pompey wold not forbeare to levy souldiers. The condition was too vnequall, to require Cæsar to leaue Arminium, and to returne into his Prouince; and Pompey to hold Prouinces & legions belonging to other men: to haue Cæsar dismisse his Armie, and he to raise new troopes; to promise simply to goe to his gouernment, but to assigne no day for his departure: insomuch, that if hee had not gone vntill Cæsars time of gouernment had expired, he could not haue been blamed for falsifying his promise. But forasmuch as they appointed no time for a conference, nor made any shew of comming neerer, there could no hope be conceiued of peace.

Capua. *Cicero, lib. 7. ad Atticum, epist. 13,* saith; that this aunswer was made at Thianũ, in the territories of L'auour, the 25 of Ianuary.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

CAesar, lying at Ravenna, within his gouernment of Gallia, and vnderstanding how matters past at Rome, according as Plutarch reporteth, commaunded diuers of his Centurions to goe before to Arminium, without any other armour then their swords; and to possesse themselues thereof with as little tumult as they could. And then leauing the troopes about him to be commaunded by Hortensius, he continued a whole day together in publique sight of all men, to behold the fencing of the *Plutarchus in vita Cæsaris.*

749b

Sword-players. At night hee bathed his body, and then kept companie with ſuch as he had bidden to ſupper; and after a while roſe from the table, wiſhing euery man to keepe his place, for he would inſtantly come againe. Howbeit, hauing ſecretly commaunded ſome of his followers to attend him, in ſuch maner as might giue leaſt ſuſpicion, hee himſelfe tooke a Coach which he had hired; and making ſhew of going a contrary way, turned ſuddenly towardes Arminium. When hee came to the little riuer Rubicon, which diuided his gouernment from the reſt of Italie, he ſtood confounded through remorſe of his deſperate deſsigne, and wiſt not whither it were better to returne or goe on: but in the end, laying aſide all doubtfull cogitations, he reſolued vpon a deſperate Adage, importing as much as *Fall back, fall edge.* And paſsing ouer the Riuer, neuer ſtaied running with his Coach, vntill he came within the Cittie of Arminium: Where he met Curio & Antonius, Tribunes of the people; and ſhewed them to the ſouldiers, as they were driuen to flie out of Rome, diſguiſed like ſlaues in a Carriers cart.

Multa videri volumus velle, ſed nolumus. Seneca, epiſt. 96

Let it lie vpon the Dice.

Bonum eſt dum adhuc ſtat nauis in portu, præcauere tempeſtatẽ futuram; et non eo tempore, quo in medias irruerit procellas, trepidare. Ioſep. de bello Iud. l. 2.

It is ſaid, that the night before he paſſed ouer this Riuer, hee dreamed that he lay with his mother in an vnnaturall ſenſe; but of that, hee himſelfe maketh no mention. This Cittie of Arminium, is now called Rimini, and ſtandeth in Romania, vpon the Adriatick ſea, in the Popes dominion. The Riuer Rubicon, was anciently the bounds of Gallia; ouer which, Auguſtus cauſed a faire bridge to be built, with this inſcription;

IVSSV. MANDATV-VE. P.R. COS. IMP. MILI. TIRO. COMMILITO. MANIPVLARIS-VE. CENT. TVRMÆ-VE. LEGIONARI-VE. ARMAT. QVISQVIS. ES. HIC. SISTITO. VEXILLVM. SINITO. NEC CITRA. HVNC. AMNEM. RVBICONEM. DVCTVM. COMMEATVM. EXERCITVM-VE. TRADVCITO. SI. QVIS. HVIVSCE. IVSSIONIS. ERGO. ADVERSVS. FECIT. FECERIT-VE. ADIVDICATVS. ESTO. HOSTIS. P.R. AC. SI. CONTRA. PATRIAM. ARMA. TVLERIT. SACROSQVE. PENATES. E. PENETRALIBVS. ASPORTAVERIT. SANCIO. PLEBISCI. SENATVS-VE. CONSVLT. VLTRA. HOS. FINES. ARMA. PROFERRE. LICEAT. NEMINI.

S. P. Q. R.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

IF this manner of proceeding be brought into diſpute, and the reaſon required why Cæſar kept not himſelfe in the prouince of Gallia, where he might haue held his gouernment according to his owne deſire, or otherwiſe haue drawne his adverſaries to buckle with the ſtrength of thoſe conquering Legions; and ſo brought the buſineſſe to a ſhort end, with as great probabilitie of good ſucceſſe, as by any hazard of vndertaking: It is to bee vnderſtoode, that in cauſes of this nature, which ſildome admitte anie treatie of accorde, hee that ſtriketh firſt, and hath the advantage

advantage of the forehand, is well entered into the way of victorie: for, the rule is of old, that if an enemy hath a deſigne in hand, it is farre more ſafe to begin firſt, and by way of preuention, to giue the onſet on him, rather then to ſhew a readineſſe of reſiſting his aſſaults. For, if blowes (of neceſsitie) muſt be way-makers to peace, it were a miſtaking to be either wanting or behind hand therein; beſides the gaine which attendeth this advantage. For, hee that ſtands affected to deny what is iuſt, and of right due, doth neuertheleſſe grant all things which the ſword requireth; and will not ſticke to ſupply all vniuſt refuſals, with as great an ouer-plus of what may be demaunded. For which cauſe, Cæſar ſtaid not the comming of his whole Army; but began with thoſe forces which were ready at hand: and ſo preuenting all intendements, hee put his aduerſaries to ſuch a ſtraight, that they quitted Italie for feare, and left Rome (with whatſoeuer was ſacred or precious therein) to the mercy of them whom they had adiudged enemies to their Countrey.

Magis terrorem incutit, vt inuadere volenti prior occurras, quã vt te repugnaturum ſignifices. Thucyd. lib. 6. Arma tenenti omnia dat, qui iuſta negat. Lucan. lib. 1.

CHAP. VI.

¶ Cæſar taketh diuers Municipall *Townes*.

FOR which regard, he ſent M. Antonius with fiue cohorts to Arctium: but he himſelfe ſtaid at Arminium with two legions, and there intended to inroll new troopes; and with ſeuerall cohorts, tooke Piſaurum, Fanum, and Ancona. In the meane while, being aduertiſed that Thermus, the Prætor, did hold Tignium, with fiue cohorts, and fortified the place, and that all the inhabitants were well inclined towards him; hee ſent Curio thither with three cohorts, which he had at Piſaurum and Arminium. Vpon notice of whoſe comming, Thermus (doubting of the affection of the towne) drew his cohorts forth of the Cittie, and fled. The ſouldiers by the way went from him, and repaired home-ward. Curio was there receiued with the great contentment and ſatisfaction of all men. Vpon notice whereof, Cæſar conceiuing hope of the fauourable affections of the Municipall townes, brought the cohorts of the 13 legion out of their guarizons, and marched towardes Auximum; a towne held by Atius, with certaine cohorts which hee had brought thither with him: and hauing ſent out diuers Senatours, made a levie of men throughout all the Countrey of Picenum.

Cæſars comming beeing knowne, the Decuriones of Auximum repaired to Atius Varus, accompanied with great troopes of people; told him that the matter concerned not him at all: for, neither themſelues, nor the reſt of the Municipall townes, would ſhut their gates againſt ſuch a Commaunder as Cæſar was, that by great and worthy ſeruice had ſo well deſerued of the Common-wealth:

Cæſar.
Halfe a legion beeing about 2500 men.
Piſaurum.
Peſarò. Ital.
Fanum.
Ancona.
Tignium.
Auximum.
Atius Varus
Picenum.

749.b

and therefore adviſed him to conſider what might enſue thereof, and the danger which might befall him in particular. Varius, beeing throughly wakened at this warning, drew out the Guariſon which he had brought in, and ſo fled away: and being overtaken by a few of Cæſars firſt troopes, was compelled to make a ſtand; and there giuing battell, was forſaken of his men. Some of the ſouldiers went home, and the reſt came to Cæſar. Amongſt them was taken L. Puppius, Centurion of a Primipile order, which place he had formerly held in Pompeys Army. Cæſar commended Atius ſouldiers; ſent Puppius away; gaue thanks to them of Auximum; and aſſured them of a mindfull acknowledgement on his behalfe for this ſeruice.

L. Puppius.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

AMongſt other things which ſerue to inable our iudgements, and do make men wiſe to good fortune: that which is gathered from ſimilitude or likeneſſe of qualitie, is not the vnſureſt ground of our diſcourſe; but oftentimes giueth more light to guide our paſſage, thorough the doubtfulnes of great enterpriſes, then any other help of reaſon: for, he that will attend an overture from euery particular, and tarry for circumſtances to accompliſh all his purpoſes, & make no vſe of inſtances to better his advantage, ſhall neuer wade farre in buſineſſes of moment, nor atchieue that which he deſireth. Which Cæſar well obſerued: for, vpon the accidentall diſcouerie of the diſpoſition of one towne, hee thereby tooke occaſion to make triall how the reſt ſtood affected: and either found them or made them anſwerable to his hopes.

Peſaro. Ital. *Plut. Anto.*

Concerning theſe places taken by Cæſar, it is to be vnderſtood, that *Piſaurum* is ſited on the Adriatick ſea, and belongeth to the Dutchie of Vrbine; a towne famous of old, by reaſon of the prodigious opening of the earth, and ſwallowing vp the inhabitants before the battell of Actium, ſome few yeeres after it was thus taken by Cæſar.

Fano. Ital.

Fanum was ſo called of a faire Temple which was there built to Fortune. *Tacit. Annal.* 10. *Exercitus Veſpaſiani ad Fanum Fortunæ iter ſiſtit.* It is a ſmall towne on the ſame ſea, and belongeth to the Pope.

Ancona.

Ancona is a famous towne vpon the Adriaticke ſea, ſited vpon a boaw-like promontorie, which taketh in the ſea betweene two forlands; and ſo maketh one of the faireſt Hauens of all Italie, as well for largenes as for ſafetie. From whence riſeth that common ſaying, expreſsing the rareneſſe and ſingularity of three things; *Vnus Petrus in Roma*, noting the beauty of Saint Peters Church: *Vna Turris in Cremona*, the excellent workmanſhip of a ſteeple there: And *vnus Portus in Ancona*, which is this Hauen. The Emperour Traian, to giue it more ſhelter, and keepe it from the furie of the wind, raiſed the top of the Promontorie in faſhion of a halfe moone, with a mount made of great Marble ſtones: and made it Theater wiſe, with deſcents and degrees to goe to the ſea; together with an Arke triumphall in memorie thereof. The towne is now vnder the Pope.

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THis word *Decurio* hath a double vnderſtanding: for, Romulus hauing 3000 foote, and 300 horſe, diuided them into three Tribes,& euery Tribe into ten Curies, containing 100 foote men and tenne horſmen. Whereby Marcellinus concludeth, that *Decuriones, et Centuriones à numero cui in Militia præerant dicebantur.* But Vegetius is more particular in this point. A Companie of footmen (ſaith he) was called a *Centurie* or *Maniple*: and a troope of horſe was called *Turma*, of *Ter-denos*, contayning 30 men, whereof the Captaine was named *Decurio*. In which ſenſe Cæſar ſpeaketh; *Ea res per fugitiuos L. Aemylij Decurionis equitum Gallorum hoſtibus nunciatur.* But in this place it hath another ſignification: for, the Romaines, when they ſent any Cittizens to people and inhabite a place, they choſe out euery tenth man; ſuch as were found moſt able, and of beſt ſufficiencie, to make and eſtabliſh a publique Councell: whom they called *Decuriones*; according as Pomponius and other Ciuilians vnderſtand it. So that theſe *Decuriones* were the Senate of that place.

Decuriones.

Lib. 2. cap. 14.

Lib. 1. de bell. Gallico.

CHAP. VII.

Lentulus flieth in great feare out of Rome. Cæſar commeth to Corfinium.

Caſar.

THeſe things beeing reported at Rome, the Cittie was ſuddenly ſtrooke into ſuch a terrour, that when Lentulus the Conſull came to open the Treaſurie, and to deliuer out money to Pompey according to the Act of Senate, he fled out of the Cittie, & left the inner chamber of the Treaſurie open. For, it was reported (although vntruly) that Cæſar was neere approching, & that his Caualrie was hard at hand. Marcellus, the other Conſul, together with moſt of the other Magiſtrates, followed after. Pompey, departing the day before, was gone to thoſe legions which he had taken from Cæſar, & had left in Apulia to winter. In the meane while, the inrolement of ſouldiers ceaſed within the Cittie. No place ſeemed ſecure betweene that and Capua. There they began firſt to aſſemble and aſſure themſelues; impreſting for ſouldiers, ſuch as by Iulius law were ſent thither to inhabite. And the Fencers which were there trained and exerciſed by Cæſar, for the entertainement of the people of Rome, were by Lentulus brought out, ſet at libertie, mounted vpon horſes, & cõmaunded to follow him. But afterwards, vpõ aduiſe of his friends (euery mans iudgement diſallowing thereof) he diſperſed them heere and there throughout Campania, for their better ſaſetie and keeping.

Sanctiore Aerario.

Capua.

Lex Iulia.

749b

Picenum.

Cingulum.

Aſculum.

L. Hirrus.
Camerinum
Domitius
Aeneobarb.
Corſinium.
Albania
Marſia.
Pelignia.

2500 men.

Cæſar, diſlodging from Auximum, marched throughout all the Countrey of Picenum, and was moſt willingly receiued by all the Præfectures of thoſe Regions, and relieued with all neceſſaries which his ſouldiers ſtood in need of; inſomuch as Commiſsioners were ſent vnto him from Cingulum, a towne which Labienus had founded, and built from the ground at his owne charges, promiſing to obay whatſoeuer he commaunded: wherevpon he required ſouldiers, & they ſent them accordingly. In the meane time, the twelfth legion ouertooke Cæſar, and with theſe two hee marched directly to Aſculum, a towne which Lentulus Spinther held with ten Cohorts: who, vnderſtanding of Cæſars approche, left the place; and labouring to carry the troopes with him, was forſaken by the greateſt part of the ſouldiers: and ſo marching with a few, happened by chaunce vpon Vibullius Rufus, ſent of purpoſe by Pompey into the Countrey of Picenum, to confirme and ſettle the people. Vibullius, being aduertiſed how matters went there, tooke the ſouldiers, and ſo diſmiſſed him of his charge: gathering likewiſe from the confining Regions, what cohorts hee could get from Pompeis former inrolements; and amongſt others, entertained L: Hirrus, flying with ſixe cohorts out of Camerinum, whereof he had the keeping. Theſe being all put together, made 13 cohorts; and by long marches, he made towards Domitius Aeneobarbus, who was at Corſinium, telling him that Cæſar was at hand with two legions. Domitius had raiſed twenty cohorts, out of Albania, Marſia, and Pelignia, adiacent Countreys. Aſculum beeing taken in, and Lentulus driuen out, Cæſar made inquirie after the ſouldiers that had left Lentulus, and commaunded them to bee inrolled for him. And after one daies aboade for the prouiſion of Corne, he marched towards Corſinium. Vpon his approche thither, Domitius ſent 5 cohorts out of the towne, to breake downe the bridge of the Riuer, which was about three mile off. The vauntgard of Cæſars Armie, incountering with Domitius ſouldiers, draue them from the bridge, & forced them to retrait into the towne; whereby Cæſar paſt ouer his legions, made a ſtand before the towne, & incamped himſelfe vnder the walles.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Sempre é congiunto in vn medeſimo ſuggetto l' Inſolentia con la Timiditá. Lib. 2.

IT is well obſerued by Guichardine, that Inſolencie & Timiditie are neuer found aſunder, but doe alwaies accompany one another in the ſame ſubiect; for, the minde beeing the center of all ſuch motions, doth according to euery mans nature, giue the like ſcope to paſsions of contrariety, and extend them both to an equidiſtant circumference: as, if courage ſhall happen to dilate it ſelfe to Inſolencie, then is doubtfulneſſe in like manner inlarged to Cowardice; & will imbaſe mens thoughts as lowe, as they did riſe in height by inſulting. For which cauſe it is aduiſed by ſuch as treat of Morality, that men be well warie in admitting dilatation of paſsions, or in ſuffering them to flie out beyond the compaſſe of reaſon, which containeth the meaſure of Equabilitie, commended by Cicero, to be obſerued throughout the whole courſe of mans life. Lentulus the Conſull may be an inſtance of

De Officijs.

this

this weakenes, and learne others moderation by ſhunning his intemperancie. For, in queſtion of qualifying the rage of theſe broiles, & ſorting of things to a peaceable end, his arrogancie was incompatible with tearmes of agreement, and overſwaide the Senate with heedleſſe impetuoſitie. And againe, when his authoritie, and Conſular grauitie ſhould haue ſettled the diſtracted Cõmons, and made good his firſt reſolution, his over-haſtie flying out of the Cittie, did rather induce the people to belieue, that there was no ſafetie within thoſe wals, not for ſo ſmall a time, as might ſerue to haue ſhut the Treaſurie at his heeles; and ſo became as abiect, as before hee ſhewed himſelfe inſolent.

Concerning theſe words (*Aperto ſanctiore Aerario*) it is to be noted, that *Aerarium* was their publique Treaſurie; and by the appointment of Valerius Publicola, was made within the Temple of Saturne: whereof diuers men make diuers coniectures. Macrobius ſaith, that as long as Saturne continued in Italie, there was no theft committed in all the countrey: and therefore his Temple was thought the ſafeſt place to keepe money in. Plutarch thinketh rather, that the making of the Treaſurie in that place, did allude to the integritie of the time wherein Saturne raigned; for, auarice and deceit was not then known amongſt them. S. Cyprian is of an opinion, that Saturne firſt taught Italie the vſe and coynage of money; and therefore they gaue the keeping thereof to his Dietie. Howſoeuer; it is manifeſt, that not onely the publique Treaſure was there kept, but alſo their Records, Chartes, Ordinances and Edicts: together with ſuch bookes as were for their immeaſurable greatnes, called *Libri Elephantini*; containing all their Acts of Senate and deedes of Armes, atchieued by the Commaunders abroad, as alſo their militarie Enſignes which they fetched alwaies from thence when they went into the field: and there likewiſe did ſuch Embaſſadours as came to Rome, enregiſter their names, as Plutarch affirmeth.

Aerarium. Plutar. in vita Publicolæ. Aerarium populus Romanus in æde Saturni habuit. Feſtus.

Libri Elephantini.

Signa ex Aerario prompta ferũtur ad Dictatorem. Liv. lib. 4.

It was called *Aerariũ* of *Aes*, ſignifying Braſs; for that the firſt money vſed by the Romaines was of that metall, vntill the yeere of Rome 485, as Pliny witneſſeth; when they began firſt to coyne peeces of ſiluer marked with the letter X. whereof they tooke the appellation of *Denarium*, as valuing ten aſſes of braſs, which before they vſed for their coyne; and euery of the ſaide aſſes waied 12 ounces. Touching their order obſerued in their Treaſurie, for their diſpoſing and laying vp of their moneys, we muſt vnderſtand, that as bodies politique require neceſſarie and ordinarie treaſure to be imploied in ſuch manner, as may beſt concurre with the publique honour and weale of the ſame: ſo there muſt be ſpeciall care to prouide againſt vnuſuall and extraordinarie caſualties, which are not remooued but by ſpeedy and effectuall remedies. According to which prouidence the Romaines diſpoſed of their treaſure, and tooke the twentith part of their receit, which they called *Aurum viceſsimarium*, and reſerued it apart in an inner chamber; where it lay ſo priuiledged, that it was a capitall crime to touch it, but in extreame and deſperate neceſsity: as in time of warre with the Galles, or in a ſedition and tumult of the people. Liuie affirmeth as much, where he ſaith, *Cætera expedientibus quæ ad bellum opus erant conſulibus aurũ viceſsimariũ, quod in ſanctiore Aerario ad vltimos caſus ſeruaretur, promi placuit, prompta ad quatuor Millia pondo Auri.*

Lib. 3. cap. 33.

Aurum viceſsimarium.

Lib. 24.

THE

749b

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

SVch as affect offices and dignities in a State, muſt euer haue meanes to court *Souerainty*, according as may beſt ſute with her *Politia*, either as ſhe is eſpouſed to a Monarch, or left in truſt to a Multitude. Hence it was, that the Romaines to gaine the fauour of the people, & to make way for their owne ends, were very ſumptuous in ſetting foorth ſhewes and ſpectacles, of diuers ſorts and faſhions; and ſpecially of Gladiators or Fencers, as beſt fitting a Romaine diſpoſition, & more pleaſing then others of any kind. *Equidem* (ſaith Tully) *exiſtimo, nullum tempus eſſe frequentioris populi, quàm illud Gladiatorum, neque concionis vllius, neque verò vllorum Commitiorum.* And in another place; *Id autẽ ſpectaculi genus erat, quod omni frequentia, atque omni hominum genere celebratur, quo multitudo maximè delectatur.*

Pro Roſcio.

Their manner was to keepe great numbers of theſe Fencers, in ſome conuenient and healthfull townes of Italie, as at Rauenna, & Capua (which were as Seminaries of theſe people) and there to traine them vp in the feate of fencing, vntill they had occaſion to vſe them in their ſhewes, either at their triumphall entries into the Citty vpon their victories, or at the funerall ſolemnitie of ſome perſonage of memorie; or otherwiſe at their feaſts and iollities.

And therefore they were called, *Buſtuarij à buſtis.*

Quin etiam exhilarare viris conuiuia cæde
Mos olim, et miſcere epulis ſpectacula dira.

Sil. Italicus.

They fought commonly man to man, at all aduantage, and were ſildome excuſed, vntill one of the two lay dead vpon the place. Neither was hee then quitted that had ſlaine his companion, but ſtood liable to vndertake another, and ſo a third, vntill he had foiled ſixe or ſeauen Combattants. And if his hap were to preuaile ſo often, he was then honoured with a Garland wound about with ribands of wooll, which they called *Lemniſci*, and receiued of the Prætor a great knotted ſtaffe, called *Rudis*: which he afterward carried about with him as an enſigne of libertie. Theſe bloudy ſpectacles continued vnto the time of Conſtantine the great; and were by him prohibited, as likewiſe alſo by Arcadius and Honorius; and vtterly aboliſhed after the raigne of Theoderick, king of the Gothes. Let him that would looke further into the faſhion of theſe ſhewes, read what Lipſius hath written cõcerning the ſame. That which I obſerue heerein, is, the vſe which the State made heereof: for, howſoeuer theſe ſights and ſolemnities were ſette forth for the compaſsing of priuate ends; yet neuertheleſſe, the Common-weale drew benefit from the ſame. For, a multitude beeing of a fickle and mutable nature, are no way ſo well ſettled with contentment of the time, or kept from nouelties and innovations, as with publick ſhewes and entertainements: which are as ſtaies to their affections, that they ſwarue not from the gouernment by which they liue in ciuill conſociation. So we read how the Grecians inſtituted, as popular entertainements, their Olympian, Nemean, Iſtmean, and Pythian Games; The Romaines, their Apollinary, Secular, Gladiatory, and Hunting ſhewes, with Tragedies and Comedies: and

Lemniſci. Spectatum ſatis et donatum, iam rude. Horac.

The Romanes neuer vſed theſe Gladiators in any military ſeruice, but onely in Ciuill warres. *Ac deforme inſuper auxilium, duo millia Gladiatorum: ſed per ciuilia arma ſeueris ducibus vſurpatũ. Tac. hiſto. 1.*

all

all for the satisfaction of the people. Wherein, howsoeuer the Grecians seem more iudicious, for inventing such Games as might both exercise and entertraine the people, yet the Romaines failed not of the end aymed at in these spectacles; which was, to inure them to bloud and slaughter, and to make thē dreadlesse in cases of horrour.

But, to leaue all shewes of this nature, as either too little for earnest, or too much for pastime; it shall suffice to note, that these publique entertainements are so farre expedient as they consist of pleasure and comlinesse: for, as their chiefest end is to pleasure and content the people; so their manner must be directed by lawfulnesse and honestie. In which respect, a Tragedy is more commendable then a Comedy; forasmuch as few comicall arguments doe sympathise with honestie.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

TO be great, and of a large proportion, doth not take away casualties of inconuenience; nor can it giue a priuiledge, to free thinges from distemperature: tall men are as subiect to Feauers, as others of lesser stature; and great Empires as easily disturbed, as the states of pettie Princes.

O faciles dare summa Deos, eademque tueri
difficiles! — *Lucan. lib. 1.*

It is easier to attaine the end of high desires, then to keepe it being got: and better is the assurance of seeking, then of possessing. The Romaine people that had over-awed the world with Armes, & left no kingdom vnfoiled with the fear of their legions, were as much dismaied at a subiects disloialtie, as was possible for a meane State to be amuzed vpon an alarum of any danger. And that Citty which suffered no enemie to approche neer her confines, but in the condition of a Captiue, was not trusted as able to giue her owne people safety. — *Parare, et quærere arduũ: tueri difficilius. Liv. lib. 37.*

sic turba per Vrbem
Præcipiti lymphata gradu, velut vnica rebus
Spes foret afflictis patrios excedere muros,
Inconsulta ruit. — *Lucan. lib. 1.*

The aduantage is, that kingdomes of great commaund, haue great helps in cases of disturbance; but are otherwise as subiect to apprehensiōs of distrust, as those of lesser power to resist.

CHAP.

749.b

CHAP. VIII.

Cæſar goeth on with the ſiege of Corfinium, *and taketh it.*

DOMITIVS, being thus ingaged, ſent out skilfull men of the Countrey, with promiſe of great reward to carie Letters to Pompey, intreating and praying, that he would come and relieue him; for, Cæſar, by reaſon of the ſtraightneſſe of the paſſages, might with two Armies bee eaſily ſhut vp: which opportunitie if he neglected, himſelfe, with aboue 30 cohorts of ſouldiers; beſides a great number of Senators and Romaine Knights, were in danger of running a hard fortune. In the meane time, hee exhorted his men to courage and reſolution; placed his * Artillery on the walles; aſſigned euery man his quarter to bee made good; promiſed in publique aſſembly of the ſouldiers, foure akers a peece to each man out of his owne lands and poſſeſſions: and the like rateable parts to the Centurions and Enocates. Meane-while, it was told Cæſar, that the inhabitants of Sulmo, a towne diſtant ſeauen miles from Corfinium, were deſirous to receiue his commaunds, but that they were reſtrained by Q. Lucretius, a Senatour, & Atius Pelignius, that kept the towne with a guarizon of ſeauen cohorts. Whereupon, he ſent thither M. Antonius with fiue cohorts of the ſeauenth legion: whoſe Enſignes were no ſooner diſcouered by thoſe of the towne, but the inhabitants and ſouldiers came all out, to gratulate and welcome Antonius. Lucretius and Atius conuaied themſelues ouer the wall. Atius beeing taken and brought to Antony, deſired to be ſent to Cæſar. Antonie returning the ſame day, brought Atius & the ſouldiers that were found in Sulmo, to Cæſar; whom he tooke to his Army, and ſent Atius away in ſafetie.

Cæſar, the three firſt daies, made great workes to fortifie his Campe; cauſed ſtore of corne to be brought from the townes next about him; and there determined to ſtay the cõming of the reſt of his forces. Within the ſpace of thoſe three daies, the eight legion came vnto him, with 22 cohorts newly inrolled in Gallia, together with CCC. horſe, which the King of Noricum had ſent vnto him. Vpon the arriual of which forces, he made ſecond Camp on the other ſide of the towne, and appointed Curio to commaund it. The reſt of the time was ſpent in compaſſing the towne with a Rampier and with Caſtells: the greateſt part of which worke beeing finiſhed, it chaunced at the ſame time, that ſuch as were ſent to Pompey, returned. The Letters beeing read, Domitius diſſembling the truth, gaue out in the connſell of warre, that Pompey would come ſpeedily to ſuccour them: and therefore wiſhed that no man ſhould be diſmaied, but to prepare ſuch things as were of vſe for the defence of the towne; and hee himſelfe conferring ſecretly with ſome of his familiar friends, conſulted how he might eſcape away. But foraſmuch as his lookes agreed not with his words, and that his cariage ſeemed more troubled and timorous then vſuall, & likewiſe his ſecret conferences,

1 5000 men, or there-about.

* Tormenta.

Sulmo.

Duces rebus afflictis hilaritatẽ de induſtria ſimulant. Seneca, ad Poly.

as alſo his avoiding of publique councells and aſſemblies, as much as hee could, the matter coulde bee no longer diſſembled. For, Pompey had writ backe, that hee woulde not hazard the cauſe, by drawing it into ſuch tearmes of extremitie: neither was Domitius ingaged in the keeping of Corfinium by his advice or conſent; & therefore, if by any meanes he could, he ſhould quit the place, and bring the forces vnto him: But the ſiege was ſo ſtraight, and the workes did ſo begird the towne, that there was no hope of effecting it. Domitius purpoſe being knowne abroad, the ſouldiers within the towne, about the beginning of the euening forſooke their ſtations, and drew themſelues apart, and thereupon had conference with the Tribunes of the ſouldiers and Centurions to this effect: That they were beſieged by Cæſar, and the fortifications almoſt finiſhed; their Generall Domitian (in hope and confidence of whom they were engaged in that place) ſetting aſide all matters whatſoeuer, was bethinking himſelfe how hee might eſcape and flie away: and in regard thereof, they were not to neglect their owne ſafetie. The Marſi at firſt began to differ from the reſt, vpon that point; poſſeſt themſelues of that part of the towne which ſeemed to be ſtrongeſt: and ſuch a diſſenſion thereby grew amongſt them, that they had almoſt gone to blowes. Howbeit, vnderſtanding a while after (by meſſengers which paſt to and fro betweene them) of Domitius purpoſe to flie away, whereof formerly they were ignorant, they agreed together, and with one conſent brought Domitius out into open publique; and ſent ſome to Cæſar, to let him know, they were ready to open the gates to receiue his commaundements, and to deliuer Domitius aliue into his hands. Vpon advertiſement whereof (albeit Cæſar found it a matter of great conſequence, to gaine the towne with as much ſpeed as he could, and to take the ſouldiers into his Campe, leaſt eyther by large promiſes and gifts, or by entertayning other purpoſes, or otherwiſe through falſe bruits or deuiſed meſſages, their mindes might happely be altered, as oftentimes in the courſe of war, great and eminent chances & alterations do happen in a ſmal moment of time; yet for that he feared leaſt the night time might giue occaſion to the ſouldiers vpō their entrance to ſack & pilfer the towne) hee cōmending thoſe that came vnto him, ſent them back againe, & willed that the gates & the walles ſhould be kept with a good guard. He himſelfe diſpoſed the ſouldiers vpon the worke, which hee had begun; not by certaine ſpaces and diſtances, as he had accuſtomed the dayes before, but by continuall watches and ſtations, one touching another round about all the fortifications. Moreouer, he ſent the Tribunes & Captaines of the horſe about, and willed them to haue a care that there might be no eruptions or ſallies, and that they ſhould looke to the priuate ſlippings out of particular men. Neither was there any man ſo heauie or dull, that ſuffered his eyes to be ſhut that night; for, ſo great was the expectation of what would enſue, that no man thought of any other thing, then of what would happen to the Corfinians, to Domitian, to Lentulus and the reſt. About the fourth watch of the night, Lentulus Spinther ſpake from the wall to our ſouldiers that had the watch, and ſignified that hee would willingly haue leaue to come to Cæſar: which being graunted, he was ſent out of the towne, attended with ſome of Domitians ſouldiers, who left him not vntill he came in ſight of Cæſar. With him he dealt concerning his life, & praied him

Lentulus Spinther.

749b

him to pardon him; put him in mind of their former familiarity; acknowledged the fauours receiued from Cæſar, which were very great; namely, that by his meanes, he was choſen into the Colledge of Prieſts; that vpon the going out of his Prætorſhip, he obtained the prouince of Spaine; and in his ſuit to be Conſull, hee was much aſsiſted by him.

Collegium Pontificum.

Cæſar, interrupting his ſpeech, told him, that hee came not from his gouernment to hurt any man; but to defend himſelfe from the iniuries of his aduerſaries; to reſtore the Tribunes of the people to their dignitie, that were thruſt out and expelled the Cittie; and to put himſelfe and the people of Rome into liberty, which were oppreſt with the partialities of a few factious perſons. Lentulus, being reaſſured vpon this aunſwere, prayed leaue to returne into the towne; and the rather, that this which he had obtained touching his owne ſafety, might giue hope to the reſt: amongſt whom, ſome were ſo affrighted, that hee doubted they would fall into ſome deſperate courſe; and hauing obtained leaue, hee departed. Cæſar, as ſoone as it was day, commaunded all the Senators and Senators children, together with the Tribunes of the ſouldiers, and the Romaine Knights, to be brought out vnto him. Of Senatours, there were L. Domitius, P. Lentulus Spinther, Vibullius Rufus, Sex: Quintilius Varus, the Treaſurer, L. Rubius; beſides Domitians ſonne, and many other young men: with a great number of Romaine Kinghts and Decurions, whom Domitian had called out of the Municipall Townes. Theſe beeing all brought forth vnto him, were protected from the inſolencies and iniuries of the ſouldiers. Moreouer, he ſpake a few words vnto thē, concerning the ill requitall on their behalfe, for the great benefites hee had done vnto them: and ſo ſent them all away in peace.

Duumviri.

The gold which Domitian had laid vp in the publique Treaſury, being brought vnto him by the two chiefe Magiſtrates or Bailieſes of Corſinium, he redeliuered to Domitian; leaſt hee ſhould ſeeme more continent in taking away mens liues, then their moneys: although he knew, that this meney was part of the publique treaſure, and deliuered out by Pompey to pay ſouldiers. He commaunded Domitians partie to be ſworne his ſouldiers. And that day remouing his Camp, went a full daies march through the confines of the Marmurci, Frentani, & Larinati, and came into Apulia.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Latius patet officiorum quàm iuris Regula.

AS it is true, that a friend is not ſolie tied to the reſpects of right; but doth giue more advantage by offices of good indeuour, then by that which dutie requireth: ſo is it dangerous for a man to put his ſickle further into a harueſt, then happely may deſerue thankes of the owner. Neither can it be cleered from imputation of follie, to care an other mans buſineſs, with hazard and perill of our own fortune. Howbeit, the Current & drift of things, doth oftentimes ſo ingage both our perſons and affections, either in the maine action it ſelfe, or in ſome circumſtances of the ſame, that we cannot avoid the hazard of rebuke, if our indeuours doe not ſort

Stultitiæ videtur, alienam rē ſuo periculo curare. Saluſt. de bello Iugurth.

with

with his liking that is to approoue them. VVhereof Domitius may be an instance; who, taking Corfinium on the behalfe of the State, was neuertheleſſe diſavowed in his merit, and conſequentlie, brought into extreamitie of danger, for his over-forwardnes in the ſeruice of his Country. Such libertie hath ſoueraintie, either to take or leaue, when the euent ſhal not riſe anſwerable to a good meaning.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

WHen a partie is fallen into an exigent, it hath no better remedie for reliefe then that of the Comick, *Redimas te captum quàm queas minimo*; which is not vnderſtood, that we ſhould cleere the head, and leaue the reſt of the members to misfortune: for, that were to draw a double miſchiefe on the whole bodie. But the head is to eſcape with as little preiudice to the other parts, as by wiſedome and vertue may be gained; and ſo much the rather, leaſt in ſeeking to purchaſe ſafetie with hazard of the other members, it draw the whole deſtruction vpon it ſelfe; as it fell out with Domitius: Who, going about to flie out of the towne, and to leaue ſuch forces as by his meanes were imbarked in that cauſe, was iuſtly made the ſacrifice of their peace. Sulla deſerued better to be followed by men of adventure: for, beeing mooued to eſcape himſelfe away by night, and to leaue his troopes to ſuch fortune as Iugurth vpon advantage ſhould put vpon them; anſwered, *Etiamſi certa peſtis adeſſet, manſurum potius, quàm proditis quos ducebat, turpi fuga, incertæ ac forſitan paulò pòſt morbo interituræ vitæ parceret*. And therefore, if a Commaunder ſhall at any time goe about to betray his forces, with hope of his owne ſafetie, the iſſue will bring out either his diſhonour, or his confuſion.

Saluſt. de bello Iugurth.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

SVch as vndertake great deſignes, doe likewiſe proiect the meanes of atchieuing the ſame, & doe propound vnto themſelues ſuch principles to be obſerued, as they take to be ſpeciall way-makers to the fortune they reach at; from which grounds they ſildome or neuer ſwarue. As appeareth by this of Cæſar; who ayming at the ſouerainty of that Empire, and knowing no way ſo direct to leade him therevnto, as to clime vp by the ſteps of Mildneſs, and to make his Aduerſaries debtors to his clemency, he left aſide his Maximes of war, to hold firme that principle; and did forbeare to gaine a towne of great importance, with that ſpeed which occaſiõ & opportunitie did affoord him, and to take the troopes into his Campe, for the preuention of ſuch chaunces and changes, as doe happen in a ſmall moment of time; leaſt his ſouldiers entering into the towne, after the ſhutting of the euening, might take leaue of the night time to make forfeiture of his mercie.

749.b

It ſhall therefore be well-beſeeming the wiſedome of a Leader, to haue alwaies reſpect to the principles of his Meanes, and to diſtinguiſh between that which is fit and that which is more fit, in the natiue cariage of his buſineſs.

THE FOVRTH OBSERVATION.

Collegium Pontificum.

COncerning this *Collegium Pontificum*, the Colledge of Prieſtes; we are to note, that Numa, the founder of the Romaine Commonweale, for the preventing of partialities and factions in that State, which at that time conſiſted of two Nations or Tribes, did breake the whole bodie into manie ſmall parts and fractions, making his diuiſion by Artes and Occupations; whereby he ordained, that all Minſtrels or Trumpeters ſhould bee incorporated into one Brotherhood: and that in like manner, Goldſmithes, Carpenters, Diers, Shoomakers, Coriers, Tawyers, Belfounders, Potters, & all other trades & Sciences, ſhould haue their peculiar body or Fraternitie; appointing them feaſts, aſſemblies, and ſeruices, according to the worthineſs of each myſterie, as Plutarch hath obſerued in the life of Numa.

Plutarch in the life of Numa.

Valerius Maximus maketh mention of the Colledge of Pipers or Minſtrels. And Plinie, in like manner, mentioneth the Colledge of Copperſmithes. Cicero taketh notice of the colledge or companie of Marchants, which hee calleth *Collegium Mercurialium*; for that of old time, the nimble tongued Mercurie was beleiued in, as the Guider and Protector of Marchants. The priuiledges & cuſtomes where-with theſe Fraternities were endowed, are ſet downe by Caius, the Ciuilian. There are certaine Colledges at Rome, ſaith hee, incorporated by Act of Senate, and eſtabliſhed with good ordinances and conſtitutions, hauing certaine things in common, in imitation of the publique weale: And as Scæuola further noteth, with power to make lawes, for the better gouernment of ſuch Colledges and Societies; ſo the ſame be not contrary to the fundamentall lawes of the State. After the ſame manner, the Prieſtes had their peculiar Colledge or corporation; & at the firſt inſtitution were but foure in number, and all of Patrician families, vnto the yeere of Rome 454: at what time there were foure of the Commons choſen, and added to the former number; whom Sulla increaſed to 15, as Dio: witneſſeth. And theſe were called *Collegiũ Pontificũ*, wherof this *Pontifex Maximus* was preſident: one of the abſoluteſt dignities of Rome; as being for tearme of life, and of greateſt and diuine authority. Which generall diſtribution of the Romaines into trades and myſteries, doth not vnfitly bring into remẽbrance, that which is vſuall amongſt the Turks, who by their law, are al bound to be of an occupatiõ; not excepting the Grand Signior himſelfe. For, hee that now vpholdes the Ottoman familie, by the name of *Sultan Acmet*, is a profeſſed maker of rings, which the Turkes doe weare on their thumbe when they ſhoote, to let the ſtring go eaſily without hurting them: and his father Mahomet was a Fletcher, and made arrowes. In like manner, all his Courtiers are of trades and occupations; and euery man is called by the title of his Art: as, he that was lately Viſier Baſſa to the preſent Sultan, was called by the name of *Nacaſh Baſha*; the Viſier Painter, beeing indeed the

Cap. de inſtitutis Lib. 34. cap. 1. Lib. 2. Epiſt. ad Qu. fratrẽ. Epiſt. 5.

In L. 1. §.

L. Pater filiũ §.

Lib. 36.

Acometus the great Turke.
Fruterer Baſha.
Nailer, or parer of nailes, Baſha.
Buſtangi Baſhaw, Gardener

the Sultans Painter; neither are they athamed to acknowledge as much: for, opening Letters which were ſent into Turkie out of Chriſtendome, that were limmed about the Margin, ſaid, he could paint as well as that himſelfe.

THE FIFT OBSERVATION.

THE fift thing which I obſerue out of theſe paſſages at Corſinium, is the reſtoring back of ſuch moneys to Domitian, as were brought vnto Cæſar by the Officers of the towne, and which he knew to be of the publique treaſure of the State. Which howſoeuer may ſeeme admirable to the hearers of theſe times, wherein there is but this one rule for matter of money, *Vnde habet quærit nemo, ſed oportet habere*: Yet ſuch as wil lay a ſure foundation of honour, and thriue in the courſes which they follow, muſt not be ignorant, that there is nothing more requiſite to gaine opinion & reputation in the carriage of any publique buſineſs, then to bee cleare of the leaſt ſuſpicion of couetouſneſs. Neither is there any meanes that will ſooner win a multitude, to belieue in thoſe thinges which are ſet abroach by publique Authoritie, then thoſe two virgin vertues, Abſtinence & Continencie: eſpecially when they are found in Princes and chiefe Cõmaunders, that can other wiſe iuſtifie their actions with ſoueraintie & vncontrolement. Nor on the other ſide, did euer Apollo giue out truer Oracle then that, which ſaide; that there was no meanes to ruine Sparta but by Auarice.

Caput autem eſt in omni procuratione negotij, et mungeris Publici, vt auaritiæ pellatur etiam minima ſuſpicio. Nulla autem re, conciliare facilius benevolentiam multitudinis poſſũt ij qui reipub. præſunt, quam abſtinentia et continentia. Cicero.

Cic. lib. 1. Offici.

In which ſenſe, C. Pontius, the Samnite, wiſhed, that the Gods had reſerued him to times wherein the Romaines would haue beene corrupted with gifts: for, then he would ſoone haue ſeene an end of their Cõmon-weale. And certainely, that Empire could neuer haue towred ſo high, nor continued firme ſo many ages, had not her foundation been laid by men of admirable temper in this kind: Such as was Paulus Aemilius; who hauing ſacked Macedonia, and brought as much wealth into the publique Treaſurie, as gaue an end to Tributes and Subſidies, was no way the richer (but in honour) for all that hee had taken. And ſuch alſo was Scipio Affricanus; that of all the wealth of Carthage, brought nothing into his priuate houſe, but a high and triumphant Name, as a merit of his vertues and deedes of Armes: Leauing behind him this Oracle, as a document to following times; That couetous Captaines are good to none but to the Enemie. And to conclude, ſuch was M. Curius, who hauing triumphed of the Samnites, the Sabines, and Pyrrhus, refuſed a great maſs of Gold, which was offered him by the Samnites: eſteeming it more honourable, to commaund them that had Gold, then to haue Gold of his owne. Howbeit, ſuch is the frailetie of humaine nature, that for the moſt part, men haue alwaies ſuffered their deſire of money, to increaſe with their wealth, although it were to their ruine and deſtruction. VVhich Cæſar well diſcerned, as appeareth by that which he writ to Oppius, touching this accident: *Hæc noua ſit vincendi ratio, vt miſericordia et liberalitate nos muniamus.*

Imperatores muneribus hiantes, Hoſtibus ſunt perutiles. Appian. de bell. Hiſpan. Cic. Cato Maior

749b

THE SIXT OBSERVATION.

VPon occaſion of Cæſars calling vnto him, out of the towne, *Senatores, ſenatorumque filios, Equiteſque Romanos*, it ſhal not ſeeme impertinent, to note the degrees and conditions of ſtate whereof the Romaine people conſiſted. For the better clearing wherof, it is to be vnderſtood, that by that notable tranſaction at Comitium, between Romulus and Tatius, it was agreed; that both thoſe Nations ſhould dwell togeather at Romulus towne, which after his name, ſhould bee called Rome: and that the inhabitants thereof, ſhould be named *Quirites*, after the name of Tatius Cittie. Howbeit, ſpeciallie they were diuided into three Tribes, whereof they which were of Romulus partie, were called after his name, *Ramnenſes*; thoſe that came with Tatius, *Tatienſes*; and the third Tribe *Lucerences*, of *Lucus*, a Groue: foraſmuch as they beeing neither of Romulus retinew, nor yet of the Sabines, were neuertheleſſe met togethor at that place, from diuers parts, as at a Groue where commonly aſſemblies were made to offer ſacrifice, and to performe their heatheniſh ſolemnities.

Plutarch. in vita Romuli.

Each of theſe Tribes were diuided by Romulus into ten Curiæ; and ſo made the number of 30 Curiæ. And out of each of theſe Curiæ, he choſe 3 perſons, ſuch as by their preſence and ſufficiencie, ſeemed fitteſt, and moſt woorthy; which amounted to ninetie. To whom, out of euery Tribe hee further added three, and one more of his owne chooſing, to make the number vp a hundred; whom he eſtabliſhed as his Councel or Senate: by whoſe aduiſe he reſolued of all matters of conſequence, either concerning peace or warre, as Dioniſius Halicarnaſſeus noteth. Howbeit, Plutarch ſaith, they were ſildome aſſembled but to vnderſtand the Kings pleaſure: and had no other preheminence in the Common-weale, ſauing they were the firſt that did knowe what was purpoſed. Howſoeuer; they were ſtiled by the name of *Senatores, quaſi ſeniores*, as thereby qualified to be admitted to Counſell: and in the ſame ſenſe they were called *Patres*.

Senatus.

Lib. 2.

The Senate beeing thus eſtabliſhed, Romulus ſelected out of euery of thoſe Curiæ ten young men, and ſo made vp the number of three hundred for a guard to his perſon: who for their readineſſe and nimbleneſſe were called *Celeres*, all mounted on horſebacke: whence grew their *Ordo Equeſtris*, or band of Romaine knights, which were the meane betweene the Senate and the people; and as a Seminarie to ſupply the Senate; for, out of them were the Senators taken. The reſt, that were not of theſe two Orders, were comprehended vnder the name of the Commons, or Populacy. Whereby it appeareth, that Rome conſiſted of three eſtates; Senators, Knights, and the Commons, according to that of Auſonius;

Celeres or Equites: ordo Equeſtris.

Plebs or populus

Martia Roma triplex; Equitatu, Plebe, Senatu.

Touching the number of Senators, it is further to be noted, that Tarquinius Priſcus, to gaine the fauor of the people, tooke 100 of the Commons, & added them to the Senate, who were called *Senatores minorum Gentiũ*. And Brutus hauing

Senatores minorũ Gentium.

hauing reduced it to a Common-weale, made thē vp three hundred out of the band of Knights; and from that time they were called *Patres conſcripti*. Neither were they at all times limitted in that number: for, the ſeditious *Gracchi* added 300 more vnto them: and Iulius Cæſar admitted vnto the Senate all manner of perſons. In which regard, Auguſtus (as Suetonius ſaith) *Senatorū affluentem numerum, deformi, et incondita turba (erant enim ſuper mille, et quidam indigniſsimi) ad modum priſtinum et ſplendorem redegit.*

Patres cō ſcripti.

Suetonius, 35.

Concerning a competencie of wealth, to make a man capable of the place of a Senator; we may obſerue, that in the raigne of Seruius, the King, hee that was worth a thouſand aſſes (which are about 300 pound ſterling) was eligible. But the ritches of the Empire increaſing, a Senators wealth was rated at nine thouſand pound, according to Suetonius; *Senatorum ſenſum ampliauit, ac pro octingentorum milliū ſumma duodecies H-S taxauit, ſuppleuitque non habentibus.* The wealth of a Romaine Knight, was rated at three hundred three ſcore, or there abouts.

Suetonius, 41.

This Corfinium, was the chiefe towne of the Pelignians, and ſtoode in the center of Italie, where all the confederate people aſſembled when they conſulted of warre againſt the Romaines, for their right of Burgeſhippe, or freedome of the Cittie, which was then denied them: which war was called *Bellū ſociale, Marſicum*, and *Italicum*. There is now nothing remaining of that towne but the ruines, as a marke of the place where it anciently ſtood vpon a Plaine, commonly called Pentina, or Sant Peligno.

Corfinium. Strabo, lib. 6.

CHAP. IX.

Pompey goeth to Brunduſium: Cæſar maketh *meanes to treate with him.*

Caſar.

POmpey, vnderſtanding of theſe things which had paſt at Corfinium, departed from Luceria, and went to Canuſium, and from thence to Brunduſium; cauſing all the power hee could to be raiſed by new muſters and inrolements, arming ſhepheards and ſlaues, and mounting them on horſebacke; of whō he made ſome 300 horſe. In the meane time, L. Manlius, the Prætor, fled from Alba with ſixe cohorts; and Rutilius Rupus, Prætor, fled from Taracina with three cohorts: who deſcrying a farre off the Caualrie of Cæſar, commaunded by Binius Curius, forſaking the Prætor, turned their Enſignes towards Curius, and ioyned with him. In like manner, the daies following, diuers other cohorts came in as they marched, ſome to the foote troopes, and ſome to the horſe. Cn: Magius of Cremona, maiſter of the workes, and of the munition in Pompeys Army, was taken on the way, and brought backe to Cæſar: whom he ſent backe againe to Pompey, with commiſsion to treat with him to this effect; For-

Nocerum.

749b

aſmuch as there had yet happened no opportunity of meeting or conference, hee was now determined to ſeek him at Brunduſium; for, it much imported the Cõmon-weale, and euery mans ſafety in particular, that they two might confer together. Neither could thinges bee ſo well handled, vpon ſo great a diſtance of way, where the articles of treatie muſt be caried to and fro by a third partie, as when they met face to face to conclude of the conditions.

This meſſage being firſt giuen, he came to Brunduſium with ſixe legions, foure legions of old ſouldiers, and the other raiſed by new inrolements, or made vp as he came along the Countrey: for, he had preſently diſpatched Domitians cohorts from Corſinium into Sicily. At his comming, he found the Conſuls gone ouer to Dyrrachium, with the greateſt part of the Armie, and Pompey remaining at Brunduſium with twentie cohorts. Neither could hee certainely bee informed, whither he remained at Brunduſium to make good the towne, whereby he might the eaſier be maiſter of the Adriatick ſea, and commaund both the vtter parts of Italy, and the Regions of Greece, and ſo to keepe the warre on foote on the one ſide and on the other; or whether he ſtaied there for want of ſhipping. Howſoeuer; he would not endure, that Pompey ſhould thinke hee could not be forced to quit Italie; and therefore reſolued to ſtop vp the mouth of the Hauen, & to take away the vſe thereof, which he went about in this manner: Where the mouth of the Hauen was narroweſt, hee raiſed great mounts of earth on either ſide neere vnto the ſhore; for, there the Sea was ſhallow: but going further into the deepe, where no ſuch mounts could be raiſed, hee placed double flottes of wood, right againſt the ſame mounts, of thirtie foote ſquare; and at the corners caſt out foure Ankers to faſten them. Theſe flottes beeing thus placed, hee then added other flottes of the ſame ſcantling, and couered them with bavin and earth, to the end men might come readily vpon them to defend them. Hee armed them in front and on each ſide, with hurdles and gabions; and on euery fourth flotte, made a towre of two ſtories high, the better to defend them from violence of ſhipping, and from burning.

Cæſar beſieged Pompey at Brunduſiũ, the 23 of Febru. *Ann: vrbis cõd.* 704.

Againſt this worke, Pompey ſent out great ſhips of burthen, which he found in the Hauen, armed with towers of three ſtories high, full of munition, & all ſort of weapons, to hinder and diſturbe the ſame. So that euery day they fought a farre off each with other, with ſlings, arrowes, and other caſting weapons. Which buſineſs Cæſar ſo carried, as being willing not to let fall the conditions of peace, if happely it might be effected. And albeit hee greatly wondered that Magius, whom hee had ſent to Pompey, did not returne againe; and that this Treatie ſo often attempted, did hinder much his deſsignes: yet hee thought it fitte by all meanes to perſeuer therein: and therefore ſent Caninius Renilus, one of his Legates, and an inward friend, and neere allied to Scribonius Libo, to ſpeake with him, commaunded him to perſwade Libo to mediate a reconciliation, and that Cæſar himſelfe might ſpeake with Pompey. It might be, that thereupon, both of them would yeelde to lay downe their Armes vpon equall conditions: the greateſt part of which honour would redound to Libo, if by his interceſsion the war might take an end.

Pompeys ſon maried Libo his daughter.

Libo, hauing heard Caninius, went ſtraight to Pompey; and within awhile returning,

returning, told him: That foraſmuch as the Conſuls were abſent, there could be nothing done touching an agreement. Where-vpon, Cæſar reſolued to let fall the matter of Treatie, which hee had ſo often attempted, and to prepare for warre.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THis accident of taking Cn: Magius, hath made knowne an officer of great place and vſe in the Romaine Armie, of whom otherwiſe their Hiſtories make little mention. For, howſoeuer there is found in theſe Commentaries, many particular deſcriptions of admirable and incredible workes; ſuch as may ſeem to be made rather by Giants & Cyclops, then any labour of man; yet there is no mention of any *Præfectus Fabrûm*, or Maiſter of the workes in any of Cæſars Armies. Howbeit, Vegetius, expreſſing their ſingular care to haue in abundance all manner of prouiſions requiſite for an Armie, ſaith; That to euery legion did belong Carpenters, Bricklaiers, Smithes, Painters, & other Artizans, skilfull and fit to build lodgings for their wintering Campes; to make Engines and deuiſes for warre; ſuch as were their portatiue, or ambulatorie towres, targets, morions, corſlets, bowes, arrowes, darts, and piles: or whatſoeuer elſe might ſerue, either for offence or defence. Which Artificers were all knowne by the name of *Fabri*; and he that was Chiefe, and had the commaund of them, was called *Præfectus Fabrûm*. And in like manner, Plutarch ſheweth, that there was ſuch an officer; as alſo, that the place was giuen by the Generall; where hee ſaith, that Vibius a Sicilian, refuſed to lodge Cicero, as hee paſſed to exile, thorough Lucania; although that in his Conſulſhippe hee had beſtowed vpon him the place of *Præfectus Fabrûm*. And albeit Cæſar maketh no mention of any ſuch officer; yet Catullus dooth it for him, in ſuch biting Trimetres as will not be forgotten:

Præfectus Fabrûm.

Lib. 2. cap. 11.

Plutarch in the life of Cicero.

Quis hoc poteſt videre, quis poteſt pati
Niſi impudicus, et vorax et Helluo,
Mamurram habere, quod comata Gallia
Habebat et vltima Britannia?

Of which Mamurra, Plinie thus writeth; Cornelius Nepos, ſaith hee, writeth, that Mamurra, a Romaine knight, borne at Formia, and Maiſter of the workes vnder Cæſar, in Gallia, was the firſt that couered all the walles of his houſe, which he built in Mount Cælius, with leaues of Marble. Neither let any man diſdaine the Author as a meane perſon; for, this is that Mamurra, whom Catullus dooth note in his verſes; vvhoſe houſe vvas farre more ſtately then Catullus did expreſſe, by ſaying hee had gotten all the wealth of Gallia Comata. For, the ſaide Cornelius affirmeth, that hee was the firſt in Rome that

Lib. 36. cap. 6.

749.b

that made the pillars of his houſe of ſolide Marble, euen hewen out of the quarries of Cariſtus, or Luna: Thus farre goeth Pliny. Out of which may be noted, that exorbitancie in gaining, doth produce the like courſe in ſpending; and howſoeuer ſuch commings in may be cloſe and ſecret, yet the iſſuings out will proclaime it in profuſe and lauiſhing manner: and therefore, ſuch as commaund in theſe places, and haue ſuch meanes to inrich themſelues, had neede to be cleane fingered. Cæſar writing to Oppius, mentioneth the taking of this man, as a thing of ſome note. *Cn: Magium, Pompei Præfectum deprehendi ſcilicet, meo inſtituto vſus ſum, et eum ſtatim miſſum feci: iam duo Præfecti fabrum, in meam poteſtatem venerunt, et à me miſſi ſunt.* Concerning the vſe of theſe manuall Artes, and the prerogatiue they haue in well ordered States; it is to be noted, that without theſe, no Cittie can conueniently be built, fortified, or furniſhed with Armes. And therevpon ſuch Artizans, haue alwaies chalenged a place of chiefe regard in the Common-weale. Whence it was, that Vliſſes ſcorned not *ſe fabrum profiteri.*

Epiſt. ad Attic. lib. 9. Epiſt. 8.

Odiſſ. Homer. 23.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE *Maxime proprium* of warre, is oppoſition; and that vniuerſall, rather then any other kind of repugnancie: for, there is no ſympathiſing condition betweene two enemie Armies, otherwiſe then by mutuall exchange of *velle et nolle*, throughout the whole courſe of their intendements; as may be here obſerued vpon Cæſars arriuall at Brunduſium. For, finding Pompey to remaine there after the departure of the Conſuls, and not certainely informed of the reaſon of his ſtay; leaſt he ſhould think he could not be forced to quit Italy, Cæſar went about to thruſt him out headlong: or otherwiſe, if his purpoſe were to follow after the Conſuls to Dyrrachium, Cæſars deſigne then was to ſhut him in, and ſo to haue followed the rule of contradiction, by which ſouldiers are directed in their atchieuements.

Concerning the ſite of Brunduſium, which hath euer been famous for the commodiouſneſſe of the Hauen, and the vſuall port where the Romaines tooke ſhipping for Greece; being but a hundred Italian miles diſtant from Apollonia in Epirus: We are to note, that the towne ſtandeth vpon a Langet of earth, extended into the Hauen Peninſule-like from the maine land, reſembling the neck and head of a Stagge, and in that regard is called Brunduſium, of βρέντη, which ſignifieth a Stagge: which Langet hath many crooked guts, or inlets of of the Sea, capable of great ſhipping; beſides the two maine Ports on either ſide of the towne, which with the reſt of the Hauen, make the ſafeſt and faireſt roade of that part of the world. The mouth of the Hauen where Cæſar made his flottes, is very ſtraight; and oppoſite therevnto, ſome three miles diſtant into the Sea, ſtandeth a ſmall Iland, to abate the violence and rage of the waues. Now, to beſiege Brunduſium, it was requiſite to take away the vſe and benefit of the Hauen: which Cæſar attempted with ſuch rare and artificiall works (of mounts where the Sea was ſhallowe, and of flottes where the water

Brũduſium quidam Poetæ breuitatis cauſa Brendam dixerunt. Feſtus.

7491b




BRUN
DUSI:
VM

water was deepe; and thole made firme with earth, and fenced with hurdles & turrets) that the Reader may diſcerne it, by the deſcription, to bee a Maiſterpeece of excellent invention.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

IT is truly ſaid of old; That peace is not deare at any rate. Which Antiochus well vnderſtood, when he bought it of the Romaines for twelue thouſand Attick talents, and 540000 buſhels of wheate: Eſteeming it as the ſoueraine happineſſe of mans fortune; and an extraordinarie effect of thoſe intelligent ſpirits, which guide the motions of the celeſtiall ſpheres, to keepe the elements in a diſagreeing concord, and the feete of men in the pathes of tranquillitie. Hence it is, that ſuch as are inſtruments of ſo great a good, and ſhall thereby happen to redeeme a Nation from horror and confuſion, haue in all ages been crowned with honor & renowne, as the due rewarde of a Mediatour of Peace. And therefore Cæſar, perſwading Libo to negotiate a ceſsation of Armes, and to worke in Pompey a diſpoſition to an agreement, propounded the honour which attended this ſeruice, and the merit of that endeuour which brought backe peace into the Empire. *Liui. lib. 8. Dec. 4.*

CHAP. X.

Pompey leaueth Brunduſium, and ſhippeth *himſelfe for Greece.*

THE worke beeing halfe perfected, and nine daies labour beſtowed vpon it; the ſhippes that had tranſported the Conſuls and the other part of the Armie, returned from Dyrrachium to Brunduſium: and therevpon, Pompey beganne to fitt himſelfe for a departure; Beeing induced therevnto, either by the workes which Cæſar had begunne, or by a reſolution formerly taken to quit Italie. And the better to retard Cæſars proſecution (leaſt vpon his iſſuing out, the ſouldiers ſhould enter the towne) he mured vp the gates, and ſtopt the enterances of the ſtreets and paſſages; ſunke ditches and trenches croſſe the waies, & therin ſtuck ſharp piles & ſtakes; and couering the ſame with ſlight hurdles, leuelled it with thin & light earth: leauing onely two waies free, which went vnto the Hauen, which he hedged in with a ſtrong Paliſado of huge ſharpe Piles. Cæſar.

Theſe things beeing thus prepared, he commaunded the ſouldiers to get a ſhipboard, without noiſe or tumult; and left vpon the walles, and in the towers here and there, ſome of the readieſt Slingers and Archers, to bee called away vpon a warning

749b

warning ſigne, when the reſt of the ſouldiers were all ſhipped; appointing Gallies to take them in, at an eaſie and ſafe place. The inhabitants of Brunduſium, oppreſſed with the iniuries and contumelies of Pompeys ſouldiers, did fauor Cæſars partie; and vnderſtanding of this departure, whilſt they were running vp and downe, and buſied about getting aboard, gaue notice thereof from the tops of their houſes. Which beeing perceiued, Cæſar (not to omit any opportunitie of atchieuing his purpoſe) commaunded ladders to bee prepared, and the ſouldiers to take Armes. Pompey a little before night weied Anker: and the ſouldiers keeping guard on the wall, vpon the watch-word giuen, were all called frõ their ſtations, and by knowne paſſages repaired to the ſhippes. Cæſars ſouldiers with Ladders got vpon the wall: but beeing admoniſhed by them of Brunduſium, to take heed of the blind ditch, they ſtood ſtill. At laſt, they were brought a great compaſſe about, and ſo came to the Hauen; and with skiffes and boates, ſeized two ſhips with ſouldiers, which ſtuck by chaunce vpon the Mounts which Cæſar had made.

Cæcum vallum.

OBSERVATIONS.

Plutarch in the life of Pompey

FOraſmuch as this manner of Pompeyes departure from Brũduſium, and the ſlight he vſed to imbarke himſelfe and his Armie without danger of Cæſars entering the towne, is commended for one of the beſt ſtratagems of warre that euer he vſed; Let vs a little conſider the parts thereof, which preſent thẽſelues of two ſorts: the one conſiſting of the workes he made, to hinder and retard Cæſars entrance, if happelie hee ſhould haue knowledge of his departure: and the other, in the cleanlie conuaiance of his men aboard, without noiſe or tumult; & the ſemblance hee made of keeping the towne, by continuing watch vpon the walles, to the end there might be no knowledge taken thereof. The workes were of three ſorts. For, firſt hee mured and ſtopped vp the ends and enterances of ſtreets and lanes, which might giue acceſſe to a purſuing enemie. And to that end alſo, hee ſunk ditches, or trenches, croſſe the waies and paſſages: which he ſtuck full of ſharp ſtakes and Galthrops, and couered them with light and thin hurdles, that the Enemie might not eſpy them; And thirdly, hedged in the waies leading to the Port, with a ſtrong Palizado of huge ſharp piles: And ſo vſed both the Lions and the Foxes skin, to auoid the danger which might haue fallen vpon him, if Cæſar happely had found meanes to attache them, as they were incombered in getting to their ſhips, and diſpoſing themſelues to flie away. Which beeing an occaſion that might haue giuen him great aduantage, was in this manner carefullie preuented by Pompey. Howbeit, this his quitting Brunduſium, is cenſured but for a faultie reſolution handſomlie caried: for, Cicero dooth much blame him for abandoning Italie; calling it a Themiſtoclean policie, to perſwade his partie to forſake their Countrey, and to leaue the beſt of their pleaſures, and the weakeſt of each ſexe, to ſuch miſerie and deſolation, as moued pittie in thoſe that conſidered but the condition of the dogges, and brute beaſtes;

Cicer. Epiſt. ad Atticum.

beastes; as it fell out at Athens, when Themistocles perswaded the Athenians to leaue their towne and Countrey, and betake themselues wholly to sea, to fight against Xerxes.

CHAP. XI.

Cæsar dispatcheth forces into Sardinia and Sicilie. *Catos endeuour to keepe Sicily for* Pompey.

Albeit Cæsar well knew, that it much imported a speedy end of the businesse, to get shippes and passe the Seas after Pompey, before hee could ioyne himselfe with the forces of the transmarine parts; yet doubting the lets, and the long time before it could be effected, for that Pompey had taken with him all the shipping he could get, and therby left him for the present no meanes to follow after: it remained that hee attended shipping to be brought from remote parts; as, out of Gallia, from Ancona and the Streights: which at that time of the yeere, would require a long and troublesome passage. In the meane time, he thought it no way fit, that Pompeys old Army, & the two Prouinces of Spaine, should be settled and assured; (one of them being deepelie ingaged to Pompey for many great and ample benefits) or that they should haue time to raise new troopes, especially of horse; or that Gallia or Italie should bee solicited or wrought from him in his absence: And therefore for the present, resolued to desist from making any further pursute after Pompey, and to goe into Spaine; giuing order to the Duumviri *of all the Municipall townes, to prouide shipping, and send it to Brundusium. He sent Valerius, a Legate, into Sardinia, with one legion; and Curio, the Proprætor, into Sicily with three legions; commaunding him, after he had possessed Sicily, to transport his Armie into Affrica. Marcus Cotta gouerned Sardinia, and M. Cato Sicily. Tubero should by lotte haue held Affrica.* Cæsar. Bailieffes.

The Caralitani, vnderstanding that Valerius was to be sent vnto them, before he had left Italy, of their own accord thrust Cotta out of the towne. Cotta amused thereat, and perceiuing withall, that the whole Prouince gaue consent vnto it, fled presently out of Sardinia into Affrica. Cato prepared and new trimmed the Gallies in Sicily, giuing order to the townes to build new, and prosecuting his direction with great diligence: Moreouer, by his Legats, mustered and inrolled Cittizens of Rome, in Lucania and Brutia, requiring rateable numbers of horse and foote from the townes in Sicilie. Which thinges beeing almost accomplished, vnderstanding of Curio his comming, he complained in publique how he was abandoned and betraied by Pompey; who, without any prouidence or preparation, had ingaged himselfe in an vnnecessary warre: and yet beeing demaunded

479b

ded by himſelfe, and the reſt in the Senate, anſwered confidently, that hee was prouided of all neceſſaries fit for warre: And after he had thus publiquely complained, fled out of the Prouince. By which meanes, Valerius found Sardinia, and Curio Sicily, voide of gouernment, and there brought their Armies.

Tubero, arriuing in Affrica, found Atius Varus commaunding the Prouince: who (as wee haue formerly ſhewed) hauing loſt his cohorts at Auximum, fled forth-with into Affrica; and of his owne authorite, poſſeſſed himſelfe of the Prouince, which he found without a Gouernour. He got together by new inrolements, two compleat legions, which hee raiſed by his knowledge and experience of the people of that Country, by reaſon hee had gouerned that Prouince as Prætor ſome few yeeres before. Tubero, arriuing with his fleet at Vtica, was by Varus kept out of the towne and the Hauen; neither would he ſuffer him to ſet his ſonne aſhore, which was ſicke, but compelled him to wey Anker and depart.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THis Chapter maketh the firſt period of this warre, as it is taken from the beginning of theſe Ciuill broiles, vnto Pompeys forſaking Italie, which was begun and ended in the ſpace of 60 daies: and alſo openeth the gate to ſecond reſolutions, which are proſecuted, as the ſequell of the Hiſtorie will manifeſt: Containing likewiſe the reaſons, why Cæſar made not preſent purſute after Pompey, as the hinges of the ſucceeding warre, and the true cauſes of the conſequents of the ſame. In the cõſideration whereof, albeit Cæſar vnderſtood the advantage of him that proſecuteth a receding enemie, and the hopes which might be thereby conceiued of a ſpeedie end of that warre; yet hauing no ready meanes to accompliſh his deſire, thought it better to prevent ſuch inconveniences as might happely haue fallen out vpon the ſame: and ſo to keepe his partie in a progreſſe of their actiue thoughts, by clearing and aſſuring that Weſterne part of the Empire, which Pompey had left vnto him by his departure; rather then to leaue an enemie on his back, or to admit a cooling and languiſhment of their reſolutions, through expectation of ſhipping, to follow that courſe which otherwiſe had beene without exception.

Plutarch in the life of Pompey

Tueri quæſita difficilius eſt, quàm acquirere; quoniam in acquirendo, ignauia poſſidentis ſæpe plus confert quã propria virtus: tueri autem quæſita, ſine propria virtute nemo poteſt. D. Toſilæ Zonoras.

In the cariage whereof, we may obſerue, that as vpon the firſt breaking out of theſe troubles, they ſcambled for the townes of Italie, & ſought to ſtrengthen their parties, by ſuch as had no voice in the grand Chapter of the Senate, but onely inioyed the benefit of Municipall rights; ſo now beeing parted aſunder, and the contagion of this inteſtine euill ſpred abroad, and grown to more ripeneſs, they made like haſte to faſten vpon the remoter Prouinces, wherein Cæſar had the better portion. For, in his ſhare, were contained Italia, Gallia, Britannia, Hiſpania, Sicilia; which beeing the prime Countreys of Europe, were conſequently the flowre of that Empire, for that Europe hath euer been taken for the principall and chiefeſt part of the world.

Europa prima et præſtãtiſſima mundi pars. Appian.

Europa altrix victoris omnium gentium populi longeque terrarũ pulcherrima. Plin. lib. 3. c. 1.

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

SEcondly, wee may obſerue, in Cato, the effects of a Stoicall or formall ſpirit, which are more valuable in the enſignes of peace, then in the difficulties of warre. For, howſoeuer hee made ſhew of beſtirring himſelfe, in rigging and trimming vp the Gallies of his Prouince, commaunding mote to be built, raiſing new troopes of horſe & foote, and proſecuting his commaunds with purpoſe of an exact account: yet in the end, vnderſtanding of Curio his comming, ſpent his furie in complayning of his friends, and laying the cauſe of thoſe garboiles vpon him, whom by election and conſent he had formerly ſet vp, to make head againſt ſuch, as otherwiſe may be ſuppoſed would haue contained themſelues in a better meaſure of moderation.

CHAP. XII.

Cæſar goeth to Rome; and, calling a Senate, complaineth of the iniuries done vnto him.

THeſe things beeing ended, that the ſouldiers might for the reſidue of the time bee a little eaſed and refreſhed, Cæſar brought them backe into the next Municipall townes; hee himſelfe went directlie to the Cittie: and hauing called a Senate, he laieth open the iniuries and wrongs offered vnto him by his Aduerſaries; ſheweth them, that he neuer ſought honour in the State by extraordinary meanes, onely hee looked to haue enioyed the full time of his Conſulſhip, and there-with to haue been contented: which was no more then any Cittizen might ſtand for. The Tribunes of the people had required, that conſideration might be had of him in his abſence, notwithſtanding the oppoſition of his enemies, and Cato his bitter reſiſtance; ſpending the time after his old manner, with long and tedious ſpeeches: which if Pompey (beeing Conſull) had diſliked, why did he ſuffer that to paſſe which was enacted? But if then he did allow and like of it, what reaſon had he to hinder him from inioying a benefit which the people of Rome had beſtowed vpon him? From that, hee fell to ſpeake of his patience: which appeared, in that of his owne accord, hee mooued that either party might quit their forces; which might haue bin very preiudiciall to his honour and dignitie: Declared what had beene the malice and bitterneſs of his Aduerſaries; who refuſed to doe that themſelues, which they required of another man: chooſing rather to imbroile and confound the whole State, then to forgoe the commaund of an Armie: Spake at large as well of the wrong done vnto him, by taking the two legions from him, as alſo for their hard and inſolent dealing, in putting the Tribunes of the people by their place and authoritie.

749b

He forgot not likewiſe to relate the conditions which he propounded; the conference which he deſired, and would not be graunted. In regard whereof, hee praied and required, that they would take the charge of the Common-weale, and giue a helping hand to him for the gouernment thereof. But, if they ſhould vpon any doubt or miſtruſt, refuſe to ioyne with him, hee would not much importune them, but would take it into his owne handes; and in the meane time, let Commiſsioners bee ſent to Pompey to treat of peace. Neither did hee reſpect what Pompey a little before had ſaide in the Senate (That to whom ſoeuer Embaſſadours were ſent, to ſuch ſeemed to be aſcribed Authoritie and Preheminence; as, on the contrary part, ſuch as ſent thē, manifeſted an apprehenſion of feare); for, theſe were arguments of puſillanimitie. For his part, as he had gone beyond him in deedes of Armes and noble acts; ſo would hee in like manner, endeuour to excell him in iuſtice and equitie.

The Senators were well pleaſed that Embaſſadors ſhould be ſent: but there was no man found that would go; euery man refuſing in particular, for feare of Pompey: who, vpon his departure from Rome, had ſaide in the Senate, That hee would hold him that ſtaied at Rome, in the ſame condition with them that were in Cæſars Campe. So that three daies were ſpent in debate and excuſes; L. Metellus. *L: Metellus, Tribune of the people, beeing drawne by Cæſars aduerſaries, to protract the time, and to hinder any matter which Cæſar ſhould propound vnto them.*

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

FIrſt, wee may obſerue, how irkeſome it is to humane nature, for him that hath taſted the ſweetneſſe of authoritie, to forgoe the raines of commaund, and againe to inrolle his name in the liſt of common dutie; deſcending from the throne of ſoueraintie, to the condition of obedience, & to loſe his eminencie in reſpectleſs equalitie: eſpecially, if the honour be Militarie, and of Martiall nature. For, that faſteneth on vs with a ſtronger hold, then any other power; beeing leſſe capable of moderation, and waited on with the eyes and expectation of preſent and future ages. Whereby, men growe deſperatly iealous of the opinion of the world, and cannot indure to quit themſelues of that care, although they haue attained to the ful time of their deliuerance: but to be ſupplanted in the midſt of ſo glorious a race, or to be pulled out of the ſeate of Magiſtracie, by an abortiue miſcariage, is able to inrage an ambitious ſpirit, ſo farre beyond the bounds of modeſtie, that it will not ſpare any endeuor, to confound the greateſt Empire, with irrecouerable calamities.

Fælicitatis et moderationis diuiduum, Contubernium.

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

SEcondly, wee may obſerue the diſpoſition of thoſe Senators, that by their ſtaying at Rome, became neutrall in that Faction; and there-vpon, refuſed either to take Cæſars commaundes, or to preſent themſelues to Pompey, as Mediators of peace. Plutarch hath two reaſons why the Senators would vndertake no ſuch matter of Commiſsion as was required by Cæſar. The firſt is this which is heere expreſſed; euery man fearing the diſpleaſure of Pompey, who at his departure from Rome, had proteſted to hold them for enemies that went not along with him: where-as Cæſar cenſured their forbearance with better advantage to himſelfe; and tooke their neutralitie as an argument of becomming his followers. The other reaſon which Plutarch auoucheth, is the opinion which the Senators had of Cæſars double dealing; as not carying his hart in his mouth, but pretending that which he neuer meant. For, they could not be perſwaded that his end was a ceſſation of Armes, or ſuch a peace with Pompey as ſhould haue kept on foot their auncient libertie; but ſought rather pretexts of good meaning, to colour his deſigne of making Rome his ſeruant. Howſoeuer; wee may not omit what is reported to haue happened betweene him and Metellus, more then hee himſelfe ſpeaketh of. For, going about to take Money out of the Treaſurie, hee was there ſtoutly reſiſted by this Metellus, of whom hee complaineth; alleadging the Lawes and Acts of the State, forbidding any man to touch that Money, but in ſuch times of extreamitie as vvere therein expreſſed.

Denunciante Pompeio pro hoſtibus ſe habiturum qui reipub. defuiſſent; ipſe medios et neutrius partis, ſuorum ſibi numero, futuros pronunciauit. Suetonius. 75. Cicero. 10. Epiſt. ad Atticũ. Plutarch. Lucan. Appian. Florus.

To which, Cæſar anſwered; That thoſe Lawes were onely made for time of peace: but now, Armes and warre required an other courſe of proceeding. Neuertheleſſe, Metellus would not ſuffer him to breake open the doores, vntill Cæſar aduiſed him to be gone if he loued his life; for, it was eaſier for him to diſpatch him then to ſpeake it: and ſo entered and caried away the Treaſure. VVhere-vpon, groweth that of Florus; *Cenſum et patrimonium populi Romani, antè raput quàm Imperium.*

Non niſi per noſtrum vobis peruſſa patebunt templa latus, nullaſque feres, ſine ſanguine ſacro, ſparſas, raptor opes. Lucan. lib. 3. Dignũ te Cæſaris ira, nullus honor faciet. Idem eodem.

And Appian, deriding the ſcrupuloſitie of the auncient Romaines, that would not touch that Treaſure but in extreamitie of warre againſt the Celtes or Galles, ſaith; that Cæſar might lawfullie take it, for that hee had vanquiſhed and ſubdued the Galles; vvhereby the Romaines had no further cauſe to feare them.

CHAP. XIII.

Cæſar leaueth the Cittie, goeth into Gallia, *and treateth with the Mar-ſellians.*

Cæſar, perceiuing their reſolution, after hee had ſpent there ſome few daies (that he might not loſe any more time, and leaue thoſe things vndone which he purpoſely intended) hee left the Cittie, and went into the further Gallia. Vpon his arriuall there, hee vnderſtood that Pompey had ſent into Spaine Vibullius Rufus, whom Cæſar had a little before taken at Corſinium and diſmiſſed him: and that Domitian likewiſe was gone to take Marſelleis, with eight Gallies, which he ſet out from Sicilia and Sardinia, and manned them with ſlaues, men infranchiſed, and his owne husbandmen: Sending, as meſſengers before, certaine young noble men of Marſelleis, with whō Pompey vpon his departure from the Citty had earneſtly dealt, that Cæſars new fauours, might not put out of their remembrance the old benefits which hee had done vnto them. Thoſe of Marſelleis hauing receiued this meſſage, ſhut their gates againſt Cæſar; called into the Cittie the Albicans, barbarous & mountainous people (who of auncient time had held amitie with them, and dwelt vpon the hilles aboue Marſelleis) brought Corne from all the adiacent Regions & Caſtles into the towne; ſet vp offices & forges to make Armes; repaired both their walles, their nauie, and their gates.

*Cæſar called out vnto him ſome fifteene of the chiefeſt men of Marſelleis, and treated with them, that the beginning of the warre might not growe from that towne; who ſhould rather follow the example of all Italie, then apply themſelues to the will of any one man: not omitting ſuch other perſwaſions as hee thought pertinent to a ſound reſolution. Theſe men reported at Marſelleis what Cæſar had deliuered, and by the common conſent of the towne, returned this aunſwer; That they vnderſtood, that the people of Rome was diuided into two parts, neither was it in them to iudge, or could they diſcerne which of the two was in the right. The Leaders of theſe two factions, were Pompey and Cæſar, both ſpeciall Patrons and Benefactors to their Cittie; of whom, one had augmented the publique reuenewes of the State, and indowed it with the landes and territories of the Volgi, Arecomici, and the Heluÿ: The other, hauing conquered and ſubdued *Gallias, gaue it vnto them; whereby their tributarie In-comes were much augmented; and therefore, as they were equallie bound to both for their fauours, ſo would they carie to both an equall reſpect, not ayding either of them againſt the other, or receiuing them within their gates.*

Whileſt theſe thinges were in handeling, Domitius arriued at Marſelleis vvith his ſhipping; and beeing receiued in, was made Gouernour of the Cittie, and

* By this Gallias, is vnderſtood ſome place neere to Marſelleis.

and had the whole direction of the warre cõmitted vnto him. By his appointment, the fleet was sent out into all Coasts; and such shippes of burthen as they found, they brought in: the nailes, timber, and tackling whereof, they tooke to mend and rigge out other ships. What Corne soeuer was found in the Cittie, was brought in publique keeping; reseruing the surplus of victuall and prouision, for a siedge, as occasion should require.

Cæsar, prouoked with these iniuries, brought three legions to Marselleis, determined to make towres and mantelets ready for an assault, and to builde twelue new Galleis at Arles: which were armed, rigged, finished, & brought to Marselleis, within thirtie dayes after the timber was cut downe. Of these he made D. Brutus Admirall, and left C. Tribonius to follow the siedge.

OBSERVATION.

FRom the Marsellians we may learne, that it is farre easier to say well then to doe well; for, howsoeuer they were able to discerne the truth, and to giue an answere to Cæsar, well-beseeming the fame and opinion of their literature and knowledge (beeing an Academie little inferiour to the best, and in latter times more frequented by the Romaines, for the studie of Oratorie and Philosophy, then Athens, or any other such chiefe seate of the Muses); yet in their actions they disavowed all: taking vpon them most vnseasonably to arbitrate those differences, and to shew their opinion of the quarell, by taking part with one faction. Wherein their errour the more appeared, in that the partie grieued was not liable to their award, but rather had occasion to gaine thereby a double honor to himselfe; first, by forcing them, and then by pardoning their rashnes. And yet some VVriters doe thinke, they did no more then they were tied vnto by former treaties, and leagues with the Empire (which they tooke to consist in Pompeys partie) whereof they were loiall & zealous confederates; as appeareth by their loue, when Rome was taken by the Galles: for, hauing newes therof, and vnderstanding of the composition which was to bee made to raise the siedge from the Capitoll, they prouided all the gold & siluer they could get, & sent it to Rome for that seruice. In regard whereof, they were indowed with manie Priuiledges and Immunities, both in the Cittie, and elswhere in the Empire. Howsoeuer, their hap being to respect more an exact obseruaunce of what had passed, then the fatall succeeding course of things, drew vpon them a sharpe and bitter warre; whereof they could not bee freed, but by submitting themselues to his mercy whom they had reiected. And thus wee see verified that of the Poet;

Quicquid delirant Reges plectuntur Achiui. Horace.

VVhich implieth also how dangerous it is, for men of authoritie and imploiment, to be subiect to wilfull ambition. For, as their seruice is of great importance to gouernment, when it is attended with well qualified affections; so are their motions as fearefull, which are carried with the violence of exorbitant

Augusto duum vetustissima post Massiliã bonarum artiũ sedes. Tac. 3. Annal. Strabo. lib. 4.

Cumque alij famæ populi, terrore paucrent, Phocais in dubijs ausa est seruare inuentus. Non Graia leuitate fidẽ, signataque iura, et causas non fata sequi. Lucan. l. 3

paſſions: eſpecially, conſidering the meanes they haue, either to miſimploy the power of the State, or to giue way to ſuch inconveniences, as may neceſſarily peruert all things but the ends they aime at: beſides the aptneſs of a high ſpirit, not to doubt the truth of that ſaying which is attributed to Cæſar, *Si violandum eſt ius, regnandi gratia violandum eſt.*

CHAP. XIIII.

Cæſar haſteth into Spaine.

Afranius.

While ſt theſe thinges were prepared and put in order, he ſent C: Fabius, one of his Legates, with three legions, that had wintered about Narbone, before him into Spaine; commaunding him with all ſpeed and diligence to take the paſſage of the Pyrenean hills, vvhich were kept at that time with the forces of L: Afranius: and gaue order for the other legions which wintered further off, to follow after. Fabius, according to his directions, made haſte, put the Garizon from the paſſage, and by great iourneys marched towards Afranius Armie.

Petreius. Varro.

** Saltus caſtulonenſis.*

** Guadiana.*

Iure pari rector, caſtris Afranius illis, ac Petreius erat. Lucan. l. 3.

*Vpon the arriuall of Vibullius Rufus, who (as it is formerly related) was ſent by Pompey into Spaine, Afranius, Petreius, and Varro; Pompeys Legates (of whom the one gouerned the neereſt Prouince of Spaine with three legions, the other, held the Country from the * forreſt of Caſtile, to the riuer * Aua, with two legions; and the third commaunded the Vectones and Luſitania, with the like number of legions) did ſo diſpoſe and diuide their charges, that Petreius was appointed to bring his legions out of Luſitania, through the territories of the Vectones, and ioyne himſelfe with Afranius: and that Varro, with his power, ſhould keepe the further Prouince of Spaine. Which beeing ſo reſolued & determined, Petreius hauing commaunded the Luſitanians to leuie horſemen, and other Auxiliarie forces; and Afranius likewiſe hauing made the like leuie, in the territories of the * Celtiberi, * Cantabri, and the reſt of the barbarous Nations bordering vpon the Ocean: Petreius came ſpeedily through the Vectones to Afranius; and induced by the opportunitie of the place, by mutuall conſent, reſolued to keep the warre on foote neere about Ilerda.*

Nos Celtis geniti, et ex Iberis. Martial. lib. 4.

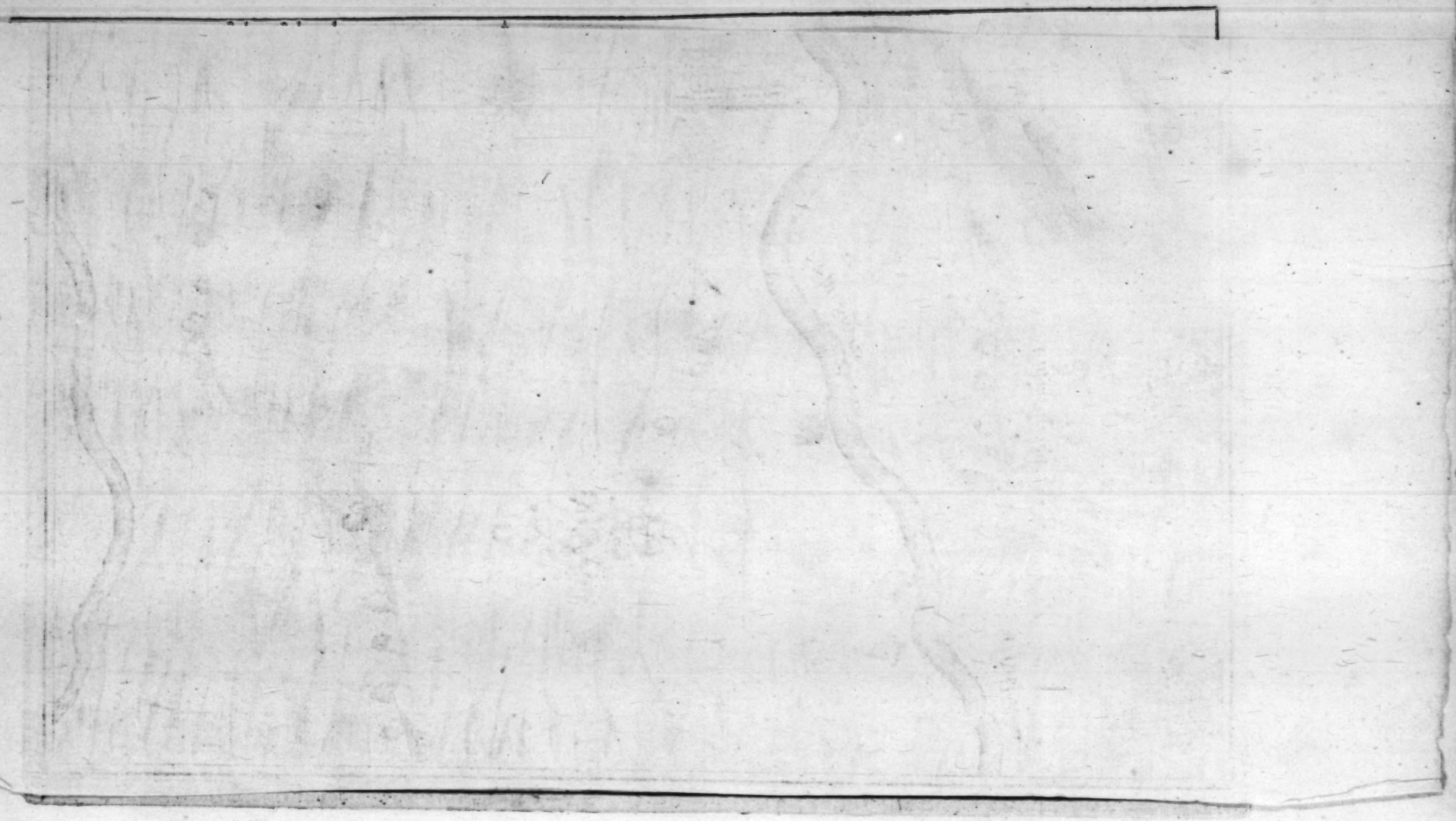
** A valiãt people, deſcended from Lacedemon: of whom Sil. Ital. ſaith Damnatiũ vinere paci.*

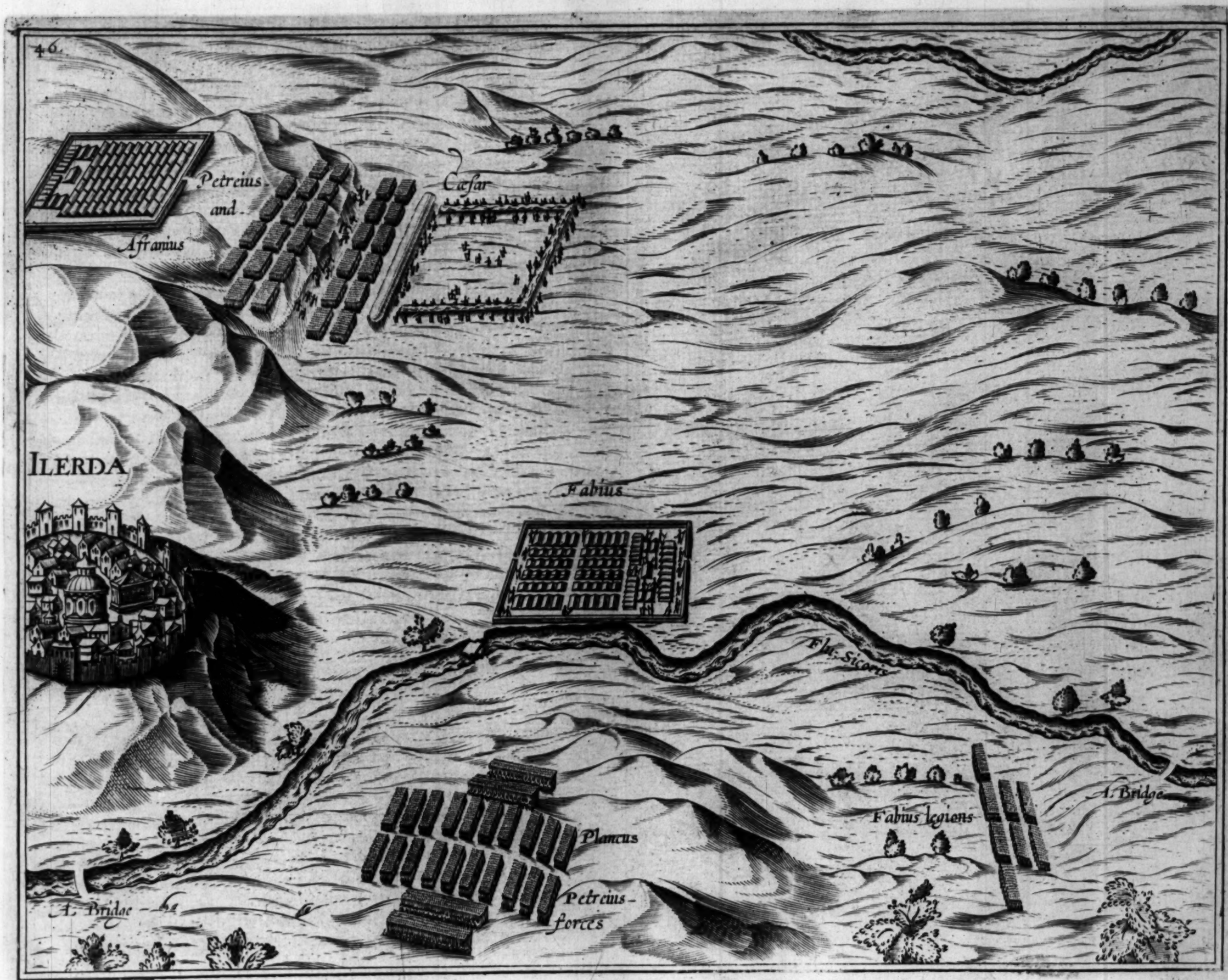
Scutati. Cetrati. Nonius, Cetra, ſcutum breue. Quis rotundam facere cetrã nequeat?

Enocati.

There were with Afranius (as formerly hath been ſhewed) three legions, beſides Targettiers of the neerer Prouince, & Buckler-bearers of the further Prouince, ſome 80 cohorts, and of both Prouinces about 5000 horſe. Cæſar had ſent his legions into Spaine, accompanied onely with ſixe thouſand Auxiliary forces, and three thouſand horſe, which had been with him in the former warres. And the Galles at his requeſt furniſhed him with the like number; beſides the nobleſt and valianteſt amongſt them, of whom hee had made particular choice to follow him in that warre. To theſe were added the better ſort of the Aquitani, and high-landers, borderers vpon the Prouince in Gallia. Hee was aduertiſed that

Pompey




Petreius
and
Afranius
Cæsar
ILERDA
Fabius
Flu. Sicoris
A. Bridge
Fabius legions
A. Bridge
Plancus
Petreius
forces

Digitized by Google

*Pompey was on his iourney, cõming through Mauritania into Spaine; and that he would ſpeedily be there with his legions: and thereupon, hee borrowed money of the Centurions and Tribunes of the ſouldiers, and gaue it to his Armie; whereby he gained two points: for, firſt he ingaged the Captaines by that lone to indeuour his good ſucceſſe; and ſecondly, bought the good affections of the ſouldiers by largeſs and diſtribution. Fabius omitted no opportunity, to get the fauour of the Cities neere about him: which he labored aſwel by Letters as Meſſengers, & had already made two bridges ouer the riuer * Sicoris, diſtant one from another about foure miles, and ouer theſe bridges ſent out his men to forrage; for he had ſpent all that was to be found on this ſide the riuer. The ſame thing, and vpon the ſame occaſion, did the Leaders of Pompeys Armie; and oftentimes their Caualry met & incountred together. And as it hapned, that 2 legions going out to forrage according to their daily cuſtome, and had paſſed the riuer, the cariage & the Caualry following after, vpon a ſudden (by the ouerpeſtering of horſes, and ſwelling of the water) the bridge brake; and the reſt of the Caualry was ſecluded & cut off from the legions. Which Petreius and Afranius perceiuing, by the hurdles and planks that came downe the riuer; Afranius, preſently by the bridge which was adioyning to the towne & his Camp, put ouer 4 legions, and all his Caualrie, & went to meet with Fabius his 2 legions. Vpon whoſe approche, L: Plancus that commanded the legions, being conſtrained by neceſsity, tooke the vpper ground, diuiding his men into two Battalions, & making their fronts to ſtand 2 contrary waies, to the end they might not be circũuented by the horſemen. And although the number were very farre vnequall, yet hee valiantly withſtood very violent charges of the enemy. The Caualrie beeing thus ingaged, the Enſignes of two legions were deſcried afar off, which Fabius had ſent by way of the further bridge, to ſecond theſe other two; ſuſpecting that which was come to paſſe, that the Cõmaunders of the aduerſe Army, would take the occaſion and benefit of this accident, to cut off our partie. Vpon whoſe approche, the battell ceaſed; and the legions on either ſide were brought backe into their Campes.*

* *Heſperios inter, Sicoris non vltimus Amnis,*
Saxeus ingenti, quem pons Amplectitur arcu,
Hibernas paſſurus aquas.
Lucan. lib.

Plancus ſiue Plãtius, à Planitie pedum, Splayfooted.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THE firſt obſeruation may be taken, from this deſigne of Cæſars vpon Spaine, beeing at that time vnder the gouernment and commaund of Pompey; The ſtanding or falling whereof, did much import the ſucceſſe of that warre: for which reſpect it was, that when Cæſar could not buckle with the perſon of his enemy, hee vſed all meanes to beat downe his authoritie, as the next in degree to his eſſence and beeing, and moſt concerning his honour and reputation. For, if he tooke from him thoſe Prouinces, which the State had commended to his charge, and left him no intereſt in the obedience of ſuch, whom he might in a ſort challenge for his owne people; what aſſurance could the other parts of the Empire haue in his protection? or what coulde hee elſwhere expect of that which theſe refuſed him?

The

Lib. Ethic. 4.

The excellencie of a Generall, is that perfection of iudgement commended by Ariſtotle, inabling him to diſcerne, *quid primum*, or what is moſt materiall in that varietie of vndertaking, which falleth out in following a warre. And if that cannot with any conueniencie be attained, then to know the next point of importance, and ſo conſequentlie to diſtinguiſh the degrees of difference, as they ſtand ranked in the order of iudicious proceeding.

For the effectuall proſecuting of which deſigne, let vs take a ſhort view of their forces on each ſide, according as we find them muſtered in this chapter; that by the inequalitie of their troopes, we may iudge of the want or ſufficiencie of their directions. Afranius, as it is ſaid in the ſtorie, had three legions, and Petreius two legions, together with 80 cohorts of Auxiliarie forces, ſupplied vnto them by the two Prouinces of Spaine; which cohorts equalled the number of eight legions: and ſo in all, made thirteene legions. And according to the vſuall rate at that time of 5000 in a legion, amounted to 65000 men, together with 5000 horſe; which came to ſeauentie thouſand men, or thereabouts. To confront ſo great an enemy, Cæſar had fiue legions, 12000 Auxiliarie troopes from the Galles, and peraduenture 1000 Euocati: which according to the former rate of a legion, did riſe to 35000, or 40000 men at the moſt. Whereby the one exceeding the other, well neere in a double proportion of ſtrength, and yet failing in coreſpondencie of ſucceſſe, calleth the verity of that prouerbe in queſtion, *Ne Hercules contra duos*. Beſides, the inequalitie of the place, where the triall was to bee made, being wholly deuoted to the greater partie; which is a matter of no ſmall conſequence. For, hee that maketh warre in a Countrey, abſolute in fauouring the enemie and confronting his purpoſes, had need of more forces then the aduerſe partie, or better fortune in his proceedings. And therefore Fabius, to preuent ſuch miſchiefes as might grow by that aduantage, ſought all meanes to draw ſome of the townes to his faction; and to make himſelfe friends for his better ſupport and ſecuritie, according to that which was ſaid of old; That warre cannot be made without ſome peace.

Petreius and Afranius had 70000 men, or thereabouts.

Cæſar 35000.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

SEcondly, wee may obſerue the meanes he vſed, to ſecure himſelfe of the loyaltie of his Armie, and whollie to ingage the ſoldier in his fortune. For, the money hee bortowed of the Tribunes and Centurions, was a ſpeciall Tie of their affections to his ſeruice; foraſmuch as no man wiſheth ill to him, by vvhoſe welfare and proſperitie he hopeth to thriue; for, ſo (wounding himſelfe throgh another mans bodie) the hurt would fall vpon his owne head: but rather deſireth ſuch an accompliſhment of his hopes, as may make himſelfe partaker thereof. And on the other ſide, the largeſs he made vnto the ſouldiers, did ſo oblige their indeuour to his purpoſes, that they were thereby readie to performe as much as warlike Lælius had promiſed in his owne perſon, on the behalfe

Rables ſaith, that the Creditor wiſheth all good to his Debtors.

Lælius.

behalfe of the reſt.

Pectore ſi fratris gladium, iuguloque Parentis
Condere me iubeas, plenaque in viſcera partu
Coniugis, inuita peragam tamen omnia dextra.

Lucan. li. 1.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THirdly, let vs conſider the effects of diligence and prouident foreſight, which doe oftentimes redeeme an Armie from a dishonourable overthow; as may be learned from two circumſtances in Fabius directions. Firſt, in that he truſted not to one paſſage ouer the riuer Sicoris, but made two ſeuerall bridges, as well for the cõueniencie as the better ſecuritie of his people. Secondly, vpon the occaſion which the enemie might take by the breaking of the bridge, to diſtreſſe the legions on the other ſide of the water, hee preſently ſent out ſuccours to preuent ſuch a caſualtie: which albeit might ſeeme to haue proceeded out of curious ſuſpicion, or idle feare, yet fell out to be no more then was requiſite and expedient. Which may teach a Generall to be carefull euen of poſsibilities; and to prenent contingencies, with the certaintie of induſtrious directions: accounting alwaies that which may happen, to be as certaine as any thing we moſt expect.

Vni antro non fidit mus.

Quicquid fieri poteſt, quaſi futurum cogitemus. Senec. Epiſt. 24.

THE FOVRTH OBSERVATION.

COncerning Spaine, wee are to note, that the Romaines at firſt diuided it into two Prouinces, which they called the Neerer, & the Further; or according to Strabo, the Vtter and the Inner; and were ſeparated aſunder by the riuer Iberus. And thence alſo they were called *Cis Iberum, et vltra Iberum*. The Neerer Prouince, beeing the leſſer, continued without alteration during the Romaines gouernment, and was ſomtimes called *Tarraconenſis Prouincia*, of Tarraco, the principall towne of the ſame. But the Further, in proceſſe of time was diuided into two partes; the one called *Betica*, and the other *Luſitania*: and ſo the whole Region of Spaine came to be diuided into three Prouinces. It was firſt entered by the Romaines, by occaſion of the notable ſiedge of of Sagunt: for, P. Scipio, hauing ſubdued the Carthaginians, reduced Spaine into a Prouince, and left it gouerned by Proconſuls, vnto the time of Cornelius Lentulus, & Lucius Stertinius. Afterwards, it was gouerned by Proprætors, and ſometimes by Prætors, according as the Empire came to be inlarged; and had thereby many gouernments, for the preferment of ſuch as had ſupplied the better places of dignitie in the State. Neuertheleſſe, in the times of trouble, the Gouernours had alwaies Conſularie power; as, in the warre againſt Sertorius, *Quintus Metellus*, Proconſull, *et Cn: Pompeius, Queſtor, cum Conſulari poteſtate miſsi ſunt:* And at this time, Pompey gouerned it by two Deputies or Legates. Touching the

Spaine.
Citerior, et Vlterior.
Exterior, et Interior. lib. 3.

Anno 8 C. 555.

Liuie.

749b

the forme and figure of the Countrey, Strabo likeneth it to an Oxe hide: the necke whereof ioyneth to the Pyrenean hilles, which riſe in towres from one Sea to another, as limits and bounds between France and Spaine; taking their name (as ſome thinke) from Pyrene, the Maid that Hercules deflowred, whom Sil. Ital. mentioneth.

Pyrene celſa nimboſi verticis arce
Diuiſos Celtis, latè proſpectat Iberos;
Atque æterna tenet magnis diuortia terris
Hoſpitis Alcidæ crimen: qui ſorte laborum
Gerionis peteret cùm longa tricorporis arma
Poſſeſſus, Baccho, ſæua Bebrycis in aula
Lugendam formæ, ſine virginitate reliquit
Pyrenem.
Deſletumque tenent Montes per ſecula nomen.

But according to the opinion more generally receiued, of the Greeke word πῦρ for that Shepheards and Heardſmen ſet them once on fire, as witneſſeth Diodorus Siculus. And Ariſtotle; *In Hiberia (inquit) combuſtis aliquando paſtoribus Syluis, calenteque ignibus terra, manifeſtum argentum defluxiſſe: cumque poſtmodum terræ motus ſuſperueniſſet, eruptis hiatibus, magnam copiam argenti collectam; atque inde Maſſilienſibus proventus non vulgares obtigiſſe.* The Countrey of Spaine is commended for many things, as may appeare by diuers Elogies: amongſt which, that of Claudianus the Poet is written, as though the Author had been a penſioner to the Kingdome.

Lib. 5. In libro de Mirandis auſcultationibus.

Quid dignum memorare tuis Hiſpania terris
Vox humana valet? primo lauat æquore ſolem
India: tu feſſos, exacta luce, iugales
Proluis, inque tuo reſpirant ſydera fluctu.
Diues equis, frugum facilis, pretioſa metallis,
Principibus fœcunda pijs.

CHAP. XV.

Cæſar, comming to his Armie, aduaunceth forward, and incampeth neere vnto the Enemie.

Cæſar.

Within two dayes after, Cæſar came into the Campe with nine hundred horſe, which he had kept with him for a conuoy. The bridge broken by the tempeſt, was almoſt reedified; and that which remained vndone, he commaunded to be finiſhed in the night. And hauing ſeene the nature and ſituation of the place, he left ſixe cohorts to keepe the Campe & the bridge, with all the cariages of the Armie. And the next day, putting all

all his forces into a triple battell, he marched towards Ilerda: and there ſtanding awhile in Armes, offered battell, in an equall and indifferent place. Afranius brought out his forces, and made a ſtand in the midſt of the hill, vnder his Campe. Cæſar, perceiuing that Afranius at that time was not diſpoſed to fight, determined to incampe himſelfe ſome 400 paſes from the foot of the hill. And leaſt the ſouldiers ſhould be interrupted in their workes, by the ſudden aſſaults and incurſions of the enemy, he forbade thē to fortifie it with a rampire or wall, which muſt neceſſarily be diſcouered and ſeene afarre of; but cauſed a ditch to be made of fifteene foote in breadth, in the front of the Campe next vnto the Enemie. The firſt and ſecond battell (according as was directed) continued in Armes; and the third battell perfor ned the worke behind them vnſeene, before it was vnderſtood by Afranius that Cæſar would incampe in that place. Which beeing finiſhed, he drew his legions within the ditch, and ſo ſtood in Armes all night.

Prono tum Cæſar Olympo, in noctem ſubita circumdedit agmina foſſa, dum prima præſtant acies, hoſtemque ſefellit. Luc. l. 4.

The next day, he kept all his Armie within the ditch. And foraſmuch as the matter to make the Rampier was to be fetched farre off, hee kept the like courſe for the finiſhing of the reſt; allotting each ſide of the Campe, to be fortified by a ſeuerall legion, with a ditch to be ſunk about, of the ſame ſcantling: and in the meane time, made the other legions to ſtand ready in Armes againſt the enemie.

Afranius and Petreius, to the end they might amuſe the ſouldier, and hinder the worke, brought downe their forces to the foote of the hill, and prouoked them to fight. Howbeit, Cæſar intermitted not the worke, truſting to III *legions in Armes, and the munition of the ditch. The Enemy not making any long ſtay, or aduauncing further then the foote of the hill, ledde backe their troopes into the Campe. The third day, Cæſar fortified his Campe with a Rampire; and cōmaunded the reſt of the cohorts and the cariages which were left in the other Campes, to be brought vnto him.*

OBSERVATION.

IT may be obſerued for Cæſars cuſtome throughout the whole courſe of his warres, to approche as neere the enemie as conueniently he could; that ſo he might the better obſerue his paſſages, and be ready to take the fauour of any opportunitie, which either the nature of the place, or the motions of the aduerſary would afford him. Which was the rather his aduantage, in regard of his dexteritie, and ſuperlatiue knowledge in the vſe of Armes, together with the experience of his old legions: whereby he was able, not onely to improue his owne deſignes to the vtmoſt of an honourable ſucceſſe, but to returne the diſgrace of any attempt made vpon his Armie, vpon the heads of them that were authors of the ſame. For, otherwiſe, his accoſting ſo neere an enemie, might haue turned to his owne loſſe; as beeing full of hazard, & ſubiect to more caſualties then hee that ſtandeth further off. And therefore the rule is; that he that deſireth to ſit neere his adverſarie, muſt be exceeding circumſpect, and ſure of ſome aduantage, either from

749b

from the place, or the ouer-awing power of his forces, or elſe out of his owne vertue, or by ſome other meanes, to ouer-ſway the inconveniences which attend ſuch ingagements. As may appeare by that which Frontinus obſerueth hence, touching the ſtraight, wher-into Cæſar was fallen; being either to giue battell, which the enemie refuſed: or to make good that place, from whence he could not retreit but with danger. Whereupon, a little before night hee ſtole the making of a ditch on the backe of his Armie; and retiring himſelfe within the ſame, ſtood in Armes all night, for his better ſafetie.

Lib. 1. cap. 5.

The vſe of ſuch ditches are of much importance, and haue oftentimes redeemed an Armie from great extreamities: and were ſo frequent vpon all occaſions with the Romaines, that he that ſhall deny them to be good ditchers, ſhall doe them wrong. And not onely they, but other Nations, could tell how to make vſe of the Spade.

Pericles of Athens, beeing forced by them of Peloponeſus, into a place that had but two out-lets of eſcape, ſunke a ditch of a great latitude, thwart one of the paſſages (as though he meant to keepe out the enemie) and ſet his ſoldiers to breake out the other way. The Peloponeſians, thinking hee could no way eſcape by the paſſage where the trench was cut, applied themſelues whollie to the other place, where the ſouldiers made ſhew of breaking out: whereby (through the help of bridges which he had formerly prouided) hee eſcaped ouer the ditch without reſiſtance. Sometimes they added other helpes to theſe trenches, eſpecially when they ſought handſome meanes to get themſelues away: whereof Sertorius may be an inſtance. VVho, hauing the enemie preſſing him in the reare, and beeing to paſſe a Riuer, drew a ditch and a rampier at his backe, in the faſhion of a halfe moone: which rampire, he heaped with wood and combuſtible matter; and ſo ſetting it on fire, kept off the enemie, and paſſed with eaſe ouer the water.

In like manner, Herculeius, one of Sertorius Legates, hauing raſhly entered with a ſmall power into a long and narrow paſſage, between two hilles; & finding himſelfe purſued by great forces of the enemy, ſunke a croſſe trench betweene the two Mountaines: and piling the rampire with wood, ſet it on fire, & ſo cut off the enemie.

CHAP. XVI.

Cæſars attempt to poſſeſſe himſelfe of a ſmall hill: *what diſadvantage he ran into, by miſſing of his purpoſe; what* meanes he vſed to recouer himſelfe.

BEtweene the towne of Ilerda, and the next hill where Petreius and Afranius were incamped, there was a Plaine, of about three hundred paſes; in the midſt whereof ſtoode a little Mole, riſing higher then the reſt: which if Cæſar could get and fortifie, he hoped to cut off the enemy from the towne & the bridge, and from ſuch victuals and prouiſions as vvere brought

brought to the towne: vvherevpon, he tooke three legions out of the Campe; and hauing put them into order of battell, hee commaunded the Anteſignani of one legion, to runne before and poſſeſſe the place. Which beeing perceiued, the cohorts that kept watch before Afranius Campe, were preſently ſent a neerer way to take that Mount. The matter came to blowes: but foraſmuch as Afranius partie came firſt to the place, our men were beaten backe; and by reaſon of new ſupplies ſent againſt them, were conſtrained to turne their backes, and retire to the legions.

The manner of fight which thoſe ſouldiers vſed, was firſt to runne furiouſlie vpon an enemy, to ſeize any place boldly and with great courage; not much reſpecting their orders or rankes, but fighting in a ſcattered and diſperſed faſhion. If they chaunc't to be throughly charged, they thought it no ſhame to giue way and retire; accuſtomed there-vnto, by frequenting the Luſitanians, and other barbarous people, vſing that kind of fight: as it commonly falleth out, that where the ſouldiers haue long liued, they get much of the vſage and condition of thoſe places. Notwithſtanding, our men were much troubled thereat, as vnaccuſtomed to that kind of fight: for, ſeeing euery man leaue his ranke, and runne vp and downe, they feared leaſt they ſhould be circumvented, and ſette vpon in flanke, and on their bare & open ſide; vvhere-as themſelues were to keepe their order, and not to leaue their places, but vpon extraordinarie occaſion.

Vpon the routing of the Anteſignani, the legion that ſtoode in the cornet, left the place, and retreated to the next Hill; almoſt all the Armie beeing affrighted, vpon that which had happened beyond euery mans opinion, contrarie to former vſe.

Caſar, encouraging his men, brought out the ninth legion to ſecond them; by that meanes compelling the enemy (inſolent of good ſucceſſe, and ſhrewdly purſuing our men) to turne their backes, and to retire to the towne of Ilerda, and there to make a ſtand vnder the walles. But the ſouldiers of the ninth legion, caried on with endeuour, and going about to repaire their loſſe, they raſhly followed the enemy into a place of diſaduantage, and came vnder the Hill whereon the towne ſtood: and as they would haue made their retreit, they were charged afreſh from the vpper ground. The front of the place had an vneaſie broken aſcent, and was on each ſide ſteepe; extended onely ſo much in breadth, as vvould ſerue three cohorts to imbattell in: neither could the Caualrie come to helpe them. The Hill declined eaſily from the towne about foure hundred paſes in length: and that way our men had ſome conveniencie of retreit, from the diſadvantage to which their deſire had vnaduiſedly led them. The fight continued in this place; which was very vnequall, both in regard of the ſtraightneſs thereof, as alſo for that they ſtood vnder the foote of the Hill, whereby no weapon fell in vaine amongſt them. Notwithſtanding, by proweſſe and valour they patientlie endured all the woundes they receiued. The enemies forces were ſupplied and renewed, by ſuch cohorts as were often ſent out of the Campe through the towne, that freſh men might take the place of ſuch as were vvearied out. And the like vvas Caſar faine to doe, ſending freſhe Cohorts to that place to relieue the vvearied.

After they had thus continuallie fought for the ſpace of fiue houres together, and that our men were much ouer-charged with an vnequall multitude; hauing ſpent all their weapons, they drew their ſwords, and aſcended vp the hill, to charge and aſſault the enemy: and hauing ſlaine a few of them, the reſt were driuen to make a retreit. The cohorts beeing thus put backe to the walles, and ſome of them for feare hauing taken the towne, our men found an eaſie retreit. Our Caualrie did from a lowe ground get vp vnto the toppe of the hill; and riding vp and downe betweene the two Armies, made our ſouldiers to retreit with better eaſe: and ſo the fight ſucceeded diuerſly.

About ſeauentie of our men were ſlaine in the firſt onſet. And amongſt theſe was ſlaine Q. Fulginius, Captaine of the firſt Haſtate Centurie of the foureteenth legion; who, for his exceeding valour, was preferred to that place from the lower orders. And of Afranius partie were ſlaine T. Cæcilius, Centurion of a Primipile order, and foure Centurions more, beſides two hundred ſouldiers. But ſuch was the opinion of that daies buſineſs, that either ſide belieued they left with the better.

Et victor ſubducto Marte pependit. Lucan. lib. 4.

Afranius party was ſo perſwaded, for that they long ſtood to handy blowes, and reſiſted the violence of our ſouldiers, although in all mens iudgement they were the weaker: as alſo, for that they firſt tooke and held the place which gaue occaſion of that fight; & in the firſt encounter, compelled our men to turne their backs. Our men, in like manner, thought they had the better, in regard they had maintained fight for fiue houres together, in a place of diſaduantage, & with an vnequall multitude: that they aſcended vp the hill with their ſwords drawne, and compelled their aduerſarie to turne their back, & to retreit into the towne, mauger the diſaduantage of the place.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IN this direction which Cæſar gaue, to take the little Hill betweene Ilerda and Afranius Campe, wee may obſerue the danger depending vpon the miſchieuing of an action. For, the failing of a purpoſe, in ſeeking to obtaine that which would prooue of great aduantage, doth oftentimes drawe men into as great inconueniences. And as the end in euery deſſigne pretendeth gaine, ſo the meanes thereof doe giue way to hazard: from whence it conſequently followeth; that ſuch as are imployed in execution, had neede to vſe all indeuour, not to falſifie the groundes of good directions, by negligent or inconſiderate cariage; but rather, to make good any want or defect, by ſerious and warie proſecution of the ſame.

Omnis laus virtutis in actione conſiſtit. Ariſt. Eth.

And the rather, for that it ſpecially concerneth their good, that haue the charge and handeling of commaundes; for, they firſt are like to feele the ſmart of anie errour committed therein; or otherwiſe, to haue the honour of anie fortunate ſucceſſe, for-aſmuch as Vertue hath all her praiſe from Action.

Concer-

Concerning the vſe of running, we are to vnderſtand, that the Romaines (amongſt other their exerciſes of Armes) had ſpeciall practiſe of this, as auailable in foure reſpects, according as Vegetius hath noted; Firſt, to the end they might charge the enemie with greater force and violence. Secondly, that they might poſſeſſe themſelues with ſpeed, of places of aduantage. Thirdly, that they might readily diſcouer, as ſhould be found expedient vpon all occaſions. And laſtly, to proſecute a flying enemie, to better purpoſe and effect. And this, as Seneca ſaith, they practiſed in peace; that beeing accuſtomed to needleſſe labour, they might be able to diſcharge neceſſarie duties. And Liuie, amongſt the militarie exerciſes vſed by Scipio, to fit his men for thoſe glorious exploits which hee afterwards atchieued, ſaith; That the firſt day, the legions ran foure miles in Armes. And Suetonius affirmeth, That Nero, hauing appointed a race for the Prætorian cohorts, caried a Target lifted vp before them with his owne hand. And that Galba did more admirably; for, beeing ſuted of purpoſe to make himſelfe eminent, directed a field race with a Target, himſelfe running as faſt as the Emperours Chariot, for twentie miles together.

Lib. 1. cap. 9. The vſe of running.

Miles in media pace decurrit, ſine vllo hoſte, et ſupernacuo labore laſſatur, vt ſufficere neceſſario poſſit. Seneca Epiſt. 18.

Lib. 26.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE ſecond thing to be noted in theſe ſpecialties, is the bold enterpriſe of Cæſars men, in charging the enemie with their ſwordes drawne, againſt the Hill; and, making them to giue backe, had an eaſie and ſafe retreit from the danger wherein they were ingaged. Whereby wee may obſerue, that difficulties of extreamitie, are neuer better cleered, then by aduenturous and deſperate vndertakings: According to the condition of diſeaſes, and diſtemperatures of the body; which beeing light & eaſie, are cured with milde and eaſie potions: but beeing grieuous and doubtfull, doe require ſharpe and ſtrong remedies. VVhich doth alſo in like manner appeare throughout the whole courſe of Nature, and particularly in waights: for, as ponderous and heauie bodies are not mooued, but with a counterpoiſe of greater force; no more can extreamities of hazard bee auoided, but by like perilous enforcements.

Medici leuiter ægrotantes, leuiter curant: grauioribus autem morbis, periculoſas curationes et ancipites adhibere coguntur. Cice. li. 1. de officijs.

And hence groweth the difference betweene true valour and foole-hardy raſhneſſe; beeing but one and the ſame thing, if they were not diſtinguiſhed by the ſubiect wherein they are ſhewed. For, to runne headlong into ſtrange aduentures, vpon no iuſt occaſion, were to ſhew more leuitie then diſcretion: And againe, to vſe the like boldneſſe in caſes of extreamitie, deſerueth the opinion of vertuous endeuour. As is well obſerued by Homer, in the perſon of Hector, perſwading the Troians that fledde away, to ſtand and make head againſt the Grecians; This is the time, ſaith he, conſidering the danger wherein wee are, to vſe that proweſſe and courage which we boaſt of.

Iliad. 6.

And accordinglie, Diomedes cenſured Glaucus in the ſame place, for offering himſelfe to the furie of the Grecians; Either thou art ſome God, ſaith he,

749b

or elſe but a loſt and forlorne man. VVhich may ſerue to learne vs the true vſe of courage; that ordinarily is neuer more ſhewed then in misimployment.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

The parts of a Legion.

I Haue already, in the obſeruations of the ſecond Commentary of the warres of Gallia, diſcourſed particularly of the partes of a legion: Where it appeareth, that in Cæſars time, a legion conſiſted of fiue thouſand men, or there-abouts; and according to the ſufficiencie and experiencie of the ſouldiers, was diuided into three parts. The firſt and meaneſt of ſuch as followed an Enſigne, were called *Haſtati*. The ſecond, *Principes*. And the third and chiefe ſort, *Triarij*: and according to this diuiſion, had their place and precedencie in the Armie.

Againe, each of theſe three kindes, was diuided into tenne companies, which they called Maniples; and euery Maniple was ſubdiuided into two Centuries or Orders: and in euery Order there was a Centurion or Captaine. Theſe orders were diſtinguiſhed, by the numbers of the firſt, ſecond, third, and ſo conſequently vnto the tenth orders, which were the laſt & loweſt of each of theſe three kindes. So that this Q. Fulginius, here mentioned, was Centurion of the firſt and prime order of the *Haſtati*: And T. Cæcilius, Centurion of the firſt order of the *Triarij*, which by excellencie was called *Primipilus*, or the Leader of the firſt companie of a legion.

Now, concerning their imbattelling, we are to note, that according to this former diuiſion of *Haſtati*, *Principes*, and *Triarij*, vpon occaſion of fight, they made a triple battell, one ſtanding in front to another; which we call the vantguard battell, and reareward. VVhereof the *Haſtati* were called *Anteſignani*: not for that they had no Enſignes of their owne; for, euery Maniple had an Enſigne: but becauſe they ſtood imbattelled before the Eagle, & other the chiefe Enſignes of the legion. To which purpoſe is that of Liuie, *Pugna orta eſt, non illa ordinata per Haſtatos, Principeſque et Triarios, nec vt pro ſignis Anteſignanus, poſt ſigna alia pugnaret Acies.* And againe; *Cadunt Anteſignani: et ne nudentur propugnatoribus ſigna, fit ex ſecunda prima Acies.* Whereby it appeareth, that moſt of the chiefeſt Enſignes were with the *Principes*, which were called *Subſignani*, as the *Triarij Poſtſignani*.

Anteſignani.

Lib. 22.

Iib. 9.

Amongſt other benefites of theſe ſo particular diuiſions of an Armie, that is not the leaſt which is noted by Thucidides, *Vt iuſſa imperatoris breui ſpacio ad ſingulos milites deferri poſſent.*

Lib. 5.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Cæsar, brought into great extreamity by ouer-flowing of two Riuers.

THE enemy fortified the Mount for which they cõtended, with great and strong workes; and there put a Garizon. In the space of those two daies that these thinges were in dooing, there fell out vpon a suddaine a great inconuenience: for, such a tempest happened, that the like waters were neuer seene in those places. And further besides, the snow came downe so aboundantly from the Hilles, that it over-flowed the bankes of the Riuer; and in one day, brake downe both the bridges which Fabius had made: and thereby brought Cæsar into great extreamity. For, as it is formerly related, the Campe lay betweene two Riuers, Sicoris and Cinga, being distant about 30 miles one from another. Neither of these Riuers were passable: so that all the Army were of necessity cooped vp in that straightnes; neither could the Citties, which had formerly ranged themselues with Cæsars partie, furnish any supplies of victuall and prouision: nor such of the Armie as had gone far for forrage, beeing hindered by the riuers, could returne to the Campe; nor yet the great conuoies and renforcements, comming to him out of Italy and Gallia, could gette to the Campe.

Cæsar.

Cinga rapidus magis quam magnus.

The time was very hard; for, there was neither old corne left of their winter prouisions, nor that on the ground was as yet ripe. The Citties and townes neere about were all emptied; for, Afranius before Cæsars cõming, had causèd all the Corne to be brought into Ilerda: and that which remained, was since Cæsars comming all spent. And for Cattell (which might haue relieued this necessity) by reason of the warre they were remooued by the bordering townes, and caried further off. Such as were gone out to forrage, and to seeke Corne, were by the light Armed Portingalls, and the Buckler-bearers of the heather Spaine, much troubled and molested: for, these men could easily passe the riuer, forasmuch as none of them vsed to goe to warre, without bladders for that purpose. On the contrary part, Afranius abounded with all necessary prouisions; great quantity of Corne was formerly prouided and stored vp; much was brought in from all the Prouinces round about, hauing also great plenty of forrage in his Camp: for, the bridge at Ilerda afforded meanes of all these things without danger; and the Countrey beyond the riuer was whole and vntouched, which Cæsar could not come vnto by any meanes. The vvaters continued for many dayes togeather. Cæsar vsed all meanes to reedifie the Bridges: but neither the swelling of the Riuer woulde permitte him, nor yet the cohorts of the Enemie, placed on the bankes of the other side, suffer him to goe forwardes with it: which they might easilie hinder, both in regard of the nature of the riuer; the

749b

greatneſs of the water; as alſo, for that they might eaſily caſt their weapons frō along the banke, vnto one place or point. Whereby it was very hard, at one and the ſame time (the Riuer running ſo violently as it did) to doe the worke, and to ſhunne the weapons.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

FIrſt, we may obſerue, that the ſtrength of a multitude is not priuiledged from ſuch caſualties as betide the weakeneſſes of particular perſons; but doth oftentimes vndergoe extreamities, which can neither by prouidence be preuented, nor remoued by induſtrie: & are ſuch as proceede not from the indeuour of an enemy, but out of the circumſtances of time and place; together with ſuch accidents as are interlaced with the ſame. In reſpect whereof it was, that Cambiſes told Cyrus; That in the courſe of warre he ſhould meet with ſome occaſions, wherein he was not to labour and contend with men, but with chaunces and things, which were not to be ouercome with leſſe difficultie then an enemy; and are the more dangerous, according as they giue way to ſcarcitie and lack of victuall. For, as it is ſaid in the ſame place; *Scis breui, finem habiturum Imperium, ſi commeatu exercitus careat.*

Sunt quædam in quibus non aduerſus homines certamen eſt, ſed cum ipſis rebus: quas ſuperare perdifficile eſt. Zenoph. lib. 1. de Inſt. Cyri.

The remedies whereof, are firſt, Patience; which is as requiſite in a ſouldier, as either courage or any other abilitie: and in ſuch caſes keepeth an Army from diſcontentment and diſorder, vntill meanes of better fortune. And ſecondly, Good indeauour, which auaileth much in ſuch chaunces; the effect whereof, will appeare by that which Cæſar wrought, to redeeme his Armie from theſe inconueniences.

Diligentia in omnibus rebus plurimùm valet.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

COncerning that which is heere noted of the Spaniards, that made nothing of paſsing a Riuer with the helpe of bladders, which the Romaines were readier to wonder at then to imitate; it is obſerued, that as people exquiſitly faſhioned to a ciuill life, by a firme & ſettled policie of gouernment, are firme and reall in the whole courſe of their proceedings, and accordingly doe ſhew their punctualitie, as well in their ſolemnities and priuate cariages, as in their magnificent and ſtately buildings: ſo on the other ſide, barbarous and rude Nations, that liue vnder generall and ſlight lawes, are as ſlight and rude in their actions; as amongſt other thinges, may appeare by that the Spaniards thought it no ſcorn, to vſe the help of bladders in paſsing ouer a Riuer, as a deuiſe comming next to hand: which the people of a wiſe and potent State, would not haue done, but by a ſure and ſubſtantiall bridge.

Bladders vſed by the Spaniards, in ſwimming ouer Riuers.

The vſe of which bladders, as it hath been auncient amongſt people of that nature, ſo it is cōtinued in the ſame manner, by the Sauages, inhabiting Gronland,

land, and the North parts of America; as appeareth by the diſcoueries made of late by the Moſcouy Marchants, about the Northweſt paſſage: frō whence ſuch as are imploied in thoſe voiages, haue brought great and large bladders or bagges, made of Seale skinnes, ingeniouſly deuiſed to be filled and blowed with wind, and tied behind at their girdle, and at their coller, to helpe themſelues in ſwimming. And after the ſame eaſie faſhion, the Indians of Peru, as Ioſephus Acoſta writeth (in ſtead of wood and ſtone) made their bridges ouer great Riuers of plaited Reedes, which they faſtened to the bankes on each ſide with ſtakes: or otherwiſe of bundles of ſtraw and weedes, by which, men and beaſts (if there be any credit in his ſtorie) paſſe ouer with eaſe. Howbeit, as when the ancient Greeks would note a man of extreame inſufficiencie; They would ſay he could neither reade nor ſwim: So Cæſar ſeemed of the ſame opinion, by commending the skill of ſwimming, as a thing of much conſequence in the vſe of Armes. Whereof he made good experience in Egypt; where he caſt himſelfe into a ſmall boate, for his better ſafetie: and finding it ouer-charged, and ready to ſinke, he leapt into the ſea, and ſwom to his Fleet, which was 200 paſes off, holding certaine papers in his left hand, aboue the water; and trayling his coate of Armes in his teeth, that it might not be left to the enemie. *Lib. 6. ca. 14.*

CHAP. XVIII.

Afranius marcheth with three legions, to cut off a *party. The ſcarcitie of victuall in* Cæſars Armie.

IT was told Afranius, of great troopes and conuoies that were comming to Cæſar, but were hindered by the waters, and a boade there by the Riuers ſide: for, thither were come Archers out of Ruthenia, and Horſemen out of Gallia, with manie carres & cariages, according to the cuſtome of the Galles. There were beſides, of all ſorts, about ſixe thouſand men, with their ſeruaunts and attendants; but without order, or any knowne commaund: for, euery man was at his owne libertie, trauelling the Countrey without feare, according to the former freedome & ſafetie of the waies. There were likewiſe many young men of good ranke, Senators ſonnes, and Knights of Rome; beſides Embaſſadors from ſundry States, & diuers of Cæſars Legates. All theſe were kept backe by the Riuer. *Cæſar.*

Afranius went out in the night time with three legions, and all his horſe, to cut off this partie; and ſending his Caualrie before, ſette vpon them vnawares. Howbeit, the Caualrie of the Galles, put themſelues ſpeedily in order, and buckled with them. And as long as it ſtood vpon indifferent tearmes, they, being but a few, did withſtand a great number of the enemie: but as ſoone as they diſcouered

749.B

uered the Enſignes of the legions comming towards them, ſome few of them being ſlaine, the reſt betooke themſelues to the next hilles.

Iam comes ſemper magnorum prima malorum, Sæua fames aderat: nulloque obſeſſus ab hoſte miles eget, toto cenſu non prodigus emit exiguam Cererem. Lucan. lib. 4.

This ſmall time of encounter, was of great conſequence for the ſafetie of our men: for, by this meanes, they had opportunitie to take the vpper ground. There were loſt that day 200 Archers, a few horſemen, and no great number of the ſouldiers boyes, together with the baggage. Victualls, by reaſon of all theſe things wexed very deere, as well in regard of the preſent want, as alſo for feare of future penurie, as commonly it happeneth in ſuch caſes; inſomuch as a buſhell of Corne was worth fiftie pence. Whereby the ſouldiers grew weake for want of ſuſtenaunce; and the inconueniences therof, daily more and more increaſed. For, ſo great was the alteration which happened in a few daies, that our men vvere much afflicted with the extreame want of all neceſſary prouiſions: wheras they on the other ſide, hauing all things in aboundance, were held for victors. Cæſar ſent vnto thoſe States which were of his party, and inſtead of Corne, gaue them order to furniſh him with Cattell; diſmiſſed ſouldiers boyes, and ſent them to townes further off; relieuing the preſent ſcarcitie by all the meanes he could.

Afranius and Petreius, together with their friends, inlarged theſe thinges in their Letters to Rome: rumour and report added much heerevnto; as that the warre was euen almoſt at an end. Theſe Meſſengers and Letters beeing come to Rome, there was great concourſe from all parts to Afranius houſe, much congratulation and reioycing for theſe thinges: and there-vpon, many went out of Italy to Pompey, ſome to be the firſt meſſengers of the newes; others, that they might not ſeeme to expect the euent of the war, and ſo prooue the laſt that came to that partie.

Primum cana ſalix madefacto vimine paruam Texitur in puppim, cæſoque induta iuvenco vectoris patiens tumidum ſuperenatat amnem. Lucan. lib. 4.

When the matter was brought to theſe difficulties and extreamities, and all the waies were kept by Afranius ſouldiers and horſemen; Cæſar gaue order to the ſouldiers, to make ſuch boates and Barkes as hee had in former yeeres taught them the vſe of in the warre of Britaine: the keeles whereof were built of light ſtuffe, and ſmall timber, and the vpper partes made with wicker, and couered with hides. Which beeing finiſhed, he laded them vpon Carres, and carried them in the night ſome twentie two miles from the Campe. And in thoſe Barks, tranſporting his ſouldiers ouer the riuer, vpon a ſuddaine poſſeſt himſelfe of a little hill, which lay continent vnto the water ſide: which hill he ſpeedily fortified, before the enemie had notice thereof. Afterwards, he brought ouer a legion to that place, and made a bridge frõ ſide to ſide in two daies ſpace: and ſo the convoies, which had gone forth for prouiſions & forrage, returned backe in ſafetie; wherby he began to ſettle a courſe for prouiſion of Corne.

The ſame day, he paſſed ouer the riuer a great part of his Caualrie, who falling vnlooked for vpon the forragers (ſcattered heere and there without feare or ſuſpicion) cut off a great number of men and cattell. Where-vpon, the Enemy ſending certaine Spaniſh troopes, bearing little round bucklers, to ſecond and relieue the forragers, they diuided themſelues of purpoſe into two parts; the one to keepe and defend the booty which they had gotte, and the other, to reſiſt and beate backe the forces ſent to charge them. One of our cohorts, which had eaſilie runne out before the Armie, was intercepted, & cut off: the reſt returned by the bridge into the Camp in ſafety with a great booty.

THE

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THese Rutheni inhabited that part of prouince where Rhodes now ſtandeth: amongſt whom Cæſar had ordinarily a legion or two in Guarizon, for the better keeping of the Countrey in obedience, being a ſtout and warlike people, and vſing archerie, as appeareth in this place. Which, howſoeuer the courſe of time hath brought into vtter contempt, yet let vs not ſcorne to take notice, that anciently it hath been vſed by ſuch as performed the greateſt feates of Armes: for, Hercules had but two ſorts of weapons to atchieue labours of ſo much variety; a Club for ſuch monſters as would conteſt with his valour, and Boaw and Arrowes for others that kept further off. And in the old warre of Troy (if Homer may bee belieued) Pindarus, Duke of Lycia, hauing a ſtable of gallant Courſers, left them all at home, leaſt hee ſhould not find meanes at Troy, to giue them their ordinarie keeping; and came on foote with his boaw and arrowes, with ſuch reputation of his deedes of Armes, that Aeneas ſought him out in a conflict, to reſiſt the rage and extreame preſsures of Diomedes. And on the contrary part, Teucer relieued the diſtreſſed Grecians from a hot and deſperate purſute, by ſlaying with his boaw eight valiant Troians before he ſtirred his foote.

Concerning the vſe of which weapon, howſoeuer it may ſeeme ridiculous (to ſuch as vnderſtand nothing but the courſe of the preſent age) to recall the long boaw to the ſeruice of a battell; yet they may remember, that the Gray-gooſe wing gaue our forefathers ſuch aduantage, that they wrought wonders amongſt all Nations for deedes of Armes: which wee ſhould imitate with as much hope of ſucceſſe, if we could handle our boawes in any meaſure as they did. Of this I haue already formerlie treated.

Rutheni.
Soluuntur ſtaui longa ſtatione Rutheni. Luc. lib. 1.

Stymphalidæ. Iliad. lib. 5.

Iliad. lib. 7.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

IT is a ſaying as true as it is old, that An ill hap commeth not alone, but is alwaies attended with ſuch conſequents as will inforce other inconueniences; as may be obſerued by this extreamitie heere mentioned. For, the miſchiefe was not bounded with the affliction which Cæſar ſuffered for want of needfull prouiſion, notwithſtanding the weight was ſuch as could not bee borne by ordinarie patience: but the enemy inlarged it to his further advantage, vaunting of it as a helpleſſe remedy, and making out diſpatches to ſend victorie to Rome. VVhich gaue him yet further preiudice in the opinion of the world; and made thoſe his enemies, that formerlie ſhewed no diſlike of his proceedings. And thus euery ill chaunce hath a taile of many other misfortunes; which if either prouidence or indeuour may preuent, it ſhall much import a Commaunder to auoide them.

An ill chaunce commeth not alone.

THE

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

Neceſſitas fortiter ferre docet, conſuetudo facilè. Seneca. de tranqui. cap. 10

AS Neceſſitie maketh men conſtant in their ſufferings, ſo Cuſtome giueth eaſineſs and meanes of deliuerance; according as may appeare by this direction of Cæſar, which was wholly drawne from former experience. For, firſt the Boates heere preſcribed, vvere ſuch as he vſed in the warre of Britannie; and as far as may bee gathered out of the former Commentaries, were thoſe he commaunded to be built for his ſecond iourney: which he would now imitate, in regard of the flatneſs of their bottomes, and not otherwiſe. For, it is not to be ſuppoſed, that thoſe Barkes were couered with skinnes; vnleſſe peraduenture hee vſed ſome ſuch as theſe vpon occaſion in that warre, not expreſſed in the ſtorie.

Ib. 5.

Herodotus in his *Clio*, deſcribeth the like; The boats (ſaith he) which come from Babylon, downe the Riuer Euphrates, are made by the Heardſmen of Armenia, of light Timber, in a round faſhion, without beake or poope, & are couered with skinne, the hairie ſide inwarde; and in theſe they take their paſſage. Such as fiſh for Salmon in the Riuer of Seuerne, vſe the like boates in all reſpects, which they call *Corracles* of *Corium*: beeing all couered with horſe-skinnes tanned. Secondly, the means he vſed to paſſe ouer without impeachement from the Enemie, by carying thoſe boates in the night time vp the Riuer to a place of ſecuritie, was ſuch, the like whereof he had formerly practiſed in Gallia, to paſſe the Riuer Loier, beeing then guarded on the other ſide by the Enemie. Whereby we ſee, how much vſe and continuance doth inable men, beyond others of ſmaller experience: according to that, *Dies Diem docet.*

Corracles.

CHAP. XIX.

The Maſsilians encounter with Brutus at Sea, *and are beaten.*

Cæſar.

WHile theſe things were done at Ilerda, the Maſsilians (by the direction of L. Domitius) rigged and ſet out 17 Gallies, whereof eleuen were couered; beſides many leſſer veſſels which went along with them, to make the Nauie ſeeme the greater for the aſtoniſhment of the Enemy. In theſe they put a great number of Archers, and many Albickes, of whom wee haue formerly made mention; encouraging them both by rewards and promiſes. Domitius required certaine ſhippes for himſelfe, and them he filled with Shepheards and Countrymen, which he had brought thither with him. The Nauie beeing thus furniſhed, ſet forward with great confidence towards our ſhipping, whereof D: Brutus was Admirall, and lay

lay at Anker at an Iland right ouer against Marſellues. Brutus was far inferior to the enemy in ſhipping; but Cæſar hauing pickt the chiefeſt and valianteſt men out of all the legions, as well of the Anteſignani as Centurions, put them aboard the Fleet, they themſelues requiring to bee imploied in that ſeruice. Theſe men had prepared hookes, and grapples of Iron, and had likewiſe furniſhed thẽſelues with many Piles and Darts, and other ſorts of weapons: and vnderſtanding of the Enemies comming, put to ſea, and encountered with the Maſſilians. They fought on either ſide very valiantly and fiercely; neither were the Albickes much inferiour to our men in proweſſe, beeing rough mountainous people, exerciſed in Armes: and hauing a little before fallen off frõ the Maſſilians, did now remember the late contract and league they had made with them. The Shepheards, in like manner (a rude and vntamed kind of people, ſtirred vp with hope of liberty) did ſtriue to ſhew their valour in the preſence of their Maiſter.

The Maſſilians, truſting to the nimbleneſs of their ſhipping, and in the skill and dexteritie of their Pilots, did fruſtrate (in a deluding manner) the ſhocke of our ſhippes, when they came violently to ſtemme them. And, foraſmuch as they had ſea-roome enough, they drew out their Nauie at length, to compaſſe and incloſe our men about: And ſometimes, they would ſingle out one of our ships, and ſet vpon them with diuers of theirs together, and wipe off a ſide of their oars in their paſſage along by them.

When they came to deale at hand (leauing aſide the art and skill of the Pilots) they tooke themſelues to the ſtoutneſs and valour of the Highlanders. Our men were faine to vſe worſe oare-men, and more vnskilfull Pilots; who beeing lately taken out of shippes of burden, did not well knowe the true names of the tackling, and were much troubled with the heauineſs and ſluggiſhneſs of the shipping; which beeing made in haſte of vnſeaſoned timber, was not ſo nimble or ready for vſe. But, as the matter came to handie blowes, euery ſingle shippe did willingly vnder-take two at once; and hauing grapled with either of them, fought on each ſide, entering valiantly the enemies shippes, killing a great number of the Hilanders and Shepheards. Part of the ships they ſunke, ſome they tooke with the men, & the reſt they beate backe into the Hauen. That day the Maſſilians loſt nine shippes, with thoſe that were taken. This newes was brought to Cæſar at Ilerda.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Sea-fight.

I Haue formerlie obſerued the manner of their ſea-fight, conſiſting of three parts; The firſt was, their nimble & skilfull managing of their ſhippes, either forceably to aſſault, or to lavire and beare off, as might fall for their beſt aduantage: wherein the Maſsilians, by reaſon of the skilfulneſſe of their Pilots, had great confidence. The ſecond, was their fight before they came to grappling, as well with great engines, ſuch as were their *Baliſtæ* and *Catapultæ*, caſting ſtones and logs of wood one againſt another, as alſo with ſlings, arrowes and darts; reſembling our great artillerie, and

and ſmall ſhot; for which purpoſe, their ſhippes were built with fore-caſtles & turrets, and other aduantages of height, for their caſting weapons. The third, was their grappling and forceable entry; wherein, foraſmuch as the matter was referred to the arbitrement of valour, the legionarie ſouldier caried the cauſe. Whence we may obſerue, that their legions were the nurſeries of their valiant and worthy men, as well for the ſea as the land: beeing fitted by the diſcipline of their Militarie exerciſes, to vndertake any ſeruice ſubiect to humane induſtrie; whereof they gaue an account woorthie the Schoole wherein they were inſtructed.

Neither is it ſeene at any time, but that ſuch kingdomes as make care to traine vp their men in Academies of vertuous Actualitie, doe alwaies keepe their honour at a high price; affording, at all times, men of abſolute and compleat cariage, both for deſsignement and performance.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

I Haue a little before ſhewed out of Liuie, that the *Anteſignani* were ordinarilie taken for the *Haſtati*; which, beeing the eaſieſt ſort of ſouldiers, according to the generall diuiſion of a legion, doth ſeeme to contradict the paſſage in this Chapter, *Sed delectos ex omnibus legionibus, fortiſsimos viros Anteſignanos, Centuriones Cæſar ei claſsi attribuerat*. For the better cleering whereof, we are to note, that as the *Haſtati*, or firſt battell of a legion, were generallie taken for the *Anteſignani* (as ſtanding before the Eagle, and other the chieſeſt Enſignes, which were alwaies amongſt the *Principes* or ſecond battell); ſo euery Maniple, hauing an Enſigne in the middeſt of the troope, the ſouldiers that ſtood in front before the Enſigne, were likewiſe called *Anteſignani*, and were the beſt ſouldiers in the Companie: for, the Centurion, ſtanding alwaies in the head of the troope, was accompanied with the valianteſt and worthieſt men; the reſt, filling vp the reare, conſorted with the Lieutenant, who there-vpon was called *Tergi-ductor*.

Whence wee may admire the temperature and diſpoſition of a Romaine Armie; beeing firſt generally diuided into three battels, whereof the meaneſt were in the vauntguard, to make triall of their ſtrength, and to ſpend the heat of their young blood in the firſt affront of an enemie: The *Veterani*, or olde ſouldiers, beeing left in the reareward, to repaire any loſſe, which either force or caſualtie ſhould caſt vpon their Leaders. And againe, to counterpoiſe thẽſelues, in ſuch a manner as the weakeſt might not alwaies goe to the wall, their priuate Companies were ſo ordered, that the beſt men were alwaies in front. Whereby they made ſuch an exquiſite temper, as kept euery part of the Armie in their full ſtrength.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Vpon the making of this Bridge, the Enemie *resolueth to transferre the warre* into Celtiberia.

Vpon the making of this Bridge, Fortune ſuddenly changed. The enemy, fearing the courage and valour of our Caualrie, did not ſo freely range abroad as they had wont to do; Sometimes ſeeking forrage within a ſmall diſtance of the Camp, to the end they might find a ſafe and eaſie retreit if occaſion required: Sometimes fetching a great compaſſe about to auoid the guardes & ſtations of our horſemen. And if they had receiued but the leaſt check, or had but deſcried the Caualrie afarre off, they would haue caſt downe their burdens, and fledde away. Caſar.

At laſt, they omitted forraging for many daies together, and (which was neuer vſed by any Nation) ſent out to ſeeke it in the night. In the meane time, thoſe of Oſca and Caliguris, beeing in league together, ſent Embaſſadours to Cæſar, with offer of their ſeruice, in ſuch ſort as he ſhould pleaſe to cõmaund it. Within a few daies, the Tarraconenſes, Lacetani, and Auſetani, together with the Illurganonenſes, which border vpon the Riuer Ebrus, followed after. Of all theſe hee deſired ſupplies of Corne, and prouiſion: which they promiſed to furniſh; and accordingly got horſes from all quarters, and brought graine into the Campe. In like manner, the Regiment of the Illurganonenſes, vnderſtanding the reſolution of their State, left the Enemy, and came vnto him with their Colours: and ſuddainely a great alteration of things appeared. Oſca. Caliguris.

The bridge beeing perfected, great Citties and States beeing come in vnto him, a courſe ſetled for prouiſion of Corne, and the rumour blowen ouer of the ſuccours and legions, which Pompey was ſaid to come withall, by the way of Mauritania; many other townes further off, reuolted from Afranius, and clauc to Cæſars partie.

The Enemie, beeing much affrighted and abaſhed at theſe things, Cæſar (to auoide the great circuit by which hee continually ſent his horſemen about by the bridge) hauing got a conuenient place, reſolued to make many trenches of thirtie foote in breadth, by which he might draine ſome part of the riuer Sicoris, and make it paſſable by a foord. Theſe trenches beeing almoſt made, Afranius and Petreius did thereupon conceiue a great feare, leaſt they ſhould be cut off altogether from victuall and forrage; forasmuch as Cæſar was very ſtrong in horſe, and therefore they determined to leaue that place, and transferre the vvarre into Celtiberia: being the rather there-vnto induced, for that of thoſe 2 contrarie Factions, which in the former warre had ſtood for L. Sertorius, ſuch Citties as were ſubdued by Pompey, did yet ſtand in awe of his Name and Authoritie:

and that ſuch, as from the beginning had continued firme vnto him, did intirely loue him, for the great benefites they had receiued from him; amongſt whom Cæſars name was not knowne. There they expected great ſuccours both of horſe and foote, and made no doubt but to keepe the warre on foote vntill winter.

Octogeſa. *This aduice beeing agreed vpon, they gaue order to take vp all the boates that were on the riuer Iberus, and to bring them to Octogeſa; a towne ſited vpon Iberus, twentie miles from the Campe. There they commaunded a bridge of boates to be made; and tranſporting two legions ouer Sicoris, fortified their Camp with a rampier of twelue foote in height: which beeing knowen by the Diſcouerers, Cæſar by the extreame labour of the ſouldiers, continued day and night in turning the courſe of the water; & at length, brought the matter to that paſſe, that the horſemen (with ſome difficulty) durſt aduenture ouer: but the foot troopes, hauing nothing aboue the water but their heads, were ſo hindered as well by the depth of the Riuer, as the ſwiftneſs of the ſtreame, that they could not well get ouer. Notwithſtanding, at the ſame inſtant of time, newes was brought of the making of the bridge ouer the Riuer Iberus, and a foord was found in the riuer Sicoris.*

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Ilerda. FIrſt, concerning the places heere mentioned, the Reader may take notice, that Ilerda (now knowen by the name of Lerida) ſtandeth vpon the Riuer Sicoris, in the Prouince of Catalonia; and beeing ſited vpon a hill, is incloſed round with a wall of hewen ſtone, in a pleaſant and fertile Countrey, both for Corne, wine, oyle, and fruite: as it is graphicallie deſcribed by Lucan; Lib. 1111.

Colle tumet modico, leuique excreuit in altum
Pingue ſolum tumulo, ſuper hunc fundata vetuſta
Surgit Ilerda manu; placidis prælabitur vndis
Heſperios inter Sicoris non vltimus amnes:
Saxeus ingenti quem pons amplectitur arcu,
Hibernas paſſurus aquas.

It was formerly a Vniuerſitie, and at all times famous for ſalt meates & pickled fiſh. Where-vnto Horace alludeth, when hee tolde his booke, That although it ſo fell out that no man would regard it, neuertheleſſe, it might ſerue at Ilerda to wrap Salt-fiſh in.

Aut fugies Vticam, aut vnctus mittêris Ilerdam.

Oſca Victrix. Oſca, now called Hueſca, a towne likewiſe of Catalonia, in former time ſurnamed *Victrix*; where Sertorius kept the ſonnes of the Grandes of Spaine, as pledges of their loyaltie; vnder pretext of learning the Greeke and Latine tongue, which he had there cauſed to be taught, in forme of an Academie.

In

In this towne his hap was to be slaine by Perpenna, as Paterculus recordeth the storie; *Tum M. Perpenna prætorius, è proscriptis, generis clarioris quàm animi Sertorium inter cœnam Aetoscæ interemit; Romanisque certâ victoriam, partibus suis excidium, sibi turpissimam mortem, pessimo auctorauit facinore:* Which Aetosca, is by all men taken for this Osca. Lib. 2.

The inhabitants boast of nothing more at this day, then that S. Laurence was a Cittizen of their towne.

Calaguris, now Calahorra, is seated vpon a hill on the bankes of Iberus; the people whereof are famous for their constancie, and faithfulnesse to their Cōmaunders, and specially to Sertorius: as appeareth by that of Valerius Maximus; *Quò perseuerantius interempti Sertorij cineribus obsidionem Cn. Pompei frustrantes, fidem præstarent, quia nullum iam aliud in vrbe eorum supererat animal, vxores suas, natosque, ad vsum nefariæ dapis verterunt; quoque diutius armata iuuentus, viscera sua visceribus suis aleret, infelices cadauerum reliquias salire non dubitauit.* Calaguris. Lib. 7. cap. 6.

Neuertheless, Afranius tooke thē in the end, by continuall siege; amongst whom that antiquitie of Bebricius is very remarkable, which is yet extant neere to Logronno.

DIIS. MANIBVS.
Q. SERTORII.
ME. BEBRICIVS. CALAGVRITANVS.
DEVOVI.
ARBITRATVS.
RELIGIONEM. ESSE.
EO. SVBLATO.
QVI. OMNIA.
CVM. DIIS. IMMORTALIBVS.
COMMVNIA. HABEBAT.
ME. INCOLVMEM.
RETINERE. ANIMAM.
VALE. VIATOR. QVI. HÆC. LEGIS.
ET. MEO. DISCE. EXEMPLO.
FIDEM. SERVARE.
IPSA. FIDES.
ETIAM. MORTVIS. PLACET.
CORPORE. HVMANO. EXVTIS.

In memorie of whose fidelitie, Augustus Cæsar tooke a band of these people for a guard to his person. In this towne was Quintilian the Rhetorician borne; and beeing brought from thence to Rome, in Nero his time, was the first that taught a publique Schoole for salarie: as witnesseth Saint Hierome; *Quintilianus ex Hispania Calaguritanus primus Romæ publicam Scholam tenuit, et salario cohonestatus publico claruit.* Suetonius in Augusto. Cohors Calaguritanorum. Ad Eusebij Chronicon.

Celtiberia was the Countrey lying along the Riuer Iberus, inhabited by people comming out of Gallia Celtica: where-vpon Lucan saith; Celtiberia.

Lib. 4.

——— profugique à Gente vetuſta
Gallorum Celtæ, miſcentes nomen Iberis.

Lib. 2. cap. 17. Lib. 2. ca. 6. Florus calleth them *Hiſpaniæ Robur*. And Valerius Maximus affirmeth, That they were alwaies glad of warre, as beeing to end their life in happines and honour; and lamented their ill fortune to die in their beddes, as a miſerable and ſhamefull end.

Sil. Ital. Lib. 3.

His pugnæ cecidiſſe decus, corpúſque cremari
Tale nefas: cælo credunt, ſuperiſque referri,
Impaſtus carpat ſi membra iacentia vultur.

Their Armes and weapons were of ſingular raritie: for, beſides the water of Bilbo, which gaue them an invincible temper; they had alſo a peculiar faſhion of working them, as witneſſeth Diodorus Siculus: hiding their plates of Iron in the earth, vntill the worſt and weakeſt part were eaten out with ruſt, and of that which remained, they made very hard ſwords.

Iib. 6. cap. 9.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE ſuddaine alterations of warre, are like the changings of mens mindes vpon ſmall accidents; which are ſo forceable to ſhake our reſolutions, as made a great Philoſopher, to deſcribe a man by the propertie of *mutabile Animal*. And is notablie ſeene in this; That Afranius, in the compaſſe of a few daies, triumphed of Cæſars ouerthrow, and fled away for feare of his power. Whence we may note the aduantage comming to a partie, when they ſhake off any eminent diſtreſſe: for, as the extreamitie thereof threatneth ruine and deſtruction, ſo the alteration bringeth with it an opinion of victorie. And ſurely, ſuch is the condition of all ſorts of Miſerie, that when the ſtorme is ouer, and the bitterneſs of the affliction alaid, good times come redoubled vpon the Patients; as though the viciſsitude of things, did inforce contrary effects. And therefore, a Commaunder, knowing the advantage of ſuch an opportunitie, muſt indeuour to improue the ſame, as may beſt ſerue to a ſpeedie end.

CHAP. XXI.

The Enemy ſetteth forward, and is ſtaied by Cæſar.

Cæſar.

THE Enemy, ther-vpon, thought it expedient for him to make the more haſte; and therfore leauing two Auxiliary cohorts for the ſafe keeping of Ilerda, hee tranſported all his forces ouer the Riuer Sicoris, and incamped himſelfe with the two legions, which formerly he had caried ouer. There remained nothing for Cæſar to doe, but with his Caualrie to impeache and

and trouble the enemy in their march. And foraſmuch as it was a great compaſſe about, to goe by the bridge (whereby it would come to paſſe, that the Enemy would get to Iber a farre neerer way) hee paſſed ouer his horſemen by the foord. About the third watch, as Petreius and Afranius had raiſed their Camp; vpon a ſuddaine, the Caualrie ſhewed themſelues in the reare; and ſwarming about them in great multitudes, began to ſtay and hinder their paſſage. As ſoone as it beganne to bee day light; from the vpper ground where Cæſar lay incamped, it was perceiued, how the reareward of the enemy was hard laid to by our Caualrie, and how ſometimes they turned head againe, and were neuertheleſſe broken and rowted: ſometimes their Enſignes ſtood ſuddenly ſtill, and all their foote troopes charged our horſe, and forc't them to giue way; and then turning backe, went on their way againe. The ſouldiers walking vp and down the Camp, were grieued that the enemy ſhould ſo eſcape their handes, whereby the matter would conſequently be ſpun out into a long warre: and went vnto the Centurions and Tribunes of the ſouldiers, praying them to beſeech Cæſar not to ſpare them for any danger or labour; for, they were ready and willing to paſſe the Riuer where the horſe went ouer. Cæſar, mooued through their deſire and importunity, albeit he feared to expoſe his Army to a riuer of that greatneſs, yet he thought it expedient to put it to triall: and therefore commaunded, that the weakeſt ſouldiers of all the Centuries ſhould bee taken out, whoſe courage or ſtrength ſhewed a diſabilitie to vnder-take that ſeruice: and theſe he left in the Campe, with one legion to defend the ſame, bringing out the other legions without carriage or burden; and hauing ſet a great number of horſes & cattell both aboue and belowe in the riuer, hee tranſported his Army ouer. Some few of the ſouldiers, being caried away with the ſtreame, were ſuccoured and taken vp by the horſemen; inſomuch as not one man periſhed.

The Army caried thus ouer in ſafetie, hee ranged them in order, and marched forward with a three-fold battell. Such was the endeuour of the ſouldiour, that albeit they had fet circuit of ſixe miles to the foord, and had ſpent much time in paſsing the riuer; yet by the ninth houre, they did ouertake the enemie that roſe about the third watch of the night. Three of the clock in the afternoone.

Aſſoone as Afranius and Petreius had diſcouered the legions afarre off (being terrified with the noueltie of that purſuit) they betooke themſelues to the vpper ground, and there imbattelled their troopes. In the meane time, Cæſar refreſhed his Armie in the fielde, and would not ſuffer them (beeing wearie) to giue battell: and as they tried againe to goe on in their march, he followed after and ſtaied them; whereby the enemy was forced to incampe ſooner then vvas purpoſed: for, there were hilles a little before them; and for fiue miles together, the paſſages were very difficult and narrow.

By which meanes (beeing aduaunced betweene the hilles) they hoped to bee free from Cæſars Caualrie; and by keeping the paſſages, to hinder the Armie frõ following after; to the end they themſelues, might without perill or feare, put their forces ouer the riuer Iberus: which by all meanes was to bee effected. Neuertheleſſe, beeing wearied with trauailing and fighting all day, they put off the buſineſse to the next morning.

Vaſa conclamari.

Cæſar alſo incamped himſelfe on the next hill; and about midnight, ſome of their partie being gone out from the Campe, ſome-what far off, to fetch water, were taken by the horſemen. By them, Cæſar was aduertiſed, that the Enemie with ſilence began to remoue, and to lead their troopes out of their Campe. Wherupon, he commaunded the ſigne of riſing to be giuen, and the cry (diſlodging and truſsing vp their baggage) to be taken vp, according to the diſcipline and vſe of ſouldiers.

The Enemy, hearing the cry, fearing leaſt they ſhould bee impeached in the night, and forced to fight with their burdens on their backs, or to be ſhutte vp in thoſe ſtraight paſſages by Cæſars horſemen, ſtaied their iourney, and kept their forces within their Campe.

OBSERVATIONS.

Hannibal, per ſuperiora Padi vada, exercitum traducens, elephantos in ordinem oppoſuit ad impetum fluminis ſuſtinendum. Liuie.

THis paſſage ouer Sicoris, was in the ſame manner as hee caried his Armie ouer the Riuer Loier, in the ſeauenth Commentarie of the warre of Gallia; *Vado per Equites invento, pro rei neceſsitate opportuno, vt Brachia modò atque Humeri, ad ſuſtinenda arma liberi ab aqua eſſe poſſent, diſpoſito equitatu, qui vim fluminis frangerent, incolumem exercitum tranſduxit.*

Acne quid Sicoris, repetitis audeat vndis, Spargitur in ſulcos, et ſciſſo gurgite riuis dat pœnas maioris aquæ. Lucan. l. 4

The horſe that ſtood aboue, brake the force of the water, & thoſe that were belowe, tooke vp ſuch as were ouercome with the ſtreame; and withall, gaue courage to the ſouldier to venture with better aſſurance, ſeeing the paſſage impaled in, on each ſide, to keepe them frō miſcarying. His attempt vpon Sicoris, to abate the ſwelling pride of that Riuer, by diuiding it into many ſtreames, was in imitation of the firſt Cyrus; who taking diſpleaſure at the Riuer Cyndes, next vnto Euphrates the greateſt Riuer of Aſsyria, drew it into three hundred and threeſcore chanels.

Herodo. Clio.

In the ſame maner Euphrates was diuided firſt by Semiramis, and afterward by Alexander. *Herod. Iuſt. Lib. 2. cap. 7.*

Crœſus, not finding the Riuer Halis paſſable by a foord, and hauing no meanes to make a bridge, ſunke a great trench behinde the Campe, from the vpper part of the Riuer, and ſo drew all the water behind his Armie.

Vegetius hath a particular diſcourſe of paſsing an Armie ouer a Riuer, whither it be by bridge or boate, or by wading, or ſwimming, or any other way: to which I referre the Reader.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Afranius seeketh to take the Straites betweene *certaine Mountaines; but was preuen-* ted by Cæsar.

(·.·)

THE next day folowing, Petreius went out secretly with a few horse, to discouer the Countrey; and for the same purpose, some went likewise out of Cæsars Campe. L. Decidius Saxo, was sent with a small troope to view the site of the Place, and either party returned with the same report: that for fiue miles, the way was open and champain, and afterwards, very rough and mountainous; and whosoeuer first tooke those straights, might easily impeache the enemy from going further. The matter was disputed in the Councell of warre, by Petreius and Afranius; the time of their setting forward, was debated: Most of them thought it fit to take their iourney in the night; for, by that means, they might com to those straights before it were perceiued. Others were of opinion, that it was not possible to steale out in the night; as appeared by the cry of rising, taken vp the night before in Cæsars Campe, vpon their remouing: and Cæsars horsemen did so range abroad in the night, that all places and passages were kept & shut vp. Neither were they to giue occasion of night fights, but to auoid the same by all the meanes they could; forasmuch as in ciuill dissension, the ordinary souldier would rather suffer himselfe to bee ouer-maistered by feare, then continue firme in the allegeance which he had sworne vnto: whereas, in the day time, euery man hath shame and dishonor before his eyes; together with the presence of the Centurions and Tribunes: with which respects, a souldier is restrained, and kept within the bounds of duty. And therefore, the attempt was by all meanes to be vndertaken in the day time, although it fell out to some losse; yet neuerthelesse, the body of the Armie might passe in safetie, and possesse that place which they sought for.

Attollunt campo geminæ iuga saxea rupes, valle caua media: tellus huic ardua celsos continuat colles, tutæ quos inter opaco aufractu latuere viæ: quibus hoste potito faucibus, emitti terrarum in deuia Martem, inque feras gentes Cæsar videt? Lucan. lib. 4.

This opinion preuailing in their consultation, they determined by breake of day the next morning to sette forward. Cæsar, hauing diligently viewed the Countrey; as soone as day began to appeare, drew all his forces out of his Campe, and marched forward in a great circuit, keeping no direct way. For, the waies which lead to Iberus and Octogesa, were taken vp with the Enemies Campe; insomuch as they were to passe ouer great and difficult valleis. And in many places, broken Rocks and stones did so hinder them, that they were necessarilie to giue their weapons from hand to hand, the souldiers lifting vp one another, and so they passed most part of the way. Howsoeuer, no man thought much of the labour, for that they hoped to giue an end to all their trauell, if they could keep the enemy from passing ouer the Riuer Iberus, and cut off his victualls.

Ite sine vllo ordine, ait, raptũque fuga cõuertite bellum, et faciem pugnæ vultusq; inferte minaces. Lucan. lib. 4.

At

749b

At the firſt, Afranius ſouldiers ranne ioyfully out of their Campe to ſee the Armie, caſting out words of deriſion & reproche, that for want of victuall, they fledde and returned to Ilerda; for, the way they held, was quite contrary to that they intended: whereby they ſeemed to goe backe againe: and the Commaunders themſelues, did much approoue their owne counſell, that they had kept their troopes within the Campe. For, that which confirmed thē in their opinion, was, that they perceiued they were come out without their cariages: whereby they hoped, neceſsity would not ſuffer them to continue long there. But when they ſaw the troopes by little and little to wind to the right hand; and that they perceiued, how thoſe that were in front, had fallē backward beyond their Camp, there was no man ſo dull, but thought it expedient preſently to march out, and make head againſt them. Whereupon, they cried to Arme; and all their forces, excepting ſome few cohorts which were left to keepe the Campe, went out, and marched directly towards Iberus.

The whole buſineſs conſiſted in ſpeed and celeritie, which of the two ſhould firſt take the ſtraights, and poſſeſſe the hilles. Cæſars Army was hindered by the difficultie of the way: and Afranius partie was retarded by Cæſars Caualry. The matter was come to that vpſhot, that if Afranius party did firſt get the hils, they might happely quit themſelues of danger; but the baggage of the whole Armie, and the cohorts left in the Campe could not be ſaued: for, beeing intercepted & ſecluded by Cæſars Armie, there was no meanes to relieue them.

It fell out, that Cæſar firſt attained the place; and beeing come out from among thoſe great Rocks into a plaine champaine, put his Army in order of battell againſt the enemy.

Afranius, ſeeing the enemy in front, and his reareward hardly charged by Cæſars Caualry, got the aduantage of a ſmal hill, & there made their ſtand: and from thence ſent 4 cohorts bearing round bucklers, vnto a Mountaine, which in all mens ſight was higher then the reſt; commaunding them to runne as faſt as they could, and poſſeſſe that hill, intending to follow after with all his forces; and altering his courſe, to gette along the ridges and toppes of the Mountaines to Octogeſa.

As the cohorts were aduaunced forward by an oblique circuit, Cæſars Caualrie perceiuing their intendement, ſette vpon them with ſuch violence, that they were not able any time to beare their charge, but were all cut in peeces in the ſight of both Armies.

Noctvrna prælia eſſe vitanda, quòd perterritus miles in ciuili diſſenſione, timori magis quā religioni conſulere conſueuerit; at lucē multum per ſe pudorem, omnium oculis afferre.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

PEtreius and Afranius, in their Councell of warre, reſolued by all meanes to ſhun night encounters, as a thing full of hazard and vncertaintie, and apt for looſeneſs and diſobedience: for, the night, beeing neither a diſcouerer of errours, nor yet a diſtinguiſher either of

of actions or persons; but wrapping vp both the vertuous & the faultie in her Mantle of obscuritie, doth not admit of directions, to follow an opportunitie, or to help a mistaking: but rather giuing way to Impunitie and licentious confusion, leaueth no hope of what is wished: VVhereas the light is a witnes of euery mans demeanour, and hath both honour & rebuke to make dutie respected.

Neque in victoria decus, nec in fuga flagitium. Tacit. Hist. li. 2

For which causes, Curio (as it followeth in the next Commentarie) in his harange before that vntimely expedition against king Iuba, reiected their advice that would haue had him set forward in the night; *At etiam vt media nocte proficiscamur addunt: quò maiorem credo licentiam habeant qui peccare conantur: Namque huiusmodi res aut pudore aut metu tenẽtur, quibus rebus nox maximè aduersaria est.*

And, that the danger may appeare as well by effect as by discourse, let the Reader take notice of that battell by night, between Antonius Primus, on the behalfe of Vespasian, and the Vitellian legions neere vnto Cremona. Whereof Tacitus hath this description; *Prælium tota nocte varium, anceps, atrox; his, rursus illis, exitiabile. Nihil animus aut manus, ne oculi quidem prouisu iuuabant. &c.* And thus are all night workes condemned, wherein either order or honour are of anie moment.

2. *Historie.*

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

I Haue already noted, in the former Commentaries, the vse of exact and particular discouerie of the Countrey, where a partie is ingaged: then which, nothing doth more aduantage a Commander to expedite the happie issue of a warre. For, by that meanes, he is not onely able to iudge of any motion which the enemy shall offer, and to giue sure directions to frustrate and make voide the same; but also to dispose himselfe, according as shall seeme expedient for his safetie. VVherein, if a place of such consequence as is heere mentioned shall by desigme be aymed at, this historie sheweth, how much it importeth either partie to obtaine it: and therefore Cæsar had reason to make his passage through Valleis and Rocks, rather then to lose victorie, for want of labouring a little in an vneasie way.

This Lucius Decidius Saxo, or Didius Saxo, imploied in this discouerie, was afterward aduaunced by Cæsar, to bee Tribune of the people; whereat Tullie was so much offended. How can I omit (saith he) this Decidius Saxo, a man brought from the furthest end of the world? whom we see Tribune of the people, before we euer saw him a Cittizen.

Oratio. 13 Philip.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

Cæſar refuſed to fight vpon an aduantage offered; *contrary to the opinion and deſire of* all men.

Cæſar.

THere was an opportunitie then offered of doing ſome thing to purpoſe; neither was Cæſar ignorant thereof. Such an ouerthrowe giuen before their faces, did conſequentlie ſo diſcourage them, that it was thought they would not indure a charge: eſpecially, beeing compaſſed about with the Caualrie, in an indifferent and open place, where the matter was to be decided by battell. Which was on all ſides inſtantly deſired at Cæſars hands: for, the Legates, Centurions, and Tribunes of the ſouldiers, came ioyntly vnto him, deſiring him to make no doubt of giuing battell; for, all the ſouldiers were very ready, and forward there-vnto: whereas the contrary partie had ſhewed many arguments of feare and diſcouragement. First, in that they did not ſuccour their fellowes. Secondly, in aſmuch as they had not bouged from the Hill, which they had tooke for a retreit. Neither had they withſtood the charge and incurſion of the Caualrie, but had thronged pell mell together, and confuſedly mingled their Enſignes one with another; no man either keeping his place, or his colours. And if they had feared the inequality and diſaduantage of the Place, they might haue taken ſome other of more indifferencie; for, certainly they could not long ſtay where they were, but muſt depart from thence for want of water.

Signes of feare in the Enemy

Cæſar was in hope to end the matter, without either blowe or wound of his men; foraſmuch as he had cut off the enemy from victuall. And why then ſhould he loſe a man, although it were to gaine a victory? Why ſhould he ſuffer his valiant and well-deſeruing ſouldiers, to be ſo much as hurt or wounded? Or vvhy ſhould he put the matter to the hazard of Fortune? eſpecially, when it no leſſe concerned the honour and reputation of a Commaunder, to vanquiſh an enemie by direction and aduice, then to ſubdue them by force of Armes: being mooued, withall, with a tender commiſeration of ſuch Cittizens of Rome, as were conſequently to be hazarded or ſlaine in the fight; where-as hee deſired to worke out his owne Ends with their ſafety.

This opinion of Cæſars, was diſallowed by moſt men: and the ſouldiers would not ſticke to ſpeake plainely amongſt themſelues; foraſmuch as ſuch an occaſion of victorie was ouerſlipt, that when Cæſar would haue thē, they would not fight. Hee, notwithſtanding, continued firme in his opinion; and fell a little off from the enemy, to leſſen and abate their feare and amazement. Petreius and Afranius, vpon the opportunity giuen them, with-drew themſelues into their Camp. Cæſar, hauing poſſeſt the Hilles with guariſons of ſouldiers, and ſhut vp all the paſſages leading to Iberus, incamped himſelfe as neere as he could to the enemie.

The

The Commaunders of the aduerſe partie, beeing much afflicted that they had abſolutely loſt all meanes of prouiſion of victuall, and of gaining the Riuer Iberus, conſulted together of other courſes. There were two waies left open; the one to returne to Ilerda, and the other to Tarracon. And while they were conſidering of theſe things, it was told them, that ſuch as went out for water, were very much preſſed by our Caualrie. Where-vpon, they placed many courts of guard, as well of horſe, as Auxiliary footement, interlacing the legionary Cohorts amongſt them; and began alſo to raiſe a rampier from the Campe to the watering place, that the ſouldiers might ſafely, without feare, fetch water within the boundes of their fortification. Which worke, Petreius and Afranius diuided betweene themſelues; and for the perfecting of the ſame, had occaſion to goe farre off from the Campe: by meanes of whoſe abſence, the ſouldiers taking libertie of free ſpeech one with another, went out; and as any man had an acquaintance or neighbour in each others Campe, they ſought him out. And firſt, they all gaue thankes to all our party, that they had ſpared them when they were terrified and amazed the day before: in regard whereof, they acknowledged to hold their liues by their fauour: And afterwards, inquired how they might ſafely yeeld themſelues to their Generall, complaining that they had not done it in the beginning, and ſo haue ioyned their forces with their ancient friends and kinſmen.

Et quamuis nullo maculatus ſanguine miles, quæ potuit feciſſe, timet. Lucan. lib. 4.

And hauing proceeded thus farre in their communication, they require aſſurance for the liues of Afranius and Petreius; leaſt they ſhould ſeeme to conceiue miſchiefe againſt their Generalls, or betray them in ſeeking their owne ſafetie. Which things beeing agreed vpon, they promiſed to come with their Enſignes to Cæſars Campe; and ther-vpon, ſent to Cæſar ſome of the Centurions of the firſt Orders, as Deputies to treat of peace.

In the meane time, they inuited their friendes on either ſide into the Camps; inſomuch, as both their lodgings ſeemed but one Campe. Many of the Tribunes of the ſouldiers, and Centurions, came to Cæſar, recommending themſelues to his fauour: and the like did the Grandes and chiefe Princes of Spaine; whō they had commaunded out, to take party in this warre, and to remaine with them as Hoſtages and Pledges. Theſe inquired after their old acquaintances & auncient hoſtes, by whom each man might haue acceſſe to Cæſar with ſome cōmendation. In like manner, Afranius his ſonne dealt with Cæſar, by the mediation of Sulpitius a Legate, touching his owne and his fathers life. All thinges ſounded of ioy, and mutuall congratulation, of them that had eſcaped ſuch eminent dangers: and of vs, that ſeemed to haue effected ſuch great matters without bloodſhed. Inſomuch as Cæſar (in all mens iudgement) reaped great fruit of his accuſtomed clemencie and mildneſs: and his counſell was generally approoued of all men.

Hoſpitis ille ciet nomen, vocat ille propinqui: admonet hunc ſtudijs conſors puerilibus ætas: nec Romanus erat qui non agnouerat hoſtem. Lucan. lib. 4.

THE OBSERVATION.

THis Chapter containeth a paſſage of that note and eminencie, as the like is not read in anie ſtorie. For, if we ſearch the recordes of all Nations, from the very birth of Bellona, vnto times of latter memorie, it will no where elſe appeare, that a Generall ſpared any aduantage to purchaſe a victorious name, by the bloodſhed and ruine of his enemie: and that contrary to the will and deſire of his Armie, that had vndergon ſuch difficulties and hazards, to giue an end to that warre. Contrary to his knowledge and late experience of the mutability and change of time and fortune. Contrary to the ſureſt rule of warre; *Dolus an virtus, quis in hoſte requirit?* And contrary to the vſe of Armes, which are alwaies bent againſt an enemie to ſubdue him.

Neque enim tibi, maior in Armis Emathijs fortuna fuit. &c. Lucan.

This is the fruit of that other part of Military knowledge, which men doe rather admire then attaine vnto, no leſſe concerning the honour of a Commaunder; *Conſilio, ſuperare quàm gladio*, and was a maine ſteppe to raiſe him to the Empire. For, howſoeuer the ſouldier (to preuent further labour) ſtood hard for blood, not reſpecting that of the Comick, *Omnia prius experiri verbis, quàm armis ſapientem decet*: yet if Cæſar had beene ſo iniurious to Nature, as to haue left them to their owne deſires, and ſuffered their furie to haue violated the law of humanitie, more then was requiſite for victorie; they would afterwards haue loathed themſelues, and curſed their ſwords for ſuch vnſeaſonable execution: and may be doubted, would haue reuenged it vpon his head, before the time came to ſtrike the fatall ſtroke of the euerſion of that State. Eſteeming it alſo a part of diuine power, to ſaue men by troopes, according to that of Seneca; *Hæc diuina potentia eſt, gregatim, ac publicè ſeruare.* And therefore, hee choſe rather to diſpleaſe the ſouldier for the preſent, then to loſe that honour which attendeth the ſparing of home-bred blood. Whereof forraine enemies are not altogether ſo capable.

Non minus eſt Imperatoris, cõſilio ſuperare, quàm gladio. Cæſar. Cõment 5. bell. Gall. Terentius in Eunucho. Naturæ iniuriã facit et humanitatis legem violat, qui vltra victoriam iracundiæ indulget. Nicetas.

De clementia. Lib. 1. cap. 26 Ingens victoriæ decus, citra domeſticũ ſanguinem bellanti. Tacit. in Agricola.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Petreius breaketh off the Treatie, and new ſweareth the Souldiers to the Partie.

Cæſar.

AFranius, beeing aduertiſed of theſe paſſages, left the worke which hee had begunne, and with-drew himſelfe into the Campe; prepared (as it ſeemed) to take patiently whatſoeuer ſhould befall him. But Petreius was no way diſmaied thereat; for, hauing armed his houſhold familie, hee went flying with them, & a Prætorian cohort of Buckler-bearers, together

together with some few stipendarie horse of the barbarous people, whom he was wont to keepe about him, as a guard to his person: and came suddainely and vnlooked for, to the Rampire; brake off the souldiers treaty; thrust our men off frō the Campe; killing such as he could apprehend. The rest got together, & affrighted at the suddaineness of the danger, wrapt their coates about their left armes, and with their swords drawne, defended themselues from the Buckler-bearers and Horsemen: and trusting to the neerenesse and propinquity of their Campe, they tooke courage and got safely thither, beeing protected by the Cohorts that had the guard at the Campe gates.

Iunctos amplexibus ense separat, et multo disturbat sanguine pacem. Luc.

This beeing done, Petreius went weeping about to the Maniples, calling the souldiers, and beseeching thē not to leaue and forsake him, nor yet Pompey their Generall, that was absent: nor to deliuer them ouer to the crueltie of their aduersaries. Presently there-vpon, a great concourse of souldiers was about the Pratory, requiring that euery man might take an oath; not to abandon or betray the Army or their Generalls, nor yet to enter into priuate consultation thereof without consent of the rest. He himselfe first tooke an oath to this effect, & caused Afranius to take the same. The Tribunes of the Souldiers and Centurions, followed in order: and after them, the souldiers were brought out according to their Centuries, and were sworne the same oath.

Inter mensasque torosque, quæ modo complexu soluerunt pectora cædunt. Lucan. lib. 4.

They caused it also to be proclaimed, that whosoeuer had any of Cæsars souldiers, should cause them to be brought out; and beeing brought foorth, they slew them publiquely before the Pratorian Pauilion: But most men concealed such as were with them, and in the night time, sent them out ouer the Rampier. Whereby it came to passe, that the terrour where-with the Generalls had affrighted thē, the cruelty they had shewed in punishment, together with the vaine religion of the new oath, had taken away all hope of yeelding for the present: and quite changing the souldiers mindes, had reduced the matter to the former course of warre.

Cæsar, for his part, caused diligent inquiry to bee made, of such souldiers as came into his Campe during the time of the treaty, and sent them away in safety. But of the Tribunes of the souldiers and Centurions, many of their voluntarie accord remained with him: whom afterwards he held in great honour; and aduaunced the Centurions, and such Romaine Knights as were of the better ranke, to the place and dignity of Tribunes.

Hoc siquidē solo ciuilis crimine belli dux causæ melioribus eris. Lucan. lib. 4.

The Afranians were sorely laid vnto in their forraging, and watered likewise with great difficultie. Many of the legionarie souldiers had store of Corne, beeing commaunded to take prouision with them from Ilerda for twenty two daies: But the Buckler-bearers, and Auxiliary forces, had none at all, hauing also but small meanes to prouide and furnish themselues; for which cause, a great number fledde daily to Cæsar.

7491b

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THat euery man is the maker of his owne fortune, is euidently ſeene in the ſeuerall cariages of theſe two Generalls. For, Afranius gaue way to the ſouldiers treatie, and reſolued to ſuffer whatſoeuer that tranſaction ſhould caſt vpon him. But Petreius, oppoſing himſelfe to their deſires, raiſed new troubles, had further deſignes, and another fortune. Wherein, foraſmuch as the euent of things riſeth according as they are firſt directed, either by weake or ſtrong reſolutions; it better ſuteth the temper of a ſouldier (howſoeuer the ſucceſſe fall out with our deſires) rather to be ſtiffe in what he wiſheth; then to make his owne eaſineſs, the ready meanes of his aduerſaries happineſs.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

VErtue at all times hath had this priuiledge in the difference & degrees of State and Condition, to make a Noble mans word, equall to a Common mans oath: but the integritie of former ages, had a more generall prerogatiue, auouching euery mans promiſe for the ſtrictneſſe of an oath. Hence it was, that the Romaines, vpon their inrollement for a war, gaue but their promiſe to the Tribune of the ſouldiers, to keepe ſuch ordinances as their *Militia* required: vntill at length, that the corruption of time (falſifying the ſimplicitie & truth of words) did inforce them to giue an oath, as the ſureſt bond of faith and obedience: as it is noted by Liuie at large; The ſouldiers (ſaith hee) which was neuer before that time practiſed, were ſworne by the Tribunes, to appeare vpon ſummons from the Conſuls, and not to depart without leaue. For, vntill then, there was nothing required of them but a ſolemne promiſe (which the horſemen made by their Decuries, and the foote troops by their Centuries) not to leaue their Colours by flight, or throgh feare, nor to forſake their rank, vnleſſe it were either to aſſault an enemie, to take vp an offenſiue weapon, or to ſaue a Cittizen; & being at firſt but the offer of a free mind, was now by the Tribunes required by obligation of an oath.

Anno Vrb. cõd. 538. Nullũ vinculũ ad aſtringendã fidẽ, iureiurando arctius eſſe poteſt. Lib. 22.

Lib. 16. cap. 4.

The forme of this oath was diuerſly varied, as appeareth by Aul. Gel. and more ſpecially in the times of the Emperours: for, Caligula made this addition to the ſouldiers oath; That they ſhould hold neither their liues nor their children, dearer vnto them then the Emperour Caius and his ſiſters. Concerning the reſpect had of this Militarie oath, that which Tully reporteth of Cato is of excellent note. * Popilius, hauing charge of the Prouince of Macedonia, had (amongſt other Romaine youthes) Catos ſon, a young ſouldier in his Armie; and being occaſioned to diſmiſs a legion, diſcharged likewiſe young Cato, being one of that legion: but he, deſirous to beare Armes in that war, continued ſtill in the Armie; wherevpon, Cato writ from Rome to Popilius, requiring him, that if he ſuffered his ſonne to remaine in that warre, hee would by any meanes ſweare him againe: for, beeing diſcharged of his firſt oath, hee could not lawfullie fight againſt the Enemy.

*Lib. 1. offic. * M. Pompilius.*

Euer

Euer ſince Conſtantine the great, the ſouldiers were ſworne by a Chriſtian oath, as Vegetius noteth, to obey all things the Emperour ſhould commaund them; not to leaue their warfare without licence, nor to ſhun death for the ſeruice of the Publique weale. And at this day, amongſt other Nations, an oath is giuen to the ſouldier vpon his inrolement, to this effect; Well and lawfully to ſerue the King, towards all men, and againſt all, without exception of perſons. And if they knowe any thing concerning his ſeruice, to reueale the ſame incontinentlie; not to leaue their Colours, without leaue either of the Generall, or his Lieutenant. *Lib. 2. cap. 5.*

The auncient Romaines did charge their ſolemne and publique oathes, with many ceremonies: as appeareth by that form which was vſed in ratifying Treaties & Tranſactions; Their Heralds killed a hog, and cried out withall, that the like would happen to him that firſt falſified his faith.

Polybius reporteth, that he that read the oath wherby the Romains & Carthaginians ſware their accord, had the haire of his head tied vp in an extraordinary manner: The parties invocating their Iupiter, to grant all proſperitie to him, that without fraud or deceit did enter into that agreement. But if (ſaid hee that tooke the oath) I ſhall either doe, or purpoſe otherwiſe; all the reſt beeing ſafe and ſound, let me alone (in the midſt of the lawes and iuſtice of my Countrey, in my owne habitation and dwelling, and within my proper Temples and Sepulchers) periſh moſt vnfortunatly, euen as this ſtone flieth out of my hand: and (as he ſpake thoſe words) caſt away a ſtone. *Lib. 3. Hiſto.*

I doe not find the vſe of a Military oath in our Nation. Howbeit, the cõmon forme of our oath, is as ceremonious and ſignificatiue as any other whatſoeuer: which may be obſerued by the three parts it containeth, as I haue ſeene them alligorized in ſome Antiquities. For, firſt, the booke beeing alwaies a part of holie writ, implieth a renunciation of all the promiſes therein contained. Secondly, the touching it with our handes, inferreth the like defiance of our works, neuer to be ſucceſſull or helping vnto vs. Thirdly, the kiſsing of the booke, importeth a vaine miſpending of our vowes and praiers, if wee falſifie any thing thereby averred.

CHAP. XXV.

The endeuour which Afranius vſed to returne to *Ilerda*; *but failed in his deſigne.*

THE matter beeing in this extreamity; of two meanes which were left vnto them, it was thought the readier and more expedient, to returne to Ilerda. For, hauing left there behind thẽ a little Corne, they hoped to take ſome good courſe for the ſequell. Tarraco was further off, & thereby ſubiect to more caſualties concerning their paſſage. In regard whereof, they *Caſar.*

reſolued of their former courſe, and ſo diſlodged themſelues.

Cæſar, hauing ſent his Caualrie before, to incumber and retard the reare-guard, followed after (himſelfe) with the legions. The hindmoſt troopes of their Armie, were conſtrained (without any intermiſsion of time) to fight with our horſemen. And their manner of fight was thus; Certaine expedite Cohorts, free of cariages, marched in the reare of their Army, and in open and champaine places, many of theſe Cohorts made a ſtand, to confront our Caualrie. If they were to aſcend vp a Hill, the nature of the place did eaſily repell the danger wherwith they were threatned; foraſmuch as ſuch as went before, might eaſily from the higher ground, protect them that followed after: but, when they came to a valley or deſcent, that thoſe that were in the former rankes, could not helpe them in the reare; the horſemen from the vpper ground, did caſt their weapons vvith great eaſe and facility vpon the Enemy. And then cõtinually they were in great hazard and danger: and ſtill as they approched neere vnto ſuch places, they called to the legions, and willed them to make a ſtand with their Enſignes, and ſo by great force and violence, expelled our Caualrie.

Who beeing retired backe, they would ſuddainly take a running, and get all downe into the valley. And preſently againe, beeing to aſcende into higher ground, they would there make a ſtand: for, they were ſo farre from hauing help of their owne Caualry (whereof they had great number) that they were gladde to take them beeweene their troopes, (being much affrighted with former incounters) and ſo to ſhelter and protect them: of whom, if any chaunced (vpon occaſion) to ſtray aſide out of the rout the Army held, they were preſently attached by Cæſars horſemen:

The fight continuing in this manner, they proceeded ſlowely on their way, and aduaunced forward but by little and little; and oftentimes, ſtood ſtill to ſuccour and relieue their party, as then it fell out. For, hauing gone but foure miles on their way (beeing very hardly laide to, and much preſſed by our Caualrie) they tooke to an exceeding high hill; and there putting themſelues into one front of a battell, fortified their Campe, keeping their cariages laden vpon their horſes. As ſoone as they perceiued that Cæſars Campe was ſette, and that the tents were vp, and their horſes put to graſſe; they roſe ſuddainly about mid-day, vpon hope of ſome reſpite, by reaſon of our horſe put out to feeding, and went on their iourney.

Which Cæſar perceiuing, roſe and followed after, leauing a fewe Cohorts to keepe the cariages: and about the tenth houre, commaunding the forragers and horſemen to be called backe, and to follow after; Inſtantly the Caualrie returned, and betooke themſelues to their accuſtomed charge.

The fight was very ſharpe in the reare, inſomuch as they were ready to turne their backes. Many ſouldiers, and ſome of the Centurions were ſlaine. Cæſars troopes preaced hard vpon them, and threatned the ouerthrowe of their vvhole Armie; inſomuch, as they had neither meanes to chooſe a fit place to incampe in, nor to proceede forward in their march. Whereby they were neceſſarilie inforced to make a ſtande, and to pitch their Campe farre from any vvater, in an vnequall and diſaduantageous place: but Cæſar forbare to meddle with them,

for

for the ſame reaſons that haue been formerly declared: and for that day, would not ſuffer the ſouldiers to ſet vp their Tents, that they might bee the readier to folow after, at what time ſoeuer by night or by day they ſhold offer to break away.

The Enemy, hauing obſerued the defect of our Campe, imploied all that night in aduauncing their workes, and in caſting their Camp with an oppoſite front to our Armie. The like they did all the next day; but ſo it fell out, that by how much their Campe was brought further on, and the fortification grew neerer to finiſhing, by ſo much further off they were from water: and ſo remedied one euil with a worſe miſchiefe. The firſt night, none of them went out of their Camp to fetch water: and the next day, they led out all their troopes together to water, but ſent no man out to forrage. Whereby Cæſar, finding them oppreſſed with manie inconueniences, choſe rather to force them to a compoſition, then to fight with them.

THE OBSERVATION.

IN this troubleſome and confuſed retreit, which theſe Commaunders vndertooke, to regaine the aduantages that formerly they had quitted at Ilerda, we may obſerue the difficulties attending a weaker partie, when they would free themſelues from the preſſures of a ſtrong confronting enemie. For, the frailetie of humane fortune, is alwaies ſo yoaked with incomberances, and hath ſo many lets from the natiue weakneſſes of it owne indeuour; that if the oppoſition of forraine malice, ſhall therewithall vnhappilie concurre, to ſtoppe the current of our deſires, there is little hope of better ſucceſſe, then that which the ordinarie condition of extreamitie doth afford: which is, to hazard the perill of a wound, in ſeeking to auoide the ſmart of a rodde; and to fall into Scylla, vpon a deſire wee haue to ſhunne Charybdis, according as it befell this partie. Wherein let vs further note the aduantage which a Commaunder hath, either to take or leaue, when he is able to ouer-maiſter the Enemie in Caualrie: for, the horſmen, ſeruing an Armie Roiall, by making diſcoueries, by forraging, by giuing reſcue vpon a ſudden, by dooing execution, and retarding an Enemy in his march, if (ouer-awed by the Caualry of the Enemy) they cannot performe theſe ſeruices as is requiſite; the contrary partie is the ſtronger by ſo many aduantages.

Incidit in Scyllam, cupiens vitare Charybdim.

CHAP. XXVI.

Cæſar went about to incloſe the Enemy, *and he to hinder Cæſar.*

HOwbeit, Cæſar laboured to incloſe them about with a ditch and a rampier, to the end he might with better eaſe hinder their ſuddaine ſallies and eruptions, to which he thought the Enemy would neceſſarily betake themſelues.

Cæſar.

749 b

The Enemy beeing ſtraightned for want of forrage, and to the end alſo they might be the readier to eſcape away, cauſed all their horſes of cariage to be killed: and in theſe workes and conſultations were two daies ſpent. The third day, a great part of Cæſars workes being already perfected, the enemy (to hinder the buſineſs intended, concerning the fortifications) about two of the clocke in the afternoone, made the Alarum, brought out the legions, and imbattelled themſelues vnder their Campe. Cæſar calleth back the legions from their worke; and commaunding all his horſe to troope together, putteth his Army in battell. For, hauing made ſuch a ſhew of vnwillingneſs to buckle with the enemy, againſt the will of the ſouldier and opinion of all men, he found himſelfe ſubiect thereupon to much inconuenience: howbeit, he was reſolued (for the reaſons already ſpecified) not to ſtrike a battell; and the rather at this time, for that the ſpace betweene his Campe and the enemies, was ſo little, that if he had put thē to flight, it could not haue much auailed him, for the gaining of a perfect and abſolute victorie. For, their Campes were not aboue 2000 foote aſunder; whereof the Armies tooke vp two parts, and the third was left for incurſion and aſſault. So that if hee had giuen battell in that neereneſs of the Campe, they would haue found a ſpeedy retreit vpon their ouerthrow. For which cauſe, hee reſolued to ſtand vpon his defence, and not to giue the onſet and charge them firſt.

Hora octaua, ſigno dato.

Tela tene iam miles, ait, ferrūque ruenti ſubtrahe, non vllo conſtet mihi ſanguine belli vincitus haud gratis iugulo qui prouocat hoſtem Lucan. lib. 4.

Afranius had put his Army in a double battell: the firſt, conſiſting of fiue legions; and the Auxiliary cohorts, which vſually ſerued in the winges, were now placed for ſuccours, and made the ſecond battell.

Cæſars Armie was ordered in a triple battell; the firſt was of foure cohorts, a peece of the fiue legions: the ſecond, of three; and the third againe of three of each legion, following in order. The Archers and Slingers were in the midſt, & the Caualrie on the ſides. Beeing thus both imbattelled, they ſeemed to obtaine their ſeuerall ends; Cæſar, not to fight vnleſſe he were forced to it: and the Enemy, to hinder Cæſars fortification. But the matter beeing drawen out in length, they ſtood imbattelled vntill Sunne ſetting: and then returned both into their Campes.

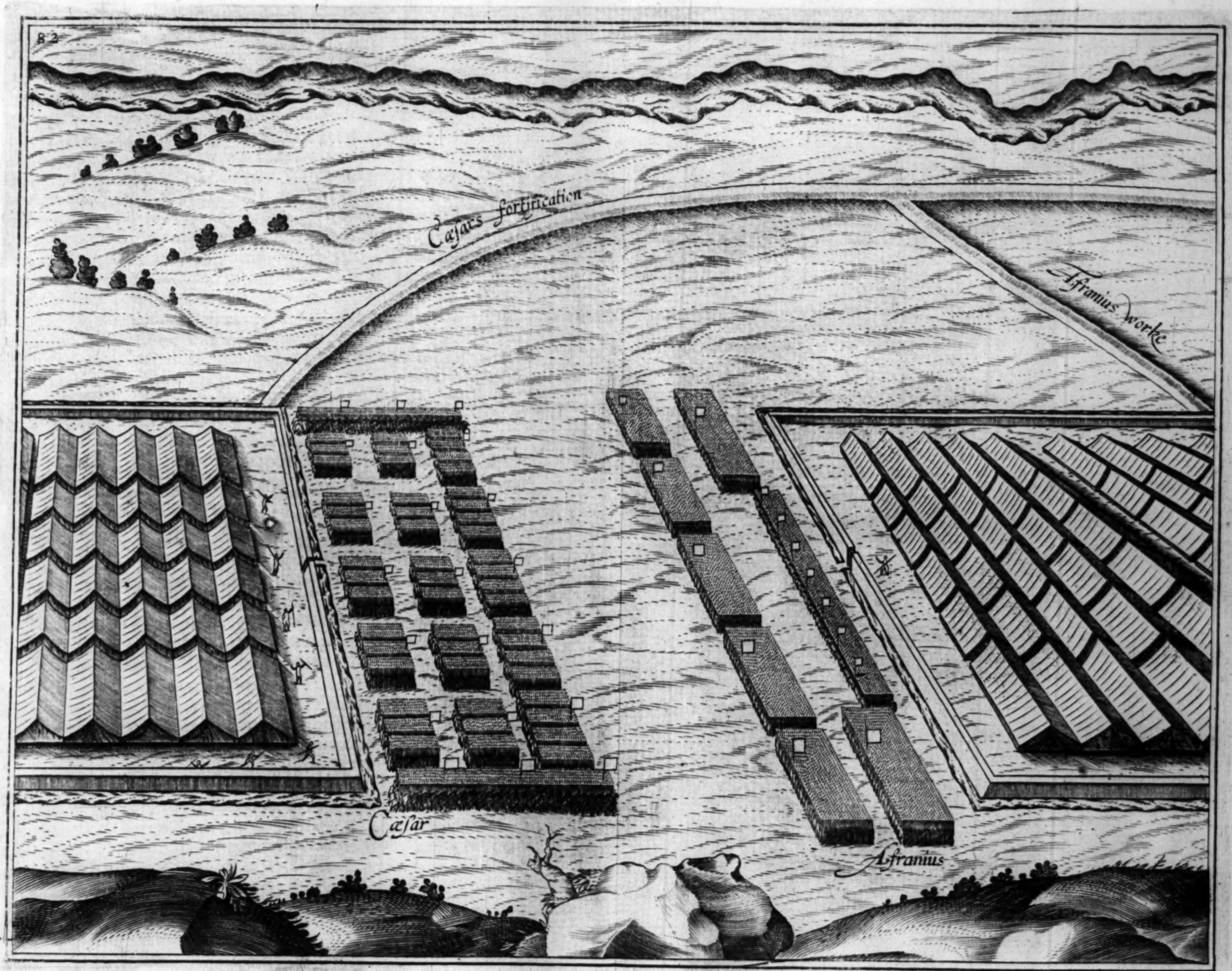
THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

COntra opinionem enim militum, famamque omnium videri prælio diffugiſſe, magnū detrimentū afferebat, ſaith the hiſtorie. Whence we may obſerue two points; Firſt, that a Commaunder in ſtriking a field, muſt partly be directed by his Armie: for, he may neither fight againſt the liking of the ſouldier, nor with-hold them frō fighting when they are willing to imbrace it, if other circumſtances doe indifferentlie concurre there-withall. For, when men are cōmaunded to doe what they would doe, the matter is throughlie vndertaken; and the iſſue is commonlie anſwerable to the readineſs of their deſires: but, being reſtrained in their affections, and put beſides their aptneſs of their voluntarie diſpoſition, there groweth ſuch

It is hard catching Hares with vnwilling houndes.

7491b




Cæsars fortification
Afranius worke
Cæsar
Afranius

ſuch a contrarietie betweene the Generalls order, and the ſouldiers obedience, as will hardly ſympathiſe to beget good fortune.

And if a Leader of that fame and opinion, and ſo well knowne to his Army as Cæſar was, grew into diſtaſte with his ſouldiers, vpon ſo good cauſes which he had to ſhunne a battell; what hazard that Commaunder runneth into, who ſildome or neuer gaue argument of his reſolution in this kind, may be conceiued by this paſſage. The ſecond thing which I note, is, that a Generall muſt learne eſpeciallie to diſguiſe his intendements, by making ſhew of that which he meaneth not. For, albeit the more iudicious ſort of men are not ſo well ſatisfied with pretences as with deedes: yet foraſmuch as the condition of Princes, contrary to the manner of priuate perſons, requireth ſuch a direction of buſineſs, as may rather ſute with fame and opinion, then with particular ends; it behoueth them to vſe ſuch gloſſes, as may take away all petulant and ſiniſter interpretations, howſoeuer their courſes may aime at other purpoſes. And certainely, the generalitie of people, are better paid with apparances then with truth; according as Machauell hath obſerued. But concerning Cæſar, that which Ephicrates ſaid of himſelf, hauing imbattelled his Army to fight; That he feared nothing more, then that his enemie knew not his valour: may more properlie be ſaid heere. For, there was nothing abuſed the Enemy more, or made them take vp ſo many Brauados, or vſe ſo much delay before they came to compoſition, but that they knew not Cæſar. For, as the Eagle is able to mount aloft, in all ſeaſons and temperatures of the ayre; ſo was his ſword ſteeled, to make way through all reſiſtance.

Cæteris mortalibus in eo ſtant conſilia quid ſibi conducere putent. Principum diuerſa ſors eſt, quibus præcipua rerum ad famã dirigenda. Tacit.

L'vniuerſale, de gli huomini ſi paſce, coſi di quello che paie, come di quello, che è anzi: molte volte ſi muouono piu per le coſe che paiono, che per quelle che ſono. Lib. 1. Sop. Tit. Liv. cap. 25.

Omnis aier Aquilæ penetrabilis.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

IN the next place, the manner of their imbattelling commeth to be obſerued: which generally in all Editions runneth thus; *Acies erat Afraniana duplex, legio V. et III. in ſubſidijs locum alariæ cohortis obtinebat: Cæſaris triplex ſed primam aciem quaternæ cohortes ex V. legione tenebant. Has ſubſidiariæ, ternæ, et rurſus aliæ totidem ſuæ cuiuſque legionis ſubſequebantur: ſagittarij funditoreſq; media cõtinebantur acie, equitatus latera cingebat:* And needeth the helpe of ſome excellent Criticke, to make it haue anſwerable ſenſe to the other parts of this hiſtorie. For firſt, how ſhall we vnderſtand thoſe wordes, *Acies Afraniana duplex, legio V. et III. in ſubſidijs?* Shall we take the meaning to be, that the firſt legion ſtood in front, and the other ſtood for ſuccours behind? Or ſhall we take it with *Faernus*; *Acies Afraniana duplex: ex legione prima, et tertia, in ſubſidijs locum alariæ cohortes obtinebant?* But neither by the one, or by the other, is there found more then two legions: whereas there is expreſſe mention of fiue, beſides the cohorts of the Countrey. And therefore, as not knowing other more probable, I haue tranſlated it according to Lipſius correction, and made the text thus; *Acies erat Afraniana duplex, legionum quinque: et in ſubſidijs locum alariæ cohortes, obtinebant.*

Their manner of imbattelling

Lib. 4. de militia Romana.

The

The first battell consisted of fiue legions; and the second, of the Spanish and Auxiliarie forces. The like helpe must be sent to Cæsar; for, otherwise, the text doth affoord him but few cohorts: standing thus, *Primam aciem quaternæ cohortes, ex quinta legione, tenebant. Has ternæ, et rursus aliæ &c.* For, vndoubtedly, Cæsar had fiue legions equall to Afranius; but, being farre inferior vnto him in Auxiliarie troopes, was driuen to a more artificiall diuision; to helpe his weakenes in that point. And therefore, as the same Critick hath mended it, we are to read, *Quaternæ cohortes ex quinque legionibus:* vvhich bringeth forth this sense; In the first battell were fiue times foure cohorts; in the second, fiue times three cohorts, and as many in the third battell. And by the addition of *suæ cuiusque legionis*, it appeareth, that euery legion was so diuided into three parts, that it had foure cohorts in the first battell, three in the second, and three in the last.

Concerning the space which their Armies imbattelled tooke vp, it appeareth, that the whole distance betweene their Campes, contained two thousand foote; whereof either Armie tooke vp one third, beeing 666 foote, III pases, a little more then a furlong: but that altered more or lesse, as place and occasion required.

CHAP. XXVII.

The Treatie of Peace.

Cæsar.

THE next day, Cæsar went about to finish and end the fortification which he had begun; and the Enemy, to try whether they might find a foord in the Riuer Sicoris, and so get ouer. Which beeing perceiued, Cæsar caried ouer the light armed Germanes, and part of the Caualrie, and disposed them in guard along the Riuer banke. At length, beeing besieged & shut vp on all sides, and hauing kept their horses without meate foure daies together, besides their extreame want of water, wood and corne, they required parlee: and that (if it might be) in some place out of the presence of the souldier. Which Cæsar denied, vnlesse it were in publique. Wherevpon, Afranius his sonne was giuen in hostage to Cæsar; and so they presented themselues in a place of Cæsars appointing.

And in the hearing of both the Armies, Afranius spake to this effect; That he was not to be offended, neither with them nor with the souldier, for beeing faithfull and obedient to the Generall Cn. Pompeius; but now, hauing made sufficient proofe of their dutie, they had also throughly suffered for the same, hauing indured the extreamitie of want in all necessarie prouisions: Insomuch as now they were shut vp as women, kept from water, kept from going out, oppresst with a greater waight of griefe in bodie, and of dishonor in their reputation, then they were able to beare: and therefore did confesse themselues to be vanquished and

and ouercome: praying and beseeching, that if there were any mercy left, they might not vndergoe the extreamity of Fortune. And this hee deliuered as humbly and demissiuely as was possible.

At nunc sola mihi est oranda causa salutis, dignis donanda Cæsar te credere vita.

To which, Cæsar answered; That these tearmes of complaint and compassion, could be vsed to no man more vnproperly then himselfe: for, where-as euery man else did his duty; he onely, vpon fit conditions of time and place, refused to fight with them, to the end all circumstances might concurre to a peace: Albeit his Army had suffered much wrong, in the death and slaughter of their fellowes; yet he had kept and preserued such of their party as were in his power, and came of their owne accord to moue a peace. Wherein they thought, they went about to procure the safety of all their fellowes: so that the whole course of his proceeding with them, consisted of clemency. Howbeit, the Commaunders themselues, abhorred the name of Peace, & had not kept the lawes either of treatie or truce: For, they had caused many simple men to be massacred and slaine, that were deceiued by a shew of treaty. And therefore it had befallen them, as it happeneth for the most part to peruerse and arrogant persons, to seeke and earnestly to desire that which a little before they had foolishly contemned.

Neither would he take the aduantage of this their submission, or of any other opportunitie of time, either to augment his power, or to strengthen his partie: but he onely required, that those Armies might be discharged, which for many yeeres together had been maintained against him. For, neither were those sixe Legions for any other cause sent into Spaine, nor the seauenth inrolled there, nor so many and so great Nauies prepared, nor such experienced and skilfull Commaunders selected and appointed (for none of these needed to keepe Spaine in quiet) nothing heereof was prepared for the vse and behoofe of the Prouince, which (by reason of their long continuance of peace) needed not any such assistance. All these thinges vvere long agoe prouided in a readinesse against him: Newv formes of gouernment vvere made and ordained against him; That one and the same man, should be resiant at the gates of Rome, haue the vvhole superintendencie and direction of the Cittie businesse: and yet notwithstanding, hold two warlike Prouinces for so many yeeres together, being absent from both of them.

Against him, and for his ruine, were changed the ancient Rights and Customes of Magistracie, in sending men at the end of their Pretorship or Consulship, to the gouernment of Prouinces, as was alwaies accustomed; but in lieu of them, were chosen some that were allowed & authorised by a few. Against him the prerogatiue of age did nothing preuaile: but, whosoeuer they were that in former warres had made good proofe of their valour, were now called out to cõmaund Armies. To him onely was denied, that which was granted to all other Generalls; that when they had happily brought thinges to an end, they might dismisse their Armie, and returne home with honour, or at the least, vvithout dishonour.

All which things, hee notwithstanding both had and would suffer patientlie; neither did he now goe about to take their Army from them, and retaine them in pay for himselfe, which hee might easily doe: but that they should not haue meanes

meanes to make head againſt him. And therefore, as it was ſaid before, they ſhould goe out of the Prouinces, and diſcharge their Army; if they did ſo, hee would hurt no man: But that was the onely and laſt meanes of peace.

OBSERVATIONS.

Multa, quæ noſtra cauſa nunquã faceremus, facimus cauſa amicorum. Cicero Lælius.

THere is not any one vertue, that can chalenge a greater meaſure of honour, or hath more prerogatiue either amongſt friends or enemies, then fidelitie. For which cauſe it is, that men are more ſtrict in matters committed to their truſt, for the behoofe of others, then they can well be, if the ſame things concerned themſelues. And yet neuertheleſſe, there is a *Quatenus* in all indeuours, and ſeemeth to be limitted with ſuch apparencie, as true affection may make of a good meaning: & was the ground which Afranius tooke to moue Cæſar for a pardon; *Non eſſe aut ipſis aut militibus ſuccenſendum, quòd fidem erga Imperatorem Cn. Pompeium conſeruare voluerint; ſed ſatis iam feciſſe officio, ſatisque ſupplicij tuliſſe. &c.* which hee deliuered in a ſtile ſuting his fortune. For, as Cominæus hath obſerued; Men in feare, giue reuerent and humble words: and the tongue is euer conditioned to be the chiefeſt witneſs of our fortune.

Qui vincuntur victam habent linguam. Plu.

On the other ſide, Cæſar produced nothing for his part, but ſuch wrongs as might ſeeme valuable to make good thoſe courſes which he proſecuted: as firſt, iniuries done by them, and that in the higheſt degree of blame againſt his ſouldiers, that went but to ſeeke for peace. Iniuries done by their Generall, in ſuch a faſhion, as ſpared not to euert the fundamentall rights of the State, to bring him to ruine and confuſion. Wherby hee was moued to indeuour that, which Nature tieth euery man vnto, *Propellere iniuriam:* and hauing brought it to theſe tearmes wherein it now ſtood, he would giue aſſurance to the world, by the reuenge he there tooke, that hee entered into that warre for this onelie end, that he might liue in peace: and ſo required no more but that the Armie ſhould be diſmiſſed.

Bellũ ita ſuſcipiatur, vt nihil aliud, niſi pax, quæſita videatur. Cice. lib. 1. de offici.

CHAP. XXVIII.

The execution of the Articles agreed vpon.

THE conditions propounded, were moſt acceptable & pleaſing to the ſouldiers; as might appeare by them: for, beeing in the condition of vanquiſhed perſons, and thereupon expecting a hard meaſure of Fortune; to be rewarded vvith libertie, & exemption of Armes, was more then they could expect: inſomuch, as where there grew a controuerſie of the time and place of their diſmiſsion, they all generally ſtanding

ſtanding vpon the rampier, ſignified both by their ſpeeches and by their handes, that their deſire was it might be done inſtantly; for, it could not bee prouided by any aſſurance, that it would continue firme, if it were deferred vntill another time. After ſome diſpute on each ſide, the matter was in the end brought to this iſſue; that ſuch as had houſes & poſſeſſions in Spaine, ſhould be diſcharged preſently, and the reſt at the Riuer Varus. It was conditioned, that no man ſhould be iniuried, that no man ſhould be forced againſt his wil, to be ſworne vnder Cæſars commaund.

Varus fluuius. Hoc petimus, victos ne tecum vincere cogas. Luc.

Cæſar promiſed to furniſh thē with Corne, vntill they came to the riuer Varus: adding withal, that whatſoeuer any one had loſt in the time of the warre, which ſhold be found with any of his ſouldiers, ſhold be reſtored to ſuch as loſt it, or if it were not to be had, he paid the value ther of in mony. If any cōtrouerſie afterward grew amongſt the ſouldiers, Petreius & Afranius of their owne accord brought the matter from time to time before Cæſar. As, when the Souldiers grew almoſt into a mutiny for want of pay, the Cōmaunders affirming the pay day was not yet come, it was required that Cæſar might vnderſtand the cauſe, and both parties were contented with his arbitrement.

A third part of the Army beeing diſmiſſed in thoſe two daies, hee commaunded two legions to march before their Army, and the reſt to follow after, and continually to incampe themſelues not farre from them: and appointed Q. Fuſius Calenus, a Legate, to take the charge of that buſineſs. This courſe beeing taken, they marched out of Spaine to the Riuer Varus, and there diſmiſſed the reſt of their Armie.

OBSERVATIONS.

THE Riuer Varus diuideth Gallia Narbonenſis, from Italie; and was thought an indifferent place to diſcharge the Armie, wherby there might be an end made of that warre. Wherein if any man deſire to ſee a parallell drawne, betweene Cæſar and the other Leaders for matter of warre, it ſhall ſuffice to take the iſſue for a ſquare of their directions; beeing drawne to this head within fortie daies after Cæſar came within ſight of the Enemy, as Curio noteth in his ſpeech to the ſouldiers.

Rerum ab euentu, facta notanda putes. Lib. 2. Ciuil.

Cato, ſeeing the proſperous ſucceſſe of Cæſar againſt Pompey, ſaid there was a great vncertaintie in the gouernment of their Gods: Alluding peraduenture to that of Plato in his Politickes, where hee ſaith; that there are ages, wherein the Gods doe gouerne the world in their owne perſons: and there are other times, wherein they altogether neglect the ſame; the world taking a courſe quite contrarie to that which the Gods directed. But Lucan ſpake from a ſurer ground, where hee ſaith;

Victrix cauſa Diis placuit; ſed victa Catoni.

And thus endeth the firſt Commentarie.

THE

749.b

THE SECOND COMMENTARIE of the Ciuill Warres.

(·.·)

THE ARGVMENT.

THis Commentarie hath three ſpeciall parts; The firſt, containing the ſiege of Marſelleis: the ſtrange vvorks, and extreame indeauours to take and to keepe the Towne. The ſecond expreſſeth the vaine labour which Varro, Pompeies Lieutenant, vndertooke, after that Afranius and Petreius were defeated, to keepe the Prouince of Andolozia out of Cæſars power and commaund. And the third part conſiſteth of the expedition Curio made into Affrica; and endeth with his ouerthrowe.

CHAP. I.

The preparations for the ſiege, aſwell within as *without the Towne*.

WHilſt theſe things were dooing in Spaine, C. Treboni- Cæſar.
us the Legate, beeing left to beſiege Marſelleis, had begunne in two places to raiſe Mounts, to make Mantilets and Towres againſt the Towne: One, next vnto the Port where the Shippes lay; and the other, in the vvay leading from Gallia and Spaine into the towne, iuſt vpon the creeke of the ſea, neere vnto the mouth of the Rhone. For, three parts of Marſelleis are in a manner waſhed with the ſea: and the fourth is that which giueth paſſage by land; whereof that part which belongeth to the Caſtle (by reaſon of the nature of the place, fortified with a deepe ditch) would require a long and difficult ſiege. For the perfecting of thoſe workes, Trebonius had cõmaunded out of all the Prouince, great ſtore of horſes for cariage, and a multitude of men; requiring them to bring rods to make Hurdles, and other materialls for the worke: which beeing prepared and brought together, hee raiſed a Mount of foureſcore foote high.

But ſuch was the prouiſion, which of ancient time they had ſtored vp in the towne, of all equipage and neceſſaries for the warre, with ſuch prouiſion of munition and engines, that no Hurdles made of roddes or Oſiers, were able to beare out the force thereof. For, out of their great Baliſtæ, they ſhot beames of twelue foote long, pointed with Iron, with ſuch force, as they would pearce through foure courſes of Hurdles, and ſticke in the earth. Whereby they were forced to roofe their Gallery, with timber of a foote ſquare, and to bring matter that way by hand. To make the Mount, a Teſtudo of ſixtie foote in length was alwaies caried before, for the leuelling of the ground, made of mighty ſtrong timber, couered and armed with all things which might defend it from ſtones, or what elſe ſhould be caſt vpon it. But the greatneſs of the worke, the height of the wall, together vvith the multitude of Engins, did retard and hinder the proceeding thereof.*

Porticus Agger Teſtudo.

Moreouer, the Albici did make often ſallies out of the towne, ſetting fire to the mounts and to the turrets; which were kept by our ſouldiers with great facilitie and eaſe, forcing ſuch as ſalied out to returne with great loſſe.

OBSERVATIONS.

HAuing deſcribed in the former Commentaries theſe Engines & workes heere mentioned, the Reader may pleaſe (for his better ſatisfaction) to review thoſe places; as alſo further to note, that the word Artilery, was brought downe to theſe ages from the vſe of ancient Engins, which conſiſted of thoſe two primitiues, *Arcum* and *Telum*. And, according as diuerſitie of Art & wit found meanes to fit theſe to vſe and occaſions, ſo had they ſeuerall and diſtinct names; wherof I find chiefely theſe, *Baliſtæ*, *Catapultæ*, *Tolenones*, *Scorpiones*, *Onagri:* Of each of which, there are diuers and ſeuerall ſorts; as firſt, of the *Baliſtæ*, ſome were called *Centenariæ:* others, *Talentariæ*, according to the weight of the bullet or weapon they ſhot. Of the rate and proportion whereof, Vitruuius, and his learned interpreter Daniel Barbarus, haue made accurate deſcription. Againe, ſome were made to ſhoote ſtones: as appeareth by that of Tacitus, *Magnitudine eximia, quartædecimæ legionis Baliſta ingentibus ſaxis hoſtilem aciem proruebat*; and others, to ſhoote dartes and piles of timber, headed with Iron; as is manifeſted by this place. Moreouer, the maner of bending of theſe Engines made a difference, ſome being drawne vp with a wrinch or ſcrue, and ſome with a wheele, ſome hauing long armes, and others hauing ſhort: but the ſtrings were generally either all of ſinowes or of womens haire, as ſtrongeſt & ſureſt of any other kind. Of theſe, Vegetius preferreth the *Baliſtæ*, and the *Onagri*, as vnreſiſtable when they were skilfully handled. The word *Onagri*, as Amianus Marcellinus noteth, was of a later ſtampe, and impoſed vpon thoſe Engines which former time called *Scorpiones*; and was taken from the nature of wilde Aſſes, that are ſaid to caſt ſtones backward with their feete at the Hunters, with ſuch violence, that oftentimes they daſhed out their braines.

Artilery deriued from *Arcus* and *Telum*

Lib. 10. *ca.* 17.

Lib. 3. *Hiſto.* *Baliſtæ Petrariæ.*

Lib. 4. *cap.* 29.

In

In the time of Barbariſme, all theſe Engines were generally called *Mangonella:* as appeareth by Viginierus, in his Annotations vpō Onoſander. Which is likewiſe ſhewed, by that which Maiſter Camden hath inſerted in the deſcription of Bedfordſhire, concerning the ſiege of Bedford Caſtle, in the time of Henry the third, out of an Authour that was preſent; *Ex parte orientali fuit vna Petraria, et duo Mangonella, quæ quotidiè turrim infeſtabant: et ex parte occidentis duo Mangonella, quæ turrim veterem contriuerunt, et vnum Mangonellum ex parte Auſtrali, &c.* But our powder hauing blowne all theſe out of vſe, it were to no purpoſe to inſiſt longer vpon them.

And of *Mangonellum*, a batterer or breaker, commeth our Engliſh word Mangle.

CHAP. II.

The Marſellians prepare themſelues *for a Sea-fight.*

IN the meane time, L. Naſidius beeing ſent by Cn. Pompeius with a Nauie of ſixteene ſhippes (amongſt which, ſome fevv had their beake-head of Iron) to the ſuccour and ſupply of L. Domitius and the Marſellians, he paſſed the ſtraights of Sicilie before Curio had intelligence thereof: and putting into Meſſana, by reaſon of the ſuddaine terrour of the principall men, and the Senate that tooke themſelues to flight, he ſurpriſed one Ship in the road and caried her away, and ſo held on his courſe to Marſellies. And, hauing ſent a ſmall Barke before, he certified Domitius and the reſt, of his comming; exhorting them by all meanes, that ioyning their forces with his ſupplies, they would once againe giue fight to Brutus Nauie.

Caſar.

Meſſina.

The Marſellians, ſince their former ouerthrowe, had taken the like number of ſhippes out of their Arcenall, and new rigged and trimmed them, and vvith great induſtrie furniſhed and manned them for that ſeruice: for, they vvanted neither Oare-men, Mariners, Sailers, nor Pilots, fit for that purpoſe. To theſe they added certaine Fiſher-boates, and fenced them with fights and couerings, that the Oare-men might be ſafe from caſting weapons; and theſe he filled vvith Archers and Engines. The Nauie beeing thus furniſhed and prepared, the Marſellians (incited and ſtirred vp with the prayers and teares of old men, vvomen and maides, to giue help and defence to their Cittie in time of extreame danger; and to fight with no leſſe courage and confidence then formerly they had accuſtomed) vvent all aboard with great courage, as it commeth to paſſe through the common fault of Nature; whereby we put more confidence in things vnſeene and vnknowne, or otherwiſe are more troubled thereat: according as it then happened. For, the comming of Naſidius had filled the Citty full of aſſured hope and courage: and thervpon, hauing a good wind, they left the Port, & came & found Naſidius at Taurenta (a Caſtle belonging to the Marſellians) & there fitted thẽſelues for a fight; incouraging each other againe, to a valiant cariage of that ſeruice, and conſulting how it might be beſt performed.

Tolons.

The right ſquadron vvas giuen to the Marſellians, and the left to Naſtaius. And to the place repaired Brutus, hauing increaſed the number of his Shippes: for, thoſe ſixe which he tooke from the Marſellians, he had added vnto the other which Caſar had cauſed to be made at Arleata, and had mended them ſince the laſt fight, and fitted them with all neceſſaries for men of vvarre. And thereupon, exhorting his ſouldiers to contemne the Enemy, as a vanquiſhed partie, hauing already foiled and ouerthrowne them when they were in their ſtrength, they ſet forward againſt them with great aſſurance.

Arles.

Out of the Campe of C. Trebonius, & from all thoſe higher places they might eaſily perceiue and ſee in the Cittie, how all the youth vvhich remained in the towne, and all the aged, with their wiues and children, did from the publique places of guard, and from the towne walles, ſtretch out their handes tovvards heauen: or otherwiſe runne to their Churches and Temples; and there proſtrating themſelues before their Images, did deſire victorie of their Gods. Neither was there any of them all that did not thinke, the euent of all their fortunes to conſiſt in that daies ſeruice: for, the chiefeſt of all their able men, and the beſt of all ſorts and degrees, were by name called out, and intreated to goe aboard, to the end if any diſaſter or miſchaunce ſhould happen, they might ſee nothing further to be indeauoured for their ſafetie; and if they ouercame, they might reſt in hope to ſaue their Cittie, either by their owne valour or by forraine helpe.

OBSERVATIONS.

Quod maximè volunt, id facilè credunt.

Communi fit vitio naturæ, vt inviſis, latitantibus, atque incognitis rebus, magis confidamus, vehementiúſque exterreamur, vt tum accidit. In caſes of hazard, things brought vnto vs by report, doe more abuſe our iudgement, either in conceiuing too great hopes, or yeelding too much to diſtruſt, then any matter preſent can mooue or inforce: for, theſe perturbations attending vpon our will, are inlarged more according to the qualitie of our deſires, then as they are directed by diſcourſe of reaſon; and ſo draw men either eaſily to belieue what their wiſhes doe require, or otherwiſe to reiect all as vtterly loſt.

Virgil. lib. 2. Aenead.

The vncertaintie whereof, and the diſappointment enſuing thoſe deceiuable apprehenſions, hath brought the hope of this life into very ſlight account, beeing reckoned but as the dreame of him that is awake; and as *Pia fraus*, or a charitable deluſion, to ſupport vs through the hard chaunces of this world, and to keepe mans hart from breaking: for, euery mans helpe is hope; vvhich neuer affordeth preſent reliefe, but aſſwageth the bitterneſſe of extreamities, by *Dabit Deus his quoque finem.*

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

The fight, and the Marſellians *ouerthrowe.*

THE fight beeing begun, the Marſellians were wanting in no point of valour: but bearing in mind ſuch exhortation as a little before had beene giuen thē by their friends, they fought ſo reſolutely as though they meant not to fight againe; or as if any one ſhould chaunce to miſcarie in that battell, he ſhould make account that he did but anticipate for a ſmall moment of time, the fatall end of his fellow Cittizens, who vpon taking of the towne, were to vndergoe the ſame fortune of warre. Our Shippes putting on by little and little, were glad to giue way to the nimbleneſs and mobility of their ſhipping, which by the skill of their Pilots were well managed. And if it happened that our men had found meanes to grapple with any of their ſhippes, they preſently came on all ſides to their reskew. Neither did the Albici ſhew themſelues backward when the matter came to hands, or were they inferiour to our men in courage or valour. Moreouer, out of the leſſer Ships were caſt infinite numbers of darts, and other weapons, wher-with our men buſied in fight were ſuddainely wounded. Ceſar.

In this conflict, two of their Triremes, hauing ſpied Brutus ſhippe (which by her flagge might eaſily be diſcerned) came violently againſt him from two contrary parts: but the danger being foreſeene, Brutus did ſo preuaile through the ſwiftneſſe of his Ship, that he a little out-ſtript them; whereby they cōming with their full ſwinge, did ſo encounter one another, that they were very much ſhaken with the blowe: for, the Beake-head of one beeing broken off, the water was ready to come in on all ſides. Which beeing obſerued by ſome of Brutus partie that were neere about, they ſet vpon them (beeing thus diſtreſſed) and quicklie ſunke them both.

The Shippes that came with Naſidius, were found of no vſe; for, there was not offered there vnto them, either the ſight of their Countrey, or the exhortations and praiers of their kinsfolkes and allies, as motiues to hazard their liues in that quarrell: ſo that of them there was none wanting. Of the Ships that came out from Marſellies, fiue were ſunke, and foure taken. One eſcaped with Naſidius fleet, which made towards the hither Spaine. One of them that remained, was ſent before to Marſellies; who comming as a meſſenger before the reſt, and approching neere vnto the towne, all the multitude ran out to heare the newes: which beeing once knowne, there was ſuch a generall mourning and deſolation, as though the towne were inſtantly to be taken by the Enemy. Notwithſtanding, they left not off to make ready ſuch neceſſaries, as were requiſite for defence of the ſame.

749b

OBSERVATIONS.

THis was the ſecond fight the Marſellians made, to keep the ſea open for the ayde and reliefe of the Towne; beeing otherwiſe ſtraightlie beſieged by land, and yet not ſo tenderly cared as their ſhutting vp by ſea: the free paſſage whereof, brought in all their profit in time of peace, and their ſuccours in times of warre; for which regard it was, that they commended to their gods, the ſucceſſe of that enterpriſe, with as much deuotion, as teares, vowes and prayers could expreſſe.

The benefit a Towne beſieged receiueth from an open inlet by ſea, cannot be better manifeſted, then by the ſiege of Oaſtend; for, by that occaſion ſpecially, it indured the moſt famous ſiege that was in Chriſtendome theſe many yeeres. This L. Naſsidius, was rather a conſtant friend to the cauſe, then a fortunate Admirall: for afterwards, he refuſed not to take the like ouerthrow for Pompey the ſonne, at Lucades, as hee did now for the father. And ſurely it falleth out (whither it be through the vncertainety of ſea-faring matters, or that men haue fairer pretences at ſea, to auoid occaſions of hazard, then are found at land; or that *Pauca digna naſcuntur in Mari*, according to the prouerbe, or for what other cauſe I knowe not) that there are few of thoſe which ſought honor in this kind, who haue attained the leaſt part of their deſires. And yet neuertheleſſe, ſome there are of famous memorie: as * Barbaruſsa, a terrour of the Leuant ſeas: Andreas Auria, of Genua, renowned for his great exploits vpon the Turke: together with diuers of our owne Nation; as namelie, Sir Francis Drake, who for skill and fortune at ſea, is held matchable with anie other whatſoeuer: Beſides, M. Candiſh, for viages to the South, and Sir Martin Furbiſher, for diſcoueries to the North.

Dio Caſsius.

Nihil tam capax fortuitorũ, quàm Mare. Tacit. 14. Annal.

* King of Algiers in the time of Soliman.

Howbeit, theſe latter times haue aduantage without compariſon of former ages, through the inuention of the Sea compaſs with the needle: which was not found out little more then three hundred yeres agoe, by one Flavus, borne in the kingdome of Naples; without which, no ſhippe can ſhape a courſe in the Ocean: and to which nothing can be added, more then to find a perfect & ready direction for longitudes.

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.

The workes which the legionarie Souldiers *made against the Towne.*

(***)

IT was obserued by the legionarie ſouldiers, that had the charge of the right part of the work, that it would much aduantage them againſt the often eruptions and ſallies of the Enemy, if they built a towre of Bricke vnder the towne wall, inſtead of a Hold or receptacle: which at firſt they made lowe and little, onely for the repelling of ſuddaine aſſaults. Thither they vſually retreited: and from thence, if they were ouer-charged, they made defence, either by beating backe, or proſecuting an Enemie. This towre was thirtie foote ſquare, and the walles thereof fiue foote thicke: but afterwards (as vſe and experience is the maiſter of all things) it was found by inſight and induſtrie of men, that this towre might be of great vſe, if it were raiſed to any height, and was accordingly performed in this faſhion. Cæſar.

When it was raiſed to the height of a ſtorie, they ſo framed the floore, that the ends of the ioyſtes did not iyttie out beyond the ſides of the towre; leaſt any thing might be thruſt out, on which the fire which the enemy ſhould caſt might take hold: and then paued that floore, with as much bricke as the Mantelets and Gabions would ſuffer to bee laid. Vpon this tarras thus made, they laide croſſe beames along the ſides, as a foundation to an vpper ſtorie, for the toppe and couering of the towre. And vpon theſe beames they raiſed croſſe timbers, thwarting each other for the ſides of the towre, and coupled them at the top with ſide beames.

Theſe croſſe timbers were longer, and bare further out, then the ſquare of the towre; that there might be meanes to faſten couerings and defences, againſt the blowes and dartes of the Enemy, whilſt the workemen were finiſhing the walles and ſides of that building. The toppe or vpper ſtorie of this towre, they likewiſe paued with bricke and clay, that no fire might faſten on it; and laid Mattereſſes on the toppe thereof, to the end the floore might not be broken, with any weapons ſhot out of Engines, nor the pauement ſhiuered in peeces with ſtones caſt out of Catapults.

Moreouer, they made three nettings or mats of Hawſers, equall in length to the ſides of the towre, and foure foote in breadth. And vpon thoſe three ſides which confronted the Enemie, they faſtened them vpon poles to hang before the towre: which kind of defence they had in other places tried to be of proofe, & not to be pearced with any weapon or engine. And as one part of the towre came to be couered, finiſhed, and fortified, againſt any violence of the enemy, they caried

their

their Mantelets and defences to the reſt vnfiniſhed. The top of which towre, they framed vpon the firſt ſtorie, and then raiſed it vp with wrinches or ſcrues, as farre as the cloſe netting would ſerue them for a defence. And ſo couered vvith theſe ſhelters and ſafeguards, they built vp the ſides with bricke; and then againe ſcruing vp the toppe higher, they fitted the place to build the ſides higher: and as they came to the height of a ſtory, they laid the ioyſtes of the floore in ſuch ſort, as the ends thereof were hid and couered with the wall or ſides that were of brick; and ſo from that ſtory, they proceeded to another, by ſcruing vp the top, and raiſing their netting. By which meanes, they built very ſafely ſixe ſtories, vvithout any wound or other danger at all; and left windowes and loopeholes in the ſides, for the putting out of Engines in ſuch places as they thought conuenient. When by means of that towre, they were in hope to defend the works neere about it, they then made a Muſculum or mouſe of ſixtie foote in length, & of two foote timber ſquare, to connay them ſafely from this towre of Bricke, to another of the Enemies, and to the towne wall: wherof this was the forme; They cut two ſide groundſils of equall length, and made the ſpace betweene them to containe foure foote; vpon them they erected little columnes of fiue foote high, and ioyned them together, putting braces of an eaſie ſloping in ſuch diſtances, as the rafters were to be placed to beare vp the roofe: and vpon thoſe braces they laid rafters of two foote ſquare, faſtening them both at the ridge, and at the euings, with plates and bolts of Iron. They lathed the roofe with lath of foure fingers broad; and ſo the building beeing made with a gable ridge handſomly faſhioned, the top was laid all ouer with clay, to keepe the Mouſe from burning; and then couered with tiles, which were fenced with leather, to the end they might not be vvaſhed away with pipes or gutters of vvater, vvhich might bee laid to fall vpon them. And leaſt thoſe hides ſhould be ſpoiled, either with fire or great ſtones, they laid Mattereſſes vpon them.

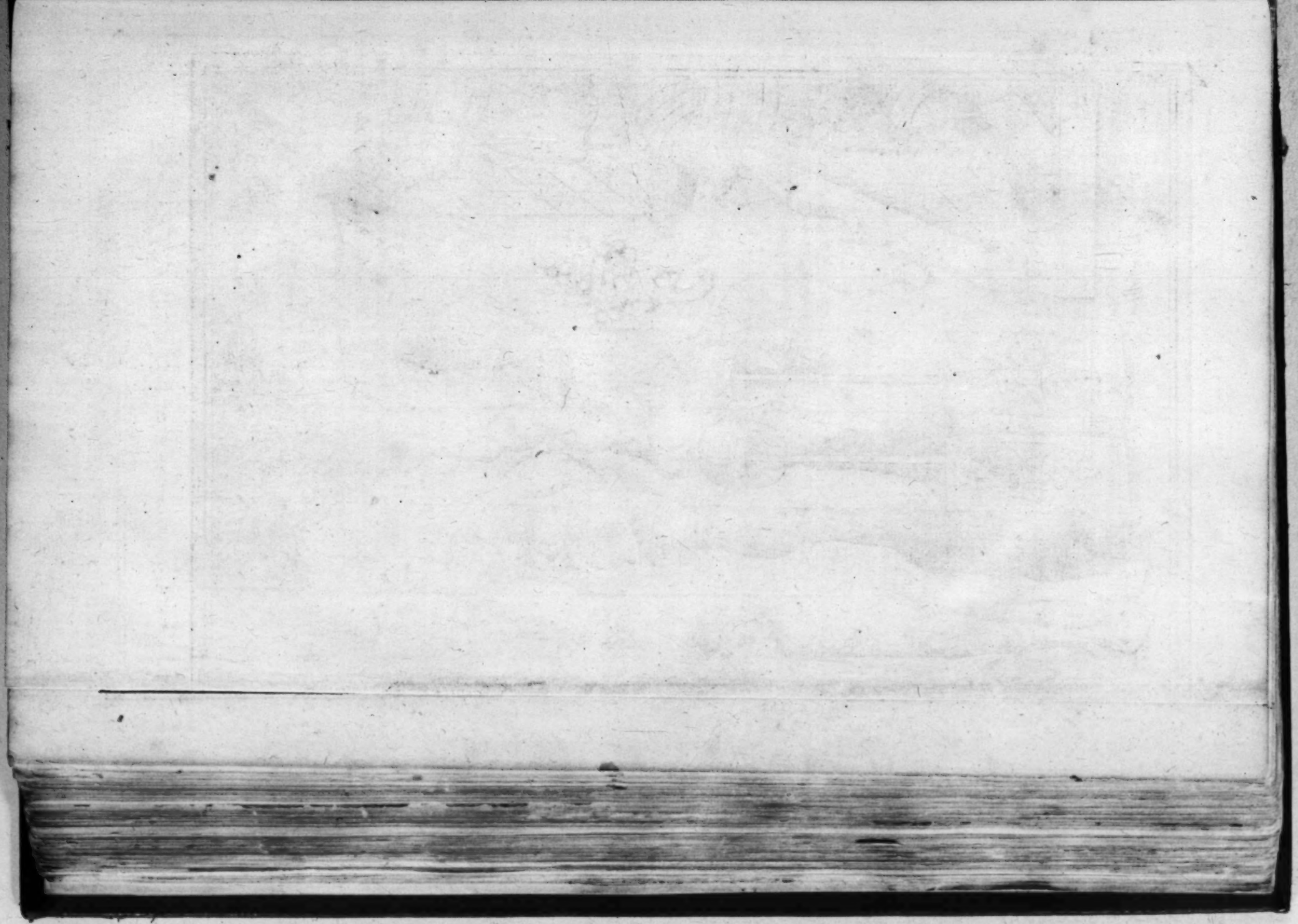
This worke being whollie finiſhed neere vnto the towre, through the help and meanes of defenſiue mantelets and gabions; ſuddenly before the enemy was aware, with a ſhippe-engine and rolers put vnder it, they brought it ſo neere a towre of the enemies, that it ioyned to the vvall thereof. The towneſmen, beeing vpon a ſuddaine appalled thereat, brought the greateſt ſtones they could get, and vvith leavers, tumbled them dovvne from the vvall vpon the mouſe: but the ſtrength of the vvorke did not ſhrinke at the blowes, and vvhatſoeuer fell vpon it, ſlided downe the ſloping of the roofe. Which vvhen they perceiued, they altered their purpoſe, and got pots of Roſin and Pitch, and ſetting them on fire, threw them downe vpon the Mouſe; vvhich tumbling downe from the roofe, vvere remooued away vvith long hookes and poles. In the meane time, the ſouldiers that were vvithin the Mouſe, pulled out the lower ſtones that were in the foundation of the towre. This Mouſe or Mantilet, vvas defended by our men out of the bricke towre, vvith vveapons and engines: and by meanes thereof, the Enemy vvas put from the vvall and the turrets, ſo that they could not well defend the ſame. Many of the ſtones beeing ſapped out of the foundation of the towre, part thereof ſuddenly fell, & the reſt leaned, as though it would not ſtand long after.

OB-

7491b



Marsellies



OBSERVATIONS.

FOraſmuch as it requireth the labour of an induſtrious penne to ſhadow out the effects of Induſtrie; I will onely produce the euidence of theſe workes, to ſhew the power it hath in humane actions, rather then by any maimed or ſhallow diſcourſe, weaken the force of ſo great an Engine. VVherein, firſt it may be noted, how in theſe and the like attempting indeauours, one thing drawes on another, according as practiſe maketh ouerture to maiſteries: For, our vnderſtanding growing by degrees, hath no intuitiue facultie to diſcerne perfection, but by little and little worketh out exactneſs; making euery Morrow, yeſterdaies ſcholler, as reaſon findeth meanes of diſcourſe from cauſes to effects, or from effects to cauſes. *Diſcipulus prioris poſterior dies. Aulus Gellius.*

And ſo this Towre, made at firſt but for a retreit of defence, gaue occaſion to let them ſee the like, or better vſe thereof in the offenſiue part, if it were raiſed to a height conuenient for the ſame: vvhich they performed with as much Art as the wit of man could vſe in ſuch a worke. For, hauing made the firſt ſtorie, they then made the roofe, for the ſhelter and ſafetie of the ſouldier: and ſcruing it vp by little and little, they built the ſides, hauing fenced the open ſpace with netting, for auoiding of danger; arming it with bricke and clay againſt fire, and with Mattereſſes againſt ſtones and waights. And then againe they proceeded to the making of that Mantilet or Muſculum, which gaue them paſſage to the wall; building it with ſtrong or rather ſtrange timber, of two foote ſquare, framed ſo artificially with braces, and ridging rafters, and thoſe ſo fitted, as neither fire, water, weapon, nor weight, could preuaile againſt it. And thus they laboured to gaine their owne ends, and bought Fortune with immeaſurable indeauour.

CHAP. V.

The Marſellians got a truce of the Romaines, *and brake it deceitfully.*

THE Enemy, beeing then much appalled at the ſuddaine ruine and fall of the towre, and greatly perplexed at ſo vnexpected a miſchiefe; and withall, ſtrooke with a feare of the wrath and indignation of the Gods, and of the ſack & ſpoile of their Cittie, they came all vnarmed, thronging out of the gates, wearing holy attire vpon their heads, and ſtretching out their ſubmiſsiue hands to the Legates and the Armie. Vpon which noueltie, all hoſtility ceaſſed for the time, & the ſouldiers with drawing themſelues from the aſſault, were caried with a deſire of hearing and vnderſtanding what would paſſe at that time. *Caſar.* *Inermes cum infulis.*

When

When they came to the Legates & to the Army, they caſt themſelues all downe at their feete, praying and beſeeching that things might be ſuſpended vntill Cæſars arriuall. They ſaw plainely that their towne was already taken, their works were perfited, their owne towre demoliſhed; and therefore they deſiſted from making any further defence: there could be no let to hinder them from preſent ſpoile and ſacking, if vpon Cæſars arriuall they ſhould refuſe to obay his Mandates. They ſhewed further, that if their towre were abſolutely ouerthrowne, the ſouldiers could not be kept from entering the towne in hope of pillage, and would thereby bring it to a finall deſtruction.

Theſe, and many the like things, were vttered by them very moouingly (as men learned and eloquent) with great lamentation and much weeping: whereby the Legates (mooued with commiſeration) with-drew the ſouldiers from the fortifications, put off the aſſault, and left a ſmall guard to keepe the works. A kind of truce beeing through pitty and commiſeration thus made and concluded, Cæſars comming was expected; no weapon was caſt, either from the towne wall, or from our ſide: inſomuch, as euery man left off his care and diligence, as though all had been ended. For, Cæſar had by Letters giuen ſtraight charge to Trebonius, not to ſuffer the towne to bee taken by aſſault, leaſt the ſouldiers (mooued through their rebellion and contempt, together with the long trauell they had ſuſtained) ſhould put all aboue foureteene yeeres of age to the ſword: which they threatned to doe, and were then hardly kept from breaking into the towne; taking the matter very grieuouſly, that Trebonius ſeemed to hinder them from effecting their purpoſes. But the enemy, beeing people without faith, did onelie watch for time and opportunity, to put in practice their fraude and deceit.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Veſtitus, vt tegit corpus, ita detegit animũ.

IT is a ſaying of an ancient Writer, that As our attire doth couer the bodie, ſo it doth vncouer the nakedneſs of the mind. Whereupon it is, that men haue found meanes to ſute themſelues vpon occaſion, according to the diſpoſition of their inward affections, as they are either dilated with ioy, or contracted with ſorrow, lifted vp with weale, or humbled with affliction. And accordingly, theſe Marſellians, in token of their humilitie & ſubmiſsion, came out, wearing an attire here called *Infulæ*; which Seruius deſcribeth to be a kind of Coife, made after the forme of a Diademe, with two pendants on each ſide, called *Vittæ*.

11 *Aeneid.*

Thoſe which the Romains vſed of this kind, were faſhioned like a Pyramid: the point whereof, did ſignifie the * Elements, aſcending vpwards in ſuch a pointed faſhion; and by the two pendants or bands, were denoted the Water and the Earth; beeing made whollie of wooll, as Feſtus writeth; *Infulæ ſunt filamenta lanea, quibus Sacerdotes, hoſtiæ, et templa velabantur:* to ſhew humbleneſſe and ſimplicitie, wherof wooll is a Hirogliphick. For, no kind of beaſts haue more need of ayde and ſuccour then Sheepe: and there-vpon it was, that all Suppliants were attired with treſſes of wooll. Or otherwiſe, as ſome vvill haue

* The fire and the ayre.

haue it, That the habit of the Petitioner, might call to remembrance the flexible diſpoſition, which is well-beſeeming thoſe that haue power and meanes to giue helpe and reliefe: According to the vſe of Heathen ages; wherin their Images of their Idols, had their feete tied with cordes of wooll: to ſhew the mildneſs and eaſineſs which vpon deuote ſupplications was founde in diuine Powers; whereof wooll was a *Symbolum*.

Macrob. lib. 1. Saturnal. ca. 8.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE Marſellians, beeing an ancient progeny of the Greekes, notwithſtanding the long deſcent of time, and alteration of aire, did keepe a touch of the naturall of that Nation, as well in ſuch ſtraines of eloquence, as were familiar vnto them aboue other people, as in ſubtiltie and duplicitie of dealing. Which paſſage of the Marſellians, is obſerued by Tully, as a matter enforcing the due praiſes of Eloquence, and the vſe it hath vpon all occaſions to draw conſent, with the ſweetneſs of a well tuned tongue, aboue that which may be attained either by Engines or a ſtrong hand. VVherein, if we ſhould goe about to compare the force of Armes, with the power of a graue diſcourſe, & ſet a ſouldier Parallell to an Orator, there might hence be taken diuers probable reaſons, to ſecond that ſaying, which hath been thought to ſauour more of vaine-glorie, then of true iudgement; *Cedant arma togæ, concedat laurea linguæ:* Or at leaſt, to make a reſemblance of Plutarchs two Wraſtelers, of whom one beeing alwaies caſt, did neuertheleſſe perſwade the other that he caſt him; and ſo, howſoeuer he became foiled, yet left the place with an opinion of victorie: And is alwaies more eaſily effected, when it is attended with cunning and deceit, according to that of Valerius Maximus; *Efficaciſſimæ vires perfidiæ, mentiri et fallere.* But, as it is obſerued by Philip de Commines, The example of one ſole accident, is ſufficient to make manie men wiſe: ſo this may ſerue to teach ſucceeding times, not to truſt to words, whereof there is no hold; but to ratifie ſuch compoſitions with irreuocable performances.

Græca fide omnia agere. Oratio pro Flacco.

Æqualis eſt vtrorumque dignitas, niſi preſens neceſsitas vnius conditionē nobiliorē efficiat. Tum enim is præferēdus, quē præſentia magis exigunt, ſicut Valent: et Valens ſtatuerunt L. in ciuilibus 1. C. de offic. Vicar. Vt in ciuilibus cauſis vicarij comitibus militū anteferrentur, in militaribus negotijs comites vicarijs. En los caſos varos vn ſolo exēplo, haze experiençia. Anto. Peres.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THirdly, we may note, how farre the anger of a Romaine Armie was extended, vpon ſuch prouocations as are heere mentioned, viz. *Ad interficiendos pueros*, to the ſlaying of all the males aboue fourteene yeeres of age; for, from that ſtage of life, they accounted all in the ranke of men: According to the inſtitution of Tarquinius Priſcus; who in his triumph of the Sabines, made a ſpeciall Oration in the praiſe of his owne ſon, that had aſſaulted and ſtrooke the Enemy in thoſe warres, beeing then but 14 yeres of age: and ther-vpon, gaue him libertie to weare mans apparrell; which was that *Toga pretexta* (edged or faced with Purple) whereof their hiſtories make ſo often mention.

Macro. lib. 1. Satur. cap. 6.

But

749b

But to define preciſely heereof, were to miſtake the furie of the ſouldier: for, howſoeuer the rule is certaine from the law of Nature, that no finite cauſe can be infinite in effect, or that a mortal hate ſhould haue a boundleſſe reuenge; yet occaſion made it variable, and as irregular as that of Alexander: who ſometimes ſaued all, & at other times (as at the taking of Tyre) ſaued none at all, but ſuch as had taken the protection of the Temple. The inhumane crueltie of the Turkes, exceedeth all former hoſtilitie in this kind; for, they neuer ſaue anie out of commiſeration, but for priuate vſe: and doe rather chuſe to deſtroy mankind, then ſuffer it to liue for any other purpoſe then their owne.

Quintus Cur. lib. 5.

CHAP. VI.

The Marſellians, taking aduantage of the Truce, *conſumed with fire all the Romaine workes: which* were afterwards reedified.

Cæſar.

After a few daies, when our men were growne remiſs & careleſſe, ſuddainly about high noone, as ſome were gone one way ſome another, and others wearied with continuall labour, had giuen themſelues to reſt, the weapons beeing caſed and laid vp; they ruſhed out of their gates, & comming with the wind that then blew hard, they ſet our workes on fire: which was ſo caried and diſperſed with the wind, that the Mount, the Mantilets, the Teſtudo, the Towre and the Engines, were all on fire at once, and were burned downe and conſumed before it could be knowne how it came.

Our men, aſtoniſhed at ſo ſuddaine and vnthought-of an accident, caught vp ſuch weapons as were next at hand; and others, running ſpeedily frō the Camp, ſet vpon the Enemy, but were hindered from following them as they fledde, by Engines and Arrowes from the towne wall. They, on the other ſide, beeing retired vnder the protection of the wall, did at their eaſe burne downe the Mouſe and the brick towre: and ſo, many moneths labour, was through the perfidiouſneſſe of the Enemy, and the force of the tempeſt; conſumed & brought to nothing in a moment of time. The Marſellians attempted the like the next day after, hauing opportunitie of the like tempeſt; and with greater confidence ſallied out, & threw much fire vpon the other mount and the towre. But as our men the day before (expecting nothing leſſe then to be ſurpriſed in that ſort) had neglected more then ordinary their vſuall guards, beeing now made wiſer by that vvhich had happened, they had made all things ready for defence: by which meanes, hauing ſlaine a great number, they draue the reſt backe into the towne, without effecting any thing.

Trebonius beganne againe to reedifie ſuch workes as were ruinated and conſumed with fire, and that with greater alacritie of the ſouldier then before.

For,

For, vvhen they ſaw their great labours and indeauours ſort to no better ſucceſſe, beeing ruined by the treacherie of the Enemy, it was a great gall vnto them to haue their valour thus derided. And, foraſmuch as there was nothing left in all the Countrey for the raiſing of a Mount, all the trees being already cut downe, and brought farre and neere to make the firſt Mount, they beganne a Mount of a ſtrange and vnheard-of faſhion, raiſed with two ſide-vvalles of bricke, beeing ſixe foote thicke apeece, and ioyned together with floores. The vvalls vvere of equall diſtance, to the latitude of the former Mount, which was all of ſolide matter: and where the ſpace betweene the walles, or the weakeneſſe of the work did require it, there were piles driuen betweene, and beames and plankes laid athwart for the ſtrengthening thereof. The floores, made betweene thoſe vvalles, were laid with Hurdles, and the Hurdles were couered with clay.

Eſt ita natura cõparatũ, vt homines moleſtè, ſupra quàm dici poſsit, ferant, ſi videant rerũ eventus virtuti non reſpondere. Pauſ. in Meſſe.

The ſouldiers beeing thus ſheltered, on both ſides with a wall, and defended in front by Mantilets and Gabions, did ſafely, without danger, bring whatſoeuer was neceſsary for that building; wherby the worke was caried on with great ſpeed: and the loſſe of their former continuall labour, was in a ſhort time recouered againe, through the admirable dexterity and valour of the ſouldier. To conclude, they left gates in the vvalles, in ſuch places as vvere fitteſt for ſallies.

Whẽ the enemy perceiued, that what they hoped could not be repaired againe in a long time, was with a few daies labour, reedified & finiſhed [vvherby there was no place left to practiſe deceit, or to ſallie out with aduantage; neither was there any meanes left by which they could preuaile, either by force of Armes, or by fire to conſume our vvorkes; and vnderſtanding likewiſe, that by the ſame manner of fortification, all that part of the towne, which had paſſage and acceſſe from the firme land, might be encompaſsed with a vvall and with towres; that their ſouldiers ſhould not be able to ſtand vpon their workes; and perceiuing vvithall, that our Army had raiſed a countermure, againſt the wall of their towne; and that vveapons might be caſt by hand vnto them; that the vſe of their Engines (vvherein they much truſted) vvas by the neereneſs of ſpace quite taken avvay; and laſtlie, that they vvere not able to confront our men (vpon equall tearmes) from their vvalles, and from their turrets] they deſcended to the ſame Articles of rendry and ſubmiſsion, as were formerly agreed vpon.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

HEnce vvee may obſerue, that a Generall cannot bee too ſecure of an Enemie, that ſtandes vpon tearmes to render vp a place. For, the action beeing but voluntarie by conſtraint; if happelie the conſtraining force be remooued, then that doth ceaſe vvhich is voluntarie: and ſo it commeth by conſequent to a refuſall. As appeareth by this paſſage of the Marſellians; who being brought into hard tearmes, as vvell by their tvvo ouer-throwes at Sea (vvhence they

expected no further ſuccour) as alſo by the ſiege laid ſo cloſe by land (vvhere they were ſo violently aſſaulted, that their towers of defence made paſſage for the Romaines to enter vpon them) did neuertheleſſe (vpon ceſſation of thoſe inforcements) alter their purpoſe, and entertained new hopes: which maketh good that ſaying, *Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes.*

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

Voluntas ad laborem propenſa, cuncta vincere et ſuperare conſueuit. Polyænus Lib. 5. Iliad.

SEcondly, we may obſerue, that a will, forward to vndergoe labour, doth neuer ſticke at any difficultie, nor is at all diſmaied with the loſſe of anie paines: but is rather redoubled in courage and induſtrie; eſpecially beeing edged on with a deſire of reuenge. Which (if Homer may haue credit) doth alwaies adde a third part to a mans ſtrength; as appeared by Diomedes, beeing hurt in the ſhoulder with one of Pindarus arrowes: for reuenge whereof, hee exceeded himſelfe in a *ſeſquiterce* proportion of valour, and ſlew more Troianes by a third part then otherwiſe he could.

Nihil tam arduum, quod animi fortitudine ſuperari non poſſit. Appian. de bello Hiſpanico.

Howſoeuer, as there is nothing ſo hard, but is ſubiect to the endeauour of the minde: ſo there is nothing ſo eaſie, as to diſpoſſeſs our ſelues of that intent care, which is requiſite in theſe imployments. For, theſe Romaines, that through the greatneſs of their ſpirits had made ſuch firſt and ſecond workes, as the memorie thereof will laſt with the world, were ſurpriſed when they lay in the *Interim*, as it were vnbent, in as great remiſneſs and neglect (how-ſo-euer drawne vnto it by deceit) as if they had beene able to doe no ſuch matter as is heere reported. And therefore it behoueth a Commaunder, to keepe his Armie alwaies ſeaſoned with labour; foraſmuch as *Exercitus labore proficit, otio conſeneſcit.*

Vegetius.

CHAP. VII.

Varro raiſeth great troopes, to maintaine Pompeis partie in Spaine; but, to no purpoſe.

Cæſar.

MArcus Varro, in the further Prouince of Spaine, hauing from the beginning vnderſtood how things had paſſed in Italie, & diſtruſting how matters would ſucceed with Pompey, did oftentimes giue out very friendly ſpeeches of Cæſar; that Pompey had by way of preuention gained him to his party, & honoured him with a Lieutenancie, whereby hee was obliged in dutie to him: Howbeit, in his particular diſpoſition, he ſtood no leſs affected to Cæſar; neither was he ignorant of the duty of a Legat, to whoſe truſt and fidelitie, the gouernement of the Prouince was left, as in depoſito, *vpon*

Qui fiduciariâ operâ obtinebat.

vpon condition to be rendred vp at all times and ſeaſons, as hee that commaunded in chiefe ſhould require it: He likewiſe knew very well what his owne forces were, and what was the affection and diſpoſition of all the Countrey towards Caſar.

This was the ſubiect of all his ſpeeches, without any ſhew of inclining either to the one or to the other. But afterwards, when he heard that Caſar was ingaged at Marſelleis, that Petreius forces were ioyned with Afranius Armie, that great aides were come vnto them, that euery man was in great hope and expectation of good ſucceſſe; and that all the hither Prouince had agreed together, to vndertake Pompeis cauſe, as alſo what had after happened cõcerning the want of victualls at Ilerda (all which things were writ, with aduantage, vnto him by Afranius) he then vpon that alteration changed his mind according to the times, and leuied ſouldiers in all parts of the Prouince: and hauing raiſed two compleat legions, he added vnto them ſome thirty cohorts of the Countrey ſouldiers, to ſerue for wings to the Army; gathered together great quantity of Corne, as well for the ſupplie of the Marſellians, as for the prouiſion of Petreius and Afranius.

Moreouer, he commaunded them of Gades to build and prouide tenne Gallies; and ordered further, that many other ſhould be made at Hiſpalis. Hee tooke all the money and the ornaments out of Hercules temple, and brought the ſame into the towne of Gades, and in lieu thereof ſent ſixe Cohorts out of the Prouince to keepe the temple. He made Gaius Gallonius (a Romaine Knight and a familiar friend of Domitius, and ſent by him thither to recouer ſome matter of inheritance) Gouernour of the towne. All the Armes (as well priuate as publique) vvere brought into Gallions houſe. He himſelfe made many bitter inuectiues againſt Caſar; affirming, that a great number of the ſouldiers were reuolted frõ him, and vvere come to Afranius: which hee knew to be true, by certaine and approoued Meſſengers.

The Romaine Cittizens, reſiding in that Prouince, beeing much perplexed & affrighted thereat, vvere thervpon conſtrained to promiſe him 190 thouſand Seſtercesin ready money, for the ſeruice of the Common-weale, beſides twentie thouſand waight of ſiluer, together with one hundred and twentie thouſand buſhels of Wheate. Vpon thoſe Citties and States which fauoured Caſars partie, he laid greater impoſitions: for, ſuch as had let fallen ſpeeches, or declared themſelues againſt the Common-weale, he confiſqueted all their goods, and put a Guarizon vpon them; giuing iudgement himſelfe vpon priuate perſons, & conſtraining all the Prouince, to ſweare allegeance to him and to Pompey.

And beeing in the end advertiſed what had happened in the hither Prouince, he prepared for warre, with a purpoſe to diſpoſe thereof in this manner; His reſolution was to keepe two legions with him at Gades, vvith all the ſhipping and the Corne: for, knowing that the vvhole Prouince did intirely affect Caſars Cauſe, he thought it beſt for him (hauing made good prouiſion of ſhipping and Corne) to keepe the Iland.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

OBſerue firſt, how dangerous it is, for ſuch as ſtand newtrall between two parties (bearing no affection but to their owne ends) to declare themſelues, vpon ſuch apparances as commonly happen in the flux and reflux of a warre: for, if their iudgement faile as Varros did, they are then forced to redeeme their errour, with more offices of partialitie then can afterwards be excuſed; and ſo runne into a further degree of emnitie, then the party for whom they ſuffer. And certainely, whether it bee that newtralitie refuſeth to take part with the right (which in matter of controuerſie muſt needes ſtand on one ſide) or whether it ſauoureth of an ill nature, to ſhew no ſympathiſing affections, with ſuch as otherwiſe haue correſpondence with them; or for what other cauſe I knowe not: but ſure it is, that Newtralls, attending nothing but their owne aduantage, are of no better eſteeme, then the bird whereof Leo Africus writeth; which when the King of Birds demaunded tribute, would alwaies ranke himſelfe amongſt the Fiſh: and when the King of Fiſhes required his ſeruice, would alwaies be with the Birds. Or then the Weather-cock, whereof there is no other vſe then *Indicare regnantem.*

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE Iland of Gades, was knowne to the Romaines by the name of Tarteſſon;

Feſtus Avienus. *Hîc Gadis vrbs eſt dicta Tarteſſus prius.*

Lib. xli. The towne of Gades was indowed, as Dion witneſſeth, by Iulius Cæſar, with the liberties and priuiledges of Rome. To which effect Plinie writeth; *Oppidum habet Ciuium Romanorũ, quod appellatur Auguſta vrbs Iulia Gaditana.* It was a towne of great fame: as appeareth by that of Iuba, king of Mauritania, who made ambitious ſute, to haue the title of *Duumviri*, or Two-men of the towne; as Feſtus noteth, in his Deſcription of the Sea-coaſt.

At vis in illis tanta, vel tantum decus
Aetate priſca, ſub fide rerum fuit:
Rex vt ſuperbus omniumque præpotens
Quos gens habebat fortè tum Mauruſia,
Octauiano principi acceptiſsimus
Et literarum ſemper in ſtudio Iuba,
Interfluoque ſeparatus Aequore
Illuſtriorem ſemet, vrbis iſtius
Duumviratu crederet.

In

In this Iland stoode Hercules temple; to which, as well Romaines, as other noble Aduenturers of all Nations, made often repaire, to performe their vowes vpon atchieuements of deedes of Armes: which solemnitie was not omitted by Hanniball, before his expedition into Italie.

Amongst other Altars in this Temple, there was one dedicated to Penurie and Art: signifying that Art driueth away Penurie, as Hercules put to flight & subdued Monsters. Those of Asia, and the Mediterrane parts, tooke this Iland to be the furthest end of nauigation: for, the Atlanticke sea admitted no further passage, for want of a load-stone to direct them in that vastnes. And therefore Pindarus saith, That it is not lawfull for wise men nor fooles, to know what is beyond the straight of Gebraltar, the way in the Ocean beeing 1000 leagues broad. In this towne of Gades, was borne L. Cornelius Balbus, who at his death gaue a legacie to the Romaine people, 25 pence *per Pole*; together with Iunius Brutus Columella, that writ so excellently *De re Rustica.*

Et mea quam generat Tartessi litore Gades.

It is now called Cales Males, and was sacked by our English, 1596.

Iosephus Acosta hath obserued, that the sea hath no part aboue one thousand leagues from the land.

Hispalis, surnamed Romulensis, from the Romaine Colonie that was planted there, is seated vpon the Riuer Beatis, in a very pleasant and fertile Countrey, and especially for oyles. The towne is now the Staple for the West Indies, and a very Nurserie of Marchants. Arias Montanus, that great Theologian, was borne in this Cittie.

Hispalis. Seuill.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

CONcerning these CXC thousand Sesterces, the learned cannot satisfie themselues with any congruent interpretation thereof. For, if we take them in the Newter, for vij pound x shillings apeece, it amounteth to 1492000 pound, which is thought too much: if in the Masculine, it will rise not to aboue 1400 pound, which is deemed too little. And therefore the Criticks do mend the place, and read *H-S centies nonagies*, which bringeth out 142500 pound: and is thought agreeable to the meaning of the Authour.

CHAP. VIII.

The Prouince and the legions reuolt from Varro. *Cæsar settleth Spaine, and returneth* to Marsellies.

ALbeit Cæsar was called backe into Italie for many great and important causes, yet he was resolued to leaue no sparke or appearance of warre remaining behind him in Spaine; for that hee knew Pompeis deserts to bee such, as had gained him many followers and dependants in the hither Prouince. And therefore hauing sent two legions into the further Spaine, vnder the

Cæsar.

conduct of Q. Caſsius, Tribune of the people, he himſelfe made forward by great iourneys, vvith ſixe hundred horſe; ſending an Edict before him, to ſummon the Magiſtrates, and chiefe men of the Citties and Townes, to appeare before him by a day at Corduba. Vpon publication of which Edict, there was no Cittie in all that Prouince, that ſent not ſome of their Senate by the day appointed, to Corduba: Neither was there any Romaine Cittizen of note, that preſented not himſelfe there at that time.

The Princes and States beeing aſſembled, of their owne accord they ſhut the gates againſt Varro, ſet watch and ward vpon the walls and in the towres, and retained with them two cohorts, called by the name of Colonicæ (which came thither by chaunce) for the ſafe keeping of the towne. At the ſelfe ſame time, the Inhabitants of Carmona (which is the ſtrongeſt towne of all the Prouince) caſt out the Cohorts that were by Varro put into their Citadell, and ſhut them out of their towne. Whereby, Varro was the rather moued to make haſte to Gades with his legions, leaſt hee ſhould bee hindered and cut off, either in the way, or in his paſſage ouer from the Continent: ſuch and ſo fauourable was the generall affection of the vvhole Prouince towards Cæſar. And being ſome-what aduanced on his iourney, he receiued Letters from Gades, that as ſoone as it was known there of the Edict which Cæſar had publiſhed, the chiefeſt of the Gaditans agreed with the Tribunes of the ſouldiers which were in Guarizon, to expell Gallion out of the towne, and to keepe the Cittie and the Iland for Cæſar. Which beeing reſolued vpon, they ſent him word to leaue the towne of his owne accord, vvhile hee might doe it without danger; and if he refuſed, they would then take ſuch further order as they ſhould find expedient. Gallonius, mooued with feare, diſlodged himſelfe and went out of Gades.

Theſe things beeing divulged abroad, one of the two legions, knowne by the name of Vernacula, tooke vp their Enſignes, went out of Varros Campe (he himſelfe ſtanding by and looking on) and retired themſelues to Hiſpalis; and there ſate downe in the Market-place, and in common porches, vvithout hurting anie man. Which the Romaine Cittizens, there aſſembled, did ſo well like of, that euery man was very deſirous to entertaine them in their houſes. Whereat Varro, beeing much aſtoniſhed, altered his iourney, towards Ilipa Italica, as hee gaue it out; but ſoone after was aduertiſed by ſome of his friends, that the gates vvere ſhut againſt him. Wherupon, being circumvented and fore-cloſed from all other addreſſes, he ſent to Cæſar, to aduertiſe him that he was ready to deliuer vp the legion, to whomſoeuer he ſhould pleaſe to appoint. To which purpoſe, he ſent him Sex. Cæſar, commaunding the legion to be deliuered to him. *Ilipa Italica.*

Varro, hauing giuen vp his charge, came to Cæſar at Corduba, & there gaue him a true account of the cariage of his office. The moneys remaining in his hands he deliuered vp, and gaue an Inuentory of the Corne and ſhipping which were in any place prouided. Cæſar, by a publique Oration made at Corduba, gaue thanks generally to all men; as firſt, to the Romaine Cittizens, for the indeauour they vſed to be Maiſters of the towne. Secondly, to the Spaniards, for driuing out the Guarizons; to them of Gades, that they trauerſed and preuented the proiects of the aduerſaries, & had reſtored thẽſelues to libertie; to the Tribunes of the ſouldiers,

diers, & Centurions, that were come thither to keep the towne, for that by their valour & magnanimity, the reſolution of the townſmen was aſſured and confirmed. He remitted ſuch leuies of money, as the Romaine Cittizens had promiſed Varro for the publique ſeruice. He reſtored the goods confiſqueted, of ſuch as had ſpoken more freely then was pleaſing; and gaue diuers rewards, both publique and priuate: the reſt he ſatisfied with hope of good time for the future. And hauing ſtaied there two daies, he went to Gades: where he gaue order that the moneies and monuments, which were transferred frõ Hercules temple to a priuate houſe, ſhould be caried backe againe to the Temple. Hee made Q. Caſsius Gouernour of the Prouince, & left with him foure legions. He himſelfe, in a few daies ſpace, with thoſe ships which M. Varro, and thoſe of Gades (by his commaundement) had made, came to Tarraco; for, there the Embaſſadours of almoſt all the hither Prouince, did attend his comming: and hauing receiued them with priuate and publique honour, in the ſame faſhion as formerly hee had vſed, hee left Tarraco, and came by land to Narbone, and from thence to Marſellies: where he receiued firſt aduertiſement of the law made at Rome, for creating of a Dictator; and that himſelfe was named thereunto, by M. Lepidus, Prætor.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IT is one of Cæſars peculiars, recorded by Suetonius, that hee neuer left behind him any ſparke or ſuſpicion of warre, leaſt it might be ſaid hee did not throughly conquer where hee came. For, hee that doth a buſineſs to halfe, hath as much more to doe before it bee done: and the remainder in matter of warre, groweth commonly to a greater head then that which firſt gaue occaſion of Armes; like fire, which is ſmothered for a time, to breake out afterwards with greater furie. And therfore, that he might not be thought to prouoke an Enemy rather then ſubdue him, hee neglected all occaſions how important ſoeuer, which might draw him into Italie; to the end he might ſettle Spaine in a peace, anſwerable to an abſolute victorie: Which he eaſily effected, hauing ouer-maiſtered the chiefeſt of the party, and turned their troopes out of the Countrey, as men altogether miſtaken in the matter. The fame whereof ſo preuailed with the reſt, that rather then they would ſtand out, they forſooke their Commaunders. And hauing thus remoued all occaſions of force, hee then proceeded to take away all doubtfulneſſe, which might accompanie a new reconcilement, by ſhewing ſuch reſpects as well beſeemed ancient deſert.

For, firſt, he made a publique acknowledgement of their generall loue and affection towards him; and then taking notice of particular ſeruices, ingaged them further, with honours and rewards; righted ſuch as were oppreſſed by the aduerſe partie; remitted all leuies and taxations (to ſhew the difference betweene his and the Enemies fauour) & filled all men with hope of good times; as knowing that faire words, accompanied with large promiſes, are powreful inſtruments to work out whatſoeuer is deſired. And ſo hee tooke a little more time

rime to ſettle thoſe Prouinces without further trouble: as belieuing in the proverbe; that, What is well done, is twice done.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

Mr. Varro heere mentioned, made more profeſsion of knowledge and Artes, then any other of his Nation, beeing thereupon ſtiled by the name of *Doctus*; & yet in the iudgement of learned Philoſophers, was fitter to perſwade then to teach. Tully, beeing depriued of publique offices, handled Philoſophy a little in his owne language: Pliny and Seneca, leſſe then Varro or Tully. But what are theſe to Ariſtotle or Plato? Or rather, what hath learning to doe with a Romaine Generall? whoſe knowledge conſiſted in their Militarie diſcipline, and in the powerfull meanes of victorious indeauour. Wherein Varro was as ignorant, as was Don Raymundus, the eleuenth King of Arragon, in managing of Armes; who taking his ſword in one hand, and his buckler in the other, held the horſe bridle in his teeth. Howbeit, if *Qui minus facit, minus peccat* were a good excuſe, it were fitting to make him blameleſſe, that deſerued ſo well of learning aboue all others of that Empire. But foraſmuch as his actions appeare ſo farre inferiour to that which is conceiued of his vnderſtanding, let that be acknowledged which is true, that *Conſideratè agere pluris eſt, quàm cogitare prudenter.*

Iamblic. cap. 4.

Cicero. lib. 1. de officijs.

Ilipa Italica.

Thi⁊ Ilipa Italica, was the chiefe towne of the Turditani in Andolozia; and is coniectured by the ruines yet remaining, to ſtand ouer againſt Seuill.

Tarraco, aliter Iulia victrix. Lib. 4. cap. 20.

Tarraco is that which is now called Arragon, a Colony of Scipio his planting, whereof the Prouince taketh appellation; which is extended (as Plinie witneſſeth) from Catalonia to Nauarre, and Caſtile, along the Alpes. Blaiſe de Vigenere reporteth, that in the yeere 516, there was a Councell held at Tarraco, by tenne Biſhops; wherein it was decreed, that Sunday ſhould alwaies beginne preſentlie after Euening prayer (or their Veſpers) on the Saturday. From whence it is, that the Spaniards doe not worke at all after that time, and doe eate vpon Saturdaies at ſupper, the head, the feet and the entralls of ſuch fleſh as is killed in the Shambles (together with other prettie bits which they call *Morſillas*) without prohibition or ſcruple of conſcience. In this towne of Tarraco, was borne Paulus Oſorius, that noble Orator.

Corduba.

Corduba, otherwiſe called Colonia Patricia, was held the next of worth & dignitie to Seuill, but for excellent wits, to be preferred aboue all the townes of Spaine; for, heere firſt were borne the two Senecas, the father the Rhetorician, and the ſonne the Philoſopher: together with their kinſman, Annæus Lucanus, the diuine Poet, of whom Martiall writeth;

Duoſque Senecas vnicúmque Lucanum
Facunda loquitur Corduba.

Beſides, of later times, Auenzoar, Auicenna, and Auerrois, as excellent a Philoſopher, as the other was a Phyſition: of whoſe workes

Fama

Fama loquetur Anus.

And from hence come those Cordouan skinnes, so much in request.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

CONcerning the office of a Dictator, whereunto Cæsar was named by the Prætor Lepidus, we are to obserue, that the Dictatorshippe was the greatest place of dignitie in their gouernment, as Polibius noteth. The Consuls, saith hee, hauing each of them but twelue Lictors apeece, that caried bundles of Rods before them, as ensignes of Magistracie, the Dictator had alwaies 24; to shew that the soueraine power diuided betweene the two Consuls, was then reduced to one sole commaund. The occasions of establishing a Dictator, were diuers; howbeit, it was commonlie to take order in some great matter of consequence, which fell out to be extraordinarie, and required the commaund of one man. And as it is in the fastes or records of the Capitoll; either *Reipub: regend: causa*, as was this first Dictatorship of Cæsars: or otherwise, *M. Fabius, Ambustus Dict: seditionis sedandæ causa:* And at another time, *Cn: Quintius Varus Dictator, claui figendi causa:* which was one of the superstitions they vsed in time of pestilence, and so diuers the like: of all which, there is this forme expressed by Tully; *Si quando duellũ grauius, discordiaue Ciuium crescunt vnus ne amplius sex menses, nisi senatus creuerit, idem iuris quod duo Consules teneto, isque aue sinistra dictus Magister Populi esto.* Lib. 3. De legibus.

But, forasmuch as *Magister Populi* was a harsh and odious name to the people, they called him by a more modest name, Dictator: whereof Varro giueth this reason; *Dictator quod à Consule dicebatur, cuius dicto audientes omnes essent.* And as none could name a Dictator but the Consull (for Cæsar was named by the Prætor in an extraordinarie time) so none could be named to that place, but such as were or had been Consulls; *Consulares legere ita lex iubebat de Dictatore creando lata.* To which may bee added the circumstance of time, which was alwaies in the night; *Nocte deinde silentio vt mos est Papyrium Dictatorem dixit.* The Dictator had soueraine power, but limited for a time: which was commonly sixe Moneths; whereby they are specially distinguished from Monarkes: and thereupon, Cicero adiudgeth Sillas Dictatorship to be a meere tyranny, and so doth Plutarch Cæsars; becaus both vvere prorogued beyond the time prescribed by the law. Cæsar held this Dictators place but eleuen daies, and then left it off: but afterwards had it for his life, and so came to be stiled *Dictator perpetuus.* Liuie. lib. 2. 1. Philip.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

The Marſellians giue vp the Towne.

Cæſar.

THE *Marſellians beeing much oppreſt, and almoſt worne out vvith all ſorts of inconueniences, & brought to an extreame exigent of victuall, defeated and ouerthrowne in two fights at ſea, broken & cut in peeces oftentimes in their ſallies out, afflicted with a grieuous peſtilence through Gods appointment, and alteration of diet (for, they liued of nothing but of old Panick and muſtie Barly, which vvas long before laid vp in publique for this purpoſe) their towre beeing ouerthrowne, and a great part of their vvall downe; out of hope of any ſuccours frõ the Prouinces, or of other Armies, which they knew were come into the hands and power of Cæſar, they ſeriouſly determined (without fraude) to giue vp the towne. But a few daies before, L. Domitius, vnderſtanding their reſolution, hauing got three ſhippes (vvhereof two hee aſsigned to his familiar friends, the third he tooke himſelfe, and taking the opportunitie of a troubleſome ſtorme) put to ſea: vvhich beeing perceiued by the ſhippes that by Brutus commandement did continually guard the mouth of the Hauen, they vvaied their Ankers, & made after them. Notwithſtanding, that, vvherein Domitius was, held on her courſe, and by the helpe of the foule weather got out of ſight. The other two, beeing afraid of our ſhippes, returned back into the Hauen.*

Vetere Panico.

The Marſellians, according as was commaunded, brought their Armes and Engines out of the towne, drew forth their ſhipping, both out of their Hauen and their Arcenalls, and deliuered vp their publique treaſure: which things beeing accompliſhed and performed, Cæſar, willing to ſaue them, rather for the Nauie and antiquity of the towne, then for any merit of theirs, left two legions there for a Guarizon, and ſent the reſt into Italie. He himſelfe tooke his way towards Rome.

OBSERVATIONS.

Vltimũ et duriſſimum telum, neceſſitas.

HEnce wee may obſerue, that when men refuſe to be led by reaſon, as the beſt meanes to guide them to conuenient ends, they are commonly conſtrained by the commaunding warrant of Neceſsitie, to vnder-goe the ſame thing vpon harder conditions. As it happened to the Marſellians, who not regarding the Armie then preſent, and ready to take a ſtrict account of their anſwers (which with good excuſe doth commaund a newtrall State) choſe rather to be ſhut vp with a ſiege; that of all miſeries is accounted the worſt: and therein ſo caried themſelues, as they left no ſtone vnremooued to make good their refuſall; but for want of better helps, brought their Fraude to play a part, to their greater diſaduan-

Omniũ maximè miſerabile, claudi obſidione. Egeſippus.

disaduantage. And if the Conquerour had not tooke all occations to shew his clemencie, they might happelie haue paid deare for their contempt. But where either desert or other motiues wanted, there *nomen et vetustas* was sufficient to make Cæsar constant to his owne ends: which, as neere as the course wherin he was ingaged would affoord him, were alwaies leuelled at the generall applause of his actions; taking that to be no little helpe to worke himselfe into the soueraintie of the State: obseruing it the rather in cases of great and happie successe; which are euer more restrained then lesser fortunes. Howsoeuer, it cannot be denied, but that Clemencie is a propertie of excellent honour: which Cæsar shewed in sauing the towne.

In maxima fortuna, minima licentia est. Salust.

Seruare proprium est excellentis fortunæ. Senecæ de clement. lib. 1

CHAP. X.

Curio transporteth two legions into *Affricke*.

About the same time, C. Curio set saile from Sicilie to passe into Affrick: and making no account at all of Atius Varus forces, he caried with him but two legions of the foure which vvere deliuered him by Cæsar, together with fiue hundred horse. And after he had beene at Sea two daies and three nights, he arriued at a place called Aquilaria, distant twenty two miles from Clupea; vvhere there is a very commodious Roade for shippes in Sommer, sheltered on each side vvith two large and eminent Promontories. L. Cæsar, the sonne, attended his comming at Clupea, with tenne Gallies; vvhich being taken from the Pirats in the late vvarres, and laid aground at Vtica, vvere repaired and new trimmed by Varus: and beeing afraid of the great number of his shippes, forsooke the sea, and ranne his Gallie on shore; and leauing her there, fled by land on foote to Adrumetum, a towne kept by Confinius Longus, hauing one legion onely in guarizon.

Cæsar.

The rest of Cæsars Nauie, seeing their Admirall flie away, put into Adrumetum. M. Rufus the Treasurer, pursued him with twelue shippes, which Curio had brought with him out of Sicily, to vvaft the shippes of burthen; and finding the Gallie left vpon the sand, he towed her off, and returned to Curio with his Nauie. Curio sent Marcus before with the shippes, to Vtica: and he himselfe set forvvard thither by land with the Armie, and in two daies iourney came to the Riuer Bragada; vvhere he left C. Caninius Rebilus, the Legate, with the legions, and vvent himselfe before vvith the Caualry, to view a place called Cornelius Campe: vvhich was held very fit and conuenient to incampe in, beeing a direct ridge of a hill, shooting out into the Sea, steepe and broken on each side, and yet sheluing by a little more gentle descent, on that side which was next Vtica; beeing distant from thence (if the neereſt vvay vvere taken) a little more then a mile. But in that shortest cut, there rose a Spring, in that part which was furthest off

---qua se Bragada lentus agit ficcæ sulcator arenæ. Luc. lib. 4.

off from the ſea, and ſo made a mariſh or bogge: vvhich whoſoeuer would auoid, muſt fetch a compaſs of ſixe miles to goe to the towne.

A view beeing taken of this place, Curio beheld afarre off, Varus Campe, ioyning to the towne wall, at the gate called Bellica; maruailouſly fortified through the ſtrong ſituation of the place, hauing the towne on the one ſide, and a Theater vvhich ſtood before the towne on the other: and by reaſon of the great circuit of building which it contained, made a narrow and difficult paſſage to the Campe. Hee obſerued, further, great ſtore of cariages, which by reaſon of this ſuddaine alarum, were brought out of the Countrey towards the towne: for the intercepting whereof, he ſent the Caualry. And at the ſame inſtant, Varus likevviſe had ſent out of the towne, DC. Numidian horſe, and CCC. foote, wh ch King Iuba (a few daies before) had ſent to Vtica, for the ſtrengthening of that partie. This Prince had acquaintance vvith Pompey, by reaſon that his father lodged with him, and bare a ſpleene to Curio, for the law which he preferred when hee was Tribune of the people, for the confiſcation of Iuba his kingdome. The Caualrie on either ſide met together, and the Numidians were not able to abide the charge of our men; but ſome one hundred and twenty beeing ſlaine, the reſt betooke themſelues backe to the Campe at the towne.

In the meane time, vpon the arriuall of our Gallies, Curio commaunded it to be proclaimed, that ſuch Victuallers, and ſhippes of burthen, as were in the Bay at Vtica (beeing in number about two hundred) and would not preſently come to the Cornelian Campe, ſhould be held and taken for enemies. At which Proclamation, vpon an inſtant of time, they all waied anchor, and came to the place vvhither they were commaunded: vvhereby the Army abounded with all neceſsarie prouiſions. This beeing done, he returned to the Campe at Bragada; and, by the acclamation of the whole Army, was ſaluted by the name of Imperator.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

THis Chapter beginneth with the third part of this booke, containing Curio his paſſage into Affrick: concerning whom, it is to bee obſerued, that in the beginning of theſe broiles, no man was more enemy to Cæſar, nor made more bitter inuectiues to the people againſt him, then he did in his Tribune-ſhip; but afterwards fell off, & was gained by the voluptuous inticements of M. Anthonie, together with a huge maſs of money which Cæſar ſent him. Whereupon, he plaied the turn-coate, and with might and maine aſsiſted that Partie; preuailing much with the Cōmunaltie, by his eloquent and perſwaſiue ſpeeches: the liuely force whereof, is able to ſtirre vp affection in ſtones. For which cauſe it is, that Velleius Paterc. noteth, That no man brought a more burning or dangerous fire-brand to the kindling of thoſe Ciuill warres, then did Curio; beeing a man of an excellent diſcourſe, audacious, prodigall of his owne and of other mens, ſubtile, ingenious, extreame vitious, and alwaies well ſpoken, to the ruine of the publique weale. Which ſweetneſſe of words came vnto him by inheritance,

Eleganti oratione, capiuntur auditores: ornata enim oratio vel lapidem mouere poſſet. Epict. Arrian. lib. 3. cap. 23.

Lib. 2.

as

as Plinie witneſſeth; *Vna familia Curionum, in qua, tres continua ſerie oratores extiterunt.* Of whoſe monſtrous prodigalitie, the ſame Authour hath made a very large account. And out of theſe ouer-weening humors it was, that he became ſo vnwarie as to diuide his Armie; neglecting the Enemy, and the variableneſs of warre; which altereth as the Moone, & keepeth no conſtant ſhape whereby it may be knowen. Concerning the diſmembering of an Armie, lightly, and vpon heedleſſe raſhneſs, Cyrus giueth graue aduice, in the beginning of the ſixt booke of Zenophon. To which (for the preſent) I refer the Reader.

Lib. 7. cap. 41. Lib. 36. cap. 15 Nimis confidens incautus eſt. Ioſeph. lib. 1. cap. 4. de bello Iudaico.

Clupea was a towne in Affrick, named by Plinie, *Oppidum liberum*, & ſited vpon the Promontorie of Mercury, in the territories of old Carthage: it vvas ſo called, becauſe it caried the forme of a Target retorted; and for the ſame cauſe it was called Aſpis:

In Clypei ſpeciem curuatis turribus Aſpis.

Sil. Ital.

This Promontorie, which Curio choſe to incampe in, was famous for three things. Firſt, it was reputed the place where Antæus the Giant dwelt, vvhich Hercules ſlew, by ſtrangling him in his Armes; that hee might not touch the Earth, from whom it is ſaid, he receiued freſh ſtrength. Secondly, P. Cornelius Scipio, that ſubdued Affrick, made that place his chiefe Camp of ſtrength: and ſo it came to be called Cornelius Campe. And laſtly, for this expedition which Curio made, to loſe two legions, and himſelfe withall; as vnwilling to ſee the morow, after ſuch a loſſe: for, *Vitæ eſt auidus, quiſquis non vult, mũdo ſecum pereunte, mori.*

Seneca Trag.

CHAP. XI.

Curio marcheth to *Vtica*: his Caualry put to flight *great troopes comming from king Iuba. His* Armie was ſtrangely poſſeſſed with an idle feare.

THE next day, hee brought his Army to Vtica, and incamped himſelfe neere vnto the towne: but before the fortification of his Campe was finiſhed, the horſemen that ſtood Centinell, gaue notice of great forces of horſe and foote, cõming towards Vtica, from king Iuba: and at the ſame time, a great duſt was ſeene riſe in the aire, and preſently the firſt troopes began to come in ſight. Curio, aſtoniſhed at the nouelty of the thing, ſent his horſe before, to ſuſtaine the firſt ſhock, and to ſtay them: he himſelfe, calling the legions vvith all ſpeed from their worke, imbattelled his Army. The Caualry, incountering with the Enemy (before the legions could be well vnfolded and put in order) did put to flight all the Kings forces, that came marching without feare or order; and ſlew a great number of the foote troopes: but the horſe, making haſte, got almoſt

Ceſar.

all ſafe into the towne, by the way of the ſea-ſhore. The next night after, two Centurions, of the Nation of the Marſi, fledde from Curio, with twenty two of their ſouldiers, to Atius Varus.

Theſe Centurions, vvhether it were to pleaſe Varus, or otherwiſe ſpeaking as they thought (for, vvhat men wiſh, they eaſily belieue; and what they think, they hope others doe thinke the ſame) did confidently affirme, that the mindes of the whole Army, were altogether alienated from Curio; and that it was very expedient, that the Armies ſhould come in ſight, and find meanes to ſpeake together. Varus, beeing perſwaded to that opinion, the next day, earely in the morning, drew his legions out of the Campe: the like did Curio; either of them putting their forces in order, vpon a ſmall Valley vvhich lay betweene both their Armies.

There was in Varus Armie, one Sex. Quintilius Varus, who (as it is formerly declared) vvas at Corfinium; and beeing let goe by Caſar, went into Affrick. It fortuned that Curio had caried ouer thoſe legions, vvhich Caſar had formerly taken at Corfinium: ſo that a few Centurions beeing ſlaine, the Companies and Maniples remained the ſame. This occaſion beeing ſo fitly offered, Quintilius (going about Curio his Army) began to beſeech the ſouldiers, that they vvould not forget the firſt oath they had taken, to Domitian, and to him their Treaſurer: nor beare Armes againſt them, that had runne the ſame fortune, and indured the ſame ſiege; nor fight for thoſe, vvho (by vvay of reproche) had called them fugitiues. To theſe hee added ſome promiſes, to put them in hope of a good recompence, out of his owne liberality, if they vvould follow him and Atius.

Hauing deliuered this vnto them, Curio his Army ſtood mute, and declared not themſelues by any ſigne, either one way or other: notwithſtanding, Curio his Campe was afterwards poſſeſſed with a great feare and ſuſpicion: vvhich vvas quickly augmented, by diuers reports raiſed vpon the ſame. For, euery man forged opinions and conceits; and out of his owne feare, added ſome thing to that which hee had heard of another. Which when it was ſpred from one authour to many, and one had receiued it from another, it ſeemed there were many authors of the ſame thing. For, Ciuill warre is alwaies compounded of ſuch men, as hold it lawfull to doe and follow what and whom they pleaſe.

Nulla fides pietaſque viris qui caſtra ſequuntur, venaleſque manus: ibi fas, vbi maxima merces. Lucan.

Thoſe legions, which a little before were in the ſeruice of the Enemy, did willingly imbrace vvhat was offered them; for, old acquaintance, had made them forget vvhat benefites Caſar had lately beſtowed on them: beeing alſo of diuers Countries and Nations; and not all of the Marſi or Peligni, as thoſe the night before, vvhich vvere their Cabin-mates and fellow ſouldiers: vvhere-vpon, they tooke occaſion, to publiſh abroad in worſe tearmes, that which others had vainelie giuen out; and ſome thinges vvere coined by thoſe, that would ſeeme moſt diligent in dooing their duty.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

OBserue first, from the reuolt of these Centurions, that a fellow or two of ranke and fashion, falling from a Partie, doe gaine easie credite to their aduertisements, by averring any thing which the Enemy desireth. Whence it is, that forasmuch as fugitiues can little otherwise auaile (one man beeing but as no man) they seeke fauour and reputation with the Partie they flie vnto, by their aduise and discouerie; and consequently, the remuneration of espiall, which according to the president made by Fabius to the Spies of Clusine, is worth a mans labour. *Livie. lib. 10.*

And herein, Reuolters (specially those of iudgement) are very dangerous instruments; not onely in weakening or making frustrate such desisignes as may be contriued against an Aduersarie: but also in discouering the secrets of their owne Partie, and discloſing of that which is absolute and well, vntill it be made knowen. For, there is no subsisting thing so perfect, but hath alvvaies some part or other open, to giue an easie passage to destruction: according to that of the Poet;

Omnia sunt hominum tenui pendentia filo.

And therefore, it is no small meanes of preseruing each thing in being, to make shew of strength, and conceale weakenesses, as the registers of assured ruine: for which cause it is, that fidelitie is commended, as the foundation of humane societie; and perfidious treachery, divulging the secrete imperfections thereof, is the plague and bane of the same. *Fides fundamẽtum societatis humanæ: perfidia verò eiusdẽ pestis. Plato, l. 5. de legib.*

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

AS there is nothing more dangerous in an Armie, then feare: so there is nothing sooner bredde to disturbe a multitude, then this passion; which metamorphoseth a troope of men into a heard of Deere. For, hence it appeareth, that one Therſites is able to leuine a whole Army; & an idle conceit, bred in the weak thoughts of some Tresantas, begetteth oftentimes a maine cause of distrust throughout all the Party: which, as it spreadeth abroad, is so deliuered from one to another, as the Reporter (not belieuing what he telleth) addeth alwaies some-what to make the hearer belieue, what he could not himselfe. And so vveake mindes doe multiplie the vaine apprehension of idle humours, in such a fashion, as there is more hurt in fearing, then in the thing which is feared. The Spartanes called all cowards Tresantas. *Plutarch.* *Plus in metuendo est mali, quã in illo ipso quod timetur. Cic. ad Torquatum.*

Epaminondas vvas more fortunate then all others in this kind: for, vvhile hee ledde the Thebanes as their Commaunder, they vvere neuer taken vvith any suddaine affrightment, nor possest with any Panick terror, to bereaue them of their senses, or falsifie the truth of their vnderstanding: *Plutarch.*

749.b

beeing all (as it ſeemed) of the ſame mind with the Generall; who accounted no death ſo honourable as that which came by warre. Howbeit, ſuch is the frailetie of humane nature, & ſo ſtrange are the convulſions of the mind, that a Commaunder muſt expect to meet with times: wherein, his men will ſtand in danger of nothing ſo much as their owne infirmitie; beeing troubled rather with ſtrong apprehenſions, then for any danger of the thing feared.

Turbant homines, non res: ſed quas de rebus habẽt opiniones. Epict. Enchirid.

CHAP. XII.

Curio diſputeth the matter in a Councell *of Warre*.

Cæſar.

FOR vvhich cauſes, a Councell of vvarre beeing called, they beganne to deliberate vvhat courſe vvas to be taken. There vvere ſome opinions vvhich thought, that it was very expedient to aſſault and take Varus Campe, for that there vvas nothing more dangerous then idleneſs, for the breeding and increaſe of ſuch imaginations as the ſouldiers had conceiued. Others ſaid, It vvere better to try the fortune of a battell, & to free themſelues by valorous indeauour, rather then to be forſaken and abandoned of their owne party, and left to vnder-goe moſt grieuous and extreame torments. There were others vvhich thought it fit, to returne about the third vvatch of the night to Cornelius Campe; that by interpoſing ſome reſpite of time, the ſouldiers might be better ſettled, and confirmed in their opinions: and if any miſchance further happened, they might (by reaſon of their ſtore of ſhipping) vvith more eaſe and ſafety, returne backe to Sicily.

Curio, miſliking both the one and the other, ſaid; That there wanted as much good reſolution in the one opinion, as it abounded in the other; for, theſe entered into a conſideration of a dishonourable and vnſeeming flight: and thoſe were of an opinion to fight, in an vnequall and diſaduantageous place. For, with vvhat hope (ſaith he) can vvee aſſault a Campe ſo fortified, both by Nature and Art? Or what haue we gained, if with great loſſe and damage, vvee ſhall goe away and giue it ouer? As though things well & happily atchieued, did not get to the Commaunder, great good will from the ſouldier; and things ill caried, as much hate. Concerning the remouing of our Campe, what doth it inferre but a ſhamefull retreit, a deſpaire in all men, and an alienation of the Army? For, it is not fit, to giue occaſion to the prudent and well-adviſed, to imagine that they are diſtruſted: nor on the other ſide, to the ill diſpoſed, that they are redoubted or feared; and the rather, becauſe feare in this kind, vvill giue them more liberty to do ill, and abate the indeauour of good men in well-deſeruing. And if (ſaith he) theſe things are well knowne vnto vs already, that are ſpoken of the reuolt and alienation of the Army (which, for mine owne part, I think either to be altogether falſe, or at leaſt, leſſe then in opinion they are thought to be) is it not better to diſſemble and hide them, then that they ſhould be ſtrengthened and confirmed by vs?

Tam boni quàm mali euentus cauſa vulgò in Imperatores referri ſolent. Dio. Halicar. lib. 8

Ought

Ought we not, as we doe hide the wounds of our bodies, to couer the inconueniences of an Armie, leaſt we ſhould miniſter hope or courage to the Aduerſarie? But ſome there are that aduiſe to ſet forward at midnight, to the end (as I imagine) that ſuch as are deſirous to offend, may performe it with more ſcope and licentiouſneſſe. For, ſuch diſorders are repreſſed and reformed, either vvith ſhame or feare: to both which the night is an enemy. And therefore, as I am not of that courage, to thinke without hope or meanes, that the Enemies Campe is to be aſſaulted; ſo on the other ſide, I am not ſo fearefull, as to be wanting in that vvhich is fitting: but am rather of opinion, that we try all things before vvee yeeld to that; and doe aſſure my ſelfe, that for the moſt part, wee are all of one mind concerning this point.

OBSERVATIONS.

AS in matter of Geometry, *Rectum eſt Index ſui, et obliqui*; beeing equall to all the parts of rectitude, and vnequall to obliquity: ſo is it in reaſon and diſcourſe. For, a direct and well grounded ſpeech, carieth ſuch a natiue equalitie with all it parts, as it doth not onely approue it ſelfe to be leueled at that which is moſt fitting, but ſheweth alſo what is indirect and crooked, concerning the ſame matter; and is of that conſequence in the varietie of projects and opinions, and ſo hardly hit vpon, in the lame diſcourſe of common reaſon, that Plato thought it a peece of diuine power, to direct a path free from the crookednes of errour, which might lead the ſtraight and ready way to happie ends. And the rather, foraſmuch as in matter of debate, there are no words ſo waighty, but do ſeeme balanced with others of equall conſideration: as heere it happened, frõ thoſe that pointing at the cauſe of this diſtemperature, conuicted Idleneſſe for the Authour of their variable and vnſetled mindes: And, as Zenophon hath obſerued, very hard to be indured in one man, much worſe in a whole familie, but no way ſufferable in an Army; which the Romaines called *Exercitus ab exercitio*. For remedy whereof, they propounded labour without hope of gaine, & ſuch ſeruice as could bring forth nothing but loſſe. Others, preferring ſecuritie before all other courſes (as beleeuing with Liuie, that Captaines ſhould neuer truſt Fortune further then neceſsitie conſtrained them) perſwaded a retreit to a place of ſafetie, but vpon dishonourable tearmes. Which vneuenneſs of opinions, Curio made ſtraight by an excellent Maxime in this kind; thinking it conuenient to hold ſuch a courſe, as might neither giue honeſt men cauſe of diſtruſt, nor wicked men to thinke they were feared. For, ſo he ſhould be ſure (in good tearmes of honor) neither to diſcourage the better ſort, nor giue occaſion to the ill affected to doe worſe. And thus winding himſelfe out of the labyrinth of words (as knowing that to bee true of Annius the Prætor, that it more importeth occaſions to do then to ſay; being an eaſie matter to fit words to things vnfolded and reſolued vpon) he brake vp the Councell.

Conſiliũ dare, eorum quæ inter homines diuiniſſimum.

Omni orationi oratio æqualis opponitur. Sext. Philoſ.

Variam ſemper dant otia mentẽ. Luc. lib. 4.

Lib. 1. Cyrope.

Duces nullo loco, niſi quantũ neceſſitas cogit, ſe committere fortunæ debent. lib. 22.

Ad ſummã rerũ pertinet, cogitare magis quid agendũ quã quid loquendũ: facile erit, explicatis conſilijs accõmodare rebus verba. Liv. 33.

CHAP. XIII.

Curio calleth a generall aſſembly of the ſouldiers; *and ſpeaketh vnto them, concerning their* feare, and retraction.

Cæſar.

THE Councell beeing riſen, he gaue order for a Conuocation of the Armie; and there called to remembrance vvhat they had done for Cæſar, at Corſinium: how by their fauour and furtherance, he had gained the greateſt part of Italie, to bee on his ſide. For, by you (ſaith hee) and by your indeauour, all the reſt of the Municipall townes, were drawne to follow Cæſar: and therefore, not vvithout iuſt cauſe did hee at that time repoſe great aſſurance in your affections towards him; and the aduerſe partie conceiued as great indignation and ſpight againſt you. For, Pompey was not forced away by any battell: but beeing preiudiced by your act hee quitted Italy. Cæſar hath recommended me, whom he held neer vnto himſelfe, together with the Prouinces of Sicily and Affrick (vvithout which he cannot defend the Citty and Italy) to your truſt and fidelitie. There are ſome which ſolicite and perſwade you to reuolt from my commaund: for, what can they wiſh or deſire more, then to make it but one worke, to bring vs both to ruine and ouerthrowe, and to ingage you in a moſt deteſtable vvickedneſs? Or what vvorſe opinion can they conceiue of you, then that you ſhould betray them, that profeſſe themſelues wholly yours? and that you might afterwards come into their power, who take themſelues vndone by your meanes?

Nemo ijs amicus eſſe potuit, à quibus malum aliquod expectat. Demoſth.

Haue you not vnderſtood what Cæſar hath done in Spaine? two Armies beaten; two Generalls defeated; two Prouinces taken; and all within forty daies, after he came in view of the Enemy? Thoſe, vvhoſe forces vvere not able to make reſiſtance vvhen they were vvhole & entire, how is it poſsible they ſhould hold out, beeing beaten and diſcomfited? You that followed Cæſar when the victory ſtood doubtfull; now Fortune hath adiudged the Cauſe, and determined of the iſſue of the Warre, vvill you follow the vanquiſhed Partie? They gaue out, that they were forſaken and betraied by you, and doe remember you of the former oath you tooke: but did you forſake L. Domitius, or did he forſake you? Did not he thruſt you out, and expoſe you to all extreamity of fortune? Did hee not ſeeke to ſaue himſelfe by flight, without your knowledge or priuitie? Were you not preſerued and kept aliue by Cæſars clemencie, when you were abandoned & betraied by him?

How could he tie you vvith the oath of alleageance, vvhen (hauing caſt away his ſheafe of Rods, and laid downe his authority) he himſelfe was made a priuate perſon, and became captiuated to the commaund of another mans power? It vvere a ſtrange and new religion, that you ſhould neglect that oath, wherein you ſtand now ingaged; and reſpect the other, which vvas taken away by the rendry

of

of your Generall, and the * *losse of your libertie. But I beleeue you thinke vvell of Cæsar, and are offended at Mee, that am not to preach of my merits towardes you; which as yet consist in my good will, and are vnworthy your expectation: & yet souldiers haue alwaies vsed to seeke reward vpon the shutting vp of a vvar; vvhich vvhat euent it will haue, make you no doubt. And why should I omit the diligence vvhich I haue already vsed, and how the businesse hath hitherto proceeded? Doth it offend you, that I transported the Armie ouer in safetie, vvithout losse of any one shippe? That at my comming, I beat and dispersed at the first onset the vvhole fleete of the Aduersaries? That twice, in two daies, I ouercame them onely vvith the Caualrie? That I drew two hundred Ships of burthen out of the Road and Port of the Enemy? and haue brought them to that extreamity, that they can be supplied by prouision, neither by sea nor by land? All this good fortune, and these Commaunders reiected and forsaken? which vvill rather imbrace the ignominie you receiued at Corfinium, or your flight out of Italy, or the rendering vp of Spaine, or the preiudiciall successe of the vvarre of Affricke. Truly, for mine owne part, I was desirous and content to be called Cæsars souldier: but you haue stiled me vvith the title of Imperator. Which if it repent you, I doe willingly quit my selfe of your grace, and returne it back vnto you: and doe you, in like manner, restore mee to my name againe; least you should seeme to giue me honour vvhich might turne to my reproche.*

* Capitis diminutione.

Diminutus capite appellatur, qui ciuitate mutatus est, aut ex familia in aliam adoptatus: et qui liber alteri mancipio datus est: et qui in hostium potestate venit: et cui aqua ignique interdictum. Liv.

In summo Imperatore quatuor hæ virtutes inesse debent: scientia rei militaris, virtus, authoritas, felicitas. Cicero. pro leg. Manilia.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IN the handling of this accident, the difference commeth to be obserued, betweene a Councell of warre, and a Concio, or conuocation of the souldiers. The first was more particular, consisting of some choice men, and those the most eminent in the partie; *Is qui non vniuersum populum, sed partem aliquam adesse iubet, non comitia, sed cõcilium edicere debet.* Their convocation or preaching was more generall, the whole Armie beeing convẽted together, to bee fitted by perswasion and discourse, to follow the resolution taken by a Councell; and was properly called *Adlocutio*, and sometimes *Conuentus: Cicero perlectam Epistolam Cæsaris in conventu militum recitat.* The parties called to a Councell, were according as the Generall valued the occasion: for, some-times the Legates and Tribunes were onely consulted; and now and then the Centurions of the first Orders, together with the Captaines of horse, were called to their assistance: and often-times, all the Centurions. But howsoeuer, Curio resolued out of his owne iudgement, as great Commaunders commonly doe; and is specially obserued by Piere Matthien, of the French King: who euer loueth to heare the opinion of his Captaines, but alwaies findes his owne the best.

Aulus Gell. lib. 15. cap. 27.

Com. 5. bell. Galli.

Tom. 2. lib. 4.

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

AMongſt other ſtraines of this diſcourſe, it is acknowledged, that Rome could not ſtand without Sicilie; and the reaſon was, for the plentie of Corne which it brought forth: for, Sicily was alwaies reputed as the Granier or Barne of Rome, and accordingly cared by the Senate, as a place without which their Cittie could not continue. The graine of that Iland, is hard, like horne; and cannot well be broken or ground into Meale, vntill it be wet with water, and then dried in the ſhade, rather then in the ſunne: by meanes whereof, it yieldeth ſo exceedingly, that it is accounted twentie in the hundred, better then any ponent Wheate; eſpecially, for that it will keepe long in their Vaules and Caues vnder the earth, and ſildome or neuer take heate, beeing of it ſelfe ſo hard and dry.

The gluttonous vſe of fleſh, hath made men ignorant of the vertue and ſtrength of Corne, which the Romaines better vnderſtood; for, their legions neuer fedde on fleſh, as long as they could get Corne. *Pecora, quod ſecundum poterat eſſe inopia ſubſidium*, ſaith Cæſar. And in another place; *Vt complures dies milites frumento caruerint, Pecore è longinquioribus vicis adacto extremam famem ſuſtentarent.* And in the ſame place, *Quo minor erat frumenti copia, Pecus imperabat.* And againe, *Non illis hordeum cum daretur, non legumina recuſabant. Pecus verò, cuius rei ſumma erat in Epiro copia, magno in honore habebant.*

Lib. 1. ciuil. bel. *Lib. 3.*

By which places it appeareth, that they neuer fell to fleſh, but when they wanted Corne. Which is doubtleſſe a firmer nutriment, leſſe excrementall, & of better ſtrength, then any other foode what-ſo-euer; as containing the prime ſubſtance of Meate, and the ſpirit of Wine: for, *Aqua vitæ*, is as well made of Wheat, as of the lees of Wine. Fleſh is good to make Wraſtlers of a groſſe and heauie conſtitution, as Plutarch noteth: but the Romaine ſouldier ſtood in need of an effectuall and ſinowy vigour, able to vndergoe cariages, fitter for a Mule then a Man; together with ſuch workes, as later ages doe rather heare then belieue, and was attained by feeding onely vpon bread.

Muli Mariani.

The Rabbines & Thalmudiſts doe write, That the Giants of the old world, firſt fell to the eating of fleſh; making no difference between a man & a beaſt, but grew ſo execrable, that they made women caſt their fruite before their time, to the end they might eate it with more tenderneſs and delicacie. Which is alſo ſaid to be practiſed by the Caniballs, vpon the firſt diſcouerie of the Indies. Viginere reporteth, that he knew ſome great Men in Fraunce, ſo friand, that they cauſed oftentimes Does ready to foane, to be killed, and the young ones tooke out aliue, to be made meate for monſtrous appetites. But there is no indifferent Parallel to be drawne, betweene the ſobrietie of the auncient Romaine ſouldier, and the gluttony of theſe times; farre exceeding that of Agamemnon, which Achilles noted with words of high reproach, calling him Hogs-head of Wine, eyes of a Dogge, and hart of a Deare.

Sobrietas, quaſi ſine ebrietate.

Homer. Iliad. 1.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

THirdly, from this elaboured and well-couched ſpeech, wee may note, that Eloquence is a very beautifull ornament to Princes, and great Commaunders; beſides the vſe it hath, to leade a multitude to ſuch ends as is wiſhed: for, ſmooth words preuaile where force booteth not. According to that of Cicero, *Cùm populum perſuaderi poſſe diffidimus, cogi fas eſſe non arbitremur.*

Eloquẽtia principibus maximè ornamento eſt. Cic. 4. de finibus

Lib. 1. famil. Epiſt.

CHAP. XIIII.

Curio bringeth out his troopes, and putteth *Varus Army to flight.*

THE ſouldiers, mooued vvith this Oration, did oftentimes interrupt him in his ſpeech; ſignifying vvith what griefe they did indure the ſuſpicion of infidelitie. And as hee departed from the Aſſembly, euery man exhorted him to be of a good courage, and not to doubt of giuing battell, or to make triall of their fidelitie and valour. By which meanes, the mindes and diſpoſition of all men beeing changed, Curio reſolued (out of a generall conſent) as ſoone as any occaſion was offered, to giue battell.

Cæſar.

The next day, hauing brought out his forces, he made a ſtand, and imbattelled them in the ſame place where he ſtood in Armes the day before. And Varus likewiſe drew out his troopes, vvhether it were to ſolicite the ſouldier, or not to omit the opportunity of fighting, if it might be affoorded in an indifferent place. There vvas a valley (as we haue formerly declared) betweene the two Armies, of no very hard or difficult aſcent; and either of them expected who ſhould firſt come ouer it, to the end they might fight in a place of more aduantage: when vpon a ſuddaine, all Varus Caualry that ſtood in the left Cornet of the Armie, together vvith the light armed ſouldiers that ſtood mingled amongſt them, vvere ſeene deſcending into the Valley. To them Curio ſent his Caualrie, together with two cohorts of the Marrucians. The Enemies horſmen vvere not able to indure the firſt incounter of our men; but hauing loſt their horſes, fledde backe to their party. The light-armed men that came out vvith them, being left and forſaken, were all ſlaine by our men, in the view and ſight of Varus whole Army. Then Rebilius, Cæſars Legate (whom Curio for his knowledge and experience in matter of vvarre, had brought with him out of Sicily) ſaid; Curio, thou ſeeſt the Enemy: why makeſt thou doubt to vſe the opportunitie of time? Curio, without making any other aunſwere, then vvilling the ſouldiers to remember vvhat they had aſſured vnto him the day before, commaunded them to follow him, & ran formoſt himſelfe. The Valley was ſo comberſome and difficult, that in gaining the

749b

the aſcent of the hill, the formoſt could hardly get vp, vnleſſe they were lifted vp by the followers. Howbeit, the Enemy was ſo poſſeſſed vvith feare, for the flight & ſlaughter of their fellowes, that they did not ſo much as think of reſiſting; for, they tooke themſelues all to be already ſurpriſed by the Caualrie: ſo that before any vveapon could be caſt, or that our men could approche neere vnto them, all Varus Armie turned their backs, and fled into their Campe.

In this flight, Fabius Pelignus (a certaine ſouldier of one of the inferior Companies of Curio his Armie) hauing ouertaken the firſt troope of them that fledde, ſought for Varus, calling after him with a loude voice; as though hee had been one of his owne ſouldiers, and would either aduiſe him, or ſay ſome-thing elſe to him. And, as he, being often called, looked backe, and ſtood ſtill (inquiring vvho hee was, & what he would?) he made at Varus ſhoulder (which was vnarmed) with his ſword, and vvas very neere killing him; howbeit, he auoided the danger, by receiuing the blowe vpon his target. Fabius was inſtantly incloſed about, by ſuch ſouldiers as were neere at hand, and ſlaine.

In the meane time, the gates of the Campe vvere peſtered, and thronged, with multitudes and troopes of ſuch as fledde away; and the paſſage was ſo ſtopped, that more died in that place without blowe or wound, then periſhed either in the battell, or in the flight. Neither vvanted they much of taking the Campe; for, many left not running vntil they came to the towne. But the nature of the place, and the fortification of the Campe, did hinder their acceſſe: and Curio his men comming out (prepared onely for a battell) wanted ſuch neceſſaries as vvere of vſe for the taking of the Campe. And therfore Curio caried backe his Army, with the loſſe of no one man but Fabius. Of the Aduerſaries were ſlaine and wounded about ſixe hundred: who vpon Curio his departure, beſides many other that fained themſelues hurt, left the Campe for feare, and vvent into the towne. Which Varus perceiuing, and knowing alſo the aſtoniſhment of the Armie, leauing a Trumpeter in the Campe, and a fewe Tents for ſhew, about the third vvatch, he caried his Armie with ſilence out of the Campe into the towne.

OBSERVATIONS.

Loco ſapientia eſt, alienâ ſtultitiam operiri.

IT is a part of wiſdome, and oftentimes a maine helpe to victorie, to attend the aduantage of an Enemies raſhneſs, and to ſee if his follie will not make way to his ouerthrowe. Whereof Curio made good vſe: for, he kept his Armie in the vpper ground, vntill the Caualrie of the Aduerſarie were looſely fallen into the Valley; and then ſet vpon them, and cut them all in peeces. The ſight whereof, maskered the whole Armie, & kept Curio in ſafetie, vpon the like diſaduantage, in the comberſome paſſage of the ſame Vale: by meanes whereof, he put to flight the whole forces of the Enemy, and made a great ſlaughter in the Party. Wherin I may not forget that tricke of a Romaine ſpirit, whereby the Authour commeth memorable to poſteritie, in calling after Varus by name, to make him the ſacrifice for both the Hoaſtes. Whence we may obſerue, that when a battell is ioyned pell-mell, no man

man can be assured in his owne valour, nor share out his fortune by the length of his sword; but is often-times subiect to weaknesses of contempt, and vanquished by such as cannot be compared vnto him but in scorne.

I haue heard it reported, that at the battell of Eureux, *Maturine* (that knowen woman in France) tooke prisoner & disarmed a Caualero of Spaine: Who beeing brought before the King, and by him demaunded whose prisoner he was, or whether he knew the partie that had forced him? Answered, no; but that he knew him to be a gallant man of Armes. Where-at the king smiled: and the Gentleman, vnderstanding what fortune he had run, was as much dismaied as a man possible could be, that considered, *Quòd ferrum æquat, in bello, robustioribus imbecilliores.* *Zenoph. lib. 7. Cyropæ.*

CHAP. XV.

Curio leaueth Vtica to meete with king *Iuba*: his *Caualrie ouerthroweth the forces led by* Sabura; which led him on to his ouerthrowe.

THE next day, Curio prepared to besiege Vtica, inclosing it about vvith a ditch and a rampier. There vvere in the towne, a multitude of people vnacquainted vvith vvarre, through the long peace they had inioyed: and the inhabitants stoode very affectionate to Cæsar, for many benefits they had receiued from him. The rest of the multitude consisted of diuers sorts of men, much terrified and affrighted by the former incounters: vvherevpon, euery man spake plainely of giuing vp the towne; and dealt with Pub. Atius, that their fortunes and liues might not come in danger, through his pertinacie and vvilfulnes.

While these things were adooing, there came messengers from King Iuba, signifying the King was at hand with great forces, and vvilled them to keepe and defend the towne: vvhich newes, did much incourage and confirme the vvauering and affrighted mindes of the Enemy. The same vvas also reported to Curio: vvhere-vnto for a vvhile he gaue no credit; such vvas his confidence in the successe of things. And now withall, came Letters and Messengers into Affrick, of that vvhich Cæsar had so fortunately atchieued in Spaine: and being absolutely assured vvith all these things, he was perswaded the king durst attempt nothing against him. But when he found by assured discouery, that his forces were within twenty fiue miles of Vtica, leauing his workes already begunne, he vvith-drew himselfe into Cornelius Campe; and beganne there to fortifie his Campe, to get Corne and other prouisions, and to furnish it with all necessaries materiall for a defence: and sent presently a dispatch into Sicily, that the two legions, and the rest of the Caualry might be sent vnto him.

The

749.b

The Campe vvherein he lay, was fitly accommodated to hold out the vvarre, as well by reaſon of the nature of the place, as the artificiall fortifying thereof, the neereneſs of the ſea, and the plenty of vvater and ſalt; vvhereof there vvas great quantitie brought thither, from the Salt-pittes neer adioyning. No ſtuffe could be wanting, through the great ſtore of vvood which was about the place, nor yet any Corne, for the plenty that was to be found in the cõfining fieldes: and there-vpon, by the aduice and approbation of all men, Curio reſolued to attend his other forces, and to draw out the warre in length.

Theſe things beeing thus diſpoſed, by the conſent & liking of all men, he heard by ſome that lately came out of the towne, that Iuba was called back, by occaſion of a vvarre happened vpon the confines: and that by reaſon of the controuerſies and diſſentions of the Leptitani, he was detained at home in his kingdome; but that Sabura his Lieutenant was ſent with ſome competent forces, and vvas not farre from Vtica. To vvhich reports, giuing too light and eaſie credit, he altered his purpoſe, and reſolued to put the matter to triall of battell: vvhere-vnto his youthfull heate, the greatneſs of his courage, the ſucceſſe of former time, & his confidence in the managing of that vvarre, did violently lead him. Being caried on with theſe inducements, he ſent the firſt night all the Caualry to the Riuer Bragada, vvhere the Enemy lay incamped vnder the commaund of Sabura: but the king followed after with all his forces, and lay continually within ſixe miles, or there-abouts.

Callicratides cũ Lacedæmoniorũ Dux fuiſſet bello Peloponeſiaco, multaque egregiè feciſſet, vertit ad extremum omnia.

Cleombrotus, temerè cum Epaminonda conſligens, Lacedæmoniorum opes corruerunt.

The horſemen ſent before, and making their iourney in the night, ſet vpon the Enemie at vnawares: and not thinking of their approche: for, the Numidians lodge, ſcattered here and there in a barbarous manner, without any gouernment or order. And ſurpriſing them thus, oppreſſed vvith ſleepe, and ſcattered vpon the ground, they ſlew a great number of them: the reſt, in great terror & amaſement, eſcaped by flight. Which ſeruice, beeing thus executed, the Caualrie returned to Curio, and brought the captiues vnto him. Curio was gone out, about the fourth watch of the night with all his forces, hauing left fiue cohorts for a guarizon to his Campe: and hauing marched ſixe miles, he met with the Caualrie, vnderſtood what was done, and inquired of the captiues, who was Generall of the Campe at Bragadum? They anſwered, Sabura. Omitting for haſte of his way to informe himſelfe of the reſt: but turning himſelfe to the next Enſignes, ſaid; You ſee ſouldiers that the confeſſion of the captiues doe agree, vvith that which was reported by the fugitiues. For, the king is not come; but hath ſent ſome ſmall forces, which cannot make their partie good with a fevv horſemen: and therefore, haſten to take the ſpoile vvith honour and renowne; that we may now at length, begin to thinke of rewarding your merits.

OBSER-

OBSERVATIONS.

IT is obſerued by Marcellinus, that when misfortune commeth vpon a man, his ſpirit groweth ſo dull and benummed, as his ſenſes ſeeme to be diſmiſſed of their charges. Which appeared heere in Curio: who, hauing taken a prouident and ſure courſe, ſuch as was approoued in euery mans iudgement, and beſeemed well the wiſedome of a Commaunder, did neuertheleſſe, contrarie to all ſenſe and diſcretion, forgoe the ſame; and caſt himſelfe vpon the hazard of that which fugitiues had vainely reported. Concerning which, as it is noted, that Incredulitie is hurtfull onely to the vnbelieuer; ſo this paſſage proueth, that for a Commaunder to bee too light of beliefe, is a danger to the whole Partie, and bringeth many to ruine, that had no part in that Creede. Cæſar, in the relation heereof, noteth three ſpeciall things in Curio, that caried him head-long to this diſaſter, and may ſerue as markes to auoid the like Syrtes.

Videmus ipſi quotidie, manus iniicientibus fatis, hebetari ſenſus hominum et obtundi. Amm. Marcelli.

Solis incredulis noxia res incredulitas. Philo. de vit. Moſis.

The firſt, was *Iuuenilis ardor*, his youthfull courage and heate: which is alwaies attended with ſtrong affections, ſuting the qualitie and temperature of the bodie, being then in the prime height of ſtrength, & accordingly ledde on with violent motions; where-as age goeth ſlowely and coldly forward, and is alwaies ſurer in vndertaking, then hot-ſpurre youth. And albeit, no man in cold bloud could better aduize then Curio, or fore-ſee with better prouidence: yet his youthfull boldneſſe, ouer-ſwaied his diſcourſe; and drew all to a miſchiefe, in deſpight of his wiſedome.

Hebetiores quã acutiores vt plurimũ melius rempub. adminiſtrant. Thucidides.

The ſecond, was *Superioris temporis prouentus*, the happy iſſue of former proceedings: which of all other conditions, is to be ſuſpected, and needeth Gods aſsiſtance more then any other fortune; for that no man ſooner erreth, or is more vncaple of order, then ſuch as are in proſperitie. And therfore, Plato refuſed to make lawes for them of Syrene; as a matter of great difficulty, to giue ordinances to men that were in happineſſe. And doubtleſs, ſuch is the exorbitancie of our nature, that nothing better informeth it then croſſes; which are as inſtructions and warnings, for the preuenting of ruining calamities. Wherein, Curio was not beholding to Fortune at all; that dandled him in her lap for a while, to caſt him out at length, head-long to his ruine. It had been much better, ſhe had exchanged a frowne with a fauour, rather then to haue giuen him much good together, and reſerue an irrecouerable diſgrace for the vp-ſhot.

Rebus ſecundis maximè deus implorandus. Lib. 1. Cyropæ. Felicitatis et moderationis diuiduũ contubernium. Sen.

--quem blanda futuris,
Deceptura malis belli fortuna recepit. Luc. lib. 4.

The third, was *Fiducia rei bene gerendæ*: which ſauoureth more of follie then any of the former; beeing alwaies an argument of an imprudent man, to aſſure himſelfe of good fortune: for, Preſumption, beeing euer accompanied with Negligence, is ſubiect to as many caſualties, as thoſe that goe vnarmed vpon extreamitie of danger. And theſe were the three things that miſcaried Curio. Out of which we may obſerue with Xenophon, that *Ingens et arduum opus eſt rectè imperare.*

Imprudentium fiducia eſt, fortunam ſibi ſpondere. Seneca de beneficijs.
Incauta ſemper nimia præſumptio et ſui negligens. Egeſip. Lib. 1. de Inſti Cyri.

749b

CHAP. XVI.

Curio purſueth the Enemy, with more *haſte then good ſucceſſe.*

Caſar.

THat vvhich the Caualrie had exploited, was certainelie a matter of great ſeruice; eſpecially the ſmall number of them, beeing compared with the great multitude of the Numidians: & yet notwithſtanding, they ſpake of theſe things, with greater oſtentation then the truth would beare; as men are vvilling to divulge their owne praiſes. Beſides, they ſhewed much ſpoile which they had taken: Captiues and horſes were brought out, that whatſoeuer time was omitted, ſeemed to be a let and hinderance to the victory; by which meanes, the deſires and indeauours of the Souldiers, vvere no vvay ſhort of the hope vvhich Curio had conceiued. Who, commaunding the Caualry to follow him, marched forward with as much haſte as he could; to the end he might find the Enemy diſtracted and aſtoniſhed, at the flight and ouerthrowe of their fellowes: but the horſemen, hauing trauelled all night, could by no meanes follow after. Whereby it happened, that ſome ſtaied in one place, ſome in another: yet this did not hinder or diſcourage Curio in his hopes.

Iuba, beeing aduertiſed by Sabura of the conflict in the night, ſent inſtantlie two thouſand Spaniſh and French horſe, which he kept about him for the ſafetie of his Perſon, and ſuch of the foote-troopes as he moſt truſted to ſuccour and relieue him: hee himſelfe, vvith the reſt of the forces, & forty Elephants, followed ſoftly after. Sabura, ſuſpecting by the horſemen comming before, that Curio himſelfe was at hand, imbattelled all his forces; commaunding them, that vnder a pretence of counterfait feare, they ſhould retreit by little and little: himſelfe, when occaſion ſerued, would giue them the ſigne of battell; vvith ſuch other directions as ſhould be expedient.

Curio was ſtrengthened in his former hope, with the opinion of the preſent occaſion. For, ſuppoſing the Enemy had fled, hee drew his forces from the vpper ground into the Plaine; vvherein, after he had marched a good ſpace (the Army hauing trauailed ſixteene mile) hee made a ſtand. Sabura gaue the ſigne to his men of beginning the battell, ledde on his Army, vvent about his troopes, to exhort and courage his ſouldiers: Howbeit, he vſed his foot-men onely for a ſhew a farre off, and ſent the Caualrie to giue the charge. Curio vvas not vvanting to his men; but wiſhed them to ſet all their confidence in their valour. The ſouldiers, howſoeuer harried and wearied, and the horſemen (although but a verie few, and thoſe ſpent with trauell) yet wanted no courage or deſire to fight. But theſe beeing but two hundred in number (for, the reſt ſtaied by the way) vvhat part of the Army ſoeuer they charged, they forced the Enemy to giue way: but they could neither follow them farre as they fledde, nor put their horſes to anie round or long cariere.

At length, the Caualrie of the Enemy, beganne from both the wings to circumvent our Army, and to mall them downe behind: and, as our Cohorts issued out from the battell, towards them, the Numidians (through their nimblenesse) did easily auoid the shocke; and againe, as they turned backe to their rankes, inclosed them about, and cut them off from the battell: so that it neither seemed safe to keepe their order and place, or to aduance themselues out, and vnder-goe the hazard of aduenture.

OBSERVATIONS.

THE Principles and Maximes of VVarre, are alwaies to bee held firme, when they are taken with their due circumstances: for, euerie Rule hath a qualified state, and consisteth more in cautions and exceptions, then in authoritie of precept. It is true, that nothing doth more aduantage a victorie, then the counsell of Lamachus, the third Duke of the Athenians; which was, to set vpon an Enemy, when he is affrighted and distracted: for, so there is nothing to be expected (on his behalfe) but despaire and confusion. But, either to be mistaken therein, or otherwise to make such haste to obserue this rule of warre (as Curio did) that the best part of the Armie shall lie by the way, and the rest that goe on, shal be so spent with labour, as they are altogether vnfitte for seruice, and yet (to make the matter worse) to bring them into a place of disaduantage, to incounter a strong and fresh Enemy, is to make the circumstances ouer-sway the Rule, and by a Maxime of VVarre, to be directed to an ouerthrowe: Neglecting altogether that which is obserued by Sextus Aurelius Victor; *Satis celeriter fit, quicquid commodè geritur.*

Thucid. lib. 7.

CHAP. XVII.

Curio defeated and slaine; Some few of the Armie get passage to Sicily: the rest, yeeld themselues to Varus.

THE Enemy was oftentimes renforced by succours from the King: our men had spent their strength, and fainted through wearinesse: such as were wounded, could neither leaue the battel, nor be conuaied into a place of safetie. The whole Army, beeing incompassed about with the Caualrie of the Enemy (whereby despairing of their safety, as men commonly do, when their life drawes towards an end) they either lamented their owne death, or recõmended their friends to good fortune, if it were possible that any might escape out of that danger: all parts were filled with feare and lamentation.

Caesar.

Curio, when he perceiued the ſouldiers to be ſo affrighted, that they gaue eare neither to his exhortations nor intreaties, he commanded them (as the laſt hope they had of ſafety) that they ſhould all flie vnto the next hills, and thither hee commaunded the Enſignes to be caried. But the Caualrie, ſent by Sabura, had alſo preoccupated that place; whereby our men began to fall into vtter deſpaire, and partly were ſlaine as they fled by the horſemen, or fell downe without wounding. Cn. Domitius, Generall of the horſe, ſtanding with a few horſemen about him, perſwaded Curio to ſaue himſelfe by flight, and to get the Campe; promiſing not to leaue or forſake him: but Curio confidently replied, that hee would neuer come in Cæſars ſight, hauing loſt the Army committed vnto him; and thereupon, fighting valiantly, vvas ſlaine.

A fevv horſemen ſaued themſelues from the furie of the battell; but ſuch of the Rereward, as ſtaied by the way to refreſh their horſes, perceiuing a farre off, the rout and flight of the vvhole Army, returned ſafe into the Campe. The footmen vvere all ſlaine, to a man. M. Rufus the Treaſurer, beeing left by Curio in the Campe, exhorted his men not to be diſcouraged. They praied and beſought him, they might be tranſported into Sicily. Hee promiſed thē they ſhould; and to that end gaue order to the Maiſters of ſhippes, that the next euening they ſhould bring all the Skiffes to the ſhore. But ſuch was the aſtoniſhment and terrour of all men, that ſome gaue out, that Iuba his forces were already come: Others, that Varus was at hand vvith the legions; and that they ſaw the duſt of the Army marching towards them: whereas there was no ſuch matter at all. Others, ſuſpected the Enemies Nauie would ſpeedily make to them; inſomuch as euery man ſhifted for himſelfe: ſuch as vvere already on ſhip-board, made haſte to be gone. Their departure, gaue occaſion to the ſhips of burthen to follow after.

A few ſmall Barks vvere obedient to the commaund: but the ſhore beeing thronged vvith ſouldiers, ſuch vvas the contention, which of all that multitude ſhould get aboard, that ſome of the Barkes vvere ſunke with preace of people, & the reſt, for feare of the like caſualtie, durſt not come neere them. Wherby it happened, that a few ſouldiers, and Maiſters of families (that through fauour or pitty preuailed, or could ſwim vnto the ſhippes) were caried backe, ſafe, into Sicily. The reſt of the forces, ſending by night ſome of the Centurions as Embaſſadours to Varus, rendered themſelues vnto him.

The next day after, Iuba ſeeing the Cohorts of theſe ſouldiers before the towne, cried out preſently, that they were part of his booty: and thereupon gaue order, that a great number of thē ſhould be ſlaine; and, ſelecting a few out of the reſt, ſent them into his kingdome: Varus complaining in the meane vvhile, that his faith and promiſe was violated, and yet durſt not reſiſt it. The King rode into the towne, attended with many Senators, amongſt whō was Ser. Sulpitius, & L. Damaſippus: and remaining there a few daies, gaue ſuch order for things, as he thought fit, and then returned to his kingdome, with all his forces.

OBSER-

OBSERVATIONS.

AND this was the period which Diuine power made, to the hopefull beginning of Curio's deſsigne vpon Affrick; & happened ſo ſuddenlie, as they were loſt ere they were aware: Like a tempeſt at Sea; that ſwalloweth vp veſſels in the ſame place, where a little before they ſwam moſt proudly, and in the like irrecouerable manner. For, vvarre is not capable of a ſecond errour; one fault beeing enough to ruine an Armie, and to diſable Curio for euer dooing the like: of whom Lucan hath left this memoriall;

Haud aliam tanta Ciuem tulit indole Roma,
Aut cui plus leges deberent recta ſequenti,
Perdita nunc primum nocuerunt ſecula, poſtquam
Ambitus, et luxus, et opum metuenda facultas,
Tranſuerſo mentem dubiam torrente tulerunt,
Momentúmque fuit mutatus Curio rerum,
Gallorum captus ſpoliis et Cæſaris Auro.

Lætis hunc numina rebus creſcendi poſuere modum. Lucan. Eodem vbi luſerunt nauigia ſorbentur. Seneca Epiſt. 4. Non eſt in bello hic peccare. Plutarch.

His bodie lay vnburied, as a witneſs of Numidian hate (which is alwaies extreame, like the heat of the Countrey) and of Iuba's particular reuenge, for tendering an Edict to the people, to confiſquet his kingdome.

Nullo contectus Curio buſto.

To conclude this Commentary; The loſſe either Partie ſuſtained vnto this ſtage of the Warre, was in theſe particulars: Pompey was driuen out of Italie, loſt Marſelleis, and both the Prouinces of Spaine; Cæſar receiued this loſſe in Affrick, beſides that in the Adriatick ſea, where Antonius miſcaried, whereof he maketh no mention in theſe Cõmentaries. And as when Iupiter weighed the fortune of the Greekes, and the Troians, in a paire of Ballance, it fell out the Greekes had more ill lucke then the Troians; ſo the fortune of theſe Parties beeing weighed, by the relation made thereof, it falleth plainely out, that Pompey had the worſe.

Homer. Iliad. 8.

And thus endeth the ſecond Commentarie.

THE THIRD COMMENTARY of the Ciuill Warres.

(·.·)

THE ARGVMENT.

THE former Bookes, containe the drifts and deſignes which theſe famous Cheefes attempted, and proſecuted, while they were aſunder. And now commeth their buckling at hand to be related; together with the iudgement which the VVarre gaue of the Cauſe in queſtion, on Cæſars behalfe.

CHAP. I.

Cæſar giueth order at Rome, for matter of Credit *and Vſury, and other things.*

CAESAR the Dictator, holding the aſſembly for election of Magiſtrates; Iulius Cæſar, and Pub. Seruilius vvere created Conſulls: for, in that yeere he was capable by law to be choſen there-vnto. Theſe things beeing ended, foraſmuch as hee found that credit vvas very ſcant throughout all Italy, and that money lent vpon truſt, vvas not paid; he gaue order that Arbitrators ſhould be appointed, to make an eſtimation of poſſeſsions & goods, according as they vvere valued before the vvarre: and that the Creditors ſhould take them at that rate for their moneys. For, this courſe he thought to be fitteſt, and moſt expedient; as vvell for the taking away of any feare of compoſition, or new aſſurances, for the quitting and aboliſhing of all debts (which do commonly fall out vpon vvarres and ciuill broiles) as alſo for the keeping and preſeruing of the Debtors credit. Cæſar.

In like manner, he reſtored the ancient courſe of Appeale, made by the Prætors and Tribunes, to the people; as alſo certaine courſes vſed, in ſuing for Magiſtracie (which were taken away, by a law made in Pompeis time, when hee kept the legions about him in the Cittie) and likewiſe reformed ſuch iudgements in ſutes and trialls of law, as vvere giuen in Caſes, vvhen the matter in controuerſie was heard by one Iudge, and the ſentence pronounced the ſame day by another Iudge. Laſt of all, vvhere-as diuers ſtood condemned, for offering their ſeruice vnto him in the beginning of the Ciuill vvarre, if he ſhould thinke it fit to accept

thereof: and holding himſelfe as much obliged vnto them, as if he had vſed it; he thought it beſt expedient for thē, to be acquitted by the people, rather then by his commandement & authority: leaſt hee ſhould either ſeeme vngratefull, in not acknowledging their deſerts; or arrogant, in aſſuming to himſelfe that, which belonged to the people.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

CAeſar, as he was Dictator holding the aſſembly for the choice of Magiſtrates; himſelfe, with P. Seruilius Iſcauricus, were made Conſuls, in the yeere of Rome 705: which was iuſt tenne yeeres after his firſt Conſulſhippe: whereby he became capable thereof, by the law publiſhed by Sylla; wherein it was prouided, That no man ſhould be choſen to an office, within tenne yeeres after he had ſupplied the ſame. In this yeere, happened all theſe things, which are contained in this third Commentarie: as Paterculus noteth in theſe words;

C. Cæſar, and P. Seruilius beeing Conſulls, Pompey was miſerably maſſacred, after three Conſulſhips, and three Triumphes; and was ſlaine, the day before his birth day, beeing aged 58 yeeres. The Choice day, was regularlie the firſt of Ianuary: and the Aſſembly was called *Comitium Centuriatum*.

Touching the difference of theſe Aſſemblies, the parties preſent therat, the manner of the choice, and other circumſtances appertaining, the Reader may receiue information at large, by Roſsius. Onely it is to be remembred, that *Comitia Centuriata* were neuer holden without conſent of the Senate. And foraſmuch as the cheefe part of them were with Pompey, Lucan taketh exception at this Creation.

Lib. 6. de Comitijs.

Lib. 5.

——mœrentia tecta
Cæſar habet, vacuáſque domos, legéſque ſilentes:
Clauſaque inſtitio triſti fora. Curia ſolos
Illa videt Patres, plena quos vrbe fugauit.

Anno Vrb. 701

Iiv. lib. 7.
Liv. lib. 9.

*Foure gallons and a halfe.
Pli. li. 35. c. 12
Lib. 39.

The Perſons, that were ſuters for the Conſulſhippe, were called *Candidati*; who oftentimes vſed extraordinarie meanes to attaine the ſame: which moued Pompey to make a law, That no man ſhould ſue for publique offices, by bribes, or other corrupt courſes, and was called *Lex de Ambitu*; which indeed was but renewed: for, the ſame was ſet on foote, *Anno Vrb.* 395, by Petilius, Tribune of the people: and renewed againe, by Pub. Cornelius Cethegus, *Anno* 572: and within a while after, made capitall, as farre as baniſhment concerned the partie. Coponius was ſo condemned, hauing bought a voice, with an * Amphora of Wine. The law, which Pompey now made, was very ſtrict, as Dio noteth: for, it was ordained, That vpon producing of witneſſes, the Proceſs ſhould end in a day, giuing the Accuſer two houres, to lay open the matter; and the Defender three, to make aunſwere: and the Iudgement inſtantlie followed. The rigour of which law, Cæſar here reformed.

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE ſecond thing I obſerue, is the difficultie of taking vp money vpon credit, in time of trouble or warres: which Cæſar expreſſeth in theſe tearmes; *Cùm fides tota Italia eſſet anguſtior*. The word *Fides*, hath euer been taken for a reall performance of any promiſe or agreement; which Tully calleth the foundation of Iuſtice, and the very prop of a Common-weale: taking the Etymon to growe, *quia fiat quod dictum*. According to that of Nonius Marcellus; *Fides nomen ipſum videtur habere cùm fit, quod dicitur*. And for that Men commonly are couenant keepers, not ſo much by the perfection of their nature, as out of ſtrictneſs of law, it falleth out, that where there are no lawes, there is no performance; and conſequentlie, little or no credit either giuen or kept in time of Warre, becauſe *Silent leges inter arma*.

Lib. 1. offic. Nec enim vlla res vehementius rempub. cõtinet quam fides. Lib. 2. offic.

Cæſar, to prouide for this inconuenience, appointed Commiſsioners to rate euery mans lands and poſſeſsions, as they were valued before the warres, and to ſatisfie the Creditors with the ſame. Which Plutarch explaineth in this manner; That the Creditors ſhould take, yeerely, two parts of the reuenewe of their Debtors, vntill ſuch time as they had paid themſelues: and that the Debtors ſhould haue the other third, to liue withall. Whereof it ſeemed he had ſome light, by a preſident in the Conſulſhippe of Valerius Publicola, which is extant in Liuie; *Noui Conſules fœnebrem quoque rem leuare aggreſsi, ſolutionem æris alieni, in publicam curam verterant, quinque viris creatis, quos menſarios, ab diſpenſatione pecuniæ appellarunt.*

In the life of Iulius Cæſar.

Lib. 7.

This generall acquittance for debts, the Romaines called *Nouæ Tabulæ*: In this reſpect, as Celius Rodiginus hath it, *Quòd cùm pecuniæ creditæ oberratis condonantur, nouæ mox cooriuntur Tabulæ, quibus nomina continentur nouæ*: and is nothing elſe, then what is ordinarie amongſt our Bankerupts, compoũding for ſo much in the pound with their Creditors, vpon new aſſurance, and other ſecuritie, vvhich they called *Nouæ Tabulæ*; agreeing to that of Tullie: *Tabulæ verò nouæ quid habent argumenti, niſi vt emas mea pecunia fundum, eum tu habeas, ergo non habeam pecuniam.*

Lib. 7.

2. Offic.

Concerning matter of Vſurie, which was the ground of this miſchieſe, Tacitus noteth it, as an old and deadly diſeaſe, and the cauſe of many ſeditions in that Empire; and is neuer better likened, then to the biting of a Serpent, called an Aſpicke: which, vpon the infuſion of her venom, putteth the Patient into a heauie ſlumber; and in a ſhort time, bringeth all a mans ſubſtance to death and deſtruction. And there-vpon, it is called *Fœnus à fœtu*, from the fertile and ample increaſe of money. For, as Baſill noteth, The Labourer loſeth the ſeed, and contenteth himſelfe with the fruit or increaſe: but the Vſurer, will haue the fruit, and yet not loſe the ſeede. Whereby there muſt needes growe great increaſe. The law of the twelue Tables, was, *Ne quis vnciario fœnore amplius exerceto.*

Vetus vrbi fœnebre malum, et ſeditionum diſcordiarumque creberrima cauſa. Annal. 6.

And is vnderſtood for one in the hundred. The higheſt rate was *Centeſima Vſura*; when the hundred part of the principall was paid euery month to the Credi-

Creditor, and was twelue *per Cent*. The next was *Vſura deunx*, when the Debtor paid eleuen in the hundred for a yeere. The third *Dextans*, which was x. *per Cent*. *Dodrans ix. Bes viij. Septunx vſura, vij. Semis vi. Quincunce v. Triens iiij. Quadrans iij. Sextans ij. Vnciaria*, one in the hundred. Howbeit, Cato condemned all kind of vſury: for, being demaunded, *Quid maximè in re familiari expediret? reſpondit bene paſcere: quid ſecundum? ſatis bene paſcere? quid tertium? bene veſtire: quid quartũ? arare: et cùm ille qui quæſierat dixiſſet, Quid fœnerari? Quid hominẽ inquit occidere?* Allowing (as it ſeemeth) no meanes of getting mony, but thoſe which Ariſtotle tooke to be moſt agreeing to Nature: which is from the fruites of the earth, and the increaſe of our cattell; with ſuch other courſes as are aunſwerable therevnto.

Tull. 2. offic.

Pecuniæ quærendæ ratio, naturæ conſentanea omnibus eſt, à fructibus et animalibus. de reſpub. lib. 1. cap. 10.

CHAP. II.

A particular view of Pompeis forces.

Caſar.

IN the accompliſhing of theſe things, as alſo celebrating the Latine Holidaies, and holding the Aſſemblies of the people, hauing ſpent eleuen daies, he gaue ouer his Dictatorſhip, left the Cittie, and came to Brunduſium. For, he had commanded ſeauen legions, and all his Caualrie to repaire thither: howbeit, he found no more ſhipping ready, then would hardly tranſport fifteene thouſand legionary ſouldiers, and fiue hundred horſe; the vvant whereof, ſeemed to hinder him from bringing the vvarre to a ſpeedy end. Moreouer, thoſe forces vvhich were ſhipped, were but weak; in regard that many of them were loſt in the vvarres of Galia, and leſſened likewiſe by their long iourney out of Spaine: beſides that, the vnwholſome Autumne in Apulia, and about Brunduſium, had made the whole Army ill diſpoſed; beeing newly come out of the ſweet aire of Gallia and Spaine.

Pompey, hauing had a yeeres ſpace to prouide himſelfe of men and munition, and neither warre nor enemy to trouble him, had got together a great Nauy out of Aſia, from the Cyclad Iles, Coreyra, Athens, Pontus, Bythinia, Syria, Cilicia, Phœnicia, and Egypt; and had cauſed another as great a fleet to bee built in all places fit for that purpoſe; had raiſed great ſummes of money out of Aſia, and Syria, and of all the Kings, Dinaſtes, Tetrarches, and free States of Achaia; and had likewiſe compelled the Corporations of thoſe Prouinces to cõtribute the like ſum. He had inrolled nine legions of Romaine Cittizens, fiue which he had tranſported out of Italy, one old legion out of Sicily (which beeing compounded and made of two, he called the Twin) one out of Creet and Macedonia, old ſouldiers, who beeing diſcharged by former Generalls, had reſided in thoſe Prouinces; two out of Aſia, which Lentulus the Conſull had cauſed to be inrolled: beſides, he had diſtributed amongſt thoſe legions, vnder the name of a ſupply, a great number of Theſſaly, Bœotia, Achaia, and Epyrus.

Gemella.

Amongſt

Amongst these, he had mingled Anthonies souldiers: and besides these, he expected to be brought by Scipio, out of Syria, two legions. Of Archers out of Creta, Lacedemon, Pontus, and Syria, and the rest of the Citties, he had three thousand; sixe cohorts of Slingers; two Mercenary, & seauen thousand horse. Whereof Deiotarus had brought sixe hundred Galls; Ariobarzenes fiue hundred out of Cappadocia; Cotus out of Thracia had sent the like number, vnder the leading of his sonne Sasalis. From Macedonia came two hundred, commaunded by Rascipolis; a Captaine of great fame and vertue. From Alexandria came fiue hundred, part Galls, & part Germaines; which A. Gabinius had left there with King Ptolomy, to defend the Towne. Pompey, the sonne, had brought vvith the Nauie, eight hundred of his shepheards and seruaunts. Tarcondarius, Castor, & Donilaus, had sent three hundred out of Gallogræcia; of whom, one came himselfe, and the other sent his sonne. Two hundred vvere sent out of Syria, by Comagenus of Antioch, whom Pompey had presented vvith great gifts: most of vvhich were Arbalestriers on horsebacke.

To these vvere added Dardanes, Bessi; partly for pay and entertainement, and partly got by commaund or fauour; besides Macedonians, Thessalians, & diuers other Nations and Citties: insomuch as he filled vp the number formerly spoken of. He prouided great quantity of Corne out of Thessaly, Asia, Creta, Cyrenia, & the rest of those Regions. He determined to winter at Dyrrachium, Apollonia, & all the maritimate townes, to keepe Cæsar from passing the Sea: and to that end, he had laid and disposed his Nauie all along the Sea-coast. Pompey, the son, vvas Admirall of the Egyptian shippes; and Lelius Triarius, of those that came out of Asia. Cassius commaunded them of Syria, and C. Marcellus, with Pomponius, the shippes of Rhodes. Scribonius Libo, and M. Octauius, had charge of the Achaian Nauie: Howbeit, M. Bibulus commaunded in chiefe in all sea causes; and to him was left the superintendencie of the Admiraltie.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Latinæ Feriæ.

COncerning these *Latinæ Feriæ*, it is to be noted, that the Romaines had two sorts of *Feriæ*, or Holy-daies; the one called *Annales*, which came alwaies to be kept on a certaine day: and there-vpon were called *Anniuersarij*. The other, *Conceptiuæ*; which were arbitrarie, and solemnized vpon such daies, as the Magistrates & Priests thought most expedient, whereof these *Latinæ Feriæ* were chiefe; and were kept on Mount Albane, to Iupiter Latior, for the health and preseruation of all the Latine people, in league and confederacie with the people of Rome, and vvere solemnized in remembrance of the truce betweene those two Nations: during which feast, the Romaines held it vnlawfull to make any warre. The sacrifice was a white Bull, kild and offered by the Consulls, and the flesh distributed to the inhabitants of Latinum: according to an ancient Treatie of alliance between them; engrauen for a perpetuall memory, in a Columne of brasse. The particulars whereof, are expressed at large, by Dionisius Halicarnasseus.

Lib. 4. de Antiqui. Roma.

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE ſecond thing comming to be noted, is the view taken of Pompeys forces; which are nine compleat legions, beſides the ſupplies heere particularly mentioned, ſent from ſuch as bare affection to that Party: and, by indifferent calculation, might amount in all, neere about three-ſcore thouſand men, together with the fauour of the Countrey, where the triall was to be made by the ſtroke of Warre.

In which Muſter, were the ſouldiers of C. Antonius; whoſe misfortune theſe Commentaries haue either willingly forgot, or ſome other chance hath wip't it cleane out. Howbeit, Florus hath it recorded, that Cæſar hauing ſent Dolabella and Antonius to ſeize vpon the Straights, and entrance of the Adriatick-ſea, the one tooke hold of the coaſt of Slauonia, and the other neere vnto Corfew: when vpon a ſuddaine came Octauius and Libo, Pompeys Lieutenants, and with great forces (they had aboard their ſhippes) ſurprized both the one and the other; whereby Antonius was conſtrained to yeeld vp fifteene Companies, which were theſe ſouldiers of Antonius heere mentioned.

Lib. 4. cap. 2.

Raſcipolis, or Raſcupolis, was a Thracian of great fame, that followed Pompey; and his brother Raſcus tooke himſelfe to Cæſar, vpon an appointment made betweene themſelues: for, finding in the Countrey where they dwelt, two great Factions in oppoſition, & doubting which Partie to take, they diuided themſelues; as the beſt approued part of Newtralitie: And held likewiſe the ſame courſe, in the warre betweene Brutus and Octauius, continuing vnto the battell of Philippi. Vpon the iſſue whereof, Raſcus demaunded no other reward for his ſeruice, then the life of his brother: which vvas eaſilie graunted.

Appian. lib. 4.

This Bibulus, Pompeis high Admirall, was fellow Conſull with Cæſar, in the yeer of Rome 694: but Cæſar ſo out-ſtript him in the managing of things, that he much ſuſpected himſelfe, as inſufficient for the place: which made him keepe his houſe all that yeere. Whereupon came this Diſtich;

Non Bibulo quicquam nuper, ſed Cæſare factum:
Nam Bibulo fieri Conſule nil memini.

CHAP. III.

Cæſar paſſeth ouer into Greece, returneth his ſhipping to Brunduſium. Octauius beſiegeth Salones.

Cæſar.

CAeſar, vpon his arriuall at Brunduſium, called the ſouldiers together; and ſhewed them, that foraſmuch as they vvere almoſt come to an end of all their labours and dangers, they would now be content to leaue vvillingly behind them their ſeruants and cariages in Italy, and goe aboard, cleere of thoſe incumberments; to the

the end, the greater number of ſouldiers might be taken in; and that they ſhould expect the ſupplie of all theſe things, from victorie, & his liberality. Euery man cried out, That he ſhould commaund what he would, and they would vvillinglie obay it.

The ſecond of the Nones of Ianuary, he waied Anchor, hauing (as is formerly ſhewed) ſhipped ſeauen legions. The next day, he came to land at the Promontorie of Ceraunium, hauing got a quiet roade amongſt the Rocks, and places of danger. For, doubting how he might ſafely venture vpon any of the knowne Ports of that Coaſt (vvhich he ſuſpected to be kept by the Enemy) he made choice of that place, which is called Phraſalus: and there arriuing in ſafetie vvith all his ſhips, he landed his ſouldiers.

At the ſame time, Lucrecius Viſpillo, and Minutus Rufus (by order from Lælius) vvere at Orick, with eighteene ſhippes of Aſia: and M. Bibulus, was likewiſe at Corfew, with one hundred and tenne ſhippes. But neither of theſe two durſt come out of the Port, although Cæſar had not in all aboue twelue ſhippes of vvarre, to waft him ouer; amongſt which, he himſelfe was imbarked. Neither could Bibulus come ſoone enough, his ſhippes beeing vnready, and his Mariners aſhore; for that Cæſar was deſcried neere the Continent, before there vvas any bruite of his comming in all thoſe Regions. The ſouldiers beeing landed, hee ſent backe the ſame night the ſhipping to Brunduſium; that the other legions, and the Caualrie, might be brought ouer.

Fuſius Calenus, the Legat, had the charge of this ſeruice, and was to vſe all celeritie in tranſporting ouer the legions: but, ſetting out late, and omitting the opportunity of the night winde, they failed of their purpoſe, & ſo returned back. For, Bibulus beeing certified at Corfew of Cæſars arriuall, and hoping to meete with ſome of the ſhippes of burthen, met with the emptie ſhippes, going backe to Brunduſium: and hauing taken thirty of them, he wreaked his anger (conceiued through griefe and omiſsion) and ſet them all on fire, conſuming therein, both the Maiſters, and the Mariners; hoping by the rigour of that puniſhment, to terrifie the reſt.

This beeing done, hee poſſeſt all the Coaſt, from Salones to Orick, with ſhippes and Men of vvarre; appointing guardes with more diligence then formerly hath been vſed. He himſelfe, in the depth of Winter, kept watch a ſhip-board, not refuſing any labour or duetie, nor expecting any ſuccour, if he happened to meet with Cæſar. But after the departure of the Liburnian Gallies from Illiricum, M. Octauius, with ſuch ſhippes as he had with him, came to Salones; and there hauing incited the Dalmatians, and other barbarous people, drew Iſca from Cæſars partie. And finding that he could not moue them of Salones, neither with promiſe nor threatnings, he reſolued to beſiege the Towne. The Place was ſtrong by nature, through the aduantage of a Hill; and the Romaine Cittizens (there inhabiting) had made towres of vvood to fortifie it vvithin: but finding themſelues too vveake to make reſiſtance (beeing vvearied out and ſpent vvith vvoundes) they fell at length to the laſt refuge of all: vvhich vvas, to enfranchize all their bond-ſlaues, aboue the age of fourteene yeeres; and cutting their womens haire, made Engines thereof.

Their reſolution beeing knowen, Octauius incompaſſed the towne about with fiue Campes: and at one inſtant of time, beganne to force them by ſiege, and by aſſault. They, beeing reſolued to vnder-goe all extreamities, were much preſſed through vvant of Corne; and there-vpon, ſending Meſſengers to Cæſar, ſought helpe of him: other inconueniences, they indured as they might.

And after a long time, vvhen the continuance of the ſiege, had made the Octauians remiſſe and negligent (taking the opportunitie of the noone time, when the Enemy vvas retired aſide, and placing their children and women on the vvall, that nothing might ſeeme omitted of that vvhich was vſuall) they themſelues, together vvith ſuch as they had lately infranchized, brake into the next Campe vnto the Towne. Which beeing taken, with the ſame violence they ſet vpon another, and then vpon the third, and ſo vpon the fourth, and in the end, vpon the fift; driuing the Enemy out of all the Campes: and, hauing ſlaine a great number, they forced Octauius, and the reſt remaining, to betake them to their ſhips; and ſo the ſiege ended. For, Octauius, deſpairing to take the Towne, the Winter approaching, and hauing receiued ſuch loſſes, retired to Pompey at Dyrrachium.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IT hath beene generally conceiued, that there is little or no vſe of women in times of vvarre, but that they are a burthen to ſuch as ſeek honour by deedes of Armes; and doe better ſute the licentiouſneſſe of peace, then the dangers of warfare. Whereof Andromache is made an inſtance; from that which Homer reporteth of her teares, ſighes, & praiers, to with-draw Hector from thoſe valorous exploits, which hee vndertooke for the defence of Troy: and therefore, are by Ouid, wiſhed to handle the diſtaffe and the ſpindle; and leaue the warre, as fitter for men, then the weakeneſſe of their Sex.

Iliad. 6.

——— colúmque
I cape cum calathis, et ſtamina pollice torque:
Bella relinque viris.

12 Metamor.

Neuertheleſſe, it cannot be denied, that howſoeuer the tenderneſſe of women, doth require a paſsiue courſe of life, vnder the ſhelter of a ſafe rooſe, rather then in the bleake ſtormes of actiue indeauour; yet there haue been ſome Viragos, that haue ouer-topped the pride of men in points of war: amongſt whom, Semiramis may leade the reſt; together with Tomyris, Cyrus Miſtreſſe by conqueſt. As alſo Zenobia, that ſubdued the Perſians; and Helena, Queene of the Ruſſes.

Inſt. lib. 1. Herodot. lib. 2 Trebell. Pola. Sigiſm. Bar. in Muſcou.

Beſides other noble ſpirits, that could anſwere ſuch as told them newes of the death of their ſonnes in battell; That they had brought them into the world for that onely purpoſe. Which do proue, as well a reall as a potentiall aptneſs of that Sex, to the vſe and practice of Armes.

And

And if any man (as vnwilling to affoord them so much worth) will knowe wherein they auaile the fortune of a Warre, he may take notice, that euen in expeditions (wherein they are most subiect to exceptions) they alwaies giue acceptable assistances to their Husbands, both in their prouisions, and otherwise; and are such Companions, as can hardly be left at home, without danger of greater hazard.

Quod honestius quã vxoriũ lenamentum? Tac. l. 3. Annal. Vix præsenti custodia manere illæsa coniugia. eodem.

But in places besieged, vvomen doe not onely affoord haire to make ropes, if need require (as it fell out in this siege) but are able to cast peeces of Millstones vpon the Enemie, with better fortune some-times then any other man: and haue thereby slaine the Generall, to the raising of the siege, and sauing of the Cittie.

Iudg. 9.

But to take instances of later times: it is not to bee forgotten, that when the Arch-Duke Mathias (after the death of Count Mansfield) commaunded the Christian Armie, at the siege of Strigonium; while the Turkes, within the Castle, were making works for a retreit, the women (in the meane time) made good the breaches; and there bestowed such store of Wild-fire, that the Italian Squadrons (commaunded by Aldobrandine) beeing ioyned poldron to poldron, to preace into the breach, seemed all of a fire at once, and were forced to fall off with great terrour and confusion.

Anno 1595.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

A Towne assaulted by a warlike Enemie, is not kept or freed with Charmes or Spells; or as the Inhabitants of Tomby, in the East Indies, draue away the Portugalls, with Hiues of Bees, when they were possessed of the walls: but with such valour as may ouer-maister the Enemy, and extend it selfe to the taking of fiue Campes, if need require; which was performed by these Inhabitants of Salones.

CHAP. III.

Cæsar sendeth to Pompey, touching a Peace; *taketh in Oricum, Apolonia, and* other places.

IT is before declared, that Vibullius Rufus (one of Pompeis Lieutenants) vvas twice taken by Cæsar, and dismissed; once at Corfinium, and a second time in Spaine. Him did Cæsar deeme (in regarde of the fauours vvhich he had shewed him) to bee a fitte person, to bee sent vvith a Message to

Cæsar.

Pompey; and the rather, for that hee vnderſtood, that hee vvas in good account and credite vvith him.

Qui ſapiunt, bellū abſolvunt celeriter; pace fruuntur quàm poſſunt diutiſſime. Appian.

The ſumme of his Commiſsion was, to tell him, That it beſeemed them both, to giue an end to their vvilfulneſſe, to lay downe their Armes, and not to tempt Fortune any longer; either ſide had beene ſufficiently afflicted with loſſe and dammages: vvhich might ſerue for inſtruction and example to auoide other inconueniences. Hee, for his part, vvas driuen out of Italy, vvith the loſſe of Sicily, Sardinia, vvith the two Prouinces of Spaine, as alſo of the Cohorts of Italie, together with one hundred & thirty cohorts of Romaine Cittizens in Spaine; Himſelfe, vvith the death of Curio, with the loſſe of the Affricane Armie, and vvith the rendry of the ſouldiers at Corfew: and therefore they ſhould haue regard of themſelues, and of the Common-wealth.

They had good experience by their owne loſſes, what Fortune could do in war. This was the onely time to treat of peace, whilſt either Party ſtood confident in his owne ſtrength, and ſeemed of equall might & power. But, if Fortune ſhould chaunce to ſway to one ſide, he that thought hee had the better end of the ſtaffe, would neuer harken to any conditions of peace, nor content himſelfe with a reaſonable part, becauſe his hope would giue him all.

Concerning the Articles of Treatie, foraſmuch as they could not agree thereof themſelues, they ought to ſeeke them from the Senate and people of Rome. In the meane vvhile, it vvas fitte that the Common-vvealth and themſelues ſhould reſt ſatisfied, if (without further delay) both of them did take an oath in the preſence of their Armies, to diſmiſſe their forces vvithin three daies next following: and ſend avvay their Auxiliarie troopes, vvherein they ſo relied; and conſequently, to depend vpon the iudgement and decree of the people of Rome. For aſſurance whereof, on his behalfe, hee vvould preſently diſcharge as well his forces in the field, as thoſe in guarizon.

Vibullius, hauing receiued theſe inſtructions from Cæſar (thinking it no leſſe requiſite to aduertiſe Pompey of Cæſars arriuall, that hee might conſult of that, before he deliuered vvhat hee had in charge) poſted night and day, taking at euery ſtage freſh horſe; that hee might certifie Pompey, that Cæſar was at hand vvith all his forces.

Pompey was at that time in Caudania, and vvent out of Macedonia, to Winter in Apolonia, and at Dyrrachium. But, being troubled at the newes, he made towards Apolonia by great iourneyes, leaſt Cæſar ſhould poſſeſſe himſelfe of the maritimate Citties.

Cæſar, hauing landed his forces, vvent the next day to Oricum. Vpon his approach, L. Torquatus, who commaunded the towne vnder Pompey, & had there a guarizon of Parthins, ſhutting the gates, vvent about to defend the place, commaunded the Grecians to take Armes, and make good the vvalles. But they, refuſing to fight againſt the power and authoritie of the people of Rome, and the townſmen indeauouring of their owne accord to receiue him in; hee opened the gates, deſpairing of all other ſuccours, and gaue vp both himſelfe and the towne to Cæſar, and was entertained by him in ſafetie. Oricum beeing taken-in by Cæſar, without any further delay he went to Apolonia.

His

His comming beeing heard of, L. Straberius, the Gouernour, began to carie vvater into the Citadell, to fortifie it, and to require pledges of the inhabitants. They, on the other side, denied to giue any, or to shutte their gates against the Consull, or of themselues to take a resolution, contrary to that which all Italy & the people of Rome had thought conuenient. Their affections beeing knowen, he secretly conuaied himselfe away. The Apolonians sent Commissioners to Cæsar, and receiued him into the towne. The Beldinenses followed their example; and the Amatines, together with the rest of the confining Citties. And to conclude, all Epirus sent vnto Cæsar, promising to doe what he commaunded. But Pompey, vnderstanding of these things, which were done at Oricum and Apolonia, fearing Dyrrachium, posted thither night and day. Howbeit, vpon the report of Cæsars approche, the Armie was so astonished, that for haste on their way, they left their Ensignes in Epirus, and the confining Regions: and many of them (casting away their Armes) seemed rather to flie, then to march as souldiers.

As they came neere to Dyrrachium, Pompey made a stand, and caused the Campe to be intrenched, when-as yet the Army was so affrighted, that Labienus stood out first, and tooke a solemne oath, Neuer to forsake Pompey, but to vndergoe what chance soeuer Fortune had allotted him. The same oath tooke the Legates; beeing likewise seconded by the Tribunes of the souldiers, and Centurions, and by all the Army, that tooke the like oath.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Num est tempus (saith Cæsar) *de pace agendi, dum vterque sibi confidit, et pares ambo videntur.* Which may serue for an excellent Rule, to point out the fittest & seasonablest time, for composition betweene two opposite Parties. For, as in quantities, equality begetteth equalitie, and disparitie, a like vneuennesse of nature; so, in other things: as namely, in Treaties of Agreement, the conditions doe commonly rise to either Partie, according as they stand ballanced in the scale of Equalitie; or otherwise, as the difference of their meanes shall allot thē. For, if that be true in the extreamitie, which Curtius hath, That Lawes are giuen by Conquerers, and accepted vpon all conditions, by them that are subdued; it doth consequently follow in the Meane, that men find dealing proportionable to their fortune. To which purpose is that of Plato, where he saith, That Peace and Quietnes consist in equalitie; as Trouble and Motion are alwaies in inequalitie.

Leges à victoribus dicuntur; accipiuntur à victis. lib. 4. Quietem, in æquabilitate; motū, in inæqualitate, semper cōstituimus. in Timæo.

749b

Ex rei quæ venerit exemplo, rem intellegere haud difficile. Plato 3 de legi.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

IT appeareth heere, by the fright and aſtoniſhment of Pompeis Armie, that the courſe he tooke to abandon Italie, was out of no good aduice or direction. For, where he might with farre more honour, and no leſſe hope of ſucceſſe, haue conteſted with Cæſar, in the place where the warre brake out, and kept him to a taske which ſhould haue held him from the conqueſt of Spaine, or ſuch other atchieuements as he eaſilie wrought in the abſence of his Aduerſaries: it fell out, that his departure into Greece, ſorted to no other end, then by time to abate the edge of the forwardeſt courages, and to ſuffer a numerous Armie, to be daunted with noiſe and clamors of continuall victories, gotten vpon a part of themſelues; and then to giue occaſion to the Conquerour to come in the taile of Fame, and take them diſarmed of expectation, to their great amazement.

CHAP. V.

Cæſar tooke vp his lodging for Winter. Bibulus, *diſtreſſed at Sea for vvant of prouiſions, ſeemed deſirous* of a Treatie: which, being caried on the other ſide with good caution, brake off againe.

Cæſar.

CAeſar, vnderſtanding that his paſſage to Dyrrachium vvas thus intercepted, did forbeare his haſte, and incamped himſelfe vpon the Riuer Apſus, in the confines of the Apolonians; that by the meanes of his Guards and Forts, ſuch Cities as had well deſerued of him, might be in ſafety: & there determined to winter, in Tents of skinne, and to attend the comming of his other legions out of Italy. The like did Pompey, pitching his Campe on the other ſide of the Riuer Apſus; and there aſſembled all his troopes and forraine aydes. Calenus, hauing (according to Cæſars directions) imbarked the legions, and Caualrie at Brunduſium, and taken-in as many as his ſhipping would containe, he ſet ſaile: but beeing gone a little out of the Port, hee receiued Letters of aduice from Cæſar, that all the Hauens and the Sea-coaſt vvas kept with the Enemies fleet. Where-vpon, hee made againe into the Hauen, and called backe all the ſhippes: onely one, holding on her courſe, without regard of the commaund, caryying no ſouldiers, but belonging to priuate men, arriued at Oricum, and there was taken by Bibulus; who ſpared neither bond nor free, of as many as were of age, but put all to the ſword. Whereby it happened, that in a moment of time, by great chaunce the whole Army was ſaued.

Bibulus, as is before declared, lay at Oricum with his Nauie. And as hee kept the

the Sea and the Ports from Cæſar; ſo was hee kept from landing in any of thoſe Countries: for, all the Sea-coaſt was kept by Guardes and Watches, ſet along the ſhore, that he could neither vvater, get vvood, nor bring his ſhippes to land vpon any occaſion: Inſomuch as hee was brought into great ſtraightneſs and exigent, for want of all neceſſaries; and vvas conſtrained (beſides all other prouiſions) to fetch his vvater and vvood from Corfew. And one time amongſt the reſt, it happened, that the weather beeing foule, they were forced to relieue themſelues, vvith the deaw vvhich in the night time fell vpon the skinnes, that couered the Decks of the ſhippes. All which extreamities they patiently indured; and would by no meanes be brought to leaue the Ports, or abandon the Sea-coaſt.

But as they were in theſe difficulties, and that Libo, and Bibulus were come together, they both of them ſpake from a-ſhip-board, to M. Acilius, and Statius Marco, Legates (of whom one was Gouenour of the Towne, & the other had the charge of ſuch Guardes as were along the ſhore) ſignifying, that they would willingly talke with Cæſar, of matters of great cõſequence, if they might haue leaue. For a better ſhew and aſſurance whereof, they intimated ſome thing concerning a Compoſition. In the meane time, they earneſtly deſired there might be a truce: for, the thing they propounded, imported matter of great weight, vvhich they knew Cæſar exceedingly affected; and it was thought that Bibulus vvas able to worke ſome-what to that purpoſe.

Cæſar, at that time, was gone vvith one legion to take-in ſome townes further off, and to ſet a courſe for prouiſion of Corne, which vvas brought ſparingly vnto him; and was then at Buthrot, oppoſite to Corfew. Beeing certified there by Letters from Acilius and Murco, of that which Libo and Bibulus had required, he left the legion, and returned himſelfe to Oricum. At his arriuall thither, they vvere called out to treat. Libo came forth, and excuſed Bibulus, for that he was exceeding cholericke, and had beſides conceiued a great anger at Cæſar, about the Aedilitie and Prætorſhip: and in regard of that, he did ſhun the Conference, leaſt a matter of that vtility and importance, ſhould be diſturbed by his intemperate cariage. Pompey is, and was euer deſirous, that matters might be accorded, and that Armes might be laid aſide; but they, of themſelues, could doe nothing therein; foraſmuch as by the generall reſolution of a Councell, the ſuperintendency of the vvarre, and the diſpoſition of all things, vvere referred to Pompey: Howbeit, when they vnderſtood what Cæſar required, they would ſend inſtantly a diſpatch vnto Pompey, and be a meanes that he ſhould accompliſh all things with good ſatisfaction. In the meane time, let there be a truce; and vntill an aunſwere might be returned from him, let neither Partie offend one another. To this he added ſome-what concerning the Cauſe in queſtion. To vvhich, Cæſar did not thinke it fit at that time to make any aunſwere: nor doe we thinke there is cauſe now to make mention thereof.

Cæſar required, that it might bee lawfull for him, to ſend Embaſſadours to Pompey vvithout danger; and that they would vndertake, that ſuch as he ſent, might be well intreated, or take them into their charge, and bring them ſafely to Pompey. Concerning the Truce, the courſe of the vvarre fell out to be ſo caried, that they, with their Nauie, did keepe his ſhips and ſuccours from comming vnto him;

him; and he, on the other ſide, did prohibite them frō landing, or taking in freſh vvater: and if they would haue that graunted vnto them, let them ceaſe guarding of the Coaſt; but if they would continue that, then would he continue the other. Notwithſtanding, hee thought the Treatie of accord might goe on, albeit theſe were not omitted; for, he tooke them to be no impediment therevnto. They vvould neither receiue Cæſars Embaſſadours, nor vndertake for their ſafetie; but referred the whole matter to Pompey: onely they inſtanced, and very vehemently vrged the Truce. But Cæſar, perceiuing that all this ſpeech tended onely to auoid the preſent danger, and to ſupply themſelues of ſuch vvants vvherewith they vvere ſtraightned, and that there was no condition of peace to be expected, he began to thinke of proſecuting the vvarre.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Timendū ne ſub pacis nomine involutum bellum. Cicero. Phil. 7.

AS in contracting with a Partie, it is duly to be cared, that War be not ſhrowded vnder the faire name of Peace; ſo a Truce demaunded by an Enemy, is to be handled ſparingly & with ſuſpicion: as a thing neuer commonly required, but when neceſsity doth moue them therevnto; and not to be granted, but as it may inferre the like aduantage. But to yeeld to a ſuſpenſion of Armes, aduantageous to an Enemy, & no way gainefull to them that conſent vnto it, is neither allowable by reaſon, nor Cæſars example. And if occaſion proue it requiſite, it muſt be but for a little time: for, a Prince armed in the field, that ſhall entertaine a Truce for any long ſeaſon, ſhall ſee his Armie conſumed both in courage, and in the parts thereof, which will fall aſunder of themſelues; and was the meanes by which Lewis, the eleuenth, put-by Edward the fourth, king of England, from going on with a warre that might haue giuen him the poſſeſsion of the Crowne of France. Whence it is, that ſuch as ſeeke a Peace, deſire no more then a ceſſation of Armes, for ſome reaſonable time, as an introduction inforcing the ſame.

Fœdus Pacis.

Fœdus Cōmercij.

Fœdus mutui Auxilij. 1. Reg. 22.

Concerning leagues, we are to note that there are found three differences. The firſt, is a league of Peace: which by the Apoſtles rule, ſhould extend to all men, *Habete pacem cum omnibus*: and by example of holy Patriarches (Iſack with Abimelech, Iacob with Laban) may lawfully bee made with Heathen Princes; beeing as the golden chaine, that tieth all the Nations of the earth in peaceable communitie. The ſecond, is a league of Entercourſe, ot Cōmerce; which is likewiſe by the ſame Patriach, ſending for Corne into Egypt, and Salomons entercourſe, with Hiram king of Tyre, together with diuers other examples, allowable with Infidels. For, Nature, being rich in variety of commodities, doth therefore diuide her workes amongſt the kingdomes of the earth, that there might be a mutuall entercourſe of exchange, betweene the partes of the ſame. The third, is a league of mutuall Aſsiſtance; ſuch as Iehoſophat made with Achab: & is hardly ſafe with any Prince; but no way allowable with Infidels.

Touching

Touching the Persons to be offered in a Treatie, it is to bee obserued from Bibulus, that no man, whose presence may either giue offence, or whose intemperance may any way interrupt a course sorting to a happy issue, is fit for any such imploiment.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THere were, in Rome, certaine Officers called *Aediles, ab Aedibus*; as hauing the care of houses & buildings, both publique and priuate, that they might be built and maintained in such manner as was agreeable to the ordinances of that State, together with other things whereof they had the charge. *Nunc sum designatus Aedilis* (saith Cicero) *habeo rationem quod à populo Romano acceperim, mihi ludos sanctissimos maxima cum cerimonia, Cereri Liberoque faciendos. Mihi Floram Matrẽ populo plebique Romanæ, ludorum celebritate placandam: mihi ludos antiquissimos qui primi Romani sunt nominati, maxima cum dignitate ac religione, Ioui, Iunoni, Mineruaque esse faciendos. Mihi sacrarum Aedium procurationem; mihi totã vrbem tuendam esse commissam, ob earum rerum laborem et solicitudinẽ fructus illos datos, antiquiorem in senatu sententiæ dicendæ locum. Togam pretextam, cellam curulem, ius imaginis, ad memoriam posteritatémque prodendam.* Wherein it is to be noted, that these shewes and Plaies, were alwaies made and set forth at the charge and costs of the Aediles: and thence it was, that the allowing or disallowing of all Play-bookes belonged vnto them. Moreouer, they had the charge of all the publique buildings and works of the Cittie, together with the prouision of victuall and Corne. And, for the missing of this office, was Bibulus angry with Cæsar; and would not be regained vpon anie condition.

In Verrem.

The publication of their secular Plaies, was cried in these words; *Conuenite ad ludos spectandos, quos neque spectauit quisquam, nec spectaturus est. Sueto. in Claudio.* *Nolentẽ amicũ capere, difficile. Xenop. de factis et dict. Socratis.*

CHAP. VI.

Bibulus dieth. Cæsar vseth meanes to procure a Treaty of Peace; but preuaileth not.

Bibulus, beeing kept from landing many daies together, and fallen into a grieuous sickenesse, through cold and extreame labour (and hauing no meanes of help, nor yet vvilling to forgoe his charge) could no longer withstand the violence of the disease. Hee beeing dead, there was none appointed to take his charge: but euery man commaunded his owne fleete. The hurly burly beeing quieted, vvhich Cæsars suddaine arriuall had mooued, Vibullius, with the assistance of Libo, together with L. Lucceius, and Theophanes, to whom

Cæsar.

749b

whom Pompey was wont to communicate matters of greateſt importance, reſolued to deliuer what Cæſar had recommended vnto him: & entering into the relation thereof, vvas interrupted by Pompey, forbidding him to ſpeake any further of that matter. What vſe or neede haue I (ſaith he) either of my life, or of the Citty, when I ſhall be thought to enioy it by Cæſars fauour? neither can the opinion thereof be remoued, vntill the warre be ended; that of my ſelfe I returne backe into Italy, from whence I am come.

Cæſar vnderſtood this, from thoſe that were preſent when hee ſpake it: and yet notwithſtanding, hee indeauoured by other meanes, to procure a Parlee of peace. For, the two Campes of Pompey and Cæſar, were onely ſeparated by the Riuer Apſus, that ranne betweene them; where the ſouldiers had often Colloquies, & by agreement amongſt themſelues, threw no vveapon during the time of their treatie. Where-vpon, he ſent P. Vatinius, a Legat, to the Riuer banke, to vtter ſuch things as did chiefely concerne a Peace; and to aske oftentimes with a loud voice, Whether it were not lawfull for Cittizens, to ſend to Cittizens, touching a treaty of peace? being a thing permitted to the Thieues of the Pyreneian Mountaines: or at leaſt, to moue that Cittizens ſhould not in Armes contend with Cittizens? And hauing ſpoken much very reſpectfully, as well concerning his owne well-fare, as the ſafetie of all the reſt, he was heard with ſilence, by the Souldiers on both ſides.

At length, it was aunſwered from the other Party, that A. Varro did offer himſelfe for a conference the next day; ſo that the Commiſsioners on both ſides, might come and goe in ſafety, and deliuer freely their opinions: for vvhich, a certaine time was then appointed. The next day, great multitudes of either ſide, preſented themſelues at the place aſsigned; and great was the expectation therof, euery man ſeeming to incline to peace. Out of vvhich troope ſtept foorth T. Labienus, and ſpake ſoftly touching the peace: and at laſt, entered into altercation with Vatinius. In the middle of their ſpeech, were vveapons ſuddenlie caſt from all parts: which hee auoided, beeing couered and defended with Armes. Notwithſtanding, many were vvounded; and amongſt others, Cornelius Balbus, M. Plotius, L. Tiburtus, Centurions, beſides many other ſouldiers. Then ſaid Labienus, Leaue off, therefore, to ſpeake of any compoſition: for, vnleſſe Cæſars head be brought, there can be no peace.

OBSERVATIONS.

THis ſmall peece of the Storie, containeth diuers notable paſſages of extreamitie, in the cariage of Pompey, and others of his Partizans. As firſt (to take them as they lie) that of vvilfulneſſe in Bibulus: whō neither ſickneſſe, nor deſpaire of helpe, could moue to intermit the taske he had vndertaken; but choſe rather to ſuffer vnto death, in approuing his zeale to the Cauſe, then to giue himſelfe a breathing time for the ſauing of his life: and may ſerue to admoniſh any other Bibulus, to value his life aboue that, which a ſtiffe and wilfull opinion may leade him vnto, beyond the meaſure of honorable

honourable indeauour, or what elſe may any way be iuſtly expected; leaſt in ſtriuing to doe much, hee happen to doe nothing: for, that cannot be vnderſtood to bee vvell done in an other mans behalfe, that is not well done in his owne.

Fruſtra ſapit, qui ſibi non ſapit.

The ſecond, is Pompeis reſolution; beeing ſo extreame, as no compoſition, or other thing whatſoeuer, could giue him ſatisfaction, but onely a victorious end of that warre. Our prouerbe ſaith, Better a leane agreement, then a fat remedie. And the caſualties of warre, may moue an experienced Commaunder, to imbrace a ſafe and quiet peace; as knowing, that he that goeth about to vex another, ſhall haue his turne of ſuffering the like miſeaſes: and as warre beginneth, when one partie liſteth, ſo it endeth, when the other ſide pleaſeth.

Aenead. 6.

——facilis deſcenſus Auerni:
Sed reuocare gradum, ſuperáſque evadere ad oras,
Hoc opus, hic labor eſt.

And therefore, let no Commaunder, how great ſoeuer, refuſe all peace, but that which is bought by extreamitie of warre; leaſt the euent (whereof there can be no aſſurance) fall out as it happened to Pompey: but rather with the vſe, let him learne the end of Armes: which is, to make ſtraight that which is crooked; and out of diſcord and diſſenſion, to draw meanes of a happie peace.

To which may be added, that other of Labienus, as farre in extreamitie as either of the former; whom nothing would ſatisfie but Cæſars head. It cannot be denied, but that he ſtrooke at the roote; for, his head, was the head of that warre. But to ſay it, rather then to doe it, was no argument of Labienus worthineſſe. For, as Polybius noteth; It is common to moſt men to magnifie themſelues, with words full of wind: yea, and more then that, to follow their deſignes with impetuous violence. But, to direct their vndertakings to a ſucceſſull iſſue, and to remoue by induſtrie, or prouidence, ſuch hinderances as happen to trauerſe their hopes, is granted but to a few; and now denied to Labienus, notwithſtanding this Brauado. And therefore, let ſuch Commaunders, as are in good opinion and eſteeme with their Generall, bee well wary of imbarking their partie in any cauſe, further then may beſeeme the wiſdome and experience of iudicious Leaders; as belieuing in that of Metellus to king Bocchus: *Omne bellum ſumi facilè, cæterum acerrimè deſinere: non in eiuſdem poteſtate initium eius et finem eſſe: incipere cuinis etiam ignauo licere; deponi, cùm victores velint.*

Lib. 16.

Succeſſum fortuna, experientiam laus ſequitur Varro, ex Gellio.

Saluſt.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Cælius Rufus, moueth ſedition in Italie, *and is ſlaine.*

Cæſar.

AT the ſame time, M. Calius Rufus, the Prætor at Rome, vndertaking the buſineſs of debts, in the beginning of his Magiſtracie, placed his ſeate by the Chaire of C. Trebonius, Prætor of the towne; promiſing to be aſsiſting to any man, that vvould appeale vnto him, concerning valuation and paiment to be performed by Arbitrators, according as Cæſar had ordained. But it came to paſſe, as well through the equity and indifferencie of the Decree, as through the lenitie of Trebonius (who was of opinion, that thoſe times required an eaſie and milde execution of iuſtice) that none vvere found, from vvhom the beginning of the Appeale might growe, for to pretend pouertie, or to complaine of particular misfortune, and of the calamity of thoſe times; or otherwiſe, to propound the difficulties of ſelling their goods by an out-rope, was euery mans practice: but for any man to acknowledge himſelfe to bee in debt, and yet to keepe his poſſeſsions whole and vntouched, was held a very ſtrange impudencie: ſo that there was no man found that would require it.

Moreouer, Cælius caried a very hard hand, to ſuch as ſhould haue receiued benefite thereby. And hauing made this enterance (to the end he might not ſeeme to haue vndertooke a ſhamefull or diſhoneſt cauſe) he publiſhed a law, That there ſhould be no Intereſt paid, for any Monies let out vpon conſideration, for thirtie ſixe daies of the time agreed on. But when he perceiued, that Seruilius the Conſull, and the reſt of the Magiſtrates did oppoſe themſelues againſt him, therein, and finding it not to ſort with his expectation (to the end hee might incite and ſtirre vp the humours and ſpirits of men) hee abrogated that law, and in ſteede thereof, made two others. The one, which cut off the yeerely rents that Tenants vvere accuſtomed to pay their Land-lords, for the houſes they dwelt in: and the other, Touching new aſſurances, and the aboliſhing of old debts. Where-vpon, the multitude ranne violently vpon him, and (hauing hurt diuers that ſtood about him) pulled him out of his Chaire.

*Of theſe things, Seruilius the Conſull made relation to the Senate: who thervpon decreed, That Cælius ſhould be remoued frõ his Prætorſhip. And by meanes of that Arreſt, the Conſull interdicted him the Senate, and alſo drew him from the * Speaking Place, as he vvent about to make a ſpeech to the people. Cælius, mooued with ſhame and deſpight, made as though hee would goe to Cæſar; but ſent Meſſengers ſecretly to Milo, condemned to banishment for killing Clodius. And hauing recalled him into Italy, that by great gifts and revvards had gained to his party the remainder of the Company of Fencers, hee ioyned himſelfe with him: and then ſent him before to Thurin, to excite and ſtirre vp the Shepheards to ſedition; he himſelfe going to Caſſeline.*

* Roſtra.

At

At the ſame inſtant, his Enſignes and Armes beeing ſtaied at Capua, beſides his family ſuſpected at Naples, and their attempt againſt the towne, perceiued; their other deſsignes beeing diſcouered, and their Partizans ſhut out of Capua: fearing ſome danger, foraſmuch as the inhabitants had tooke Armes, and held him as an Enemy, hee let fall his former determination, and brake off his iourney.

In the meane vvhile, Milo, hauing ſent Letters to the Municipall townes, that vvhat he did, was by the authority and commaundement of Pompey, according as he receiued it from Bibulus, he applied himſelfe, and ſolicited ſuch as vvere in debt: vvith whom preuailing nothing, hee brake vp diuers priſons, and began to aſſault Coſa in Thurin: & there he was ſlaine by Q. Pedius the Prætor, with a ſtone which he caſt from the vvall.

Cælius, going on (as he gaue out) towards Cæſar, hee came to Tury, vvhere, vvhen he had mooued diuers of the Inhabitants, and promiſed money to the French and Spaniſh Caualrie, which Cæſar had put there for a Guarizon, he was in the end ſlaine by them. And ſo the beginning of great Matters, which put all Italy in feare and trouble, by the indirect practiſes of the Magiſtrates, and the iniquitie of the times, had a ſpeedy and eaſie end.

OBSERVATIONS.

IT is to be noted, for the better vnderſtanding theſe Paſſages, that of thoſe which were choſen Prætors, the two chiefeſt remained at Rome; the one, to adminiſter iuſtice to the Cittizens, which was called *Prætor Vrbanus*, who in the abſence of the Conſull, had the ſuperintendencie of the affaires of the State, aſſembled the Senate, receiued Packets, made Diſpatches, and gaue order in all things: which place was now ſupplied by Trebonius. The other was called *Prætor Peregrinus:* whoſe office was, to order the cauſes and ſutes of forrainers and ſtrangers; where-vnto Cælius was choſen: and, beeing of a turbulent and vnquiet ſpirit, tooke occaſion vpon this rent in the State, to raiſe new garboiles, fit for his owne purpoſes; as hauing learned, what Ariſtotle teacheth, That all things which are already ſtirred, are more eaſily mooued, then other natures, that are yet in quiet. And there-vpon, hauing power by his office, to decide cauſes of Controuerſie, hee remoued his Tribunall, and placed it hard-by where Trebonius ſate, to the end he might oppoſe the Decrees he made, for the priſing of goods, to ſatisfie Creditors, and draw the people to appeale vnto him; publiſhing with-all, certaine dangerous Edicts, on the behalfe of thoſe that were in debt.

Omnia commota facilius quàm quieſcentia mouentur. De Mechanicis.

This Cælius was Ciceros ſcholler, for Oratorie; and in the opinion of Quintilian, was thought worthy to haue liued longer, if he had been of a ſtaied and ſettled cariage; but now muſt ſtand for an example of a wilfull Magiſtrate.

Touching *Roſtra*, which I haue tranſlated the Speaking-place, it vvas a part of their *Forum*, vvhere the Conſulls, and other Magiſtrates, ſpake vnto the people, wherein was built a Chaire or Pulpit, of the beake-heads of ſhips,

Liuie, lib. 8.

749b

which the Romaines tooke from the *Antiatÿ*, and there-vpon tooke the name of *Roſtra*; memorable amongſt other things, for-that Antonie ſette Tullies head betweene his two hands, in the Chaire, where he had often ſpoken moſt eloquently, and with as many good words, as were euer found in humane Oratorie.

Liuie. li. 8.
Plutarch.

CHAP. VIII.

Libo taketh an Iland right ouer-againſt the Hauen *of Brunduſium*; *and is beaten off* by a ſtratagem.

Caſar.

Libo, departing from Oritum, with his fleete of fifty ſhippes, came to Brunduſium, and tooke an Iland, which lieth ouer-againſt the Hauen, as a place of great importance, by which our Army muſt neceſſarily come forth: & ſhutting in all the Ports, and parts of that ſhore, as alſo ſurpriſing by his ſuddaine comming, certaine ſhippes of burthen, hee ſette all on fire, ſauing one laden vvith Corne, vvhich hee tooke along vvith him. Whereby he put our men into a great feare; and landing certaine ſouldiers and horſemen in the night time, hee diſlodged the Caualrie that vvere there in Guariſon: and ſo preuailed, through the aduantage of the Place, as hee vvrit to Pompey, that he might draw the other ſhipping on ſhore, and new trimme them; for, hee vvould vnder-take, with his fleet alone, to hinder thoſe forces from comming to Cæſar.

Antonius vvas then at Brunduſium: and truſting to the valour of the ſouldiers, armed out threeſcore Skiffes, belonging to great Shippes; and fencing them vvith hurdles and planks, put certaine choice ſouldiers in them, diſpoſing them in ſeuerall places along the ſhore: and further cõmaunded two Triremes (which hee had cauſed to bee made at Brunduſium, for the exerciſe of the ſouldiers in rowing) to goe out to the mouth of the Hauen.

Libo, perceiuing theſe to come out ſome-what looſely, and hoping to intercept them, ſent out fiue Quadriremes to attack them: which vvere no ſooner come neere vnto our ſhippes, but the old ſouldiers that were aboard, fledde backe into the Port.

The Enemy, caried on vvith a deſire of taking them, preaced after ſomewhat raſhly, and vnaduiſedly: vvhen at length, vpon a ſignall giuen, the Skiffes came ſuddainely out from all parts, ſette vpon them, and at the firſt ſhock tooke one of the Quadriremes, vvith all the oare-men and ſouldiers in her; the reſt, they compelled to flie away ſhamefully. To vvhich loſſe, this vvas further added, that they vvere kept from vvater, by the Caualry vvhich Antonius had diſpoſed along the Coaſt: through neceſsity vvherof (as alſo by reaſon of the ignominie receiued) Libo departed from Brunduſium, and gaue ouer the ſiege.

Many

Many moneths vvere now paſt, and the Winter came hard on, and yet neyther the ſhipping nor the legions, came from Brunduſium to Cæſar. And ſome opportunities ſeemed to be omitted, for that the wind was good oftētimes; which Cæſar thought they would haue taken. And the longer they ſtaied there, the ſtraighter was all the Coaſt guarded and kept, by ſuch as commaunded the fleet; beeing now in great hope to hinder their paſſage. Which they did the rather indeauour, becauſe they vvere oftentimes reproued by Letters from Pompey, for-that they did not impeach Cæſars comming at firſt: which hee did to make them the more carefull, to hinder thoſe ſupplies. And, in attending ſo from day to day an opportunity of paſſage, it vvould wexe worſe & worſe, the winds growing more eaſie and gentle.

OBSERVATIONS.

BY how much eaſier it is to keepe the out-let of one Port, then to guard the Coaſt of a large Country: by ſo much was Libo more likely to preuaile, in ſeeking to ſhut vp the Hauen of Brunduſium, to hinder theſe ſupplies from cōming vnto Cæſar; then the other, that went about to guard all the Maritimate parts of Epirus, to keepe them from landing, after they were at Sea.

But ſuch is the vncertaintie of enterpriſes of vvarre, that albeit our courſe be rightly ſhapen, yet it doth often faile of leading vs to that which is deſired. For, howſoeuer hee was poſſeſſed of this Iland, that lay thwart the mouth of the Hauen, and had thruſt out the guard of horſemen, and ſo became confident of blocking vp the Port: yet there was means found by the aduerſe Partie, to giue him ſuch an affront, as made him quit the place with more diſhonour, then could be recompenced by any thing he got.

Incerta ſunt res bellicæ. Thucid.

CHAP. IX.

Cæſars ſupplies paſſe ouer into Greece, *and take landing.*

CAeſar, troubled at theſe things, vvrit very ſharply to them at Brunduſium, not to omit the opportunity of the next good vvind, but to put to Sea, and to ſhape their courſe to Oricum, or to the Coaſt of Apolonia; becauſe there they might runne their ſhips on ground: & theſe places were freeſt from Guardes, by reaſon they could not ride farre from the Ports.

Caſar.

They, according to their accuſtomed courage and valour (Marcus Antonius, and Fuſius Calenus directing the buſineſſe, and the Souldiours them-ſelues beeing forvvard there-vnto, as refuſing no danger for Cæſars ſake) hauing

got a South vvind, waied Anchor, and the next day, paſſed by Apolonia and Dyrrachium: but beeing diſcouered from the Continent, Quintus Coponius, Admirall of the Rhodian Nauie, lying at Dyrrachium, brought his ſhippes out of the Hauen. And as he had almoſt (vpon a ſlack wind) ouer-taken our men, the ſame South wind began at length to blowe ſtiffe, by which meanes they eſcaped: yet did not he deſiſt from purſuing them; but was in hope, by the labour & induſtrie of the Mariners, to ouer-way the force of the tempeſt, and followed them, notwithſtanding they were paſt Dyrrachium, with a large wind. Our men vſing the fauour of Fortune, were neuertheleſſe afraid of the Enemies Nauie, if the wind ſhould chance to ſlacke: & hauing got the Port called Nimphaum, three miles beyond Liſſus, they put in with their ſhippes.

This Port lay ſheltered from the South-weſt vvind, but was not ſafe from a South vvind: howſoeuer; they accounted an ill roade leſſe dangerous then the Enemies fleete: & yet they were no ſooner put in, but the wind (which had blown ſoutherly for two daies together) did now moſt happily come about to the South-weſt.

And heere a man may ſee the ſuddaine alteration of Fortune; for, they which of late ſtood in feare of a dangerous Roade, were now by that occaſion, receiued into a ſafe harbour: and thoſe which threatned danger to them, vvere forced to bethinke themſelues of their owne ſafetie. So that the time thus changing, ſaued our Partie, and ſunke theirs. Inſomuch, as ſixteene of the Rhodian ſhippes were all ſhaken in peeces, and periſhed with ſhipwrack; and of the great number of oare-men and ſouldiers, part were daſhed againſt the Rocks & ſlaine, and part were taken vp by our men: all which, Cæſar ſent home in ſafetie. Two of our ſhippes comming ſhort, and ouer-taken with the night, and not knowing where the reſt had taken ſhore, ſtoode at an Anchor, right ouer againſt Liſſus. Them did Otacilius Craſſus, Gouernour of Liſſus, goe about to take with Skiffes, and other little ſhippes, which he had prepared for that purpoſe; & withall, treated with them, of yeelding themſelues, promiſing life and ſafety, vpon that condition.

One of the ſhippes carried two hundred and twentie men, of the legion made of young ſouldiers; in the other, vvere leſſe then two hundred old Souldiers. And heere a man may ſee, vvhat aſſurance and ſafety conſiſteth in courage and valour of mind; for, the new made ſouldiers, terrified with the multitude of ſhippes that came againſt them, and ſpent vvith Sea-ſickneſſe, vpon oath made not to receiue any hurt, did yield themſelues to Otacilius: vvho, being brought all vnto him, vvere contrary to his oath, moſt cruelly ſlaine in his ſight. But the ſouldiers of the old Legions (howſoeuer afflicted vvith the inconuenience of the tempeſt, and noiſomneſſe of the Pumpe) did not ſlacke any thing of their ancient valour: for, hauing dravven out the firſt part of the night in conditions of treatie, as though they meant to yeeld themſelues, they compelled the Maiſter to runne his ſhippe a-ſhore: and hauing got a conuenient place, they there ſpent the reſt of the night.

As ſoone as it was day, Otacilius ſent foure hundred horſe, which had the guard of that part of the coaſt, with others of the guarizon, to aſſault and take them:

them: but they, valiantly defending themſelues, ſlew diuers of them; and ſo got to our men in ſafetie. Where-vpon, the Romaine Cittizens, reſiding in Liſſus (vvhich towne, Cæſar had formerly giuen them to bee kept and guarded) receiued-in Antonius, and aſsiſted him with all things needfull. Otacilius, fearing himſelfe, fled out of the towne, and came to Pompey.

Antonius ſent backe the greateſt part of the shippes that had brought ouer his troopes (vvhich were three legions of old ſouldiers, one of new ſouldiers, and eight hundred horſe) to tranſport the reſt of the ſouldiers, and horſe, that remained at Brunduſium: leauing the Pontones, which are a kind of French ſhipping, at Liſſus; to this end, that if happely Pompey, thinking Italy to be emptie and vnfurniſhed, ſhould cary ouer his Army thither, Cæſar might haue meanes to follow him: and withall, ſent Meſſengers ſpeedily to Cæſar, to let him knowe vvhere the Armie vvas landed, and what men he had brought ouer.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Dolus an virtus quis in hoſte requirat, is not ſo iuſtifiable by the lawes of true vertue, as that of Achilles; who profeſſed to hate that man more then the gates of hell, that promiſed one thing, and purpoſed another. Neither do the Iuriſtes conclude otherwiſe; hauing, for the more apparencie of truth, drawne it to a Queſtion, *An perfidia in perfidum vti, Ius ſit?* alleaging Labienus practice, againſt Comius of Arras, together with that which admitteth no Aunſwer, that their example ſtandeth as a preſident, to deale with them, as they deale with others. But, to falſifie religion, as Otacilius did, and to make an oath the Broaker of vnworthy ends, is abhorred by God and Man, and accordingly ſucceedeth.

Aenead. 2. Homer 9. Iliad.

Hirtius lib. 8. de bello Gallico.

The moſt remarkeable inſtance in this kind, is that (which is to be vviſhed were forgotten) of Lewis King of Hungaria: who, hauing concluded the honourableſt peace, that euer Chriſtian Prince had before that time made, with any of the Turkiſh Sultanes, and confirmed the ſame by an oath, taken vpon the holy Euangeliſt, did neuertheleſſe, at the perſwaſion of Iulian, a Cardinall (who tooke vpon him, by power from the Pope, to diſannull the league, & abſolue him from the oath) breake the peace, & gaue battell to Amurath at Varna (where the Infidell tooke occaſion impiouſly to blaſpheme, in calling for vengeance on ſuch, as in their deedes had denied the God-head of their moſt ſacred and bleſſed Lord) and was there ſlaine, to the vtter ruine of his kingdome, and the reproche of Chriſtian Name. Neither did the Cardinall eſcape the vengeance, which his treacherie had drawne vpon that roiall Armie: but beeing there wounded vnto death, was found lying in the high way, by *Gregorie Sanoſe*, ready to giue vp the ghoſte; & ſeemed but to ſtay to take with him, the bitter curſes of ſuch as paſſed by, flying from the battell, as the due reward of his perfidious abſolution.

Vladiſlaus.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

Audaces fortuna iuuat. Virtus omnia poteſt. Virtute faciendũ eſt, quicquid in rebus bellicis eſt gerendum.

IN caſe of difficultie and hazard (as Cæſar noteth) there is alwaies great helpe in a good courage. For, whether it be, that good hap attendeth a valourous cariage, or that vertue bee able to remoue all oppoſition, or what other cauſe there is beſides; but thus it falleth out, that ſuch as entertaine a noble reſolution, are euer ſafeſt in extreamitie of perill; and in ſteed of loſſe, get honour and renowne.

Plutarch.

Braſidas found a Mouſe amongſt dried figs, which bit him ſo that hee let her goe, and there-vpon ſaid, to thoſe that ſtood by; That there was nothing ſo little, that could not ſaue it ſelfe, if it had a hart to defend it ſelfe againſt ſuch as aſſaulted it.

6 Metamorpho.

Nunquam ita quiſquam bene ſubducta ratione ad vitam fuit, quin res, ætas, vſus, ſemper aliquid adportet noui. Teren. Adelp.

Multi homines, pauci viri. Herod. lib. 7.

And heerein we may obſerue that to be true, which the Poet hath deliuered; *Seris venit vſus ab annis:* Time and Practice, doe much auaile to perfit this courage in the mindes of Men of Warre; as knowing afore-hand the weight of ſuch labours, and hauing incountered the like dangers, euen to the redeeming of themſelues from the iawes of death. Whence it is, that the Comick ſaith, No man can poſsibly come ſo well furniſhed to any courſe of life, but that time and experience doe alwaies teach him what he knew not before: where-as others, that goe rawlie to worke, are ſo daunted with the vnuſuall lookes of war, as they (forgetting the profeſsion of Armes) doe run head-long into the danger they ſeeke to auoid; beeing able to giue no other account of their ſeruice, but that they marched Many bodies, and but a few Men.

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

Liuie ſaith, that the Romaines at the ſiege of Veiente, being out of humane hope, turned their eyes to Fate, and the hope they had in Deſtinie.

PLutarch, Valerius Maximus, Appian, Suetonius, and Lucan, doe all write, that Cæſar, impatient of the ſtay of his forces at Brunduſium, imbarked himſelfe in a ſmall Frigat, of twelue oares, diſguiſed in the habit of a ſlaue, and put to ſea to fetch his Legions; notwithſtanding, all the Coaſt ſwarmed with the Enemies ſhipping: but meeting with a cõtrarie wind, which would not ſuffer him to get out of the Riuer Anius, the Maiſter commaunded the Mariners to caſt about, and get to ſhore. Wherevpon, Cæſar diſcouering himſelfe, incouraged him to goe forward, for-that he carried Cæſar and his fortunes.

The Maiſter, forgetting all danger, made out againe, to get to ſea; but was by force of the tempeſt driuen to returne, to Cæſars great griefe. And albeit there is no mention made heereof in theſe Commentaries, yet the authoritie of ſo many graue Authors, is not to be contemned.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Cæſar haſteth to meet with Antonius, and *preuenteth Pompey.*

Cæſar.

Cæſar and Pompey, had both intelligence, almoſt at one inſtant of time, of Antonius fleet; for, they ſaw it paſſe by Apolonia, and Dyrrachium, and directed their iourneys along the Coaſt after them: but they vnderſtood not for a vvhile vvhere they were landed. Howbeit, hauing notice thereof, either of them tooke a contrarie reſolution. For, Cæſar purpoſed to ioyne with Antonius, as ſoone as poſſibly he might: and Pompey reſolued to hinder their meeting, and by ambuſhments (if he could) to ſet vpon them at vnawares.

The ſame day, either of them drew their Armie out of their ſtanding Camps, vpon the Riuer Apſus: Pompey ſecretly, and by night; Cæſar openly, and by day: but Cæſar had the greater circuit to fetch, and a longer iourney to goe vp the Riuer, to find a Foord. Pompey, hauing a ready way, and no Riuer to paſſe, made towards Antonius by great iourneys: and when hee vnderſtood that hee came neere vnto him, choſe a conuenient place, and there beſtowed his forces; keeping euery man vvithin the Campe, and forbidding fires to be made, that his cõming might be the more hidden. Whereof Antonius beeing preſently aduertiſed by the Greekes, he diſpatched Meſſengers to Cæſar, and kept himſelfe one day vvithin his Campe. The next day, Cæſar came vnto him. Vpon notice thereof, Pompey left that place; leaſt he ſhould be intrapped betweene two Armies, and came with all his forces to Aſparagus (which appertained to them of Dyrrachium) and there, in a conuenient place, pitched his Campe.

OBSERVATIONS.

WHere two Armies are in a Countrey, and one of them hath ſuccours comming to renforce them, each of thoſe Parties, are by the example of theſe glorious Commaunders (*cæteris paribus*) to make towards thoſe ſuccours: the one, to cut them off; and the other, to keepe thẽ ſtanding. And to that end, it ſuted Pompeis condition to go ſecretly; howſoeuer Cæſar noteth it, as a touch to his valour: ſo on the other ſide, it ſtood not onely well enough with Cæſars Party, to goe openly, but alſo was an argument of his courage and magnanimity, and might raiſe him eſtimation in the opinion of the Greekes. The diſaduantage which Pompey could take thereby, was the danger to bee incloſed with Armies: which he, foreſeeing, auoided.

CHAP.

749.b

CHAP. XI.

Scipios preparation in Aſia, to come into Greece, to aſsiſt Pompey.

Cæſar. A hill, ſeparating Syria from Cilicia.

ABout this time, Scipio, hauing ſuſtained diuers loſſes, neere the Mount Amanum, did neuertheleſſe call himſelfe by the name of Imperator; and, there-vpon, commaunded great ſummes of money to be leuied of the Citties and Potentates of thoſe quarters: taking, frõ the generall Receiuers of that Prouince, all the Moneies that vvere in their hands for two yeeres paſt, and commaunding them to disburſe (by vvay of loane) the receit for the yeere to come; and requiring horſemen to be leuied throughout all the Prouince. Hauing gathered theſe together, hee left the Parthians, being neere Enemies vnto him (vvho a little before had ſlaine M. Craſſus, the Generall, and beſieged M. Bibulus) and drew the ligions out of Syria; beeing ſent ſpecially thither to keepe and ſettle that Prouince, much amuzed through feare of the Parthian vvarre.

At his departure, ſome ſpeeches vvere giuen-out by the ſouldiers, that if they vvere ledde againſt an Enemy, they vvould goe; but againſt a Cittizen and Conſull, they would not beare Armes. The Army beeing brought to Pergamum, and there guarizoned for that Winter in diuers rich Citties, he diſtributed great largeſſe and gifts; and for the better aſſuring of the ſouldier vnto him, gaue them certaine Citties to rifle.

Columnaria Oſtiaria. In the meane time, he made bitter and heauie exactions of money, throughout all the Prouince: for, he put a tribute vpon ſlaues and free-men by pole, ſet impoſitions vpon the pillars and doores of houſes, as alſo vpon graine, oare-men, armes, ingines, and cariages; and whatſoeuer had a name, was thought fitte to yeeld money, by way of impoſition: and that not onely in Citties and Townes, but almoſt in euery Village and Caſtle: wherein, he that caried himſelfe moſt cruelly, was held both the vvorthieſt man, and the beſt Cittizen.

The Prouince was at that time full of Officers and Commaundements, peſtered with Ouer-ſeers and Exactors: vvho, beſides the money leuied by publique authoritie, made their particular profit by the like exactions. For, they gaue-out, they vvere thruſt out of their houſes, and their Countrey, and in want of all neceſsaries; to the end they might with ſuch pretences, couer their wicked & hatefull courſes. To this vvas added, the hard and heauie Vſury, which oftentimes doth accompany vvarre, when all moneyes are drawen and exacted to the publique: vvherein the forbearance of a day, vvas accounted a diſcharge for the vvhole. Whereby it happened, that in thoſe two yeeres, the whole Prouince vvas ouer-growne with debts: and yet, for all that, they ſtuck not to leuie round ſums of money, not onely from the Cittizens of Rome, inhabiting in that Prouince; but alſo, vpon euery Corporation, and particular Cittie: which they gaue out, vvas

by

by way of loane, according to a Decree of Senate, commaunding the Receiuers to aduaunce the like ſumme by way of loane, for the yeere to come.

Moreouer, Scipio gaue order, that the Moneis vvhich of old time had beene treaſured-vp in the Temple of Diana at Epheſus, ſhould be taken out, with other Images of that Goddeſſe: but as hee came into the Temple (hauing called vnto him many of the Senators that were there preſent) hee receiued a Diſpatch from Pompey, That Caſar had paſſed the Sea with his legions; and that, ſetting all things apart, hee ſhould haſten to him with his Armie. Theſe Letters beeing receiued, he diſmiſſed ſuch as he had called vnto him, and beganne to diſpoſe of his iourney into Macedonia, ſetting forward vvithin a few daies after: by vvhich accident, the Treaſure at Epheſus was ſaued.

OBSERVATIONS.

IT is Seneca his conceit, that Iron, beeing of that excellent vſe in things pertaining to Mans life, and yet ſo much vnder-valued to Gold and Siluer, will admit of no peace, as often as there is queſtion of Money; but raiſeth continuall garboiles & extreamities, as a reuenge that the World doth miſvalue it: and fell out as true in thoſe better Ages, as it dooth in theſe daies, that are of baſer Metall. For, what greater violences in the State of Rome, then thoſe concerning Tributes and Impoſitions? A particular whereof, may be made out of this Chapter. For, firſt, wee find a Tribute by pole, without reſpect of ſtate or condition; which they called *Capitatio.* And then a ſecond, as grieuous as that, beeing a taxe laid vpon euerie dore in a houſe, which they called *Oſtiaria:* whereof Tully maketh mention, in the eight Epiſtle of his third Booke. And laſtly, an other vpon euery piller in a mans houſe, which they called *Columnaria:* mentioned likewiſe by Cicero, *Columnarium vide vt nullum debeamus.* Howbeit, Alciatus vnderſtandeth this, to be that we read in Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus, That when Treaſure failed at the ſiege of Modena, they laid an Impoſition vpon euery tile that was found on the Senators houſes in Rome: which gaue the *Trium-virat* occaſion, to make the tiles as heauie to the reſt of the Romaine Cittizens; and this, ſaith he, was called *Columnaria.*

Propter Aurum et Argentum nunquã pacem facit ferrum. li. 14. Epiſt. 93. Ferrum omnis artis inſtrumentum. Aurum et argentum mortis Mancipia. Epicletus.

Capitatio.

Oſtiaria.

Columnaria. 13 ad Atticum. Epiſt. 1.

Some Popes, out of their occaſions, haue gone farre in this kind, & found meanes to lay Impoſitions vpon all things pertaining to the vſe of man. Inſomuch as Paſquill begged leaue to dry his ſhirt in the Sunne, before there were an Impoſition laid vpon the Light. The rule is diuerſly giuen in this behalfe, That the Fiske doe not ſwell aboue his proportion. Alexander is commended for making his Subiects the keepers of his Treaſure. And Claudianus, giueth Honorius this Elogium;

Nec tua priuatis creſcunt æraria damnis.

Baſilius aduiſeth, that money thus raiſed, be not at any time dipped, either in the teares or in the blood of the people. But Tully draweth it to a more certaintie, by making Neceſsitie the ſquare of ſuch cõmaunds. *Da operam* (ſaith hee)

In the Papacie of Sixt. Quintus.

Fiſcus reipub. lien: quòd eo creſcente, artus reliqui tabeſcunt. Sext. Aurelius Victor.

In Paranet.

2 *De offic.*

hee) *vt omnes intelligant, ſi ſalui eſſe velint, neceſsitati eſſe parendum.* And ſo the opening of priuate mens purſes, is but to keepe them ſhut and ſafe, from ſuch Enemies as would conſume all; according as Scipio once aunſwered, when the Romaines blamed him, for ſpending their Treaſure: Howſoeuer, Scipio knew well what he did, in getting into his hand ſuch ſtore of Treaſure; for, Warre cannot any way be maintained, but with plenty of Money: neither can any State continue, if the reuenew which ſupporteth the Common-weale, bee abated; as Tacitus hath well obſerued, *Diſſoluitur imperium, ſi fructus quibus reſpub. ſuſtinetur diminuantur.*

Plutarch. Bella ſuſtentantur pecuniarum abundantia. Dion. Halicar. lib. 6.

Annal. 13.

CHAP. XII.

Cæſar ſendeth forces into Theſſalia, Aetolia *and Macedonia; Scipio commeth* into Greece.

Cæſar.

Cæſar, beeing ioyned vvith Antonius, drew that legion out of Oricum, which hee had formerly lodged there, to keepe the Sea-coaſt; and thought it expedient to make triall of the Prouinces, and to aduaunce further into the Countrey. And, vvhere-as Embaſſadours came vnto him out of Theſſalia & Aetolia, aſſuring, that if hee would ſend forces to protect them, the Cities of thoſe Prouinces would readily obay what hee commaunded: Hee ſent L. Caſsius Longinus, with the legion of young ſouldiers, called the ſeauen and twentith, and two hundred horſe, into Theſſalia: and C. Caluitius Sabinus, with fiue cohorts, and a few horſe, into Aetolia; exhorting them ſpecially, to take a courſe for prouiſion of Corne in thoſe two Prouinces, which lay neere at hand.

Que libera appellabatur.

*He ſent likewiſe Cn. Domitius Caluinus, with two legions, the eleuenth and the twelfth, and fiue hundred horſe into Macedonia: of which Prouince (for that part thereof, which is called Franke or Free) Menedemus, a principall man of that Countrey, beeing ſent as an Embaſſador, had profeſſed exceeding great forwardneſſe on their behalfe. Of theſe, Caluitius, vpon his comming, was entertained with great affection of the Aetolians: and, hauing caſt the Guariſon of the Enemy out of Caledone and * Naupactum, became Maiſter of all Aetolia. Caſsius arriued vvith the legion in Theſſalia; and finding there two Factions, was accordingly receiued, with contrary affections.*

** Lepanto.*

Egeſaſetus, a man of ancient power and authoritie, fauoured Pompeis partie: and Petreius, a man of a moſt noble houſe, endeauoured by all meanes, to deſerue vvell of Cæſar. At the ſame time alſo, came Domitius into Macedonia: and as Embaſſadours began to come thicke vnto him, from diuers States of that Prouince, it was told him, that Scipio vvas at hand with the legions, and came with great

great fame and opinion of all men: vvhich is oftentimes a fore-runner of nouelties. He, making no ſtay in any part of Macedonia, marched directly with great furie towards Domitius; and when he came vvithin twenty miles of him, turned his courſe ſuddainely, to Caſsius Longius, in Theſſalia: which he did ſo ſpeedilie, that newes came together of his comming, and of his arriuall. For, to the end he might march with greater expedition, he left M. Fauonius at the Riuer Haliacmon (vvhich diuideth Macedonia from Theſſalia) vvith eight cohorts, to keepe the cariages of the legions: vvhere hee commaunded them to build a Fort.

In Macedonia, quæ velint ſibi candida naſci, ad Haliacmon ducere, quæ nigra et fuſca ad Axium.

At the ſame time, the Caualrie of King Cottus, which vvas wont to keepe in the Confines of Theſſalia, came flying ſuddainely to Caſsius Campe: whereat, he beeing aſtoniſhed (vnderſtanding of Scipios comming, and ſeeing the horſemen, whom he thought to be his) made towards the hills which incloſe Theſſalia, and from thence marched towards Ambracia. And, as Scipio made haſte to follow after, Letters ouer-tooke him, ſent from Fauonius, that Domitius was at hand with the legions, and that he could not hold the place wherein hee was left, without Scipios helpe.

Vpon the receit of vvhich Letters, Scipio altered both his purpoſe and his iourney; & leauing Caſsius, made haſte to help Fauonius: ſo that continuing his iourney night and day, he came vnto him in very good time. For, as the duſt of Domitius Armie, approaching, was ſeene to riſe, the fore-runners of Scipio his Armie was likewiſe diſcouered. Whereby it happened, that as Domitius induſtry did helpe Caſsius, ſo did Scipio his ſpeede ſaue Fauonius.

OBSERVATIONS.

CAeſar, beeing now ready with his forces to proceed againſt Pompey; the firſt thing he did, was to make triall of the Prouinces of Greece, and to get their fauour and aſsiſtance, for his better furtherance in conteſting his Aduerſarie. For, as an Armie ſtandeth firme by two ſpeciall meanes, firſt, in themſelues, as they are able to reſiſt any oppoſing force; and ſecondly, through the fauour of the Country, wherein they are ingaged: ſo, on the other ſide, their ouer-throw either proceedeth frō their owne weakeneſſe; or otherwiſe, when the Prouinces adioyning, doe refuſe ſuch mutuall reſpects, as may relieue the wants of a conſuming multitude. And therfore, hauing got all the forces together which he looked for, or could any way expect, hee ſent out to try the affection of the Countrey, and to alter that in a moment, which Pompey had beene ſettling for a yeere together, and then reſolued to attack him neerer.

And doubtleſſe, if Scipio had not by chaunce interrupted their courſe, vpon his comming out of Aſia, to aide Pompey, they had as eaſily got all Theſſalia and Macedonia, as they did Aetolia: and were neuertheleſſe ſo ordered & diſpoſed, as they got more honour of Scipio, then he could win of them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

The Paſſages betweene Domitius and Scipio.

Caſar.

Scipio aboade two daies in his ſtanding Campe, vpon the Riuer Haliacmon, which ranne betweene him and Domitius Campe. The third day, as ſoone as it began to be light, he paſſed his Armie ouer the Riuer by a Foord, and incamped himſelfe. The next day in the morning, he imbatteled his forces before the front of his Campe. Domitius, in like manner, made no difficultie of bringing out his legions, reſoluing to fight. And whereas there lay a field of ſixe miles, betweene both the Campes, he led his troopes imbattelled vnder Scipios Campe; who neuertheleſſe refuſed to moue any iote from his ſtanding: yet for all that, Domitius ſouldiers were hardly kept from giuing battell: but ſpecially a Riuer, lying vnder Scipios Campe, with broken and vneaſie bankes, did hinder them at that time.

Scipio, vnderſtanding of their alacrity, and deſire to fight; ſuſpecting it might happen, that the next day he ſhould be forced to fight againſt his will, or vvith great diſhonour keepe himſelfe vvithin his Campe, hauing vvith great expectation in the beginning, gone on raſhly, and vnaduiſedly, was now dishonoured vvith a reproachfull end. For, in the night time he roſe, vvithout anie noiſe or vvarning for the truſsing vp of the baggage; and paſsing the Riuer, returned the ſame vvay he came: and in an eminent place, neere vnto the Riuer, he pitched his Campe.

A few daies after, he laid an ambuſhment of horſemen in a place, vvhere our men had formerly accuſtomed to forrage. And, as Q. Varus, Generall of the horſe in Domitius Army, came out according to his ordinary vſe, they ſet vpon him at a ſuddaine: but our men did valiantly ſuſtaine the on-ſet; and euery man betaking himſelfe ſpeedily to his ranke, they altogether of their owne accord, charged the Enemy: and hauing ſlaine foure-ſcore, they put the reſt to flight, vvith the loſſe onely of two of their men.

OBSERVATIONS.

IT appeareth heere, that to ſhew a readineſs and reſolution to fight, vpon ſuch grounds as are iuſtifiable by the rules of Warre, is no ſmall aduantage to the proſperous cariage of the ſame. For, albeit Scipio was great in his owne ſtrength, and as great in the opinion and expectation of men: yet when he found ſuch an alacritie in the Enemie, to giue and take blowes, and a deſire to entertaine ſeriouſly all occaſions of giuing battell; he was ſo farre from proſecuting what he had pretended, as hee rather

rather chose the fortune of a safe retreit, and consequentlie, to turne the aduantage which the world in opinion had giuen to his Armie, to his owne reproach, and disaduantage: vvhere-as on the other side, to bee found for the most part vnwilling to hazard the triall of a Field, or indisposed to fight vpon any occasion, doth inuite an Enemie to attempt that, which otherwise hee would not; and giueth them courage to beate him from all his purposes, as knowing the resolution of their Aduersarie, and the meanes they haue, either to take or leaue at their pleasure.

CHAP. XIIII.

Domitius draweth Scipio to a losse, by an Ambushment. Young Pompeis attempt vpon Oricum.

AFter these things, Domitius hoping that Scipio might be drawne to fight, hee made as though hee vvere in great vvant and scarcitie of Corne: and there-vpon, rising from the place vvherein hee vvas incamped, vvith the vsuall cry of remooving, according to the custome of Warre, and hauing marched three miles, hee lodged all his Armie, with the Caualrie, in a conuenient and secret place. Cæsar.

Scipio, beeing readie to follow after, sent his horsemen, and a great part of his light-armed souldiers, to discouer vvhat way Domitius tooke: vvho, marching forward, as the first troopes came within the Ambushment (suspecting some-what by the neighing of the horses) fell backe againe. Those that followed after, seeing the former troopes so suddainly to retire, stood still.

Our men, finding themselues discouered, & thinking it in vaine to attend the rest, hauing got two troopes of horse within their reache, they contented themselues vvith them: amongst vvhom, was M. Opimius, the Generall of the horse. The rest of those two troopes, they either put to the sword, or tooke aliue, and brought them to Domitius.

Cæsar, as is before shewed, hauing vvithdrawne the Guarizons from along all the Sea-coast, left onely three Cohorts at Oricum, for the defence of the Towne: and to them, he committed the custodie and safe keeping of the Gallies, vvhich he had brought out of Italy; whereof Acilius the Legate had the charge, being left Gouernour of the towne. Hee, for the better securitie of the shipping, had drawen all the fleet into a back angle, behind the towne, and there fastened them to the shore: and in the mouth of the Hauen, had sunke a great ship, and set another by her, vpō which he built a towre, to keepe the entrance of the Port; & filled the same with souldiers, to defend the Hauen from any suddaine attempt.

Vpon notice vvhereof, Pompeis ſonne, beeing Admirall of the Egyptian fleete, came to Oricum, and with many haulſers and hookes, waied vp the ſunk ſhippe; and aſſaulted the other ſhippe, ſet by Acilius for the defence of the Hauen, with ſhippes vvherein hee had made towres, which ſtood by counterpoize, that hee might fight vvith aduantage of height, ſupplying continually freſh men: and attempting alſo, as well from the Land ſide, to take the towne by ſcaling Ladders, as by Sea vvith his Nauie; to the end he might diſtract and diſmember the forces vvithin.

*In the end, with extreame labour, and multitude of vveapons, hee ouercame our Partie, and tooke the ſhippe, hauing caſt out ſuch as had the guard: who fled all away vvith Skiffes and Boates. At the ſame time, beeing likewiſe ſeized of a ſmall height, on the other ſide of the towne, in the nature of a Pene-inſule, hee conuaied ouer foure ſmall *Gallies, with Rollers and Leuers, into the inner part of the Harbor, lying behind the towne; inſomuch, as ſetting on each ſide vpon the Gallies tied vnto the ſhore, emptie & vnfurniſhed, he caried foure of them away, and burned the reſt.*

* Biremes.

This beeing done, he left D. Lælius, whom hee had taken from the Egyptian fleete, to keepe the paſſage, that no victualls, or other prouiſions, might bee brought into the towne, either from Helide or Amantia: and hee himſelfe, going to Liſſus, found thirty ſhippes of burthen, vvhich Antonius had left vvithin that Hauen, and ſet them all on fire. And as hee vvent about to take Liſſus, the ſouldiers which Cæſar had put there for a guariſon to the Towne, together with the Romaine Cittizens, & the townſmen thereof, did ſo vvell defend the ſame, that after he had continued there three daies, and loſt a few men in the ſiege, he left the place, without effecting any thing.

OBSERVATIONS.

AN Ambuſhment is eaſily at all times laid: but to do it ſo that it may not bee ſuſpected, and in ſuch manner, that the Enemie may fall into the danger thereof, is that which is to be aymed at therein. And therefore, to giue the better colour to ſuch deſignes, the tricke hath beene to pretend feare (and ſo flight) or want of Corne, or ſome-what elſe, to draw the Enemie to follow after, with more boldneſſe and reſolution. And ſo to haue it wel done, there muſt be two deceits to aſſiſt each other; as in this of Domitius, to make ſhew of remouing, through ſcarcitie and want: and then to lie in waite for an aduantage: According to that of the Spaniard; *Aun Traydor, dos Aleuoſos.* For, the preuention of ſuch ſnares of deceit, the rule is generally giuen by Onoſander, That the departure or falling away of an Enemie, is alwaies to bee ſuſpected.

Oportet hoſtium diſceſſiones ſemper ſuſpectas habere. Cap. 5.

And for the more ſecuritie therein, experienced Commaunders haue been carefull before they ſtirred their Armie, to make exact diſcouerie, euen to the place

place where they intended to lodge. For, as in Phyſicke, it is the greateſt part of the cure, to know the diſeaſe: ſo in matter of war, the danger is almoſt ouer, when it is perceiued whence it may growe.

The manner obſerued in diſcoueries, hath vſually been to ſend the Parties out in three Companies or troopes; The firſt, conſiſting of a ſmall number, to beat the way at eaſe, and to range about from place to place, as ſhall be found conuenient: the ſecond Companie, beeing ſome-what ſtronger, to ſecond and relieue the firſt, if there be occaſion: and the third, able to ingage a good number of the Enemie.

And after this manner, Cyrus diſpoſed of his fore-runners: as appeareth in Zenophon. But this, being ſubiect to the conſideration of time and place, and other circumſtances, may varie, as ſhall ſeeme expedient to the wiſedome of the Generall. 5 Cyropæ.

CHAP. XV.

Cæſar marcheth towards Pompey; offereth him *battaile; cutteth him off from* Dyrrachium.

After Cæſar vnderſtood that Pompey was at Aſparagus, he marched thitherward with his Armie: and taking by the vvay the towne of the Parthinians, wherein Pompey had put a Guarizon, the third day he came to Pompey, in Macedonia, and lodged himſelfe faſt by him. The next day hee drew out his forces; and putting them in order, preſented him battaile. But vvhen he found that he would not accept thereof, hee drew backe his Army into the Campe, and bethought himſelfe of ſome other courſe. For, the next day, taking a difficult and narrow way, hee ſet forward with all his forces towards Dyrrachium: hoping either to draw Pompey to fight, or to force the towne, or at leaſt to cut him off, from all Conuoies and Munition, which vvas there ſtored vp for the vvhole prouiſion of the vvarre; as afterwards it came to paſſe. For, Pompey beeing ignorant at firſt of his purpoſe, inaſmuch as he tooke a contrarie way, thought he had been driuen thence, through ſcarcitie and want of Corne. But, beeing afterwards aduertiſed by the diſcouerers vvhat courſe hee tooke, he roſe the next day, in hope to meet him a neerer way. Which Cæſar ſuſpecting, exhorted the ſouldiers to indure a little labour with patience. And reſting a ſmall part of the night, in the morning he came before Dyrrachium, euen as the firſt troope of Pompeis Armie was diſcouered afar off: and there incamped himſelfe. Cæſar.

Pompey, beeing cut off from Dyrrachium, when hee could not accompliſh his purpoſes, fell to a ſecond reſolution, and fortified his Camp in an eminent place, called Petra: from whence there was an indifferent paſſage to the ſhippes, and ſheltered Quémque vocat collem Thaulantius incola Petram. Lucan.

ſheltered likewiſe the Hauen from certaine winds. Thither he commanded part of the ſhippes to be brought, together vvith Corne, & prouiſion of victuall, from Aſia, and ſuch other Countries as were in his obedience.

Cæſar, doubting that the warre would proue long and tedious, and deſpairing of any ſuccour of victualls from the Coaſt of Italie, for-that all the ſhore was (with great diligence) kept by Pompeis partie: And that the ſhipping which in Winter hee had made in Sicilia, Gallia, and Italia, were ſtaied and came not to him, hee diſpatched L. Canuleius, a Legate into Epirus, to make prouiſion of Corne.

And foraſmuch as thoſe Regions vvere farre off, hee appointed ſtore-houſes and Magaſins in certaine places, & impoſed cariage of Corne vpon the Countrey bordering about them. In like manner, hee commaunded, what graine ſoeuer ſhould be found at Liſſus, Parthinis, or any other place, to be brought vnto him: vvhich was very little, foraſmuch as the Countrey there-about, was rough and Mountainous, and affoorded no Corne, but that which was brought in from other places; as alſo, that Pompey had taken order in that behalfe, and a little before, had ranſacked the Parthinians, & cauſed his horſemen to carie away all the Graine, vvhich was found amongſt them.

OBSERVATIONS.

Actus actiuorũ in patientiũ ſunt diſpoſitione. Ariſtot. Metaph.

THE firſt thing that Cæſar did, after their approach neere one vnto another, was to offer battaile; as the beſt Arbitrator of the Cauſe in queſtion, and moſt fitting the vſance of the auncient Romaines. But, foraſmuch as the indeuours of ſuch as are in action, are alwaies ordered by him that is the Sufferer: and that Pompey refuſed to accept thereof, knowing himſelfe to bee much ſtronger in forces, better accommodated, hauing a farre greater partie in the Country, and the Sea wholly at his command (which aduantages, were like to end the buſineſs, without hazard of a battaile) Cæſar bethought himſelfe of ſome other project, which might take away the ſcorne of that refuſall, by vndertaking ſuch things, as much imported the ſtate of his Aduerſarie. For, in ſuch caſes, when an Enemie will not fight, ſome-what muſt be done, to caſt diſhonour, or greater inconueniences, vpon him; or at leaſt, to make ouertures of new opportunities. And therefore, hee tooke a courſe, either to draw Pompey to fight, or to force the Towne, wherin all his prouiſions of warre were ſtored vp; or other-wiſe, to cut him off from the ſame. The leaſt of which, was a ſufficient acquittance of any diſgrace, which the neglect of this offer might ſeeme to inferre; Hauing thereby occaſion to vſe that of the Poet, *Iam ſumus ergo pares.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Cæsar goeth about to beſiege *Pompey.*

Caſar.

CAeſar, beeing informed of theſe things, entered into a deliberation, vvhich he firſt tooke from the very nature of the place vvherein they vvere; for, vvhere-as Pompeis Campe vvas incloſed about vvith many high and ſteepe Hilles, hee firſt tooke thoſe Hills, and built Forts vpon them: and then, as the condition of each place would beare, hee made works of fortification, from one Fort to another, and determined to incloſe Pompey about vvith a Ditch and a Rampier. And eſpecially, vpon theſe conſiderations; for-that hee was greatly ſtraightned through want of Corne, and that Pompey beeing ſtrong in horſe, hee might vvith leſſe danger, ſupply his Army from all parts with prouiſion: as alſo to the end hee might keepe Pompey from forraging, and ſo make his Caualry vnſeruiceable in that kinde. And further, that hee might abate and vveaken the exceeding great reputation, vvhich Pompey had attained vnto amongſt forraine Nations, vvhen it ſhould bee noiſed throughout the world, that hee was beſieged by Caſar, and durſt not fight.

Pompey would by no meanes bee drawne to leaue the commoditie of the Sea, and the towne of Dyrrachium, hauing there laid vp all his prouiſion of vvarre, Armes, vveapons, Engines, of what ſort ſoeuer; beſides Corne, vvhich vvas brought from thence to his Armie by ſhipping. Neither could hee hinder Caſars fortifications, vnleſſe hee would accept of battaile, vvhich for that time he was reſolued not to doe; onely it remained, as the laſt thing hee could thinke of, to poſſeſſe himſelfe of as many Hills as he might, and to keepe as much of the Countrey as hee could, vvith good and ſtrong guard: and by that meanes, to diſtract, as much as poſſiblie hee might, Caſars forces, as accordinglie it fell out. For, hauing made twentie foure Caſtles and Forts, hee tooke-in twentie fiue miles of the Countrey in circuit, and did forrage within that ſpace, and there cauſed many things to be ſet and planted by hand, which in the Interim, *ſerued as foode for horſes.*

And, as our men perceiued their fortifications to be caried, and continued, from one Caſtle to another, without intermiſsion; they beganne to feare, leaſt they had left ſome places to ſallie out, and ſo vvould come vpon them behind, before they were aware.

And the reaſon they made their vvorkes thus perfect, throughout the vvhole inward circuit, was, that our men might not enter in vpon them, nor circumuent them behind. But they (abounding in number of Men) exceeded in their works, hauing alſo on the inſide a leſſe compaſſe to fortifie.

7191b

And as Cæſar went about to take any place, albeit Pompey was reſolued not to fight, or interrupt him with all his forces: neuertheleſſe, hee ſent out his Archers and Slingers, of which he had great numbers; by whom many of our men were wounded, and ſtood in great feare of the arrowes: and almoſt all the ſouldiers, made them coates, either of quilt or ſtiffening, or of leather, to keep them from danger.

Ex ſubcoactis et centonibus.

To conclude, either Party vſed all force and meanes to take places, and make fortifications; Cæſar, to ſhut vp and ſtraighten Pompey what he could: & Pompey, to inlarge himſelfe, and poſſeſſe as many hills as conueniently hee might; which gaue occaſion of many skirmiſhes and encounters.

OBSERVATIONS.

WE may heere take notice, of the ſtrangeſt enterprize, that euer vvas vndertakē by a iudicious ſouldier. For, where elſe may it be read or vnderſtood, that a weaker Partie, went about to beſiege a ſtrong aduerſarie, and to incloſe a whole Country by Caſtles and Towres, and perpetuall fortifications from hill to hill; to the end he might ſhut him vp, as he lay incamped in the field? But herein appeare the infinite and reſtleſs indeauours of a Romaine ſpirit, and the workes they wrought to atchieue their owne endes: and yet not beſides the limits of reaſon. For, if that of Seneca haue any affinitie with truth, That a man is but a common, or rather contemptible thing, vnleſſe he raiſe himſelfe aboue ordinary courſes; it is more ſpecially verified in a Souldier: whoſe honour, depending vpon the ſuperlatiue degree, muſt ſeeke out projects beyond all equalitie: and the rather, vpon ſuch inducements, as are heere alleadged; which ſhew good reaſon he had to be ſo madde.

Contempta res eſt homo, niſi ſupra humana ſe erexit.

Cum ratione inſanire.

CHAP. XVII.

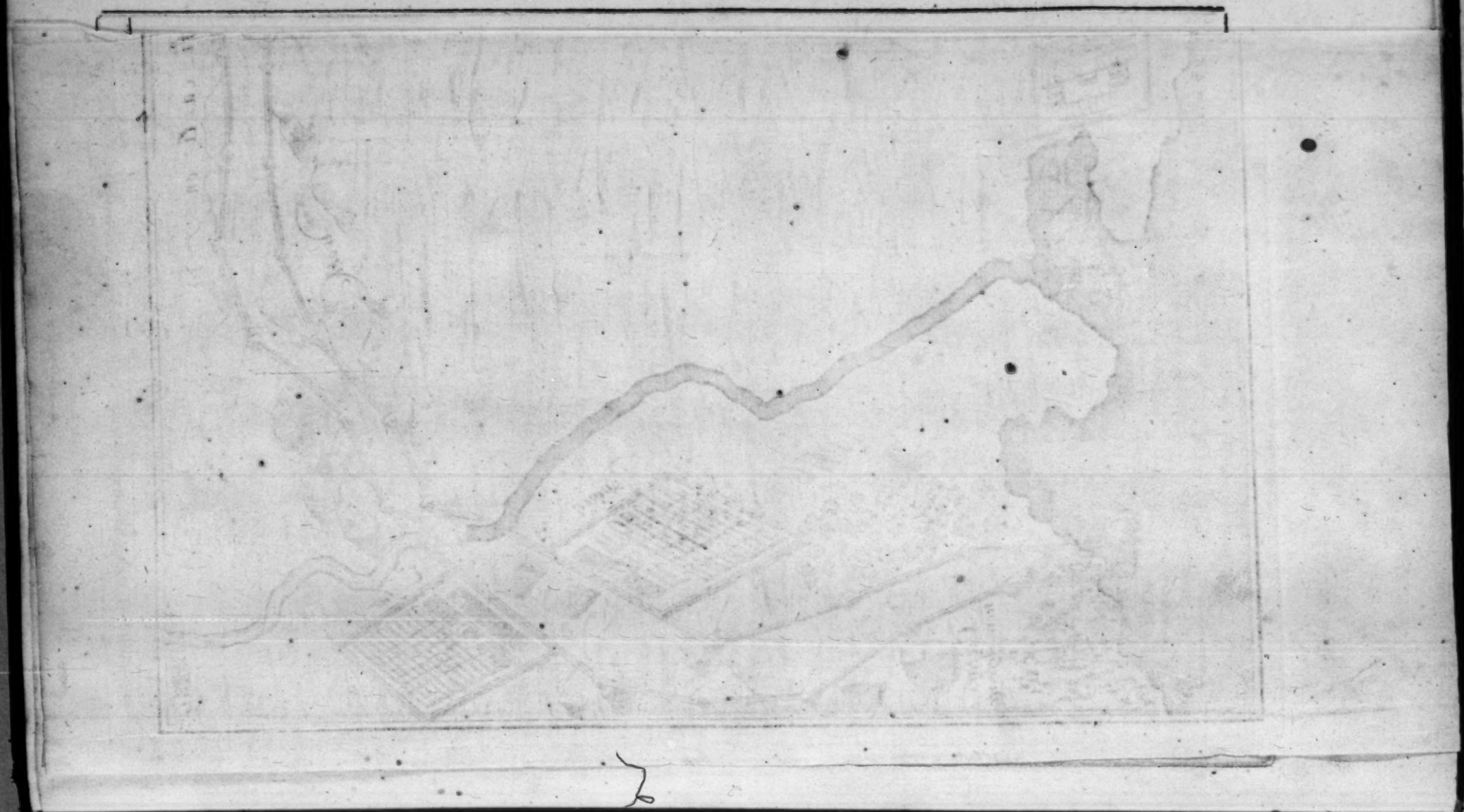
A Paſſage that happened betweene both Parties, *about the taking of a Place.*

Cæſar.

AMongſt theſe fights and incounters, it happened, as Cæſars ninth Legion had taken a certaine Place, and there began to fortifie, Pompey had poſſeſt himſelfe of the Hill next adioyning there-vnto, and beganne to hinder our men from their worke. And hauing from one ſide an eaſie acceſſe vnto it; firſt with Archers and Slingers, and afterwards with great troopes of light-armed men, and engines of Battery, hee beganne to diſturbe them in their buſineſs. Neither were our men able, at one and the ſame time, to defend themſelues, and goe on with their fortifications.

Cæſar,

7491b



fortification

Iars

peijs

Worke

Cæ

Pom

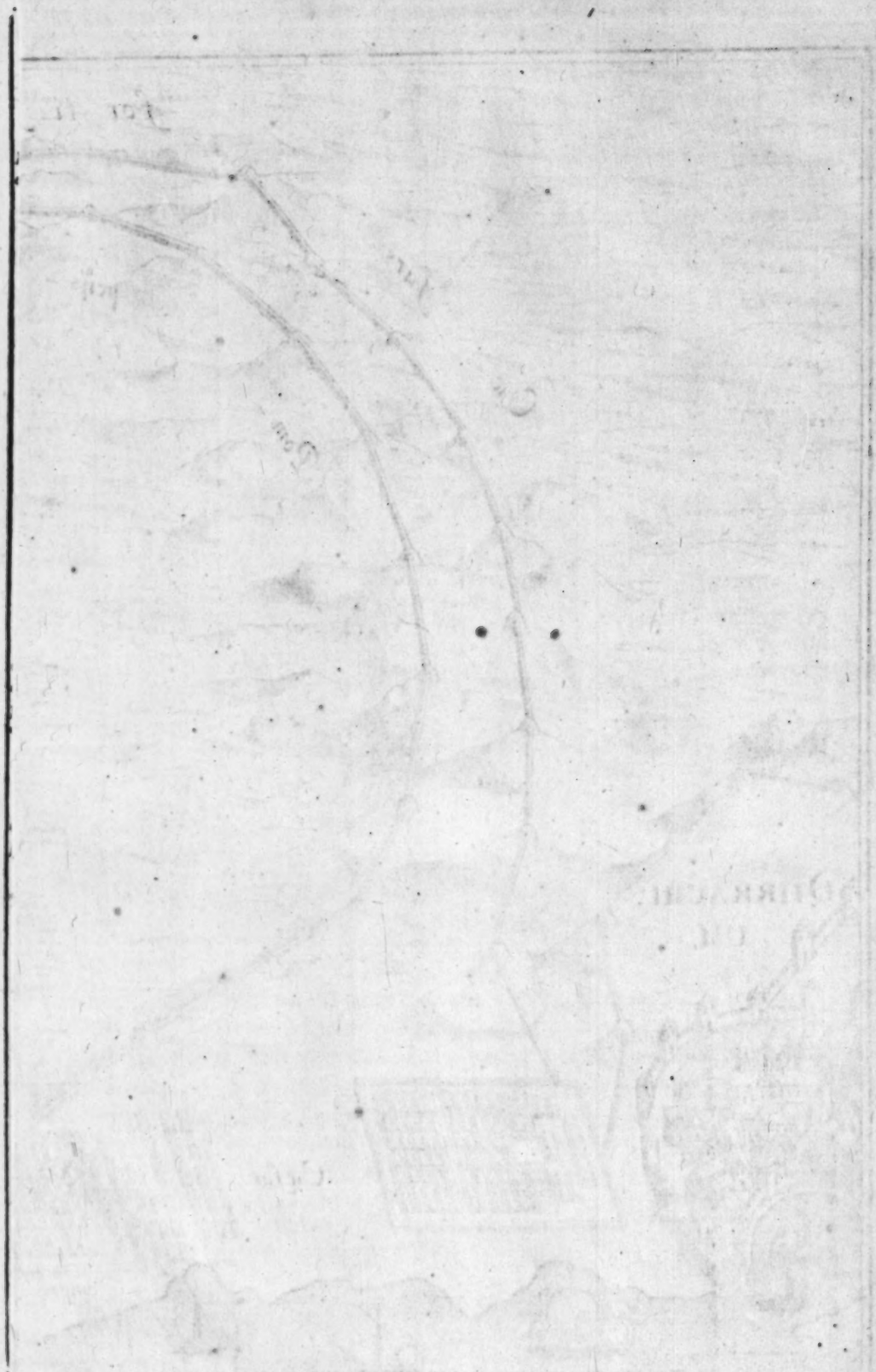
DIIRRACHI-
UM

Cæsar

Pompeij

Pompeij

Cæsars
neiu Acroath



Cæsar, seeing his souldiers wounded, and hurt from all parts, commaunded them to fall off, and leaue the Place. But, forasmuch as they were to make their retreit downe the Hill, they did the more vrge and preace vpon them; & would not suffer them to fall backe, for that they seemed to forsake the Place for feare. It is reported, that Pompey should then, in a vaine-glory, say to those that vvere about him, That he would be content to be taken for a Generall of no woorth, if Cæsars men could make any retreit from thence (where they were so rashly ingaged) without great losse.

Cæsar, fearing the retreit of his souldiers, caused Hurdles to be brought, and sette against the Enemie, in the brimme of the Hill; and behind them, sunke a trench of an indifferent latitude, and incombered the place as much as possibly hee could. Hee lodged also Slingers in conuenient places, to defend his men in their retreit.

These things beeing perfited, hee caused the legions to be drawne backe. But Pompeies partie, begaune vvith greater boldnes and insolencie, to presse our people: and putting by the Hurdles, which were set there as a Baricado, they passed ouer the ditch. Which when Cæsar perceiued, fearing, least they should rather seeme to be beaten off, then be brought backe, whereby a greater scandale might consequently ensue, hauing almost from the mid-way incouraged his men, by Antonius, who commaunded that legion, hee willed that the signe of charging the Enemy should be giuen by a Trumpet, and gaue order to assault them.

The souldiers of the ninth legion, putting themselues suddainly into order, threw their Piles: and running furiously from the lower ground, vp the steepe of the Hill, draue the Enemy head-long from them; who found the Hurdles, the long poles, and the ditches, to be a great hinderance vnto them in their retreit. It contented our men to leaue the place without losse: so that hauing slaine many of them, they came away very quietly, with the losse of fiue of their fellowes. And hauing staied about that place awhile, they tooke other hills, & perfited the fortifications vpon them.

OBSERVATIONS.

THis Chapter sheweth, that aduantage of place, and some such industrious courses, as may be fitted to the occasion, are of great consequence in extreamities of warre: but, aboue all, there is nothing more auaileable to cleere a danger, then valour. Valour is the Hercules that ouer-commeth so many Monsters: and verifieth that saying, which cannot be too often repeated; *Virtute faciendum est, quicquid in rebus bellicis est gerendum.* But of this, I haue already treated.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

The ſcarcitie which either Partie endured *in this ſiege*.

Cæſar.

THE cariage of that warre was in a ſtrange & vnuſuall manner, as well in reſpect of the great number of Forts and Caſtles, containing ſuch a circuit of ground within one continued fortification, as alſo in regard of the whole ſiege, and of other conſequents depending there-vpon. For, whoſoeuer goeth about to beſiege an other, doth either take occaſion frō the weakeneſs of the Enemy, daunted, or ſtriken with feare, or ouercome in battaile, or otherwiſe beeing moued there-vnto by ſome iniurie offered; Whereas now it happened, that they were farre the ſtronger, both in horſe and foote: and generally, the cauſe of almoſt all ſieges, is to keepe an enemy from prouiſion of Corne. But Cæſar, beeing then farre inferiour in number of ſouldiers, did neuertheleſſe beſiege an Armie of intire and vntouched forces, eſpecially at a time when they abounded with all neceſsary prouiſions: for, euery day came great ſtore of ſhipping from all parts, bringing plenty of all things needfull: neither could there any wind blowe, which was not good, from ſome part or other.

On the other ſide, Cæſar, hauing ſpent all the Corne he could get, far or neere, was in great want & ſcarcitie: and yet notwithſtanding, the ſouldiers did beare it with ſingular patience; for, they remembred how they had ſuffered the like the yeere before in Spaine, and yet with patience and labour, had ended a great and dangerous warre. They remembred, likewiſe, the exceeding great want they indured at Aleſia, and much greater at Auaricum. And yet, for all that, they vvent away Conquerers of many great Nations. They refuſed neither Barlie nor Peaſe, when it was giuen them in ſtead of Wheate. And of Cattell (whereof they were furniſhed with great ſtore out of Epirus) they made great account.

There is alſo a kind of roote, found out by them that were with Valerius, called Chara, which eaten with Milke did much reliene their want; & made withall, a kind of bread, whereof they had plenty. And when Pompeis Party happened in their Colloquies, to caſt in their teeth their ſcarcitie and miſery, they vvould cōmonly throwe this kind of bread at them, and ſcatter it in diuers places, to diſcourage them in their hopes. And now Corne beganne to be ripe, and hope it ſelfe did relieue their want, for-that they truſted to haue plenty within a ſhort time. And oftentimes the ſouldiers, in their watches and conferences, were heard to let fall ſpeeches, that they would rather eate the barke of trees, then ſuffer Pompey to eſcape out of their hands.

Beſides, they vnderſtood, by ſuch as ranne away from the Enemy, that their horſe of ſeruice could ſcarce be kept aliue; and that the reſt of their Cattell were all dead: and that the ſouldiers themſelues, were in no good health, through the narrowneſs of the place wherin they were pent: as alſo by meanes of the ill ſauor and

and multitude of dead bodies, together with continuall labour, beeing vnaccuſtomed to trauaile and paines; but eſpecially, through the extreame want of water: For, all the Riuers and Brookes of that quarter, Cæſar had either turned another way, or dammed vp with great works. And, as the places were mountainous, vvith ſome intermiſsion, and diſtinction of Valleies, in the forme and faſhion of a Caue or Denne: ſo hee ſtopped the ſame with great piles beaten into the ground, and interlaced with fagots and hurdles, and then ſtrengthened with earth, to keepe backe the vvater; Inſomuch, as they were conſtrained to ſeeke lowe grounds, and Mariſh places, and there to ſinke Welles. Which labour, they vvere gladde to vnder-take beſides their daily works, albeit theſe Welles ſtoode farre diſtant from their Guarizons, and were quickly dried vp with heat.

But Cæſars Armie was in exceeding good health, and had plenty of water, together with all kind of prouiſions, excepting Wheate; vvhich the ſeaſon of the yeere daily brought on, and gaue them hope of ſtore, Harueſt beeing ſo neere at hand.

In this new courſe of vvarre, new policies and deuices of vvarfare were inuented, and put in practice by either Partie. They, perceiuing by the fires, that our Cohorts in the night time kept watch at the works, came ſtealing out, and diſcharged all their Arrowes vpon them, and then preſently retreited. Wherewith, our men beeing warned, found out this remedy; that they made their fires in one place, and kept their watch in another.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

FOraſmuch as all matter of attempt, doth much import the fortune of a warre, wee may not omit to take notice of the reaſons heere expreſſed by Cæſar, which are the true motiues of vndertaking a ſiege. The firſt is drawen, either from the weakneſs of an Enemie, or as hee is daunted with feare, or ouer-come in battaile. For, hauing thereupon no confidence in his owne power, doth reſt himſelfe in the ſtrength of the Place, which he holdeth and poſſeſſeth: which giueth their aduerſaries occaſion, to lay ſiege vnto their Hold; and either to force them, or ſhut them vp like women.

The ſecond is, when one State hath offered iniurie to another (which alwaies importeth loſſe) beyond that which ſtood with the courſe of reſpect formerly held betweene them. For reuenge whereof, the other ſide laieth ſiege to ſome of their Townes, to repaire themſelues by taking-in the ſame.

And thirdly, the finall cauſe of all ſieges, is to keep an Enemie from victuall, and other manner of prouiſions; and ſo to take them by the belly, when they cannot take them by the eares. Which is a part ſo violent, in requiring that which is due to Nature, as it hath made the Father and the Sonne fall out for a Mouſe: as it hapned at Athens, beſieged by Demetrius. *Plutarch.*

THE

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THE ſecond thing worthy our conſideration, is the patience and deportment of Cæſars ſouldiers, in their ſo great wants and neceſsities; as firſt, in helping themſelues, with this roote called Chara, deſcribed by Dioſcorides, to be a little ſeed, taſting ſome-what like Aniſ-ſeede, good to help digeſtion, and hauing ſuch a root as a Caret, which beeing boiled, is very good meat; and is the ſame which our Phyſicians call Caraway-ſeed: where-with they ſerued their turne with ſuch contentment, as they ſeemed to haue been trained vp in the Schoole of Frugalitie; a vertue worthy of all regard, and the onely meanes to make eaſie the difficulties of warre; beeing as neceſſary for a ſouldier, as the vſe of Armes: and is that which was aimed at in the aunſwere of Cyrus, to ſhew the ſeruices in a ſouldiers diet. For, beeing demaunded, what he would haue made ready for ſupper? Bread; ſaith he; for, we will ſuppe at the Fountaine.

Lib. 3. cap. 59.

Labor militiæ aſſidua frugalitatis conſuetudine facilior eſt. Iuſtin.

Cyrus contented with bread and water. Xenophon.

Neither hath it been thought fit, to giue way to the naturall looſneſs of the ſtomacks appetite, vpon any occaſion: but, to vſe the like moderation in the time of plentie. For, Zeno tooke the aunſwere of them, that would excuſe their liberall expenſes, by their abilitie of meanes, for no better paiment, then they themſelues would haue taken the excuſe of their Cookes, for putting too much ſalt on their meat, becauſe they had ſalt enough.

Cæſar puniſhed his Baker, for giuing him better bread then his ſouldiers had. And Scipio caſsiered a cupple of Romaines at the ſiege of Carthage, for feaſting a friend in their Tent, during an aſſault. Which auſteritie of life, raiſed the Romaines to that height of honour, and made them Maiſters of the world, from the Eaſt to the Weſterne Ocean.

Æqualē oportet ſemper eſſe Imperatoris animū: mutari enim pro rerum varietatibus, mentis inſtabilis argumētum efficitur. Agapetus.

Secondly, as a conſequent of this contentment, we may note their reſolution to hold on their courſe of ſiege, purpoſing rather to eate the bark of trees, then to ſuffer Pompey to eſcape their hands. It is an excellent point in a Generall, to keepe himſelfe from irreſolution; beeing a weakeneſs of ill conſequence, and not vnlike the diſeaſe of the Staggers, variable, vncertaine, and without bottom or bound: where-as conſtancie to purpoſes, produceth noble and worthy ends.

Vnus homo nobis cunctando reſtituit Rem. Enni.

An inſtance whereof, is Fabius Maximus, who notwithſtanding the reproach and ſcandall caſt vpon him, continued firme in his determination, to the ſauing of his Country. And if it bee ſo well beſeeming a Leader, it is of much more regard in the ſouldier: eſpecially conſidering that of Xenophon; *Non facile in officio poteſt miles contineri ab eo qui neceſſaria nō ſubminiſtrat.* For, as the ſame Author obſerueth in another place, *Nullus eſt adeo fortis aut validus, qui poſsit aduerſus famem aut frigus pugnando militare.*

Li. 6. de Cyropæ.

THE

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

AMongſt all the parts of the Romaine diſcipline, their Watch deſerueth a particular deſcription; ſupplying in the Armie, the office of the naturall eye in the bodie: which is, to giue notice of any approaching danger, for the preuenting of the ſame. Polybius hath left it to poſteritie in this manner; Of each ſort of the Legionatie foote, as namely, the *Haſtati*, *Principes*, and *Triarij*, and likewiſe of the horſe, there was choſen one, out of the tenth and laſt Maniple, that was made free from watch and ward. This partie, as the Sunne began to decline, came dailie to the Tent of the Tribune, & there had giuen him a little Tablet, wherein the watch-word was writ; which Tablet, they called *Teſſera*: and then returning to his Companie, deliuered it to the Centurion of the next Maniple, and that Centurion to the next; and ſo in order, vntill it came to the firſt and chiefeſt Companie, which was lodged next vnto the Tribunes: and by the Centurion thereof, was returned to the Tribune before Sunne ſetting.

And if all the Tablets were brought-in, then did the Tribune knowe, the word was giuen to all. If any wanted, they made inquirie, and by the notes of inſcription, finding which was miſsing, they puniſhed the default as they ſaw cauſe. And this was their watch-word, by which their Party was diſtinguiſhed from an Enemie; and in likelihood (for, Polybius doth not affirme ſo much) was by the Centurion giuen, to ſuch of his Maniple as were to watch that night.

Their night watches were thus ordered; A Maniple, or Companie, was alwaies appointed to watch at the Generalls Pauilion. The Treaſurer had three watches, and euery Legat, two; A watch conſiſting of foure men, according to the generall diuiſion of their night into foure parts: each of thoſe foure hauing his turne appointed him by lotte, for the firſt, ſecond, third, or fourth watch, and the reſt ſitting by. The *Volites* kept watch without the Camp, and the *Decuries* of horſe at the gates: beſides, euery Maniple had a priuate watch within it ſelfe.

Of thoſe that were appointed to watch, a Lieutenant of each Maniple, did bring to the Tribune in the euening, ſuch as were to keepe the firſt watch of the night: and to them were deliuered leſſer Tablets, then were giuen out at firſt, called *Teſſerulæ*, appropriated to euery particular watch; one for himſelfe, and three other for his fellowes.

The truſt of going the Round, was committed to the horſemen: for, it belonged to the firſt Commaunder of horſe, in each legion, to giue order to his Lieutenant, to appoint before dinner, foure young men of his troope, to goe the Round the next night; and in the euening, to acquaint the next Commander to appoint Rounders for the night following. Theſe horſemen, being thus appointed, did caſt lots for the firſt, ſecond, third, and fourth watch; and then repaired to the Tribune: of whom they had order what, and how many watches

74916

ches to viſit, hauing receiued the watch-word before, from their Commaunder: and then all foure went to attend at the Tent of the *Primipile*, or chiefeſt Centurion of a Legion; who had the charge of diſtinguiſhing the foure watches of the night by a Trumpet.

When time ſerued, for him that was to goe the Round the firſt watch, hee went out accompanied with ſome of his friends, and viſited thoſe watches which were aſsigned vnto him. And if he found the watch-man waking, and in good order, he then tooke that Tablet from him which hee had receiued of the Tribune, and departed. But, if he found him ſleeping, or out of his place, he tooke witneſſe thereof, and departed. The ſame did the reſt of the Rounders, as their watches fell out in courſe. And as the day beganne to breake, all the Rounders brought in the Tablets to the Tribunes. And if all were brought in, there was no more to doe: but if any wanted, it was found out by the Character, what watch had failed; which beeing knowne, the Centurion was called, and commaunded to bring thoſe that were faultie. If the offence were in the watch-man, the Rounder was to proue it by witneſſes: if not, it fell vpon himſelfe; and a Councell of warre beeing preſently called, the Tribune gaue iudgement to kill him with a club. And in this manner did the Romaines keep watch in the Campe.

CHAP. XIX.

A relation of diuers incounters, that happened *betweene both Parties.*

There is a great part of the hiſtorie in this place omitted.

Cæſar.

IN the meane time, Pub. Sylla, whom Cæſar (at his departure from the Campe) had left to commaund the Armie, beeing certified thereof, came with two legions to ſuccour the Cohort: at whoſe approach, Pompeys partie was eaſily beaten off, beeing neither able to indure the ſhocke, nor ſight of our men. For, the firſt beeing put off, the reſt gaue backe, and left the place: but as our men purſued them, Sylla called them backe, & would not ſuffer them to follow farre after. Howbeit, many men thinke, that if hee vvould haue preſſed hard vpon them, the warre had ended that day. But in my opinion, he is not to be blamed; for, there is one charge and power peculiar to a Lieutenant, and another to him that commaundeth in Chiefe: the one, dooing nothing but by order and preſcription; and the other, diſpoſing euery thing as hee ſhall thinke fit.

Alia ſunt Legati partes, atque Imperatoris.

Sylla (in Cæſars abſence) hauing freed his men, was content there-vvith, & would no further ingage them in fight (which might happely prooue ſubiect to ill fortune) leaſt he ſhould ſeeme to aſſume vnto himſelfe, the place and authoritie of a Generall. There vvere certaine things that made the retreit of Pompeis men very difficult and hazardous. For, hauing aſcended from a bottome to a Hill,

Hill, they now found themselues vpon the top thereof. And as they were to make their retreit downe againe, they stood in feare of our men, preacing on thē from the higher ground, neither was it farre from sunne-setting; for, hoping to end it speedily, they drew out the busines vntill it was almost night: whereby, Pompey was forced to take a resolution from the time, and to possesse himselfe of a Mount, no further from the Fort then out of shot. There hee made a stand, fortified the place, and kept his forces.

At the same time, they fought in two other places: for, Pompey, to separate and distract our troopes, assaulted diuers forts together, to the end they might not be succoured from the next Guarizons. In one place, Volcatius Tullus, with three Cohorts, sustained the assault of a Legion, & made them forsake the place. In another part, the Germaines sallying out of our works, slew many of the Enemie, & returned back to their fellowes in safetie. So that in one day, there were sixe seuerall fights; three at Dyrrachium, and three at the fortifications: of all which an account beeing taken, there were found slaine of Pompeys Partie, to the number of two thousand; with many Centurions, and other speciall men, called out to that vvarre. Amongst vvhom, vvas Valerius Flaccus, the sonne of L. vvho, beeing Prætor, had obtained the Prouince of Asia: besides, there were sixe Ensignes taken. Our Partie, lost not aboue twentie men in all those fights; howbeit, in the fort, there was not one man but was hurt.

Euocati.

Foure Centurions of one Cohort lost their eyes; and, for argument of their indeauour, and great danger, they made report to Cæsar, of thirtie thousand arrowes shot into the fort, together with a Target of one Sæua, a Centurion, which was shewed vnto him, beeing pearced through in two hundred and thirty places, whom Cæsar (as hauing well deserued of him, and the Common-wealth) rewarded with sixe hundred pound sterling; and aduaunced him from the Companies of the eight ranke, to be the chiefest Centurion, or Primipile of the Legion: for, it appeared, that by his meanes specially, the fort was saued. For, the Cohort, hee doubled their pay, as well in Money, as in Corne and Apparrell: and rewarded them nobly, with ornaments of Militarie honour.

Millibus ducentis aris.

Primipilus.

Pompey, hauing vvrought all that night, to fortifie his Trenches, the daies following, he built towres xxv. foote high; which beeing finished, he added mantilets to that part of the Campe. And after fiue daies, hauing gotte a darke night (shutting all the Ports of his Campe, and ramming them vp) in the beginning of the third vvatch, hee drew out his Armie in silence, and betooke himselfe to his old fortifications.

OBSERVATIONS.

THe breach of the Historie in this place, is like a blotte in a faire Table, or as a gappe in a daunce of Nymphes, and dooth much blemish the beautie of this Discourse: But, for-as-much as it is a losse which cannot bee repaired, wee must rest contented with the vse of that vvhich remaineth.

749b

Out of which, we may obſerue the notice they tooke of well deſeruing: according to the inſtitution of their diſcipline, ſupported ſpecially by *Præmium* and *Pœna*. The recognition whereof (according to the iudgement of the graueſt Law-giuers) is the meanes to raiſe a State to the height of perfection. *Eo enim impendi laborem et periculum, vnde emolumentũ et honos ſperatur.* The Romaines, ſaith Polybius, crowned the valour of their ſouldiers with eternall honours. Neither did any thing ſo much excite them to the atchieuement of noble Acts, as their Triumphs, Garlands, and other Enſignes of publique renowne: which Cæſar ſpecially obſerued aboue the reſt. For, beſides this which he did to Caſsius Sæua (recorded by all the Writers of theſe warres) Plutarch relateth, that at his being in Britaine, he could not containe from imbracing a ſouldier, that caried himſelfe valiantly in defence of diuers Centurions. And where-as the poore man, falling downe at his feete, asked nothing but pardon for leauing his Target behind him; he rewarded him with great gifts, & much honour. Howbeit, the difference which Saluſt hath made in this kind, is too generally obſerued, that It more importeth a Common-weale to puniſh an ill member, then to reward a good act: for, a vertuous deſire, is by neglect a little abated; but an ill man becomes vnſufferable. And thence it is, that merit is neuer valued but vpon neceſsity. It is fit, that hee that will haue the honour of wearing a Lions skin, ſhould firſt kill the beaſt, as Hercules did: but, to kil a Lion, and not to haue the skin, is not ſo auaileable as a meaner occupation. Anthony Gueuara giueth another rule, obſerued in that gouernement, which is the true *Idea* of Perfection: *En la caſa de Dios jamas fue, ni es, ni ſera, merito ſin premio, ni colpa ſin pena.*

Solon. Plato 5 de leg. Livie. lib. 4. Lib. 6.

In vita Cæſaris.

In repub. multò præſtat beneficij quam maleficij immemorẽ eſſe: bonus, ſegnior fit vbi negligas; malus improbior. Salu. Iugur.

CHAP. XX.

Cæſar moueth Scipio to mediate a Peace.

Cæſar.

AEtolia, Acarnania, & Amphiloclis, being taken by Caſsius Longinus, and Caluiſius Sabinus, as is before declared, Cæſar thought it expedient to attempt and try Achaia, and to proceed further in that courſe: vvherevpon he ſent thither L. Calenus, and Q. Sabinus, and to them he added Caſsius, with his Cohorts. Their comming being bruited abroad, Rutilius Lupus, to whom Pompey had left the charge of Achaia, determined to fortifie the Iſthmus, to keepe out Fuſius. Calenus in the meane time, vvith the fauour and aſſent of the States, tooke-in Delphos, Thebes, & Orcleomenum, beſides ſome other places, which he tooke by force. The reſt of the Citties, he laboured to draw to Cæſars party, by Embaſſages ſent about vnto them: & therin was Fuſius occupied for the preſent. Cæſar, euery day following, brought-out his Army into an equal & indifferent place, to ſee if Pompey would accept of battel; inſomuch as he led them vnder Pompeis Camp, the vaward being within ſhot of the Rampier. Pompey, to hold the fame & opinion he had attained, drew out his forces, & ſo imbattelled them before his Camp, that their rere-ward did touch the Rampier;

Rampier; and the vvhole Armie was ſo diſpoſed, that euery man vvas vnder the protection of ſuch vveapons as might be ſhot from thence.

While theſe things were dooing at Achaia, and at Dyrrachium, it was certainly knowne, that Scipio was come into Macedonia. Cæſar, not omitting his former purpoſe, ſent Clodius vnto him; a familiar friend to both of them, and one vvhom Scipio had formerly ſo commended to Cæſar, that hee had taken him in the number of his neereſt fauourites. To him hee gaue Letters and Meſſages, to be deliuered to Scipio: whereof this was the effect; that he had vſed all meanes for peace, and yet had preuailed nothing at all: which he tooke to be the fault of ſuch as had the charge of the buſines, being fearefull to treat with Pompey thereof in an vnſeaſonable time. But Scipio had that credit & reſpect, that he might not onely deliuer freely what he thought fitting, but might alſo (in ſome ſort) reſtraine him, and reforme his errour. For, being Commaunder in chiefe, ouer an Armie; beſides his credit, he had ſtrength to compell him. Which, if he did, euerie man vvould attribute the quiet of Italie, the peace of the Prouinces, and the ſafetie & preſeruation of the Empire, to him onely. All theſe things did Clodius make knowne to Scipio: and for the firſt daies, was well heard: but afterwards, could not be admitted to ſpeech; Fauonius, reprehending Scipio, for going ſo far with him, as afterwards we vnderſtood vpon the ending of the vvar: vvhereby he was forced to returne to Cæſar, without effecting any thing.

Cæſar, that he might with greater facilitie keepe-in Pompeis Caualrie at Dyrrachium, and hinder them from forrage, fortified and ſhutte vp two paſſages (vvhich, as we haue before declared, were very narrow) with great works, and there built Caſtles. Pompey, vnderſtanding that his horſmē did no good abroad, within a few daies, conuaied them within his fortification by ſhipping. Howbeit, they vvere in extreame neceſsitie, and want of forrage: inſomuch, as hauing beaten off all the leaues of the trees, they fed their horſes with young Reedes, bruſed, and beaten in pecces. For, they had ſpent the Corne which was ſowed within the works, & were forced to bring food for their Cattel, from Coreyra and Acarnania, by long & tedious nauigation; and where it fell ſhort, they made it vp with Barly, and ſo kept life in their horſes: but afterwards, when-as not onelie their Barly, and other food was ſpent in all places, & the graſſe & hearbs dried vp, but the fruit alſo waſted, and conſumed off the trees, their horſes beeing ſo leane, as they were not able to ſtand on their legges, Pompey thought it expedient, to thinke of ſome courſe of breaking out.

Et morſu ſpoliare nemus, lethumque minantes, vellere ab ignotis dubias radicibus herbas.

OBSERVATIONS.

IT may ſeem a cunning trick of Cæſar, & perhaps it was his end, to indeauor with faire pretenſes, to ingage Scipio ſo far in contriuing a Peace, as being Generall of an Armie, he might aſſume vnto himſelfe a commaunding authority; and there-vpon, bred ſuch a iealouſie, as would keepe Pompey and him aſunder.

Neuertheleſſe, it is euery way worth a mans labour, to make ouertures of peace howſoeuer: eſpecially conſidering, how it changeth the relatiue in the

condition of men, which in warre, is *Homo homini Lupus*, and in peace, *Homo homini Deus*. And, prouing good, will doubtleſſe continue, if inconuenient, the ſooner broken; and ſo the caſe is but the ſame it was before.

Si bonam dederitis, fidam et perpetuam; ſi malam, haud diuturnam. Liu. lib. 8.

Nihil eſt quod non expugnet pertinax opera, et intenta et diligens cura. Senec. li. 6. Epi. 51

Secondly, we may note, that there is nothing ſo difficult, but pertinacie and reſtleſſe labor, directed with diligent & intent care, wil in the end ouercome it: For, Cæſar, that at the firſt ſeemed to vndertake impoſsibilities, going about to beſiege a great part of a Country, & to ſhutte vp a huge Armie in an open place, did neuertheleſſe (by indeauour) bring thē to ſuch extreamitie of want, that if, as Democritus ſaid, the Bodie ſhould haue put the mind in ſute, for reparation of loſſe, which her ambition and wilfull obſtinacie had drawne vpon it, ſhee would neuer be able to pay damages.

Touching the *Iſthmus*, which Rutilius Rufus went about to fortifie, it is a necke of earth, ioyning an Iland vnto the Continent. For, as the Inlet of the Sea, betweene two Lands, is called *Porthmus* (wher-vpon the towne of Portſmouth in Hampſhire hath that appellation, as ſited vpon the like Inlet) ſo any ſmal langet, or neck of earth, lying between two Seas, is called *Iſthmus*. Wherof, this of Achaia is of ſpeciall note in Greece; beeing the ſame that ioyned Peloponeſus to the Continent, & was of ſpeciall fame for the ſite of Corinth.

Theſe necks of earth, called *Iſthmus*, are of the nature of thoſe things, as haue been often threatned, and yet continue the ſame. For, albeit the ambition of great Princes haue ſought to alter the faſhion of the earth in that behalfe, yet I know not how their deſires haue ſorted to no end. *Perfodere nauigabili Alueo has anguſtias tentauere Demetrius Rex, Dictator Cæſar, Caius Princeps, at Domitius Nero, infauſto vt omnium patuit exitu incepto.* In the time of King Seſoſtris, and ſince, in the Empire of the Othomans, they went about to bring the Red-ſea into Nile; but fearing it would be a meanes to drowne the Land, one Sea beeing lower then another, they gaue ouer the enterpriſe. And it may be vpon like conſideration, or otherwiſe, fearing to correct the workes of Nature, they forbare to make a paſſage betweene *Nombre de Dios*, and *Panama*: and ſo to ioyne one ſea to the other, as was ſaid to be intended.

Plin. lib. 4. ca. 4.

CHAP. XXI.

An Accident which fell out by two Bretheren of *Sauoy, in Cæſars Armie.*

Caeſar.

THere vvere in Caſars Campe, two brethren of Sauoie, Roſcillus and Aegus, the ſonnes of Abucillus, who for many yeeres together, was accounted the principall and chiefe man of that State: theſe were men of ſingular worth, and had done Caſar verie great ſeruice in all the vvarres of Gallia; and in that reſpect, Caſar had aduaunced them to great & honorable Charges in their Countrey, and cauſed them

them (extraordinarily) to be taken in the number of the Senators, and bestowed much of the Enemies lands vpon them, besides great summes of ready money, & of poore had made them rich.

These men were not onely well respected by Cæsar, but were in good account throughout all the Armie. Howbeit, relying too much on Cæsars fauour, and puffed vp with fooliſh & barbarous arrogancie; they diſdained their owne men, deceiuing the horſemen of their pay, and averting all pillage from publique diſtribution, to their owne particular. The horſemen, prouoked with theſe iniuries, came all to Cæsar, and complained openly thereof: adding further, that their troopes vvere not full, nor anſwerable to the Liſt or Muſter-role, by which they required paiment.

Cæsar, thinking it no fit time of puniſhment, and withall, attributing much to the worth of the men, put off the whole matter, and chid them priuatly, for making a gaine of their troopes of horſe; willing the Caualrie to exſpect a ſupply of all their wants frõ his fauour, according as their ſeruice had well deſerued. Neuertheleſſe, the matter brought them into great ſcandall and contempt vvith all men: Which they plainely perceiued, both by the ſpeeches of other men, as alſo by that they might iudge themſelues, their owne conſciences accuſing them. With which reproach, and ſhame, they were ſo moued (& thinking peraduenture that they were not quit thereof, but deferred vntill ſome other time) that they reſolued to leaue the Armie, to ſeek new fortunes, and make proofe of other acquaintances. And, hauing imparted the matter to a few of their followers, to whom they durſt communicate ſo great a diſloialtie, firſt they vvent about to kill C. Voluſenus, Generall of the horſe (as after the vvarre was ended was diſcouered) that they might come to Pompey, vpon ſome deſerued ſeruice: but after they found it hard to accompliſh, they tooke vp as much money as they could borrow, as though they meant to haue paid their troopes, what they formerly had defrauded them of; and hauing bought many horſes, they went to Pompey, together with ſuch as were acquainted with their purpoſes.

Pœnam ſemper ante oculos verſari putant qui peccauerunt. Cic. in orati. pro Milone.

Pompey, finding them Gentlemen of ſort, liberally brought vp, attended with a great retinew, and many horſes, and both of them very valiant, & in good account with Cæsar; and vvithall, for-that it was an vnuſuall and ſtrange accident, he ledde them about the works, and ſhewed them all the fortifications: for, before that time, no man, either ſouldier, or horſeman, had fledde from Cæsar to Pompey; where-as daily they came frõ Pompey to Cæsar: eſpecially, ſuch as were inrolled in Epirus and Aetolia, which were at Cæsars deuotion.

These two Bretheren, exactly vnderſtanding all things in Cæsars Campe (as well concerning ſuch works as were perfect, as ſuch others wherein men skilfull in warre might find defect; together with the opportunitie of time, & diſtances of places: as alſo the diligence of the Guardes, with the nature and indeauour of euery man that had a charge) related all particularly to Pompey.

OBSERVATIONS.

WE may heere obſerue the ſinceritie, & direct cariage of inferior Commaunders in the Romaine Armie, by the ſcandall theſe two Sauoiens ranne into, for making falſe Musters, and defrauding the ſouldiers of their due: A matter ſo ordinarie in theſe our times, as cuſtome ſeemeth to iuſtifie the Abuſe. For, what more common in the courſe of our moderne warres, then to make gaine of Companies by muſtering more then they haue in pay? & by turning that which is due to the ſouldier to their own benefit? The firſt wherof, if it be duelie weighed, is an offence of a high nature againſt the State; and the ſecond, ſuch an iniurie to the ſouldier, as can hardly be anſwered.

It is merilie (as I take it) ſaid by Collumella, That, *in foro conceſſum latrocinium*. But, for thoſe to whom is committed the ſafetie of a kingdom, to betray the truſt repoſed in them, by raiſing their meanes with dead paies, & conſequently, ſteading the Cauſe with dead ſeruice; as alſo, by diſabling their Companions & fellow-ſouldiers, from doing thoſe duties which are requiſite, for want of due entertainement, is a thing deſeruing a heauie cenſure, & will doubtleſſe fall out vnto them, as it did to theſe two Bretheren. The ſequell whereof, will appeare by the ſtorie, and confirme that of Xenophon; *Dij haud impunita relinquunt impia et nefaria hominum facta.*

Lib. 5. Cyrop.

CHAP. XXII.

Pompey, attempting to breake out, put Cæſars *Partie to great loſſe.*

Cæſar.

POmpey, beeing informed of theſe things, and hauing formerly reſolued to breake out, as is already declared, gaue order to the ſouldiers, to make them couerings for their Morions, of Oſiers, and to get ſome ſtore of Bauins and Fagots: which beeing prepared, hee ſhipped a great number of the light-armed ſouldiers, and Archers, together with thoſe fagots, in Skiffes and Gallies. And about mid-night, drew threeſcore Cohorts out of the greater Campe, and the places of Guarizon, and ſent them to that part of the fortification vvhich was next vnto the Sea, and furtheſt off from Cæſars greateſt Campe. Thither alſo he ſent the ſhippes before mentioned, filled with light-armed men and fagots; together vvith as many other Gallies as were at Dyrrachium: and gaue directions how euery man ſhould imploy himſelfe.

Cæſar had left Lentulus Marcellinus the Treaſurer, with the Legion newly inrolled, to keepe that fortification; who, for-that he was ſickly, and of an ill diſpoſition of body, had ſubſtituted Fuluius Poſthumus as his coadiutor.

There

There was in that place, a Trench of fifteene foote deepe, and a Rampier against the Enemie, of tenne foote in altitude, and as much in breadth. And about sixe hundred foote from that place, was raised another Rampier, vvith the front the contrary way, but some-what lower then the former. For, some few daies before, Cæsar (fearing that place, least our men should bee circumuented with their shippes) had caused double fortifications to be made in that place; that if (peraduenture) they should bee put to their shifts, they might neuertheless make good resistance. But the greatnes of the works, and the continuall labour they daily indured, the fortifications beeing caried eighteene miles in circuit, would not suffer them to finish it. Whereby it happened, that hee had not, as yet, made a Rampier along the Sea-shore, to ioyne these two fortifications together, for the defence thereof: which was informed Pompey, by these two Sauoiens, & brought great damage and losse to our people. For, as the Cohorts of the ninth Legion kept watch and guard vpon the Sea; suddainely, by the breake of day, came Pompeis Armie; vvhich seemed very strange vnto our men: and instantly there-vpon, the souldiers from a-shipboard, assaulted with their vveapons, the inner Rampier; and the rest began to fill vp the Trench.

The legionary souldiers, appointed to keepe the inner fortifications, hauing planted a great number of Ladders to the Rampier, did amuse the Enemie vvith weapons, and Engines of all sorts; and a great number of Archers vvere thronged together on each side. But, the couerings of Osiers which they ware on their head-peeces, did greatly defend them from the blowes of stones, vvhich vvas the onely weapon our men had for that purpose. And as our men vvere ouer-laid with all these things, and did hardly make resistance, they found-out the defect of the fortification, formerly mentioned: and landing their men betweene the two Rampiers, they charged our people in the reare, and so driuing them from both the fortifications, made them turne their backs.

This Alarum beeing heard, Marcellinus sent certaine Cohorts to succour our men: who seeing them flie, could neither reassure them by their comming, nor vvithstand the furie of the Enemy themselues: insomuch, as what relefe so-euer was sent, was distracted by the feare and astonishment of them that fled away. Whereby, the terrour and the danger was made much the greater, and their retreit vvas hindered, through the multitude of people.

In that fight, the Eagle-bearer beeing grieuously wounded, and fainting for want of strength, looking towards the horsemen; This haue I, said he, in my life time, carefully and diligently defended for many yeeres together; and now, dying, with the same fidelitie doe restore it vnto Cæsar: suffer not (I pray you) such a dishonour, the like whereof, neuer happened in Cæsars Armie, but returne it vnto him in safetie: by vvhich accident, the Eagle vvas saued; all the Centurions of the first Cohort beeing slaine, but the first of the Maniple of the Principes: *and now the Enemy, with great slaughter of our men, approached neere Marcellinus Campe.*

The rest of the Cohorts beeing greatly astonished, M. Antonius holding the next Guarizon to that place, vpon notice thereof, was seene to come downe from the vpper ground, with twelue Cohorts. Vpon whose comming, Pompeis Partie

was

was repreſſed and ſtaied, and our men ſome-what reaſſured, giuing them time to come againe to themſelues, out of that aſtoniſhment. And not long after, Cæſar hauing knowledge thereof by ſmoak made out of the Forts, according to the vſe of former time, came thither alſo, bringing with him certaine Cohorts out of the Guarizons.

OBSERVATIONS.

IT is an old ſaying, that Thieues handſell is alwaies naught. But, Traytors handſell is much worſe: as appeareth by the falling away of theſe two Sauoiens; who were the firſt that left Cæſar in this war, and the firſt that brought Pompey good fortune: themſelues ſtanding culpable of as great an offence, as if they had alienated the whole Army. In the courſe whereof, we may ſee plainly that which I haue formerly noted; that it is an excellent thing to be ſtill attempting vpon an Enemie, ſo it be done vpon good grounds and cautions: for, while Pompey ſtood vpon the defenſiue ward, the honour of the contention fell continually vpon Cæſar. And doubtleſſe, he that obſerueth Cæſars proceedings in the cariage of all his wars, ſhall find his fortune to haue ſpecially growne, from his actiue and attempting ſpirite.

Arma alienaſſe graue crimẽ eſt: et ea pœna deſertioni exequatur, vtique ſi tota alienauit. Li. 14 §. de re militari.

In this Eagle-bearer, we may ſee verified, that which Paterculus affirmeth of Mithridates, That a valiant ſpirit is ſometimes great by the fauour of Fortune; but alwaies great in a good courage.

Vir virtute eximius, aliquando fortuna, ſemper animo maximus.

For theſe titles of degrees, as *Princeps prior*, and the reſt here mentioned, hauing formerly diſcourſed at large of the parts of a legion, & the Hierarchie of their diſcipline, I will rather referre the Reader there-vnto, then bumbaſt out a volume with diſtaſtefull repetitions.

CHAP. XXIII.

Cæſar purpoſeth to alter the courſe of Warre; *attempteth to cut off one of Pom-* peys Legions.

Cæſar.

CAeſar, vnderſtanding of the loſſe, and perceiuing that Pompey was got out of the fortifications, and was incamped vpon the Sea, in ſuch ſort as he might freely goe out to forrage, & haue no leſſe acceſſe with ſhipping then formerly hee had; changing his courſe of vvarre, which had not ſucceeded to his expectation, he incamped himſelfe faſt by Pompey. The vvorks beeing perfected, it was obſerued by Cæſars Diſcouerers, that certaine Cohorts, to the number of a Legion, were brought behind a wood into the old Campe.

Campe. The ſite of the Campe was after this manner: The daies before, Cæſars ninth Legion, oppoſing themſelues againſt Pompeis forces, and working vpon the fortifications (as is before declared) had their Campe in that place, adioyning vnto a wood, and not diſtant from the ſea aboue foure hundred paſes. Afterwards, Cæſar, changing his mind for ſome certaine cauſes, transferred his lodging ſome-what further off from that place. A few daies after the ſame Camp was poſſeſt by Pompey. And foraſmuch as hee was to lodge more legions in that place, leauing the inner Rampier ſtanding, hee inlarged the fortification, ſo that the leſſer Campe beeing included in the greater, ſerued as a Caſtle or Citadell to the ſame. Beſides alſo, hee drew a fortification from the right angle of the Campe, foure hundred paſes out-right, to a Riuer, to the end the ſouldiers might vvater freely, without danger. And he alſo changing his mind, for ſome cauſes not requiſite to be mentioned, left the place too: ſo that the Camp ſtood empty for many daies together; and all the fortifications were as perfit as at the firſt.

The Diſcouerers brought newes to Cæſar, that they had ſeene an Enſigne of a Legion caried thither. The ſame was likewiſe confirmed, from certaine Forts which ſtood vpon the higher grounds. The place was diſtant from Pompeis Camp, about D. paſes. Cæſar, hoping to cut off this legion, and deſirous to repaire that daies loſſe, left two Cohorts at worke, to make a ſhew of fortifying, and he himſelfe (by a contrarie way, in as couert a manner as he could) ledde the reſt of the Cohorts, in number thirtie-three (amongſt whom was the ninth legion, that had loſt many Centurions, and was very weake in ſouldiers) tovvards Pompeys legion, and the leſſer Campe, in a double battaile. Neither did his opinion deceiue him: for, he came thither before Pompey could perceiue it.

And albeit the fortifications of the Campe were great, yet aſſaulting it ſpeedily with the left Cornet, wherein he himſelfe was, hee draue Pompeys ſouldiers from the Rampier. There ſtood a *Turne-pick in the Gate, which gaue occaſion of reſiſtance for a vvhile: and as our men would haue entered, they valiantlie defended the Campe; T. Pulcio, by whoſe meanes C. Antonius Armie was betraied, as we haue formerly declared, fighting there moſt valiantly: yet neuertheleſſe, our men ouercame them by valour; and cutting vp the Turne-pick, entered firſt into the greater Campe, and afterwards into the Caſtle, and ſlew manie that reſiſted, of the legion that was forced thither. * Eritius.

But Fortune, that can doe much in all things, and ſpecially in vvarre, doth in a ſmall moment of time, bring great alterations; as it then happened: for, the Cohorts of Cæſars right Cornet, ignorant of the place, followed the Rampier vvhich went along from the Campe to the Riuer, ſeeking after the Gate, and taking it to be the Rampier of the Campe: but when they perceiued, that it ioyned to the Riuer, they preſently got ouer it, no man reſiſting them; and all the Cauallrie followed after thoſe Cohorts.

OBSER-

OBSERVATIONS.

POmpey, hauing cleered his Armie of that ſiege, it booted not Cæſar to proſecute his purpoſe any longer: for, when the end is miſſed, for which any courſe is vndertaken, it were folly to ſeeke it by that meanes. We muſt rather chuſe new waies, that may lead vs to the end of our hopes, then follow the old track, which ſorted to no effect. And yet neuertheleſſe, the ſufficiencie of the Generall, is no way diſabled: for, Albeit a wiſe man doth not alwaies keep one paſe, yet ſtil he holdeth one and the ſame way.

Sapiens nũ ſemper it vno gradu, ſed vna via.

Secondly, that of Xerxes appeareth to be true, that Great attempts are alwaies made with great difficultie and danger. Wherein, the wiſedome of the heathen world aſcribed all to Fortune, as the ſole cauſe of all Markable euents; and that which filled vp both the pages of all the Bookes, wherein men noted the courſe of things: *Clades in bello acceptæ, non ſemper ignauiæ, ſed aliquando Fortunæ temeritati ſunt imputandæ*, ſaith Archidamus; and is that which is aymed at by Cæſar.

Magna negotia magnis cum periculis ſuſcipiuntur. Herodot.

Fortunæ omnia expenſa, omnia ferũtur accepta: et in tota ratione mortalium, ſola vtramque paginam facit. Plin. lib. 2. cap. 7.

CHAP. XXIIII.

The fight continueth, and Cæſar loſeth.

Ceſar.

IN the meane while, Pompey, after ſo long a reſpite of time, hauing notice therof, tooke the firſt Legion from their works, and brought them to ſuccour their fellowes: and at the ſame time, his Caualry did approach neere our horſemen; and our men that poſſeſſed the Campe, did diſcouer an Army imbattelled comming againſt them: and all things were ſuddainlie changed. For, Pompeys legion, aſſured with a ſpeedy hope of ſuccour, began to make reſiſtance at the Decumane gate, and voluntarily charged our men.

Cæſars Caualrie, beeing got-ouer the Rampier, into a narrow paſſage, fearing how they might retreit in ſafetie, beganne to flie away. The right Cornet, ſecluded, and cut-off from the left, perceiuing the terrour of the horſemen (leaſt they might be indangered within the fortifications) betooke themſelues to the other ſide, from whence they came: and moſt of them (leaſt they ſhould be ſurpriſed in the ſtraites) caſt themſelues ouer workes of ten foote high, into the ditches: and ſuch as firſt got ouer, beeing troden vnder-foote, by ſuch as followed after; the reſt, ſaued themſelues, in paſsing ouer their bodies.

The ſouldiers of the left Cornet, perceiuing from the Rampier, that Pompey was at hand, and that their owne ſide fledde away, fearing leaſt they ſhould bee ſhut vp in thoſe ſtraights, hauing the Enemy both vvithout and vvithin them, thought

thought it their beſt courſe to returne backe the ſame way they came. Whereby there happened nothing but tumult, feare, and flight: inſomuch, as when Caſar caught hold with his hand, of the Enſignes of them that fledde, and commaunded them to ſtand; ſome for feare left their Enſignes behind them, others, forſaking their horſes, kept-on their courſe: neither was there any one of them that would ſtand. Notwithſtanding, in this ſo great a calamity and miſhap, theſe helps fel out to relieue vs; that Pompey fearing ſome treachery (for that, as I think, it happened beyond his expectation, who a little before ſaw his men flie out of his Camp) durſt not for a good while approach neere the fortifications: and our men, poſſeſſing the narrow paſſages and the Ports, did hinder the horſemen from following after. And ſo, a ſmall matter fell out to be of great moment, in the carriage of that accident, on either ſide. For, the Rampier, which was caried from the Campe to the Riuer (Pompeys Campe beeing already taken) was the onely hinderance of Caſars expedite and eaſie victory: and the ſame thing, hindering the ſpeedy following of their horſemen, was the onely ſafetie and help of our men.

In thoſe two fights, there vvere wanting of Caſars men, nine hundred and threeſcore; and horſemen of note, R. Felginas, Tuticanus Gallus, a Senators ſon, C. Felginas, of Placentia, Agrauius, of Puteolis, Sacrativirus, of Capua, fiue Tribunes of the ſouldiers, and thirtie Centurions. But the greateſt part of theſe periſhed in the Trenches, in the fortifications, and on the Riuer bankes, preſt to death with the feare and flight of their fellowes, without any blowe or vvound giuen them. There vvere loſt at that time, thirtie two militarie Enſignes.

Pompey, vpon that fight, was ſaluted by the name of Imperator; which title he then obtained, and ſo ſuffered himſelfe to be ſtiled: howbeit, he vſed it not in any of his Miſsiues, nor yet wore any Laurell in the bundle of Roddes caried before him.

Labienus, hauing begged all the Captiues, cauſed them (for greater oſtentation) to bee brought out in publique; and to giue the more aſſurance to ſuch as were fledde there, from Caſars partie; calling them by the name of fellow ſouldiers, in great deriſion asked them whether old ſouldiers were wont to flie? and ſo cauſed them all to be ſlaine.

Pompeis partie tooke ſuch an aſſurance and ſpirit vpon theſe things, that they thought no further of the courſe of vvar, but carried themſelues as though they vvere alreadie Victors: not reſpecting (as the cauſe of all this) the paucitie of our men, nor the diſaduantage of the place, and the ſtraightneſſe thereof, the Campe beeing poſſeſſed, and the doubtfull terror both within, and without the works: not yet the Armie diuided into two parts, in ſuch ſort, as neither of them were able to help or ſuccour the other. Neither yet did they adde to this, that the fight was not made by any valiant Incounter, or in forme of battell, but that they receiued more hurt from the narrowneſſe of the place, and from their owne diſorder, then from the Enemy.

And to conclude, they did not remember the common chances, and caſualties of vvarre: wherein oftentimes, very ſmall cauſes, either of falſe ſuſpicion, or of ſuddaine feare, or out of ſcruple of Religion, doe inferre great and heauie loſſes; as often as either by the negligence of the Generall, or the fault of a Tribune,

7491b

bune, the Armie is miſordered: but as though they had ouercome by true force of their proweſſe, & that no alteration of things could after happen; they magnified that daies victorie, by Letters and report throughout the whole world.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

SOmetimes we may thinke to repaire a loſſe, and thereby hazard a greater misfortune. For, albeit the ſaying be common, that A man muſt ſeek his coate where he loſt it, as Dicers do; yet there is alwaies more certaintie in ſeeking, then in finding: For, the circle of humaine affaires, beeing caried round in a courſe, doth not ſuffer happineſſe to continue with one Partie. And there-vpon it was, that Pittacus dedicated a Ladder to the Temple of Mitylene, to put men in mind of their condition: which is nothing elſe but going vp and downe. The life of a ſouldier is a meere Hermaphrodite, and taketh part of either ſexe of Fortune; and is made by Nature, to beget Happineſs of Aduerſitie, and Miſchances of Good-happe; as if the Cauſe of all cauſes, by intermixing ſweet with ſower, would lead vs to his Prouidence, and conſequently to himſelfe, the firſt Mouer of all Motions.

Humanarũ rerũ circulus eſt, quæ rotatus ſemper, eoſdem fortunatos eſſe non ſinit. Herodot. lib. 1.

Habet has vices conditio mortalium, vt aduerſa ex ſecundis, ſecunda ex aduerſis naſcantur. Plin. in Panieg.

The diuerſitie of theſe euents are ſo inchained together, as one ſeemeth to haue relation to the other: for, this taske admitted not of *Veni, vidi, vici*; nor went on with Alexander, marching ouer the Plaines of Aſia, without rub or counterbuffe. But the buſineſs was diſpoſed, heere to receiue a blowe, & there to gaine a victory: And ſo, this loſſe at Dyrrachium, made the battell at Pharſalia the more glorious; and beautified the courſe of this warre, with variety of chances. The beſt vſe of theſe Diſaſters, is that which Crœſſus made of his croſſe fortunes, *Mei caſus, etſi ingrati, mihi tamen extitere diſciplinæ.*

Herodot. lib. 1.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

AS the Mathematicks, by reaſon of their certaintie, doe admitte demonſtration, as well from the concluſion to the principles, as from the principles to the concluſion: ſo, in the actions of mans life, it is not hard to aſsigne the precedent cauſes, by the ſequell; the euent, beeing oftentimes an vnderſtanding Iudge of things that are paſt. And although it doe no where appeare, what was the cauſe of Labienus leauing Cæſar, yet his inſolent cariage towards theſe Captiues, may make at leaſt a probable coniecture, that his reuolt proceeded from his owne diſpoſition, rather then from any cauſe on Cæſars behalfe. For, where a man hath once done an iniurie, he wil neuer ceaſe heaping one wrong after another, and all to iuſtifie his firſt errour: Where-as on the other ſide, a noble ſpirit, free from ill deſert, will demeane himſelfe, anſwerable to his firſt innocencie.

L'euento è ſpeſſo iudice non imperito delle coſe. Guich. li. 5.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Cæsar speaketh to the Souldiers concerning this mishap; and forsaketh the Place.

CAesar, beeing driuen from his former purposes, resolued to change the vvhole course of the warre; so that at one & the same time omitting the siege, and vvithdrawing the Guarizons, hee brought all the Armie into one place, and there spake vnto the souldiers: exhorting them not to thinke much at those things that had happened, nor to be amuzed therewith; but to counterpoise this losse (which vvas in a mediocritie) vvith manie happie and fortunate battailes they had gained. *Cæsar.*

Let them thank Fortune, that they had taken Italy without blowe or wound; that they had quieted and put in peace, both the Prouinces of Spaine, full of warlike men, and directed by skilfull and practised Commaunders; that they also had subdued the fertile bordering Prouinces: and likewise, that they should remember, vvith what facilitie they were all transported in safetie through the midst of the Enemies fleets; not onely the Hauens and Ports, but all the coast being full of shipping.

If all things fell not out prosperously, Fortune was to bee helped by their industrie. The losse which was receiued, might bee attributed to any man rather then vnto him: for, he had giuen them a secure place to fight in; had possest himselfe of the Enemies Campe; driuen them out, and ouercome them in fight. But whether it vvere their feare, or any other errour, or Fortune herselfe, that would interrupt a victorie alreadie gained, euery man was now to labour to repaire the damage they had sustained, with their valour: vvhich if they did indeauour, hee vvould turne their losse into aduantage, as it formerly fell out at Gergonia; that such as before were affraid to fight, did of their owne accord, offer themselues to battell. The Philosopher Crator, was wont to say, that To be no occasion of an ill hap, is a great comfort in any manner of aduersity. Plut. in conso. Apo.

Hauing ended his speech, hee displaced some Ensigne-bearers. The Armie, there-vpon, conceiued such a griefe of the blowe that was giuen them, and such a desire they had to repaire their dishonour, that no man needed the commaund either of a Tribune, or Centurion; and were withall, inflamed with an earnest desire of fighting: insomuch, as many of the higher Orders, thought it requisite to continue in the place, and referre the cause to a battell. But contrariwise, Cæsar vvas not assured of the terrified souldiers, and thought it expedient besides, to interpose some time for the setling of their minds; fearing likewise, least he should be straightned through scarcity of Corne, vpon the leauing of his fortifications. And therefore, without any further delay, giuing order for such as were *Ignominia notauit.*

vvounded and ſicke; as ſoone as it vvas night, hee conuaied all the cariages ſecretly out of the Campe, and ſent them before, towards Apolonia, forbidding them to reſt vntill they came to their lodging; & ſent one legion withall to conuoy them.

That beeing done, he retained two Legions within the Campe: and the reſt, beeing ledde out at diuers Ports, about the fourth watch of the night, hee ſent them the ſame way. And after a little pauſe (for the obſeruing of Military order, and to the end his ſpeedy departure might not be diſcouered) he commaunded them to take vp the cry of truſsing vp their baggage; and preſently ſetting forward, ouertooke the former troope, and ſo vvent ſpeedily out of the ſight of the Campe.

Pompey, hauing notice of his purpoſe, made no delay to follow after: but ayming at the ſame things, either to take them incombered in their march, or aſtoniſhed with feare, brought forth his Armie, and ſent his horſemen before, to ſtay the Reareward. But Cæſar went with ſo ſpeedy a march, that he could not ouertake them, vntill hee came to the Riuer Genuſus; vvhere, by reaſon of the high and vneaſie bankes, the Caualrie ouertoo\e the taile of the Armie, and ingaged them in fight. Amongſt whom, Cæſar oppoſed his horſemen, and intermingled vvith them foure hundred expedite ſouldiers, of them that had place before the Enſignes: Who ſo much preuailed in the incounter, that they draue them all away before them, ſlew many of them, and returned themſelues in ſafetie to their troopes.

Cæſar, hauing made a iuſt daies march, according to his firſt determination, and brought his Armie ouer the Riuer Genuſus, he lodged in his old Camp ouer-againſt Aſparagus, and kept all the ſouldiers within the Rampier, commaunding the horſe that went out to forrage, to be preſently taken in, by the Decumane Port.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Præliorum delicta emendationem non accipiunt. Vegeti. lib. 1. cap. 14.

ALbeit that of Cato be true, that an Errour in fight is not capable of amendement: yet out of that which happeneth amiſſe, may alwaies be ſome-what gathered, to repaire the diſaduantage, and to diſpoſe a Partie to better cariage for the future. Accordingly we may note Cæſars notable temper and demeanour, after ſo great a loſſe; recalling the courage of his ſouldiers, & ſetling their minds in a courſe of good reſolution, with as many valuable reaſons as humane wiſdom was able to afford him: without which, all their other aduantages, either of valor or experience & vſe of Armes, or their aſſuredneſs after ſo many victories, or what other thing ſoeuer, that made thē excell all other Armies, had beene vtterlie buried in this ouerthrow. For his better furtherance wherein, he thought it fit to vſe the help of time, before he brought them to the like triall. For, that which is ſaid of griefe, If reaſon wil not giue an

end

end vnto it, time will; is to be vnderstood of any other palsion of the mind: which cannot possible be so great, but time will consume it.

Finem dolendi, qui consilio non fecerit, tempore inuenit. Senec. Epist. 64.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THe second thing which commeth to bee handled, is the manner of Cæsars retreit; beeing as exquisite a patterne in this kind, as is extant in any storie: and is the rather to be considered, forasmuch as it is one of the principall points of Militarie Art, and woorthiest the knowledge of a Generall, To be able, vpon all occasions, to make a safe and sure retreit. For, those that can doe nothing else, can easily put themselues into a vvarre: but, to returne them home againe in safetie, is that which concerneth the honour of a Leader.

Many are the causes, that may mooue a Commaunder to dislodge himselfe, and to leaue his Aduersarie for a time: but, the meanes to doe it safely depend specially vpon these two points; The one is, to aduaunce himselfe onward at first, as farre as possibly he can, to the end he may get the start, before the enemie be ready to follow him: and is taught by Xenophon; who, after the death of Cyrus, in the battell against King Artaxerxes, brought backe a thousand men into Greece, from an Armie of two hundred thousand horse, that preaced hard vpon them, for fiue hundred leagues together. Which retreit is exactlie storied by the said Author, in seauen bookes containing all the difficulties concerning this point: amongst which, we find this passage.

It much imported vs, saith hee, to goe as farre at first as possiblie we could; to the end wee might haue some aduantage of space before the Enemie, that preaced so neere behind: for, if we once got before, and could out-strip them for a daies iourney or two, it was not possible for them to ouertake vs; forasmuch as they durst not follow vs with a small troope, & with great forces they could neuer reach vs: besides the scarcitie and want of victuall they fell into, by following vs, that consumed all before them. *Lib. 2.*

Thus farre goeth Xenophon. And according to this rule, Cæsar ordered his retreit: for, he got the start of Pompey so farre the first day, by that eight mile hee gained in the after-noone, as it followeth in the next Chapter, that he was neuer able to ouer-take him.

The second thing for the assuring of a retreit is, So to prouide against the incomberances of an Enemie, that hee may not find it easie to attack him that would be gone. Of all retreits which may any way be taken from example of Beasts, that of the Wolfe is most commended: who neuer flies, but with his head turned back vpon his aduersaries; and shewes such teeth, as are not to be trusted.

After the Wolfes manner marched Cæsar: for, howsoeuer the body of his Armie retreited one way, yet they turned so terrible a countenaunce towards the Enemie, as was not to be indured. And vpon these two hinges, is turned the carriage of a skilfull retreit.

Howbeit, for the better furtherance heereof, it ſhall not bee impertinent to adde heere-vnto ſome inuentions, practiced by great Commaunders, which may ſerue to amuſe an Enemie, vvhile a Generall doth prepare himſelfe to obſerue the former points.

Liuie. 31. King Philip of Macedon, deſirous to leaue the Romaine Armie, ſent a Herauld to the Conſull, to demaund a ceſſation of Armes, while hee buried his dead: which hee purpoſed to performe the next day, with ſome care and ſolemnitie. Which beeing obtained, he diſlodged himſelfe ſecretlie that night, and was got farre on his way before the Romaines perceiued it.

Liuie. 27 Hanniball, to cleere his Armie from that of the Romaines, which was commaunded by the Conſull Nero, about midnight made manie fires, in that part which ſtood next the Romaine Campe: and leauing certaine Pauillions and Lodgings, with ſome few Numidians, to ſhew themſelues vpon the Rampier, hee departed ſecretlie towards Puteolis. As ſoone as it was day, the Romaines (according to their cuſtome) approaching the Counterſcarpe, the Numidians ſhewed themſelues; and then ſuddainely made after their fellowes, as faſt as their horſes could carry them. The Conſull, finding a great ſilence in the Campe, ſent two Light-horſmen to diſcouer the matter: who returning, told him of the Enemies departure.

Lib. 2. de bello Ciuili. In like manner, Varus (as is formerlie related) left a Trumpeter in the Campe, neere Vtica, with certaine Tents; and about midnight, caried his Armie ſecretly into the Towne.

Front. lib. 1. cap. 1. Mithridates, willing to leaue Pompey, that cut him off ſhort; the better to couer his departure, made ſhew of making greater prouiſion of forrage then hee was accuſtomed: appointed conferences the next day: made great ſtore of fires in his Campe; and then in the night eſcaped away.

The Perſians, in the voiage which Solyman the Turke made againſt them, in the yeere one thouſand fiue hundred fiftie foure, beeing driuen to a Place where the Ottomans thought to haue had a hand vpon them, gathered euerie man a fagot; and making a great heape thereof, ſet them all on fire, in the paſſage of the Turkes Armie: which burned ſo furiouſlie, as the Perſian eſcaped before the Enemie could paſſe by the fire.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Cæsar goeth-on in his retreit: Pompey *ceaseth to follow him.*

(·.·)

IN like manner, Pompey hauing that day marched a full iourney, betooke himselfe to his former lodging at Asparagus. And, for-that the souldiers vvere not troubled with fortifying their Campe, by reason all the vvorkes were vvhole and intire, many of them went out farre off to get vvood, and to seeke forrage. Others, rising hastily, had left a great part of their luggage behind them; and induced by the neerenesse of the last nights loding, left their Armes, and vvent backe to fetch those things that vvere behind. Insomuch, as Cæsar, seeing them thus scattered (as before hee had conceiued hovv it vvould fall out) about high noone gaue vvarning to depart, and so ledde out his Armie; and doubling that daies iourney, hee vvent from that place about eight mile: Which Pompey could not doe, by reason of the absence of his souldiers. Cæsar.

The next day, Cæsar, hauing in like manner sent his carriages before, in the beginning of the night, set forward himselfe, about the fourth watch; that if there vvere any suddaine necessity of fighting, he might (at all occasions) be readie with the whole Armie. The like he did the daies following: by which it happened, that in his passage ouer great Riuers, and by difficult and cumbersome waies, he receiued no detriment or losse at all. For, Pompey being staied the first day, and afterwards striuing in vaine, making great iourneys, and yet not ouertaking vs, the fourth day gaue-ouer following, and betooke himselfe to another resolution.

Cæsar, as well for the accommodating of his vvounded men, as also for paying the Armie, reassuring his Allies and Confederates, & leauing Guarizons in the townes, was necessarily to goe to Apolonia: but hee gaue no longer time for the dispatch of these things, then could be spared by him that made haste. For, fearing least Domitius should bee ingaged by Pompeys arriuall, hee desired to make towards him vvith all possible celeritie: his vvhole purpose and resolution, insisting vpon these reasons; That if Pompey did follow after him, hee should by that meanes draw him from the Sea-side, and from such prouisions of vvarre as hee had stored vp at Dyrrachium: and so should compell him to vnder-take the vvarre, vpon equall conditions. If hee vvent ouer into Italie, hauing ioyned his Armie vvith Domitius, hee vvould goe to succour Italie by the way of Illiricum. But, if hee should goe about to besiege Apolonia, or Oricum, and so exclude him from all the Sea-coast, he would then besiege Scipio, and force Pompey to relieue him.

749b

And therefore, hauing writ and ſent to Cn. Domitius, what he would haue done (leauing foure Cohorts to keepe Apolonia; one at Liſſus, and three at Oricum, and diſpoſing ſuch as vvere weake through their wounds, in Epirus and Acarnania) he ſet forward.

OBSERVATIONS.

Lib. 5. de Mil. Ro. cap. 14.

Lib. 1. cap. 1.

Confecto iuſto itinere eius diei, ſaith the ſtorie. Which giueth occaſion to inquire, how far this iuſt daies iourney extended. Lipſius ſaith, it was twentie-foure miles, alleaging that of Vegetius; *Militari gradu* (ſaith he) *viginti millia paſſuum horis quinq; duntaxat æſtiuis conficienda: pleno autem gradu qui citatior eſt, totidem horis viginti quatuor*; vnderſtanding *iuſtum iter*, to bee ſo much as was meaſured *militari gradu*. But he that knowes the marching of an Armie, ſhall eaſilie perceiue the impoſsibilitie of marching ordinarilie twentie-foure miles a day. Beſides, this place doth plainly confute it; for, firſt, hee ſaith that hee made a iuſt daies iourney: and then againe, riſing about noone, doubled that daies iourney, and went eight miles. Which ſhewes, that their *Iuſtum iter* was about eight mile: and ſo ſuteth the ſlowe conueiance of an Armie, with more probabilitie then that of Lipſius.

CHAP. XXVII.

Pompey haſteth to Scipio. Domitius heareth of the ouerthrowe.

Cæſar.

Pompey alſo, coniecturing at Cæſars purpoſe, thought it requiſite for him to haſten to Scipio, that he might ſuccour him if Cæſar ſhould chaunce to intend that way: but if it ſo fell out that he would not depart from the Sea-ſhore, and Corcyra, as expecting the legions and Caualrie to come out of Italie, he would then attack Domitius. For, theſe cauſes, both of them made haſte, as well to aſsiſt their Parties, as to ſurprize their enemies, if occaſion vvere offered: but Cæſar had turned out of the way, to goe to Apolonia; whereas Pompey had a ready way into Macedonia by Caudania. To which there happened an other incõuenience: that Domitius, who for many daies together had lodged hard-by Scipios Campe, vvas now departed from thence, to make prouiſion of Corne, vnto Heraclea Sentica, which is ſubiect to Caudania; as though Fortune would haue thruſt him vpon Pompey. Moreouer, Pompey had writ to all the States and Prouinces, of the ouerthrowe at Dyrrachium, in farre greater tearmes then the thing it ſelfe was: and had noiſed it abroad, that Cæſar vvas beaten, had loſt all his forces, and fled away.

Which

Which reports, made the waies very hard and dangerous to our men, & drew many States from Cæsars partie: whereby it happened, that many Messengers beeing sent, both from Cæsar to Domitius, and from Domitius to Cæsar, vvere forced to turne back againe, and could not passe. Howbeit, some of the followers of Roscillus and Aegus (who as is before shewed, had fled vnto Pompey) meeting on the way vvith Domitius Discouerers (vvhether it were out of their old acquaintance, hauing liued together in the vvarres of Gallia; or otherwise; out of vaine-glorie) related all vvhat had happened; not omitting Cæsars departure, or Pompeis comming. Whereof Domitius being informed, and beeing but scarce foure houres before him, did (by the helpe of the enemy) avoide a most eminent danger, and met with Cæsar at Eginum: which is a towne situate vpon the frontires of Thessalia.

OBSERVATIONS.

IOy is an opening and dilating motion; and oftentimes openeth the bodie so wide, as it letteth out the soule: which returneth not again. And in like manner, the causes of all such exsultations, doe for the most part, spread themselues further then is requisite.

Pompey, hauing victorie in hope, rather then in hand, boasted as though all were his: Not considering, that the happinesse or disaster of humane actions, doth not depend vpon the particulars, rising in the course thereof, which are variable and diuers; but according as the euent shall censure it. Where-vpon, the Russes haue a saying in such cases, that Hee, that laughes afterward, laughes too: as Cæsar did.

Humanarũ actionum felicitas infelicitasque non è singularibus rerum particulis quæ multæ sunt et variæ, sed ex euentu iudicantur. Dionys. Hal. lib. 9.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Cæsar sacketh Gomphos, in Thessalia.

CAesar, hauing ioyned both Armies together, came to Gomphos, vvhich is the first towne of Thessalia by the way leading out of Epirus. These people, a few daies before, had of their owne accord, sent Embassadours to Cæsar, offering all their meanes and abilities to be disposed at his pleasure; requiring also a Guarizon of souldiers from him. But now they had heard of the ouer-throwe at Dyrrachium: which vvas made so great, and so preuailed vvith them, that Androstenes, Prætor of Thessalia (chusing rather to be a partaker of Pompeis victorie, then a companion with Cæsar in aduersitie) had drawne all the multitude of seruaunts and children out of the Country, into the towne; and shutting vp the Gates, dispatched Messengers to Scipio & Pompey, for succour to be sent vnto him, in that hee was not able to hold out a long siege. Scipio, vnderstanding of the departure of the Armies from Dyrrachium, had

had brought the legions to Lariſſa: and Pompey did not as yet approach neere vnto Theſſalia.

Cæſar, hauing fortified his Campe, commaunded Mantilets, Ladders, and Hurdles to be made ready for a ſurprize: which beeing fitted and prepared, hee exhorted the ſouldiers, and ſhewed them what need there was (for the relieuing of their vvants, and ſupplying of all neceſſaries) to poſſeſſe thẽſelues, of an opulent and full towne; as alſo by their example, to terrifie the other Citties: and what they did, to doe ſpeedily, before it could be ſuccoured. Where-vpon, by the ſingular induſtrie of the ſouldiers, the ſame day he came thither, giuing the aſſault after the ninth houre (notwithſtanding the exceeding height of the walls) hee tooke the Towne before ſunne-ſetting, and gaue it to the ſouldiers to bee rifled: And preſently remoouing from thence, came to Metropolis, in ſuch ſort, as he out-went as well Meſſengers, as newes of taking the Towne.

After three of the clocke in the afternoone.

The Metropolitanes, induced with the ſame reſpects, at firſt ſhutte vp their gates, and filled their vvalls with Armed men: but afterwards, vnderſtanding by the Captiues (whom Cæſar cauſed to be brought forth) what had happened to them of Gomphos, they preſently opened their gates; and by that meanes vvere all preſerued in ſafetie. Which happineſſe of theirs, beeing compared vvith the deſolation of Gomphos, there was no one State of all Theſſalia (excepting them of Lariſſa, which were kept in with great forces by Scipio) but yeelded obedience to Cæſar, and did what he commaunded. And, hauing gotte a place plentious of Corne, which was now almoſt ripe, he reſolued to attend Pompeis comming; and there to proſecute the reſidue of that warre.

OBSERVATIONS.

Lib. 5. Obſidio eius vrbis quam citò capere velis, et vrgenda et premẽda.

LIuie ſaith, that the ſiege of that Place which we would quicklie take, muſt be proſecuted & vrged hard. Which rule, Cæſar obſerued: for, he followed it ſo hard, that he tooke the Towne fortified with exceeding high walls, in foure houres ſpace, or thereabouts, after he beganne to aſſault it. Which, Plutarch ſaith, was ſo plentifully ſtored of all neceſſarie prouiſion, that the ſouldiers found there a refection of all the miſeries and wants they ſuffered at Dyrrachium: inſomuch as they ſeemed to be new made, both in bodie and courage; by reaſon of the vvine, victuals & riches of that place: which were all giuen vnto them, according to that of Xenophon; *Lex inter omnes homines perpetua eſt, quando belligerantium vrbs capta fuerit, cuncta eorum eſſe qui eam ceperint, et corpora eorum qui in vrbe ſunt et bona.*

Lib. 6. de Inſti. Cyri.

Bello lex acquirendi iuſtiſsima. Diony. Halicar. in exper. legat.

Appian ſaith, the Germaines were ſo drunke, that they made all men laugh at them: and, that if Pompey had ſurpriſed thẽ in theſe diſorders, they might haue paid deare for their entertainement. Hee addeth moreouer (to ſhew the ſtiffeneſſe of the inhabitants againſt Cæſar) that there were found, in a Surgeons Hall, twentie-two principal Perſonages, ſtiffe-dead vpon the ground, without appearance of any wound, hauing their goblets by them: and hee that

gaue

gaue the poiſon, ſitting vpright in a Chaire, as dead as the reſt. And as Philip, hauing taken Acroliſſe, in the Country of the Ictirians, drew all the reſt to his obedience, through the feare they conceiued of their vſage: ſo the conſideration of the calamitie which befell Gomphos, and the good intreatie which the Metropolitans found, by yielding vnto Cæſar, brought all the other Citties, vnder his commaund. *Polyb. lib. 8.*

CHAP. XXIX.

Pompey commeth into Theſſalia: his Armie conceiued aſſured hope of victorie.

POmpey, a few daies after, came into Theſſalia; & there, calling all the Armie together, firſt gaue great thanks to his owne men, and then exhorted Scipios ſouldiers, that the victorie beeing already obtained, they would be partakers of the bootie, and of the rewards: and taking all the legions into one Campe, he made Scipio partaker both of his honour and authoritie, commaunding the Trumpets to attend his pleaſure, for matter of direction, and that he ſhould vſe a Prætoriall Pauillion. *Cæſar.*

Pompey, hauing ſtrengthened himſelfe, vvith an addition of another great Armie, euery man was confirmed in his former opinion; and their hope of victorie vvas increaſed: ſo that the longer they delaied the matter, the more they ſeemed to prolong their returne into Italie. And albeit Pompey proceeded ſlowelie and deliberatly in the buſineſs, yet it was but a daies worke, howſoeuer hee might be well pleaſed with authoritie and commaund; and to vſe men both of Conſular dignitie, and of the Prætorian order, as his vaſſalls and ſeruaunts.

And now they began to diſpute openly, concerning rewards, and dignities of Prelacie: and quoted out thoſe, which from yeere to yeere were to be choſen Conſuls. Others begged the houſes and goods of ſuch as vvere with Cæſar. Beſides, a great controuerſie that further grew betweene them in open councell, whether L. Hertius were not to be regarded at the next election of Prætors, beeing abſent, and imploied by Pompey againſt the Parthians. And, as his friends vrged Pompey with his promiſe giuen at his departure, requiring hee might not now be deceiued through his greatneſſe & authoritie; the reſt, running a courſe of as great danger and labour, ſaw no reaſon (by way of contradiction) why one man ſhould bee reſpected before all others. And now Domitius, Scipio, and Spinther Lentulus, began to grow to high words in their daily meetings, concerning Cæſars Prieſthood: Lentulus alleadging, by way of oſtentation, the honour that was due to his age and authoritie; Domitius vaunting of the credit and fauour he had at Rome: and Scipio, truſting to Pompeis alliance. Moreouer, Atius Rufus accuſed L. Affranius to Pompey, for betraying the Armie in Spaine. L. Domitius

7491b

Domitius gaue out in councell, That all ſuch as vvere of the rank of Senators, ſhould be inquired-vpon by a triple Commiſsion: and that thoſe which were perſonally in the warre, ſhould be of the Commiſsion to iudge the reſt; as well ſuch as vvere at Rome, as thoſe that did no ſeruice in this warre. The firſt Commiſſion, ſhould be to cleare ſuch as had well-deſerued, from all danger. The ſecond, Penall: and the third, Capitall. And to conclude, euery man laboured, either to haue a reward, or to bee auenged of his Enemie. Neither did they thinke ſo much of the meanes how to ouercome, as how to vſe the victorie.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

Comineus. THe Tale which the Emperour Frederick related to the Commiſsioners of Lewis the eleuenth, King of Fraunce (concerning the parting betweene them of the Territories of Charles, Duke of Burgundie) Not to ſell the skin before they had killed the Beare; might well haue fitted theſe of Pompeis Partie, that contended for offices before they fell, and diſpoſed of the skinnes ere they had tooke the Beares: Not ſparing out of their impatiencie to tax Pompey of ſpinning out the warre, for the ſweetneſſe he found in authoritie & commaund; as Agamemnon did at Troy. Inſomuch, as Plutarch reporteth, That one Fauonius, imitating Catos ſeuerity & freenes of ſpeech, went about throughout all the Campe, demaunding, Whether it were not great pittie, that the ambitious humour of one man, ſhould keepe them that yeere, from eating the figs and delicate fruite of Thuſculum? And all men, generally, ſtood ſo affected, as Pompey could not withſtand their inforcements. For, as Florus ſaith; *Milites otium, ſocij morã, principes ambitum Ducis increpabant.* Onely Cato thought it not fitte, to hazard themſelues vpon a deſperate man, that had neither hope or help, but in Fortune. But, as in moſt things beſides, ſo in this he ſtoode alone, and could not preuaile againſt a multitude.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

In orat. pro Planco. *Lacere ſibi ternas tabellas dari, ad indicandum ijs, qui erant ordinis Senatorij*, ſaith the ſtorie; which *Tabellas*, I haue tranſlated Commiſsions, as beſt ſuting our Engliſh phraſe: but the meaning was as followeth.

It appeareth by hiſtorie, that the Romaine people, as well in election of Magiſtrates, as in cauſes criminall, did giue their voices openly & aloud, for ſixe hundred yeeres together; vntill one Gabinius, a Tribune of the people, perceiuing that the Commons, for feare of the great Ones, durſt not diſpoſe of their voices freely, and as they would, publiſhed an Edict, that The people ſhould giue their voices by Balating. Which law, Tully commendeth; *Grata eſt tabella quæ frontes operit, hominum mentes tegit, datque eam libertatem quod velint faciant.* And in another place, hee calleth it *Principiũ iuſtiſsimæ*

iuſtiſsimæ libertatis. Vpon an election of Magiſtrates, the balls were giuen according to the number of the Competitors; that euery man might chuſe as he pleaſed.

In criminall Cauſes, euery man had three: one marked with A. ſignifying Abſolution, and another with C. for Condemnation, and another with N. L. for *Non liquet*, which they called *Ampliatio*, deſirous to be further informed; which our Grand Iuries doe expreſſe by an *Ignoramus*. And in this manner, would Domitius haue had his fellow Senators either quitted or condemned. The balls which were giuen vpon the making of a law, were two: one marked with V. R. which ſignified *Vti rogas*, that it might goe on: and the other with A. ſignifying *Antiquo*; reiecting it. For, as Feſtus noteth, *Antiquare eſt in modum priſtinum reducere.*

And in this manner they would haue proceeded againſt Cæſars Partizans, beeing altogether miſtaken, in the aſſurance of their happineſs: the continuance whereof, depended vpon Vertue, and not vpon Fortune.

Virtus felicitatis menſura: nõ ſortuna. Dio. Halicar. lib. 2.

CHAP. XXX.

Cæſar, finding the Enemy to offer battell in an *indifferent Place, prepareth to* vndertake him.

Caſar.

PRouiſion of Corne beeing made, and the ſouldiers well reſolued (to which end he had interpoſed a ſufficient ſpace of time, after the battell at Dyrrachium) Cæſar thought it time now to try what purpoſe or will Pompey had to fight. And therefore, drawing the Armie out of the Campe, hee imbattelled his troopes, firſt, vpon the place, and ſome-what remooued from Pompeis Campe: but euery day following, he went further off his own trenches, and brought his Armie vnder the hills whereon the Enemy lay incamped: vvhich made his Armie daily the more bold and aſſured, keeping continually his former courſe with his horſemen; who becauſe they were leſſe in number by manie degrees then thoſe of Pompeis partie, hee commaunded certaine luſty young men, choſen out of them that ſtood before the Enſignes for their nimble & ſwift running, to fight amongſt the horſemen: and by reaſon of their daily practiſe, had learned the vſe of that kind of fight. So that one thouſand of our Caualrie, in open and Champaine places, would when need were, vndergoe the charge of ſeauen thouſand of theirs, and were not much terrified vvith the multitude of them. For, in that time they made a fortunate incounter, and ſlew one of the two Sauoiens, that had formerly fled to Pompey, with diuers others.

Pompey, hauing his Campe vpon a hill, imbattelled his Armie at the lower foote thereof, to ſee if he could get Cæſar to thruſt himſelfe into an vnequall and diſaduantageous place. Cæſar, thinking that Pompey vvould by no meanes bee drawne

drawne to battell, thought it the fitteſt courſe for him to ſhift his Campe, and to be alwaies in mooving: hoping by often remooues from place to place, he ſhould be better accõmodated for prouiſion of Corne; and withall, might vpon a march, find ſome occaſion to fight. Beſides, hee ſhould wearie Pompeis Armie, not accuſtomed to trauell, with daily and continuall iourneys: and there-vpon, he gaue the ſigne of diſlodging.

But, as the Tents were taken downe, it was a little before obſerued, that Pompeis Armie was aduaunced ſomewhat further from their Trenches, then ordinarily they were accuſtomed; ſo that it ſeemed they might fight in an equall and indifferent place. Wherevpon, Cæſar, when his troopes were already in the gates ſetting out; It behoueth vs, ſaith he, to put off our remouing for the preſent, and bethinke our ſelues of fighting, as we haue alwaies deſired; for, we ſhall not eaſily hereafter find the like occaſion: and preſently drew out his forces. Pompey alſo, as it was afterwards knowne, was reſolued (at the inſtance of all that were about him) to giue battell; for, hee had giuen out in councell ſome few daies before, that he would ouerthrowe Cæſars Armie, before the troopes came to ioyne battell.

Prima egregiorum ducum ſapientia victoriã ſine periculõ cõparare. Polyæ. li. 1. ſtratage.

And, as many that ſtood by wondered at it, I know, ſaith he, that I promiſe almoſt an incredible matter: but take the ground whereupon I ſpeake it, that you may vndergoe the buſineſs with more aſſurance. I haue perſwaded the Caualrie, and they haue promiſed to accompliſh it, that whẽ they come neere to ioyne, they ſhall attack Cæſars right Cornet on the open ſide; and ſo the Army being circumvented behind, ſhall be amuſed and routed, before our men can caſt a vveapon at them. Whereby, we ſhall end the warre without danger of the Legions, or almoſt without any wound receiued: which is not difficult or hard to doe, for vs that are ſo ſtrong in horſe; and vvithall, gaue order that they ſhould be ready againſt the next day, foraſmuch as the occaſion was offered (according as they had often intended) not to deceiue the opinion which other men had of their proweſſe and valour.

Labienus, ſeconding this ſpeech, as contemning Cæſars forces, extolled Pompeis reſolution to the skies. Doe not thinke, Pompey, ſaith he, that this is the Armie vvhere-with he conquered Gallia, or Germania; I was preſent my ſelfe at all thoſe battells, and doe not ſpeake raſhly vvhat I am ignorant off. There is a very ſmall peece of that Army remaining: a great part of them are dead, as cannot otherwiſe be choſen, in ſo many battells. The Peſtilence (the laſt Autumne) in Italy conſumed many of them; many are gone home, and many are left in the Continent. Haue ye not heard, that the Cohorts which are now at Brunduſium, are made and raiſed of ſuch as remained behind there to recouer their healthes? Theſe forces that ye ſee, were the laſt yeere gathered, of the Muſters made in the hither Gallia; and moſt of them, of the Colonies beyond the Po: and yet all the flower and ſtrength of them, was taken away in the laſt two ouerthrowes at Dyrrachium.

When he had ſpoken theſe things, he tooke a ſolemne oath, not to returne into the Campe but with victorie, exhorting the reſt to doe the like. Pompey, commending him, tooke the ſame oath: neither was there any man that refuſed it.

Theſe

These things beeing thus caried in the councell, they rose vp, and departed, with great hope and ioy of all men; as hauing already conceiued victory in their minds: and the rather, because they thought that nothing could be spoken vainlie, by so skilfull a Commaunder, in so weightie and important a Cause.

OBSERVATIONS.

COncerning the fashion of the Caualrie, in which either Partie repосed so much confidence, wee are to note, that the Romaines had two sorts of horsemen; the one compleatlie armed (according to their manner) and incorporated in the bodie of their Legions, whose entertainement, was thrice as much as the foote-men. *Aeque impotens postulatum fuit* (saith Liuie) *vt de stipendio equitum (merebant autem triplex ea tempestate) ara demerentur.* And the other, were as light-horsemen, which they called *Alarij*. *Lib. 7.*

The first sort were thus armed, as Iosephus witnesseth; They wore a sword on their right side, somewhat longer then that of the footmen, & caried a long staffe or speare in their hand, a Target at their horse side, and three or more Darts in a quiuer, with broad heads, and not much lesse then their staues; hauing such head-peeces and corselets as the foote-men had. *Lib. 3. Excid.*

The light-armed men, had either light Darts, or Boawe and Arrowes. And doubtlesse, their chiefest seruice was with their casting weapons. And accordingly, Tully putteth his sonne in mind, of the praise hee had got in Pompeis Armie (where he commaunded a wing of horse); *Equitando, iaculando, omni militari labore tolerando.* *2 Offic.*

And, as their seruice consisted in breaking their Staues vpon an Enemy, & in casting their Darts; so wee exercise the practice of the former, in our triumphs at Tilt; and the Spaniards the later, in their *Iocuo di cane.*

Our moderne horsemen, are either Launciers, Petronelliers, or Pistoliers. The Petronelliers do discharge at a distance; making their left hand that holds the bridle, their rest: which is vncertaine, and to no great effect.

The Pistoliers, that will doe some-what to purpose, doe come vp close one to another, and discharge his Pistoll in his enemies necke, or vnder the corselet, about the flanke or seate of a man; and commonly misseth not.

I haue seene a deuice to vse a Musket on horse-backe, which if it prooue as seruiceable as is by some conceiued, will be of great aduantage.

CHAP. XXXI.

The manner of imbattelling their Armies.

Caſar.

AS Cæſar approached neere vnto Pompeis Campe, hee obſerued his Armie to be imbattelled in this manner; There were in the left Cornet two legions, which in the beginning of theſe broiles, were by order and decree of Senate, taken from Cæſar; whereof one was called the firſt, & the other the third: and vvith them ſtood Pompey. Scipio had the middle ſquadron, with the legions he brought out of Syria.

The Legion of Cilicia, ioyned with the Spaniſh Cohorts, vvhich Afranius brought with him, made the right Cornet. Theſe Pompey held to be very ſtrong. The reſt of the troopes were interlaced, betweene the middle Squadron, and the Cornets, and made in all one hundred and tenne Cohorts, vvhich amounted to fiftie-fiue thouſand men: beſides two thouſand old ſouldiers, and men of note, whom he had called out to that warre, and diſperſed them ouer all the Armie. The reſt of the cohorts, which were ſeauen, he had left in the Campe, or diſpoſed about the forts neere adioyning. The right Cornet was flanked with a Riuer, that had high & cumberſome banks: and thereupon he put all his Caualrie, together vvith the Archers and Slingers in the left Cornet.

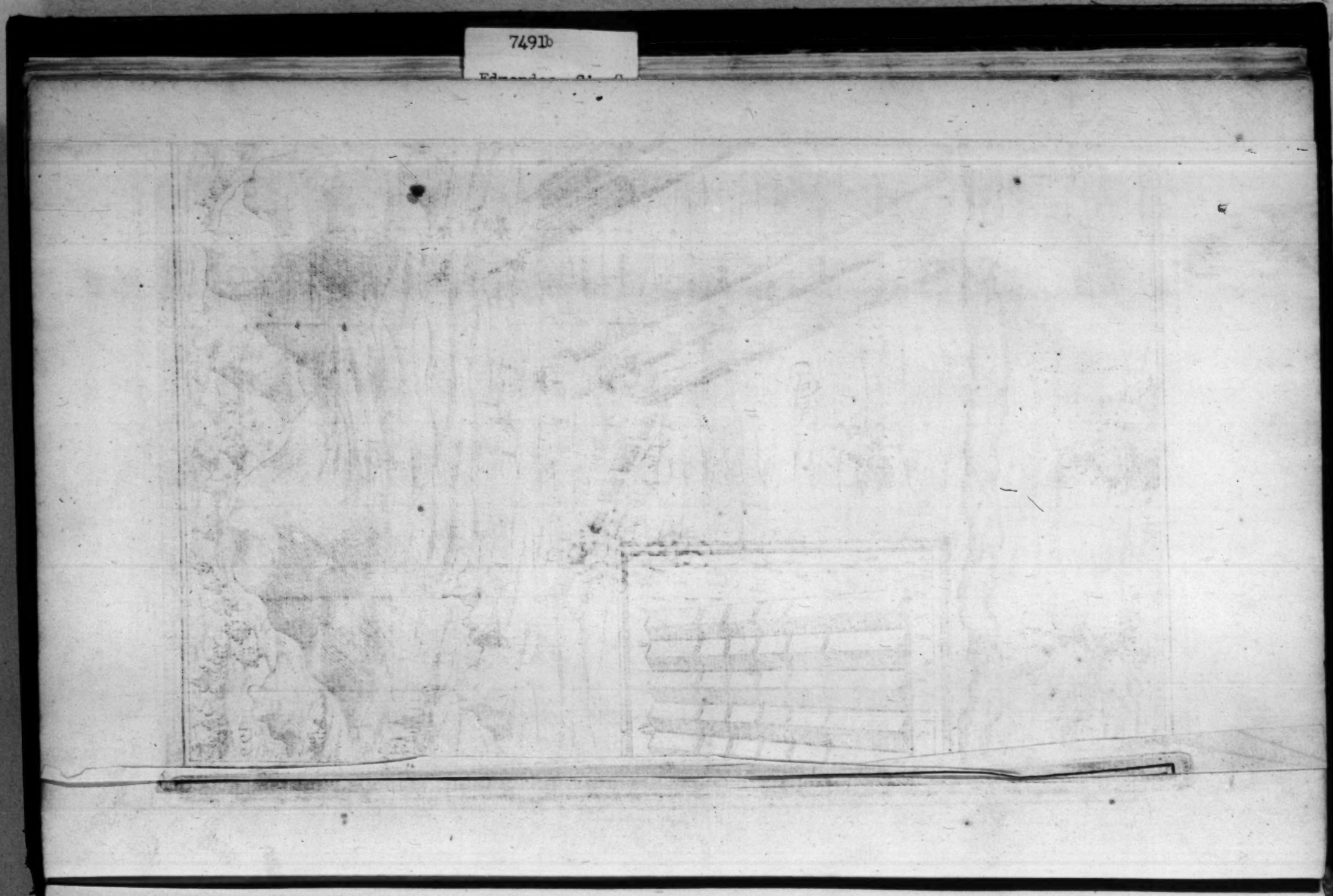
Cæſar, obſeruing his former cuſtome, placed the tenth legion in the right Cornet, and the ninth in the left; albeit they were very much weakened in the fights at Dyrrachium: but to this he ſo ioyned the eight, that he ſeemed almoſt to make one of two, and commaunded them to ſuccour each other. Hee had in all about eighty cohorts, which made twenty-two M. men. He left two cohorts to keepe the Campe, and gaue the left Cornet to Antonius: the right to Pub. Sylla, and the midale Squadron to Cn. Domitius, and put himſelfe oppoſite to Pompey. And vvithall, hauing well obſerued theſe things (according as I haue formerly declared) fearing leaſt the right Cornet ſhould be incloſed about with the multitude of the Caualrie, he ſpeedily drew ſixe cohorts out of the third battell, & of them he made a fourth, to incounter the horſemen: and ſhewed them what hee would haue done; admoniſhing vvithall, that the victorie of that day conſiſted in the valour of thoſe cohorts, commaunding the third battell; and likewiſe the whole Armie not to ioyne battell without order from him: which when he thought fit, he would giue them notice thereof by an Enſigne.

In manibus veſtris quantus ſit Cæſar habetu. Lucan. lib. 7.

And going about to incourage them to fight, according to the vſe of vvarre, he put them in mind of his fauours, and his carriage towards them from time to time; and ſpecially, that they themſelues were witneſſes, with what labour and meanes he had ſought for peace, as well by treaty with Vatinius, as alſo by imploying Claudius to Scipio: and likewiſe how he had indeauoured at Oricum with Libo, that Embaſſadors might be ſent to treat of theſe things. Neither was he willing at any time to miſſpend the ſouldiers blood, or to depriue the Cõmon-wealth of either of thoſe Armies.

This

7491b



Cohorts

The Ix

Pompeij

Cæsar

This ſpeech beeing deliuered, the ſouldiers, both requiring and longing vvith an ardent deſire to fight, hee commaunded the ſigne of battell to bee giuen by a Trumpet.

OBSERVATIONS.

Concerning the order vſed in diſpoſing theſe Armies, for the triall of this Cauſe, it appeareth by the ſtorie, that Pompey ſet two Legions in his left Cornet, which are heere named the firſt and the third. Howbeit, Lucan ſaith, that thoſe Legions were the firſt and the fourth.

——Cornus tibi cura ſiniſtri,
Lentule, cum primâ, quæ tum fuit, optima bello,
Et quartâ legione datur.——

The middle ſquadron was ledde by Scipio, with the legions he brought out of Syria, which were alſo two; *Expectabat cum Scipione ex Syria legiones duas*, as it is in the ſecond Chapter of this booke.

In the right Cornet, was the Cilician legion, with the Cohorts that Afranius brought out of Spaine: which, amounting to the number of a Legion, made that Cornet equall to the reſt. And ſo of theſe ſixe Legions, which were the ſtrength and ſinowes of his Armie, hee faſhioned his battell into a middle Squadron, and two Cornets. His other forces, beeing young ſouldiers, hee diſpoſed in the diſtances, betweene the Corners and that middle Squadron.

Frontinus, ſpeaking of this point, ſaith; *Legiones ſecundum virtutem, firmiſsimas in medio, et in cornu locauit; ſpacia his interpoſita Tyronibus ſuppleuit.* His number of men, by our text, was fiftie-fiue thouſand; but Plutarch maketh them not aboue fortie-fiue thouſand. *Lib. 2. cap. 3.*

Cæſar had not halfe ſo many men, and yet made a triple battell; but not ſo thick or deepe with Legions: for, in the right Cornet he put the tenth Legion, and in the left the ninth and the eight; beeing both weake and farre ſpent, by the former ouer-throwes. Of the other Legions he maketh no mention: but it ſeemeth they filled vp the diſtances betweene the Cornets and the bodie of the Armie; and were as fleſh to thoſe ſinowes & bones, which out of the prerogatiue of their valour, tooke the place of the Cornets, and the middle bulke of the battell. And fearing leaſt his right Cornet ſhould be circumuented, by the multitude of their Caualrie, hee drew ſixe Cohorts out of his third or laſt battell, to make a fourth battell to oppoſe the Caualrie: which gotte him the victorie. For, howſoeuer the Text ſaith, *Singulas cohortes detraxit:* yet Plutarch ſaith plainly, that Thoſe Cohorts he thus tooke, were ſixe, and amounted to three thouſand men: which riſeth to the number of ſo many Cohorts. And Appian, agreeing herevnto, ſaith, that his fourth battell conſiſted of three thouſand men. Frontinus likewiſe affirmeth, hee tooke out ſixe Cohorts, *et tenuit in ſubſidio, ſed dextro latere conuerſas in obliquum:* Where-vnto that of Lucan agreeth; *Singulas Cohortes detraxit.* *Lib. 2. ca. 3.*

Tenet obliquas poſt ſigna cohortes. *Lib. 7.*

749b

Which is thus to be vnderſtood: that they turned their faces towards the left Cornet of Pompeis Armie, that they might bee the readier to receiue the Caualrie comming on to incloſe Cæſars right wing; as beeing ſure of the other ſide, which was fenced with a Riuer and a Mariſh.

Touching Cæſars Speech to the ſouldiers, it ſeemed like that of Themiſtocles, at the battell of Salamina: where Zerxes made a long Oration to encourage the Perſians, and loſt the day: Themiſtocles ſpake but a few words to the Greekes, and got the victorie. How-ſoeuer; one thing is not to bee omitted, that Plutarch, and ſuch others as haue dipped their pennes, either in the ſweat, or in the blood of this battell, doe all agree, that Cæſar had not aboue twentie-two thouſand men.

CHAP. XXXII.

The Battell beginneth; and Cæſar *ouercommeth.*

Cæſar.

Here vvas one Craſtinus, in Cæſars Armie, called out to this vvarre, vvho the yeere before had ledde the firſt companie of the tenth Legion; a man of ſingular valour: vvho vpon the ſigne of battell giuen, Follow me, ſaith he, as many of you as were of my company; and doe that indeauor to your Emperor, which you haue alwaies beene willing to performe. This is the onely battell remaining vnfought: which beeing ended, he ſhall be reſtored to his dignitie, and wee to our libertie. And vvithall, looking towards Cæſar, I will, ſaith hee, O Emperour, ſo carry my ſelfe this day, that thou ſhalt giue mee thanks, either aliue or dead. And when he had thus ſpoken, he was the firſt that ranne out of the right Cornet: & about one hundred and twentie elected ſouldiers of the ſame Centurie followed voluntarily after him.

There vvas ſo much ſpace left betweene both the battells, as might ſerue either Armie to meete vpon the charge. But Pompey had commaunded his men to receiue Cæſars aſſault, and to vnder-goe the ſhock of his Armie, vvithout mooning from the place wherein they ſtood (and that by the aduice of C. Triarius) to the end that the firſt running out & violence of the ſouldiers being broken, & the battell diſtended, they that ſtood perfit in their Orders, might ſet vpon thē that were ſcattered & diſperſed; hoping, the piles would not fall ſo forceablie vpon the Armie ſtanding ſtill, as when they aduaunced forward to meet them: And that it vvould fall out withall, that Cæſars ſouldiers, hauing twice as farre to runne, vvould by that meanes be out of breath, and ſpent vvith vvearineſſe.

Which, in my opinion, was againſt all reaſon: for, there is a certaine incitation and alacritie of ſpirit, naturally planted in euery man, vvhich is inflamed with a deſire to fight. Neither ſhould anie Commaunder repreſſe or reſtraine the ſame, but rather increaſe it, and ſet it forward.

Nor

Nor vvas it in vaine of ancient time ordained, that the Trumpets ſhould euerie vvhere ſound, and euery man take vp a ſhout; but that they thought theſe things did both terrifie the Enemy, and incite their owne Party.

But our ſouldiers, vpon the ſigne of Battell, running out vvith their Piles ready to be throwne, and perceiuing that Pompeis ſouldiers did not make out to meet them (as men taught with long vſe, and exerciſed in former fights) ſtopt their courſe of their owne accord, & almoſt in the mid-way ſtood ſtill; that they might not come to blowes vpon the ſpending of their ſtrength: And after a little reſpite of time, running on againe, threw their piles, and preſently drew their ſwords, as Cæſar had commaunded them. Neither were Pompeis ſouldiers wanting in this buſineſs; for, they receiued the piles which vvere caſt at them, tooke the ſhock of the Legions, kept their ranks, caſt their piles, and betooke them to their ſwords.

At the ſame time, the Caualrie, according as was commaunded them, iſſued out from Pompeis left Cornet, & the whole multitude of Archers thruſt themſelues out. Whoſe aſſault our horſemen were not able to indure, but fell backe a little, from the place wherein they ſtood: vvhereby Pompeis horſemen, beganne to preſſe them with more eagerneſs; and to put themſelues in ſquadrons, to incloſe the Army about. Which Cæſar perceiuing, he gaue the ſigne of aduauncing forward, to the fourth Battell, whom he had made out of the number of the Cohorts; vvho came with ſuch a fling vpon Pompeis horſemen, that none of them were able to ſtand before them; and turning their backs, did not onely giue place, but fledde all as faſt as they could, to the higheſt Hills: whereby, the Archers and Slingers, beeing left naked vvithout ſuccour, were all put to the ſword. And vvith the ſame violence, thoſe Cohorts incompaſſed about the left Cornet, notvvithſtanding any reſiſtance that could be made by Pompeis partie, and charged them behind, vpon their backs.

At the ſame time, Cæſar commaunded the third Battell, vvhich as yet ſtoode ſtill, and vvere not remooued, to aduaunce forward: by meanes of which freſh and ſound men, relieuing ſuch as vvere faint and wearie, as alſo, that others did charge them behind vpon their backs, Pompeis partie were able no longer to indure it, but all turned their backs and fledde.

Neither vvas Cæſar deceiued in his opinion, that the beginning of the victorie vvould growe from thoſe Cohorts vvhich hee placed in the fourth Battell, againſt the horſemen; according as hee himſelfe had openly ſpoken, in his incouragement to the ſouldiers. For, by them, firſt the Caualrie was beaten; by them, the Archers and Slingers vvere ſlaine; by them, Pompeis Battell vvas circumuented on the left Cornet, and by their meanes they began to flie.

As ſoone as Pompey ſaw his Caualrie beaten, and perceiued the part vvherein hee moſt truſted, to bee amuſed and affrighted, and diſtruſting the reſt, hee foorth-with left the Battell, and conuaied himſelfe on horſeback into the Camp. And ſpeaking to the Centurions that had the vvatch at the Prætorian gate with a loud voice, as all the ſouldiers might heare, ſaid, Keepe the Campe, and defend it diligently, to preuent any hard caſualtie that may happen. In the meane while, I will goe about to the other Ports, to ſettle the Guards of the Campe.

And hauing thus ſaid, hee vvent into the Prætorium, diſtruſting the maine point, and yet expecting the euent.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

POmpey ſo caried himſelfe in the courſe of this warre, as he rather ſeemed a ſufferer then a dooer; neuer diſpoſing his Armie for any attempt or on-ſet, but onely when hee brake out of the place wherein he was beſieged at Dyrrachium. And accordingly he gaue order, that In the maine action and point of triall, his ſouldiers ſhould ſuffer and ſuſtaine the aſſault, rather then otherwiſe. But, whether hee did well or no, hath ſince been in queſtion. Cæſar vtterly diſliked it, as a thing contrary to reaſon. *Eſt quædam*, ſaith he, *animi incitatio atque alacritas, naturaliter innata omnibus, quæ ſtudio pugnæ incenditur; hanc non reprimere ſed augere Imperatores debent.* *Plutarch.*

Agreeable wherevnto, is that of Cato the Great; that In caſes of battell, an Enemy is to be charged with all violence. And to that purpoſe it is requiſite, to put the ſouldiers (at ſome reaſonable diſtance) into a Poſterne of vaunting and defiance, with menaces and cries of terrour; and then to ſpring forward in ſuch manner, as may make them fall vpon their enemies with greater furie: As Champions or Wraſtlers, before they buckle, ſtretch out their limbes, and make their floriſhes as may beſt ſerue to aſſure themſelues, and diſcourage their aduerſaries; According as we read of Hercules & Antæus.

Ille Cleonæi proiecit terga Leonis,
Antæus libici, perfudit membra liquore
Hoſpes, Olympiacæ ſeruato more Paleſtræ.
Ille parum fidens pedibus contingere matrem,
Auxilium membris, calidas infudit arenas. *Lucan. lib. 4.*

Howbeit, foraſmuch as all men are not of one temper, but require ſeuerall faſhions to tune their mindes to the true note of a battell, wee ſhall find ſeuerall Nations, to haue ſeuerall vſances in this point. The Romaines (as appeareth by this of Cæſar) were of auncient time accuſtomed to ſound Trumpets, and Hoboies, in all parts of the Armie, and to take vp a great clamour and ſhout: whereby the ſouldiers (in their vnderſtanding) were incouraged, and the Enemie affrighted. Where-as, contrariwiſe, the Greekes went alwaies with a cloſe and ſilent mouth, as hauing more to doe then to ſay to their Enemies. And, Thucidides, writing of the Lacedemonians (the flower of Greece for matter of Armes) ſaith, that Inſteed of Trumpets, and Cornets to incite them, they vſed the ſweet harmonie of Flutes, to moderate and qualifie their paſſions, leaſt they ſhould be tranſported with bridleſs impetuoſity. *Homer. Iliad. 3.*

It is reported, that Marſhall Biron, the Father, ſeemed to diſlike of our Engliſh march (hearing it beaten by the Drummes) as too ſlowe, & of no encouragement: and yet it ſo fitteth our Nation (as Sir Roger Williams then anſwered)

ſwered) as wee haue diuers times ouer-runne all France with it. Howſoeuer, the euent of this battell is ſufficient to diſproue Pompeis errour heerein, and to make good what Cæſar commaunded.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

THeſe ſixe Cohorts, which made the fourth battell, did ſo incounter Pompeis Caualrie, that they were not able to with ſtand them. It is ſaid, that Cæſar gaue them order, not to fling their Piles as commonly they did, but to hold thē in their hands like a Pike or a Iauelin, and make onely at the faces of thoſe Gallants, & men at Armes on horſeback. For the holding of them in their hands, I doe not vnderſtand it, and can not conceiue how they could reach more then the next ranks vnto them in that manner. But for making at the faces of the Caualrie, Florus ſaith, that Cæſar, as he galloped vp and downe the ranks, was heard to let fall bloody and bitter words, but very patheticall, and effectuall for a victorie: as thus, Souldier, caſt right at the face; Wher-as Pompey called to his Men, to ſpare their fellow Cittizens. *Lib. 4. cap. 2.*

Eutropius, in his Epitome of Suetonius, affirmeth the ſame thing, both of the one and of the other: and Lucan ſeemeth to auerre the ſame, concerning that of Cæſar;

Aduerſoſque iubet ferro contundere vultus. *Lib. 7.*

Frontinus hath it thus; *C. Cæſar, cùm in partibus Pompeianis, magna equitũ Romanorum eſſet manus, eaque armorum ſcientia milites conficeret, ora oculoſque eorum gladijs peti iuſſit, et ſic aduerſam faciem cadere coegit.* *Lib. 4. cap. 7.*

THE THIRD OBSERVATION.

AMongſt theſe memorialls, Craſtinus may not be forgotten, being the firſt man that began the battell, whom Plutarch calleth C. Craſsinius; and ſaith, that Cæſar ſeeing him in the morning, as hee came out of his Tent, asked him what hee thought of the ſucceſſe of the battell? Craſtinus, ſtretching out his right hand vnto him, cried out aloud, O Cæſar, thine is the victorie; and this day ſhalt thou commend mee, either aliue or dead: And accordingly, brake afterwards out of the ranks; and running amongſt the midſt of his Enemies, with manie that followed him, made a great ſlaughter. At laſt, one ranne him into the mouth, that the ſwords point came out at his neck, and ſo ſlew him. *In the life of Pompey.*

By him, and others of like courage and worth, was Cæſar raiſed from the extreamitie of his wants, and the diſgrace of his former loſſes, to the chiefeſt height of earthly glory: And heerein might well aſſume, vnto himſelfe, that which was formerly ſaid of the people, *Magna populi Romani fortuna, ſed ſemper in malis maior reſurrexit*; Together with that of Plutarch, *Res inuicta Romanorum* *Florus.*

Lib. 4. *Infelix, quanta Dominum virtute paraſti?*

Romanorum arma. Lucan ſpeaking of Sæua, formerly mentioned, ſaith; He ſhewed a great deale of valour to get Rome a Lord: but vpon Craſtinus, hee laieth a heauie doome.

Dij tibi non mortem, quæ cunctis pœna paratur, ſed ſenſum poſt fata tua dent Craſtine morti. Cuius torta manu commiſit lancea bellum, primaque Theſſaliam Romano ſanguine tinxit.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Cæſar preaceth hard after the Enemie, and *taketh the Campe.*

Cæſar.

Pompeis ſouldiers beeing thus forced to flie into their Campe; Cæſar, thinking it expedient to giue them no time of reſpite, exhorted the Armie to vſe the benefit of Fortune, and to aſſault the Campe: who, notwithſtanding the extreame heate (for the buſineſs was drawne out vntill it was high noone) vvere willing to vnder-goe any labour, and to yeeld obedience to his commandements. The Campe was induſtriouſly defended, by the Cohorts that had the guard thereof; but much more ſtoutly by the Thracians, and other ſuccours of Barbarous people. For, ſuch ſouldiers as were fledde thither out of the battell, vvere ſo terrified in mind, and ſpent vvith vvearineſſe, that moſt of them (hauing laid aſide their Armes, and Military Enſignes) did rather thinke how they might beſt eſcape, then to defend the Campe. Neither could they which ſtood vpon the Rampier, any longer indure the multitude of vveapons; but fainting with vvounds, forſooke the place: and preſently fledde into the high Mountaines adioyning vnto the Campe; being ledde thither by the Centurions, and Tribunes of the ſouldiers.

In the Campe were found tables ready laid and prepared with linnen, together with cupbords of plate, furniſhed & ſet out; and their Tents ſtrewed with freſh hearbes and ruſhes: and that of Lentulus, and diuers others, with Iuie, & many other ſuperfluities, diſcouering their extreame luxurie and aſſurance of victorie. Whereby it was eaſily to be conceiued, that they nothing feared the euent of that day; beeing ſo carefull of ſuch vnneceſſary delights. And yet for all this, they vpbraided Cæſars patient and miſerable Army, with riot and exceſſe: to whom there were alwaies vvanting ſuch requiſites, as vvere expedient for their neceſſary vſes.

Pompey, when as our men were come vvithin the Campe, hauing got a horſe, and caſt away all Enſignes of Imperiall authoritie, got out at the Decumane gate, and made towards Lariſſa, as faſt as his horſe could cary him. Neither did hee ſtay there: but with the ſame ſpeede (hauing got a few followers that eſcaped by flight) poſting night & day, came at length to the Sea-ſide, with a troope of thirtie horſe; and there went aboard a ſhip of burthen: complaining that his opinion onely

749b

onely deceiued him; beeing (as it were) betraied, by such as beganne first to flie: from whom hee hoped chiefely to haue had victorie.

OBSERVATIONS.

WHere-as it is said, that a dilatorie course is very profitable and safe; wee are to vnderstand it as a chiefe and maine point, in the dutie of an Embassadour, to temporise in things which are pressed hard vpon him; as beeing accountable for words and time: but no way charged with expeditions of warre. Wherein Protraction is oftentimes the interrupter of absolute victorie, and the onely supplanter of that which is desired. *Vincere scis Hanniball, sed victoria vti nescis*, was a common by-word, and happened then well for the state of Rome. But now it fell out otherwise; hauing met with one that knew how to conquer, and how to follow victorie to purpose.

Vtilis et tuta rei dilatio. Diony. Halic. lib. 8. Non cõmittuntur legatis triremes aut loca, aut legiones, aut arces; sed verba et tempora. Demost. de falsa legatione.

For, notwithstanding the battell he had fought, and the aduantage hee had thereby got, might haue seemed sufficient for one daies labour, yet hee would not let occasion passe, without taking the benefit that was then offered; and neuer ceassed, vntill he had forced the Campe, and ouer-taken those that escaped the battell: and so made victorie sure vnto him, by driuing the naile home to the head. In regard whereof, he did not vnfitlie vse for his word or Motto, they call it, μηδὲν ἀναβαλλόμενος, BY. DEFERRING. NOTHING.

1 Labor in negotio, 2 fortitudo in periculo, 3 industria in agendo, 4 celeritas in cõficiendo, were Cæsars properties.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Cæsar besieged those that were escaped into the Hills.

Caesar.

CAesar, hauing got the Campe, instantly required the souldiers not to looke after pillage and booty, and let slippe the meanes of ending the rest of their businesse: which, after hee had obtained, hee began to inclose the Hill about with works of fortification. They of Pompeis partie, distrusting the place, for that the Hill had no water, left it at an instant, And all those that were partakers of that fortune, made towards Larissa. Which Cæsar obseruing, diuided his forces, and commaunded part of the Legions to remaine in Pompeis Campe, and part he sent back into his owne: leading foure Legions along with him, he tooke a neerer way to meet with them; and hauing gone sixe miles, he imbattelled his forces. Which they perceiuing, betooke themselues vnto a high Hill, vnder which ranne a Riuer.

Cæsar, perswaded the souldiers, albeit they were spent with continuall labor all that day, and that night was now at hand, yet they would not thinke it much, to

to cut off the Riuer from the Hill by a fortification, to keepe them from watering in the night. Which worke beeing perfected, they beganne by Commiſsioners to treat of conditions of yielding themſelues. Some few of the Senators eſcaped in the night-time away by flight.

Cæſar, as ſoone as it was day, cauſed them all to come downe from the Hill into the Plaine, & there to caſt away their Armes: which they performed without refuſall; And caſting themſelues vpon the earth, their hands ſpred abroad, with ſhedding of many teares, deſired mercie. Cæſar, comforting them, commaunded they ſhould ſtand vp: and hauing ſpoken ſomewhat touching his clemencie, a little to eaſe them of their feare, he gaue them all their liues with ſafetie; commanding the ſouldiers not to hurt any of them, nor that they ſhould vvant any thing that was theirs.

Theſe things beeing thus atchieued with diligence, hee cauſed other Legions to meet him from the Campe, ſending thoſe he had with him to reſt themſelues: and the ſame day came to Lariſſa. In that battaile, hee loſt not aboue two hundred ſouldiers; but of Centurions, and other valiant men, hee loſt thirtie. And Craſtinus, fighting valiantly, was ſlaine (of whom wee formerly made mention) with a ſword thruſt into the face. Neither was that falſe which hee ſaid as hee vvent to the battell: for, Cæſar was perſwaded, that Craſtinus behaued himſelfe admirably in that fight, and did deſerue as well of him as a man poſsibly could.

Interdum maiores copiæ ſternũtur à minoribus. Dion. Hal. lib. 8.

There were ſlaine of Pompeis Armie, about fifteene thouſand: howbeit, there were of them that yielded themſelues, aboue twentie-foure thouſand. For, ſuch Cohorts as were in the Forts, did likewiſe yield themſelues to Sylla: and manie fledde into the next Townes and Citties. Of Military Enſignes, there vvere brought out of the battell to Cæſar, one hundred and foureſcore, with nine Eagles. L. Domitius, flying out of the Campe into the Mount, fainting for vvant of ſtrength, was ſlaine by the horſemen.

OBSERVATIONS.

AND thus we ſee the iſſue of that battaile, and the victory which Cæſar obtained, at as cheape a rate as could be imagined: for, there were ſlaine twentie-three M. of the enemie, and as manie taken, by rendring themſelues, with the loſſe of two hundred ſouldiers, and thirty Centurions; amongſt whõ was Craſtinus: whoſe death obliged Cæſar to make this honourable mention of his valour. But as it is obſerued by Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus, *Non Deus quiſpiam ſe ducibus, pro ſalute omniũ qui certamen ineunt, ſponſorem ſiſtit: nec ea conditione imperium accepimus, vt omnes homines deuincamus nullo ex noſtris amiſſo.*

Lib. 8.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXV.

Lælius attempteth to block-in the Hauen at *Brunduſium*: *and Caſsius fireth Cæſars* ſhippes at Meſsine.

(·.·)

ABout the ſame time, D. Lælius came with his Nauie to Brunduſium; and according as Libo formerly did, tooke the Iland in the mouth of the Port. And in like manner, Vatinius, Gouernour of Brunduſium, hauing furniſhed and ſent out certaine Skiffes, inticed out Lælius ſhips, and of them tooke a Galley, that was further ſhot out with two leſſer ſhippes into the ſtraights of the Port: & alſo had diſpoſed his Caualry along the ſhore, to keep the Mariners from fetching water. But Lælius, hauing the time of the yeere more fauourable and fitter for ſayling, ſupplied his Armie vvith vvater from Corfew and Dyrrachium: neither could he be beaten off his deſsigne, nor be driuen out of the Port, or from the Iland, either with the diſhonour of the ſhippes he loſt, or with ſcarcitie and want of all neceſſaries, vntill hee heard of the battell in Theſſalia. Cæſar.

About the ſame time alſo, Caſsius came into Sicilia, with the Nauie of Syria, Phœnicia and Cilicia. And, vvhere-as Cæſars ſhips were diuided into two parts, Pub. Sulpitius, Prætor, beeing Admirall of the one halfe, and lying at Vibone in the Straights: and M. Pomponius, Admirall of the other halfe at Meſsana; Caſsius came firſt to Meſſana, and was arriued before Pomponius heard of his comming: by which meanes, he ſurpriſed him, diſtracted, and much amuſed, without any order or guardes. And finding a ſtrong and fauourable wind, filled the ſhippes of burthen, with Roſin, Pitch and Towe, and like matter of firing: and ſending them out to Pomponius Nauie, he burned all the ſhippes, beeing in number thirtie-fiue; amongſt which there were twentie that had decks. By meanes vvhereof, they conceiued ſuch a terrour, that albeit there was a legion in Guarizon at Meſſana, yet the Towne was hardly kept. And, but that certaine Meſſengers comming poſt, brought newes at the ſame inſtant of Cæſars victory, moſt men thought the Towne would haue beene loſt: but the newes comming ſo opportunely, the towne was kept. Conſtrata.

Caſsius departed from thence, & went to Sulpitius fleete at Vibone; where the ſhippes beeing brought to ſhore, vvere there laid, for feare of the like danger, as formerly they had accuſtomed. Caſsius, finding the wind good, ſent-in fortie ſhippes of burthen, furniſhed with matter to burne the Nauie. The fire hauing taken hold of both Cornets of the fleete, fiue of them were burned downe to the water. And as the flame beganne to be further caried with the vvind, the ſouldiers of the old legions, which were left for the defence of the ſhipping, and were

of

of the number of them that vvere ſicke, did not indure the dishonour: but getting aboard of their owne accord, put the ſhippes from the ſhore; and ſetting vpon Caſsius fleet, tooke two Gallies, in one of the which vvas Caſsius himſelfe: but hee, being taken out, with a Skiffe fledde away. And furthermore, they tooke two Triremes: and not long after, certaine newes came of the battell in Theſſalia, ſo that Pompeis-party belieued it; for, before that time, it vvas thought to be but a thing giuen out by Cæſars Legats, & other of his friends. Where-vpon, Caſsius departed vvith his Nauie, and left thoſe places.

OBSERVATIONS.

THE branches of a Tree doe receiue life from the ſtocke, and the ſtock is maintained by the roote: which beeing once cut a-ſunder, there remaineth no life for ſtock or bough, leafe or branch. Accordingly it happened with this large-ſpred Partie; the roote whereof was then in Theſſalia: and beeing broken aſunder by the violence of Cæſars forces, it booted not what Lælius did at Brunduſium, or Caſsius, either at Meſſana, or Vibone. For, all the parts were ouer-throwne with the bodie: and the fortune of the battaile ouer-ſwaid other pettie loſſes whatſoeuer; beeing ſo powrefull, in the opinion of the world, *Vt quò ſe fortuna, eodem etiam fauor hominum inclinat.* Or, as Lucan ſaith, *Rapimur, quò cuncta feruntur.*

Pompeius Trogus. lib. 6. lib. 8.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Cæſar purſueth Pompey: who is ſlaine *in Egypt.*

Caſar.

CAeſar, ſetting all other things apart, thought it expedient for him to purſue Pompey, into what parts ſoeuer hee ſhould betake himſelfe, leaſt he ſhould raiſe new forces, and renewe the warre againe: and there-vpon, made forward euery day, as farre as his Caualrie was able to goe; commaunding one Legion to follow after by leſſer iourneis. There was a publication made in Pompeis name at Amphipolis, that all the youth of that Prouince, as well Greekes, as Cittizens of Rome, ſhould come to bee inrolled for the vvar. But it is not poſsible to diſcouer, whether Pompey did it to take away all cauſe of ſuſpicion, that he might the longer hide his purpoſe of flying away, or vvhether he went about by new leuies, to keepe Macedonia, if no man preaced hard after him.

Howſoeuer; he himſelfe lay at Anchor there one night. And calling vnto him his auncient Hoſts and Friends, hee tooke ſo much money of them, as would defray his neceſſarie charges: and vnderſtanding of Cæſars comming, within a few daies he arriued at Mitylen, where hee was kept two daies with foule vveather: and

and there, renforcing his fleet with ſome Gallies he tooke to him, he vvent into Cilicia; and from thence to Cyprus. There hee vnderſtood, that by the generall conſent of the Antiochians, and ſuch Cittizens of Rome as were there reſiding, the Citadell vvas already taken to keepe him out: and that Meſſengers vvere ſent about, to thoſe that were fled from his Party, into the bordering Citties, forbidding them to come to Antioche; for, if they did, they ſhould hazard it vvith the danger of their heads. The like happened to L. Lentulus, vvho the yeere before was Conſull; and to Pub. Lentulus, of Conſular dignity: and to ſome other at Rhodes. For, as many as fled thither after Pompey, and came vnto the Iland, were neither receiued into the Towne, nor into the Hauen; but were commanded by Meſſengers ſent vnto them, to depart from thence, and forced to wey anchor againſt their will: and now, the fame of Cæſars comming, was ſpredde abroad throughout all the Citties.

Where-vpon, Pompey, leauing off his purpoſe of going into Syria, hauing taken what money he found in Banke, beſides what he could borrow of his priuate friends, and putting aboard great ſtore of Braſſe for the vſe of vvarre; vvith eleuen thouſand Armed men (which he had raiſed partly out of the townes, and partly had forced vp, with Marchants, and ſuch others of his followers, vvhom he thought fit for this buſineſs) he came to Peluſium. There by chaunce was king Ptolomy, a child, within yeeres, with great forces making war againſt his ſiſter Cleopatra; whom a few Months before, by meanes of his Allies and Friends, hee had thruſt out of his kingdome: And Cleopatras Campe vvas not farre diſtant from his.

Pompey ſent vnto him, that in regard of ancient hoſpitalitie, and the amitie he had vvith his Father, hee might be receiued into Alexandria; and that hee would aide and ſupport him with his vvealth and meanes, being now fallen into miſerie and calamitie. But they that were ſent, hauing done their meſſage, beganne to ſpeake liberally to the Kings ſouldiers, which Gabinius receiued in Syria, and had brought them to Alexandria; and vpon the ending of the vvarre, had left them with Ptolomey, the father of this child. Theſe things being known, ſuch as had the procuration of the kingdome, in the minoritie of the Boy, whether they were induced through feare of gaining the Armie, vvhereby Pompey might eaſily ſeize vpon Alexandria & Egypt; or whether deſpiſing his fortune (as for the moſt part, in time of miſery, a mans friends doe become his enemies) did giue a good anſwere publiquely to ſuch as vvere ſent, and willed him to come vnto the King: but, ſecretly plotting amongſt themſelues, ſent Achillas, a chiefe Commaunder, and a man of ſingular audacitie, together with L. Septimius, Tribune of the ſouldiers, to kill Pompey. They, giuing him good words, and he himſelfe alſo knowing Septimius to haue led a Company vnder him in the vvarre againſt the Pirats, went aboard a little Barke, with a few of his followers: and there was ſlaine, by Achillas and Septimius. In like manner, L. Lentulus vvas apprehended by commaundement from the King, and killed in priſon.

THE FIRST OBSERVATION.

IF it be now demaunded, Where was Cæsars desire of Peace? and Why hee pursued not a treatie of Composition, at this time when when as his tale would haue been heard with gladnes, and any conditions of attonement very acceptable to the vanquished? The aunswere is already made in the beginning of this Commentarie: That there was but one time of making peace: and that was, when both Parties were equall, which was now past; and Cæsar too farre gone, to looke back vpon any thing that might worke a reconcilement. The one was crept so high, and the other cast downe so lowe, that they seemed not compatible in any *Medium*, although it were to the sauing of the Empire. Howbeit, it is not denied, but that Pompey gaue great occasion of these warres. For, Seneca saith; Hee had brought the Common-wealth to that passe, that it could not longer stand, but by the benefit of seruitude. And he that will looke into the reasons of this confusion, shall find all those *Causæ corrumpentes*, which are noted by Aristotle to threaten the well-fare of a State, in the excesse of Pompeis exorbitancie: for, hauing nothing in a Meane, hee held all his fortunes by the tenure of *Nimium*; and was ouer-growne, first, with too much honour: secondly, with too much wealth: thirdly, with too much power: whereby he exceeded the proportion of his fellow Cittizens; and so blemished the beautie of that State, whose chiefest graces were in a suting equalitie. And, adding to these the convulsions of feare, he made no difficultie to ingage Rome in a bloody warre; as hauing no other hope, but in the confusion of Armes.

Pompeius eò redegit Reipub: vt salua esse non posset, nisi beneficio seruitutis. 5 *de beneficijs.* 16. 5 *Polit.*

Nil nimium cupito, was writ in golden Letters at Delphos.

Iustum bellum esse ijs, quibus nisi in armis spes nulla est. Macha.

It is said, that at his arriuall at Mitylene, he had much conference with Cratippus, whom Tully mentioneth in his Offices: wherein, amongst other remonstrances, the Philosopher made it plaine, that his course of gouernment, had brought a necessitie of changing that State, from the liberty of a Common-wealth, to the condition of a iust Monarchie. And sith it fell to Cæsars fortune, if there were any errour committed in the seizure, he may take the benefite of the generall pardon, exemplified by Trebellius Poliæ: That no Nation can shew a Man that is altogether blameless.

Nusquam Gentium reperitur, qui possit penitus approbari.

THE SECOND OBSERVATION.

COncerning the state of Egypt, wee are to note, that Alexander the Great being cut off by death, his Captaines laid hold vpon such Prouinces and kingdoms as were vnder their commaunds: amongst whom one Ptolomeus, the sonne of Lagus a Macedonian, seized vpon Egypt, where he raigned 40 yeres; & of him were all his successors called by the name of Ptolomy. This first Ptolomy, possest himselfe of Egypt, about the yeere of the world 3640: which was 275 yeers before Pompeis ouerthrow. His son that succeeded, by the name of Ptolomey Philadelphus, caused the Bible to be translated out of Ebrew into Greek by 70 Interpreters, which are called the *Septuagint*; and made the famous Librarie which was burned in these vvarres.

The Father of this young Ptolomey, was the ninth in succession from the first; and at his death, made the people of Rome Tutors to his children. His eldest

7491b

eldeſt ſonne, and Cleopatra his daughter, raigned together ſixe yeeres; but in the end, fell to ſtriſe and warres, and were deeply ingaged therein, when Pompey arriued: but ſhortly after, Cæſar ſo ordered the differences, that hee ſette the Crowne vpon Cleopatras head; who held it peaceably, vntill ſhe came to play that tragicall part with Anthony: which beeing ended, the kingdom was then reduced to a Prouince, vnder the obedience of the Romaine Empire.

Mors omnium par eſt: per quæ venit diuerſa ſunt, id in quod deſinit vnũ eſt Epiſt. 67. Homines ſicut pomũ, aut matura cadunt, aut acerba ruunt. Plutar. in vita Pompei.

Concerning this miſerable end of Pompey, it is truly ſaid of Seneca, that Death is alike to all: for, although the waies are diuers by which it happeneth, yet they all meet in the ſame end. And, foraſmuch as Plutarch hath deſcribed particularly the manner of this Cataſtrophe, it ſhall not be impertinent to inſert his relation thereof.

When Pompey heard newes that king Ptolomy was in the Citty of Peluſium with his Army, making warre againſt his ſiſter, hee went thither, and ſent a Meſſenger before, vnto the king, to aduertiſe him of his arriuall, and to intreat him to receiue him. K. Ptolomy was then but a young man, inſomuch, that one Photinus gouerned all the whole Realme vnder him. He aſſembled a Councell of the chiefeſt & wiſeſt men of the Court, who had ſuch credit and authoritie, as it pleaſed him to giue them. They being aſſembled, he commanded euery man in the Kings name to ſay his mind, touching the receiuing of Pompey, whether the King ſhould receiue him or not. It was a miſerable thing to ſee Photinus, an Eunuch of the Kings, and Theodotus of Chio, an hired Schoolemaiſter to teach the young king Rhetorick, & Achillas, an Egyptian, to conſult among theſelues what they ſhould do with Pompey the great. Theſe were the chiefeſt Councellors of al his Eunuches, & of thoſe that had brought him vp.

Now did Pompey ride at anchor vpon the ſhore ſide, expecting the reſolution of this Councell: in the which, the opinions of others were diuers, for, they would not haue receiued him; the other alſo that he ſhould be receiued. But the Rhetorician, Theodotus, to ſhew his eloquence, perſwaded them, that neither the one nor the other was to be accepted. For, quoth he, if wee receiue him, we ſhall haue Cæſar our enemy, and Pompey our Lord: and if they do denie him, on the other ſide, Pompey wil blame them for refuſing him, & Cæſar for not keeping of him; therfore this ſhould be the beſt reſolution, to ſend to kill him. For, therby they ſhould win the good wil of the one, and not feare the diſpleaſure of the other: & ſome ſay moreouer, that he added this mock withall, A dead man bites not. They, being determined of this among themſelues, gaue Achillas commiſſion to doe it. He, taking with him Septimius (who had charge afore-time vnder Pompey) and Saluius, another Centurion alſo, vvith three or foure ſouldiers beſides, they made towards Pompeis Gallies, about whom were at that time the chiefeſt of his traine, to ſee what would become of this matter. But, when they ſaw the likelihood of their entertainement, & that it was not in Princely ſhew nor manner, nor nothing anſwerable to the hope which Theophanes had put them in, ſeeing ſo few men come to them in a fiſher boat; they beganne then to miſtruſt the ſmall account that was made of them, and counſelled Pompey to returne backe, and to launch againe into the ſea, beeing out of the danger of the hurling of a Dart.

In the meane time, the fiſher-boat drew neer, and Septimius roſe, and ſaluted Pompey in the Romane tongue, by the name of Imperator, as much as ſoueraigne Captaine: and Achillas alſo ſpake to him in the Greek tongue, and bade him come into his boat; becauſe that by the ſhore-ſide, there was a great deale of mud, & ſand banks, ſo that his Galley ſhould haue no water to bring him in. At the very ſame time, they ſaw a farre off diuers of the Kings Gallies, which were arming with all ſpeed poſsible, & all the ſhore beſides, full of ſouldiers. Thus, though Pompey & his company would haue altered their minds, they could not haue told how to haue eſcaped: and furthermore, ſhewing that they had miſtruſted them, then they had giuen the murderer occaſion to haue executed his crueltie. So taking his leaue of his wife Cornelia, who lamented his death before his end, hee commaunded two Centurions to goe downe before him, into the Egyptians boat, & Philip, one of his ſlaues infranchiſed, with another ſlaue, called Scynes. When Achillas reached out his hand to receiue him into his boat, he turned him to his wife and ſonne, and ſaid theſe verſes of Sophocles vnto them;

The man that into Court comes free,
Muſt there in ſtate of bondage bee.

Theſe were the laſt words he ſpake vnto his people, when hee left his owne Gally, & went into the Egyptians boat, the land being a great way off from his Gally. When he ſaw neuer a man in the boat ſpeak friendly vnto him, beholding Septimius, he ſaid vnto him; Me thinks, my friend, I ſhould know thee, for that thou haſt ſerued with me heeretofore. The other nodded with his head, that it was true, but gaue him no anſwer, nor ſhewed him any curteſie.

Pompey, ſeeing that no man ſpake to him, tooke a little booke he had in his hand, in which hee had written an Oration, that hee meant to make vnto King Ptolomey, and began to read it. When they came neer to the ſhore, Cornelia, with her ſeruants and friends about her, ſtood vp in her ſhip, in great feare, to ſee what ſhould become of Pompey. So, ſhe hoped well, when ſhe ſaw many of the Kings people on the ſhore, comming towards Pompey at his landing, as it were to receiue and honor him. But euen as Pompey tooke Philip his hand to ariſe more eaſily, Septimius came firſt behind him, and thruſt him through with his ſword: next vnto him alſo, Saluius & Achillas drew out their ſwords in like manner. Pompey then did no more but tooke vp his gowne vvith his hands, and hid his face, and manly abid the wounds they gaue him, onely ſighing a little. Thus, being 59 yeeres old, hee ended his life the next day after the day of his birth.

They that rode at anchor in their ſhippes, when they ſaw him murthered, gaue ſuch a fearfull cry, that it was heard to the ſhore: then weying vp their anchors with ſpeed, they hoiſed ſaile, and departed their way, hauing wind at will, that blew a luſtie gale. As ſoone as they had gotten the maine Sea, the Egyptians which prepared to rowe after them, when they ſaw they were paſt their reach, and vnpoſsible to be ouer-taken, they let them goe. Then, hauing ſtriken off Pompeys head, they threw his body ouer-board, for a miſerable ſpectacle to all thoſe that were deſirous to ſee him.

Philip,

749b

Philip his enfranchiſed bond-man, remained euer by it, vntill ſuch time as the Egyptians had ſeen it their bellies full. Then, hauing waſhed his body with ſalt water, & wrapped it vp in an old ſhirt of his, becauſe he had no other ſhift to lay it in, he ſought vpon the ſands, and found at length a peece of an old fiſhers boat, enough to ſerue to burn his naked bodie with, but not all fully out. As hee was buſie, gathering the broken peeces of this boat together, thither came vnto him an old Romaine, who in his youth had ſerued vnder Pompey, & ſaid vnto him; O friend, what art thou, that prepareſt the funeralls of Pompey the great? Philip anſwered, that he was a bond-man of his, infranchiſed. Well, ſaid he, thou ſhalt not haue all this honor alone: I pray thee yet let mee accompany thee in ſo deuout a deed, that I may not altogether repent mee to haue dwelt ſo long in a ſtrange Country, where I haue abidden ſuch miſery & trouble; but that to recompence me withall, I may haue this good hap, with mine owne hands to touch Pompeys body, and to help to burie the onelie and moſt famous Captaine of the Romaines.

The next day after, Lucius Lentulus (not knowing what had paſſed) comming out of Cyprus, ſailed by the ſhore-ſide, and perceiued a fire made for funeralls, and Philip ſtanding by it: whom he knew not at the firſt. So hee asked him, What is hee that is dead, and buried there? but ſtraight fetching a great ſigh, alas, ſaid he, perhaps it is Pompey the great. Then he landed a little, and was ſtraight taken and ſlaine. This was the end of Pompey the great. Not long after, Cæſar alſo came into Egypt, that was in great warres; where Pompeis head was preſented vnto him: but he turned his head aſide, and would not ſee it; & abhorred him that brought it, as a deteſtable murtherer. Then, taking his Ring where-with he ſealed his Letters, wherupon was grauen a Lyon holding a ſword, he burſt out a weeping. Achillas and Photinus he put to death. King Ptolomey himſelfe alſo, being ouer-throwne in battaile, by the Riuer of Nilus, vaniſhed away, & was neuer heard of after. Theodotus, the Rhetorician, eſcaped Cæſars hands, and wandered vp and downe Egypt in great miſery, deſpiſed of euery man. Afterwards, Marcus Brutus (who ſlew Cæſar) conquering Aſia, met with him by chaunce, and putting him to all the torments he could poſsibly deuiſe, at the length ſlew him. The aſhes of Pompeis bodie, were afterwards brought vnto his wife Cornelia; who buried thē in a towne of hers, by the Cittie of Alba.

And, hauing in this manner paid the tribute which the law of Nature doth exact, the law of the Twelue Tables did free his Sepulchre from any further diſturbance; *Vbi corpus demortui hominis condas ſacer eſto.* Onely this may be added; That as Fabius was called Maximus, Scipio Magnus, and Pompey Magnus, which titles they caried, as markes of ſpeciall Nobleneſs, to raiſe thē aboue the cōmon worth of men: ſo their ends made them euen with the loweſt of the State. According to that of Seneca; *Interuallis diſtinguimur: exitu æquamur.*

Mors Naturæ lex eſt. Mors tributum officiumque mortalium. Sene. natural. quæſt. 6.

Fabius dictus Maximus, Scipio magnus. Polianus. lib. 8. Epiſt. 100.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Prodigious Accidents, happening vpon the *Battell in Pharſalia. Cæſar commeth* into Egypt.



Cæſar, comming into Aſia, found T. Ampius going about to take the money out of the Temple of Diana, at Epheſus: and for that cauſe had called together all the Senators that were in the Prouince, that hee might vſe them as witneſſes in the matter; but, beeing interrupted by Cæſars arriuall, hee fled away: ſo that two ſeuerall times, the money was ſaued at Epheſus by Cæſars meanes. It was further found very certaine, that in the Temple of Minerua at Elide (a iuſt calculation of the time beeing taken) the ſame day that Cæſar ouer-threw Pompey, the Image of victorie which ſtood before Minerua, & looked towards her portrature, did turne it ſelfe towards the Portall, and the Temple-gate. And the ſame day likewiſe, there was ſuch a noiſe of an Armie, twice heard at Antioche in Syria, and ſuch ſounding of Trumpets, that the Cittie ranne in Armes to keepe the walles. The like happened at Ptolomaida. And likewiſe at Pergamum, in the remote and hidden places of the Temple, which are called ἄδυτα, into which it is not lawfull for any man to enter but the Prieſts, were belles heard to ring. Beſides, at Tralibus, in the Temple of Victory (vvhere they had conſecrated an Image to Cæſar) there was ſhewed a Palme-tree, which in thoſe daies vvas growne from betweene the ioynts of the ſtones, out of the pauement.

This that followeth, ſeeneth of another ſtile.

Cæſar, ſtaying a few daies in Aſia, hearing that Pompey was ſeene at Cyprus, and coniecturing he went into Egypt, for the amities and correſpondencie hee had with that Kingdome, beſides other opportunities of the place; he came to Alexandria with two legions, one that hee commaunded to follow him out of Theſſaly, and another vvhich he had called out of Achaia, from Fuſius a Legate, together with eight hundred horſe, ten Gallies of Rhodes, and a few ſhips of Aſia. In theſe Legions, were not aboue three thouſand two hundred men; the reſt, were either vvounded in the fights, or ſpent with trauell, and the length of the iourney: but Cæſar, truſting to the fame of his great exploits, did not doubt to go with theſe weak forces, thinking euery place would entertaine him with ſafetie.

The Prieſts of Egypt ſaide, That whenſoeuer the Axe and the bundle of Rods, came into Alexandria, the power of their Kings ſhould preſently ceaſe: accor-

At Alexandria hee vnderſtood of Pompeis death: and as hee was going out of the ſhippe, he heard a clamour of the ſouldiers, which the King had left to keep the towne, and ſaw a concourſe of people gathered about him, becauſe the bundle of Rods was caried before him; all the multitude crying out, that the Kings authority was diminiſhed. This tumult being appeaſed, there were often vp-roares and commotions of the people for euery day after; and many ſouldiers were ſlain in diuers parts of the Cittie. Where-vpon, Cæſar gaue order, for other Legions to be brought him out of Aſia, which he raiſed and inrolled of Pompeis ſouldiers.

He

He himſelfe was ſtaied by the winds, called Eteſiæ, *which are againſt them that ſaile to Alexandria.*

ding as it vvas writtē in a Columne of gold, at Memphis.

In the meane time, foraſmuch as he conceiued, that if controuerſies betweene Kings, did appertaine to the people of Rome, then conſequently, to him, as Conſull; and ſo much the rather it concerned his office, for that in his former Conſulſhip, there was a league made by the decree of Senate, vvith Ptolomey the Father: In regarde hereof, he ſignified, that his pleaſure was, that both the king and his ſiſter Cleopatra, ſhould diſmiſſe their Armies, and rather plead their Cauſe before him, then to decide it by Armes.

There was at that time, one Photinus an Eunuch, one that had the adminiſtration of the kingdome, during the minoritie of the Child; he firſt began to cõplaine among his friends, and to take it in ſcorne, that the King ſhould be called out to pleade his Cauſe: and afterwards, hauing gotten ſome aſſiſtance of the Kings friends, he drew the Armie ſecretly from Peluſium, to Alexandria, and made Achillas (formerly mentioned) Generall of all the forces; inciting him forward, as well by his owne promiſes, as from the King, and inſtructing him by Letters & Meſſengers, what he would haue done.

Ptolomey, the Father, by his laſt Will and teſtament, had left for heires, the eldeſt of two ſonnes, and likewiſe the eldeſt of two daughters: and for the confirmation thereof, had in the ſame Will, charged and required the people of Rome, by all the gods & the league he made at Rome, to ſee this accompliſhed. For which purpoſe, he ſent a copy of his Will to Rome, to be kept in the Treaſury: and by reaſon of the publicke occaſions, which admitted no ſuch buſineſs for the preſent, were left with Pompey; and the Originall, ſigned and ſealed vp, was brought to Alexandria.

While Cæſar was handling theſe things, beeing very deſirous to end theſe controuerſies by arbitrement, it was told him on a ſuddaine, that the Kings Army, and all the Caualry, were come to Alexandria. Cæſars forces were not ſuch that he durſt truſt vpon them, to hazard battell without the towne; onely it remained, that he kept himſelfe in ſuch places, as were moſt fit & conuenient for him, vvithin the towne, and to learne what Achillas intended. Howſoeuer: he commaunded all the ſouldiers to Arme; and exhorted the King, that of thoſe which were neereſt vnto him, and of greateſt authority, hee would ſend ſome to Achillas, to knowe his meaning.

Dioſcorides and Serapion; beeing deputed there-vnto, hauing beene both Embaſſadours at Rome, and in great place about Ptolomey the Father; they came to Achillas: whom as ſoone as they were come into his preſence, & before he would heare or vnderſtand what they would, commaunded them to be taken away, and ſlaine. Of whom, one hauing receiued a wound, was caried away by his own people for dead. The other was ſlaine out-right. Whereupon, Cæſar wrought to get the King into his owne hands; thinking that his Name & Title would preuaile much amongſt his people: as alſo to make it appeare, that this warre was rather mooued by the priuate practice of ſome ſeditious thieues, then by order & commandement from the King.

OBSER-

OBSERVATIONS.

THe multiplicitie of occaſions and troubles, which happen to ſuch as haue the ordering of any buſineſſes of import, doth make that of Plinie often remembred; *Veteribus negotijs noua accreſcunt, nec tamen priora peraguntur; tot nexibus, tot quaſi Catenis, maius in dies occupationum agmen extenditur.* For, albeit Pompey had now ſpent his malice, and was no more to appeare in Armes againſt Cæſar: yet his hap was by flying, to draw him (as it were by way of reuenge) into a place, where hee was neceſſarilie to be intangled in a dangerous warre.

Lib. 2. Epiſt. 8.

To theſe prodigies heere mentioned, may be added that of Aulus Gellius, that The ſame day the battell happened, there fell out a ſtrange wonder at Padua: where a certaine Prieſt, called Cornelius, of Noble race, and holie liſe, ſuddainlie fell into an extaſie, and ſaid, he ſaw a great battell afarre off; Darts and Piles flie thicke in the ayre, ſome flying, and ſome purſuing, great ſlaughter, accompanied with many lamentable groanes and cries: and in the end, cried out, that Cæſar had got the victorie. For which, he was mocked for the preſent; but, afterwards, held in great admiration.

Lib. 15. cap. 18.

Plinie maketh the ſmall increaſe of Nilus, to bee a fore-teller of Pompeis death; *Minimumque Pharſalico bello veluti necem magni prodigio quodam flumine auerſante.*

Lib. 5. cap. 9.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Cæſar landeth his forces, taketh Pharus, and *cauſeth Photinus to be ſlaine.*

THE forces that were with Achillas, were neither for their number, or faſhion of men, or vſe or experience in war, to be contemned, hauing twentie-two thouſand men in Armes. Theſe troops cõſiſted of the Gabinian ſouldiers, which were now growne into a cuſtome of life and liberty of the Egyptians: and hauing forgot the name and diſcipline of the people of Rome, had there maried vwiues, and moſt of them had children. To theſe were added ſuch as were gathered from the thieues and robbers of Syria, the Prouince of Cilicia, and other finitimate Regions: beſides many baniſhed men, and others, condemned to die, that fledde thither. And for all our fugitiues, there was euer a ſure and certaine receipt at Alexandria, and a certaine condition of life: for, vpon giuing vp of his name, he

749b

he was presently inrolled a souldier: and if one chaunced to be taken and apprehended by his Maister, hee was presently rescued by the concourse of souldiers; vvho, beeing all in the same condition, did striue for him, as for thẽselues: these required the Kings friends to be slaine. These were accustomed to rob rich men of their goods to better their pay, to besiege the Kings house, to expell some out of their kingdome, and to send for others home, according to an old custome and priuiledge of the Alexandrian Armie.

There were, besides, two thousand horse, that had beene of auncient continuance in many of the warres held at Alexandria, and had brought back Ptolomey the father, and restored him to his kingdome; had slaine Bibulus two sons, and had made warre with the Egyptians: and this vse and knowledge they had of vvarre. Achillas, trusting to these forces, and contemning the small number of Cæsars troopes, did take and possesse Alexandria; and further, assaulting that part of the towne which Cæsar held with his men, did first of all indeauour to breake into his house: but Cæsar, hauing disposed the cohorts in the streets & waies, did beare out the assault. At the same time, they fought likewise at the Port, and it came at length to a very forcible incounter: for, hauing drawne out their troopes, the fight began to be hot in diuers streets and lanes; and the Enemie (in great troopes) went about to possesse themselues of the Gallies, of which there were L. found there, that were sent to serue Pompey, and returned home againe after the battell in Thessalia. These were all Triremes, and Quinqueremes, rigged, and ready to goe to sea.

Besides these, there were twenty-two, which were alwaies accustomed to bee the best, for the defence of Alexandria, and vvere all furnished vvith decks: which if they had taken, together with Cæsars shipping, they would haue had the Hauen and the Sea at their commaund; and by that meanes, hindered Cæsar frõ succours and prouision of victuall: in regard whereof, they fought hard on both sides; Achillas expecting victory, and our men for their safetie. But Cæsar, obtained his purpose: and becaus he was not able to keepe so many seuerall things with so small forces, he set them all on fire, together with those that were in the Road, & presently landed some souldiers at Pharus; which is a tower in an Iland, of a great height, & built with strange workmanship, taking that name from the Iland: this Iland lieth ouer against Alexandria, and so maketh it a Hauen. But former Kings had inlarged it 9 hundred pases in length, by raising great mounts in the Sea: and by that meanes, had brought it so neere to the towne, that they ioyned them both together with a bridge.

In this Iland dwelt diuers Egyptians, and made a Village, of the bignesse of a Towne: and what shippes soeuer had fallen off their course, either by tempest or errour, were there robbed by those Egyptians. For, by reason of the narrowe entrance, no shippes can come into the Hauen, but by the fauour and leaue of them that hold Pharus. Cæsar, beeing afraid of this, while the Enemie vvas busie in fight, landed his souldiers, tooke the place, and there put a guarison. Whereby he brought it to passe, that both corne and succours might safely come by sea to supply him: for, he had sent to all the confining Regions for aide. In other places of the towne they so fought, that they gaue ouer at length vpon equall conditions:

which

which happened by reaſon of the narrowneſs of the paſſages: And a few of each ſide beeing ſlaine, Caſar tooke in ſuch places as were moſt conuenient for him, & fortified them in the night. In this quarter of the Towne, was contained a little part of the Kings houſe (wherein, hee himſelfe at his firſt arriuall, was appointed to lodge) and a Theater ioyned to the houſe, vvhich was in ſteed of a Caſtle, and had a paſſage to the Port, and to other parts of Road. The daies following, he increaſed theſe fortifications, to the end he might haue them as a wall againſt the enemy, and thereby need not fight againſt his will.

In the meane time, the younger daughter of King Ptolomey, hoping to obtaine the Crowne, now in queſtion, found meanes to conuay herſelfe out of the Kings houſe, to Achillas, and both ioyntly together, vndertooke the managing of that warre: but preſently there grew a controuerſie between thē, who ſhould cōmand in Chiefe; which was the cauſe of great largeſs and rewards to the ſouldiers, either of them beeing at great charges and expences to gaine their good wills.

While the Enemy was buſied in theſe things, Photinus, the Gouernour of the young King, and Superintendent of the kingdome on Caſars partie, ſent Meſſengers to Achillas, exhorting him, not to deſiſt in the buſineſs, or to bee diſcouraged. Vpon the diſcouering and apprehenſion of which Meſſengers, Caſar cauſed him to be ſlaine. And theſe were the beginnings of the Alexandrian warre.

OBSERVATIONS.

PHarus is a little Iland in the Sea, ouer-againſt Alexandria; in the midſt whereof, Ptolomey Philadelphe built a tower of an exceeding height, all of white Marble. It contained many Stages, and had in the toppe many great Lantemes, to keepe light in the night, for a marke to ſuch as were at Sea. The Architector ingraued there-vpon this inſcription; *Soſtrates Gnidien, the ſonne of Dexiphanes, to the Gods, Conſeruators, for the ſafety of Nauigators.*

It was reckoned for one of the ſeauen Wonders of the world. The firſt whereof was the Temple of Diana, at Epheſus. The ſecond, was the Sepulchre which Artemiſia, Queene of Caria, made for her Husband, Mauſolus, whoſe aſhes ſhe dranke. The third, was the Colloſſus of the Sunne, at Rhodes. The fourth, was the Walls of Babylon. The fift, was the Pyramides of Egypt. The ſixt, was the Image of Iupiter Olympian, at Elide, which was made by Phidias, and contained three-ſcore cubites in height; and was all of Iuorie, and pure Gold. And the ſeauenth, was this Pharus.

FINIS.

ERRATA.

Page.	Line.	Faults.	Corrections.
41	2	*Enſignes*	*eaſineſſe.*
125	25	*vncaple*	*vncapable.*
133	30	*ergo*	*ego.*
150	3	*ſopken*	*ſpoken.*
205	19	*they*	*as they.*

7491b

79/18